

Operation Guide

7004i 6004i 5004i 4004i



Preface

Thank you for purchasing this machine.

This Operation Guide is intended to help you operate the machine correctly, perform routine maintenance, and take simple troubleshooting measures as needed so that the machine can always be used in the optimum condition.

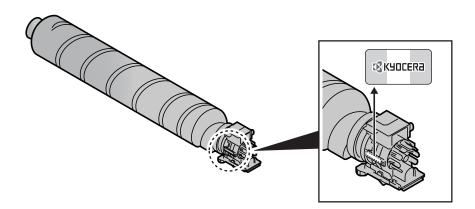
Please read this Operation Guide before using the machine.

We recommend the use of our genuine toner containers, which have passed rigorous quality control testing, to maintain quality.

The use of non-genuine toner containers may cause failure.

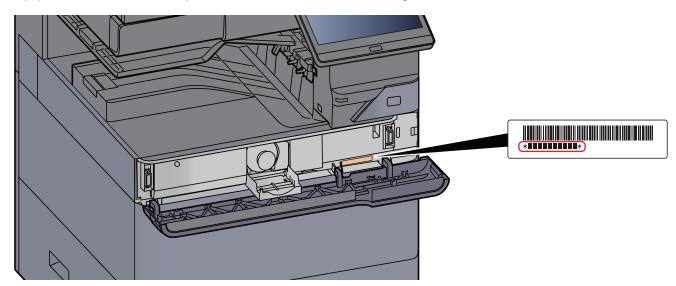
We will not be liable for any damages caused by the use of third party supplies in this machine.

A label is affixed to our genuine supplies, as shown below.



Checking the Equipment's Serial Number

The equipment's serial number is printed in the location shown in the figure.



You'll need the equipment's serial number when contacting your Service Representative. Please check the number before contacting your Service Representative.

Contents

	Ргетасе	
	Contents	
	Overview	
	Machine Features	
	Color and Image Quality Functions	xix
	Basic Color Modes	
	Adjusting Image Quality and Color	xx
	Guides Provided with the Machine	
	About the Operation Guide (this Guide)	xxii
	Structure of the guide	
	Conventions Used in This Guide	xxi\
	Мепи Мар	
1	Legal and Safety Information	1_1
•		
	Notice	
	Safety Conventions in This Guide	
	Environment	
	Precautions for Use	
	Laser Safety (Europe)	
	SAFETY OF LASER BEAM (USA)	
	Safety Instructions Regarding the Disconnection of Power	
	Compliance and Conformity	
	Radio Tag Technology	
	Other precautions (for users in California, the United States)	
	Legal Restriction on Copying/Scanning	
	EN ISO 7779	
	EK1-ITB 2000	
	Wireless Connection (Mexico only)	
	Security Precautions when Using Wireless LAN (If equipped)	
	Limited Use of This Product (If equipped)	
	Legal Information	
	Energy Saving Control Function	
	Automatic 2-Sided Print Function	
	Resource Saving - Paper	
	Environmental benefits of "Power Management"	
	Energy Star (ENERGY STAR®) Program	
	Warranty (the United States and Canada)	1-14
2	Installing and Setting up the Machine	2-1
	Part Names (Machine Exterior)	2-2
	Part Names (Connectors/Interior)	
	Part Names (With Optional Equipments Attached)	
	Connecting the Machine and Other Devices	
	Connecting Cables	
	Connecting LAN Cable	
	Connecting LAN Cable	
	Connecting USB Cable	
	Power On/Off	
	Power On	
	Power Off	
	Using the Operation Panel	
	Operation Panel Keys	
	[Job Separator] indicator	
	Adjusting the Operation Panel Angle	
	Touch Panel	
	Using the Touch Panel	2-13

Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Assigning Functions to Function Keys	2-20
Display of Keys That Cannot Be Set Original Preview Entering Numbers Help Screen Accessibility Functions (Magnifying the View) Login/Logout Login Logout Default Settings of the Machine Setting Date and Time Network Setup Configuring the Wired Network Configuring the Wired Network Setting Wish-Fi Direct Configuring the Fore Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Auto Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Newel (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Installing Software (Windows) Installing Software (Mindows) Uninstalling the Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Mindows Uninstalling Software Uninstalling Sof		Display for Device Information	2-22
Original Preview Entering Numbers Help Screen Accessibility Functions (Magnifying the View) Login/Logout Login Logout Default Settings of the Machine Setting Date and Time Network Setup Configuring the Wired Network Configuring the Wireless Network Setting Wi-Fi Direct Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Ouick Setup Wizard Installing Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling be Software Installing Software in Mode Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Sot on a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stot on a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Display Setting Screen	2-23
Entering Numbers Help Screen Accessibility Functions (Magnifying the View) Login/ Login		Display of Keys That Cannot Be Set	2-24
Help Screen Accessibility Functions (Magnifying the View) Login/Logout Login Logout Default Settings of the Machine Setting Date and Time Network Setup Configuring the Wired Network Configuring the Wireless Network Setting Wi-Fl Direct Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software (Windows) Installing Software (Windows) Uninstalling the Software Setting WNA Driver Setting WNA Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migration for Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Original Preview	2-24
Accessibility Functions (Magnifying the View) Login/Logout Login Logout Default Settings of the Machine Setting Date and Time Network Setup Configuring the Wired Network Configuring the Wireless Network Setting Wi-Fi Direct Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software Installing Software Installing Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Setting the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Socurity Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Cheanging Decuring Settings Rejistering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating Headers Migrating Headers Selecting the Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Entering Numbers	2-26
Accessibility Functions (Magnifying the View) Login/Logout Login Logout Default Settings of the Machine Setting Date and Time Network Setup Configuring the Wired Network Configuring the Wireless Network Setting Wi-Fi Direct Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software Installing Software Installing Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Setting the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Socurity Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Cheanging Decuring Settings Rejistering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating Headers Migrating Headers Selecting the Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Help Screen	2-28
Login Logout Default Settings of the Machine Setting Date and Time Network Setup Configuring the Wireless Network Configuring the Wireless Network Setting Wi-Fi Direct Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Uninstalling Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Mac Computer Setting WIA Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Software Sook Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading In Cassette 1			
Login Logout Default Settings of the Machine Setting Date and Time Network Setup Configuring the Wireless Network Configuring the Wireless Network Setting Wi-Fi Direct Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software (models for Europe) Uninstalling Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Mac Computer Setting WIA Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Software Sook Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Default Settings of the Machine Setting Date and Time Network Setup Configuring the Wired Network Configuring the Wireless Network Setting Wi-Fi Direct Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Auto Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sules Rules Rul			
Default Setting Sof the Machine Setting Date and Time Network Setup Configuring the Wireless Network Setting Wi-Fi Direct Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling the Software Installing Software in Mac Computer Setting WIAD Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading In Cassette 1			
Setting Date and Time Network Setup Configuring the Wired Network Configuring the Wireless Network Setting Wi-Fi Direct Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settlings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Windows Uninstalling to Software (Software Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Setting Mid Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Network Setup Configuring the Wired Network Configuring the Wireless Network Setting Wi-Fi Direct Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Setting MIA Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Configuring the Wireless Network Configuring the Wireless Network Setting Wi-Fi Direct Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling the Software in Mac Computer Setting WIAD Driver Setting WIAD Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Setelcting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		•	
Configuring the Wireless Network Setting Wi-Fi Direct Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling the Software Installing Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Urits Loading in Cassette 1			
Setting Wi-Fi Direct Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Installing Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting WIA Driver Setting WIA Driver Setting Hoe Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Configuring NFC Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Motion Setting WIAD Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Setting the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Capper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Motion Sensor Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Mac Computer Setting TVAIN Driver Setting TVAIN Driver Setting WiA Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Energy Saver function Low Power Mode Sleep Auto Sleep Auto Sleep Alto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Mindows Uninstalling Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Low Power Mode Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Rules (models sexcept for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settlings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Sleep Auto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling Boftware in Mindows Uninstalling Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting WIA Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settlings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Auto Sleep Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling the Software in Windows Uninstalling the Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Sleep Rules (models for Europe) Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling the Software in Mindows Uninstalling Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Setting Wila Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Daper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		·	
Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for Europe) Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Setting WIA Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		•	
Energy Saver Recovery Level Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling the Software (Description of Ministry of Minist			
Weekly Timer Settings Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Mindows Uninstalling Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Setting Wila Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Power Off Timer (models for Europe) Quick Setup Wizard			
Quick Setup Wizard Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Setting WIA Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Installing Software Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling the Software Installing Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting WIA Driver Setting WIA Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		· · ·	
Published Software (Windows) Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Windows Uninstalling Software in Mac Computer Installing Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Setting the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		•	
Installing Software in Windows Uninstalling the Software Installing Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting TWAIN Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Uninstalling the Software Installing Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting WIA Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Published Software (Windows)	2-51
Installing Software in Mac Computer Setting TWAIN Driver Setting WIA Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Installing Software in Windows	2-52
Setting TWAIN Driver Setting WIA Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Uninstalling the Software	2-57
Setting WIA Driver Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Installing Software in Mac Computer	2-58
Checking the Counter Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Setting TWAIN Driver	2-61
Additional Preparations for the Administrator Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book 3 Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Setting WIA Driver	2-63
Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Checking the Counter	2-64
Sending Documents to a PC Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Additional Preparations for the Administrator	2-65
Strengthening the Security Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Accessing Command Center RX Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Accessing Command Center RX Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Changing Security Settings Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Changing Device Information E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
E-mail Settings Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Registering Destinations Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Creating a New Custom Box Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Transferring Data from Our Other Products Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Migrating the Address Book Preparation before Use Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1			
Preparation before Use			
Loading Paper Precaution for Loading Paper Selecting the Paper Feeder Units Loading in Cassette 1		Migrating the Address Book	2-10
Precaution for Loading Paper	3 Pre	•	
Selecting the Paper Feeder UnitsLoading in Cassette 1			
Loading in Cassette 1		Precaution for Loading Paper	3-2
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Selecting the Paper Feeder Units	3-3
Londing in Occasion O		Loading in Cassette 1	3-4
Loading in Cassette 2		Loading in Cassette 2	3-7
Loading Envelopes or Cardstock in the Cassettes		Loading Envelopes or Cardstock in the Cassettes	3-10

		Loading in the Large Capacity Feeder	3-14
		Loading in the Side Feeder	
		Loading in the Inserter	3-18
		Precautions for Outputting Paper	3-19
		Paper Stopper	3-19
		Envelope Stack Guide	3-19
		Stack Level Adjuster	3-20
		Folding Unit (For 4,000-sheet Finisher)	
		Folding Unit (For 100-sheet Staple Finisher)	
		Preparation for Sending a Document to a Shared Folder in a PC	
		Making a Note of the Computer Name and Full Computer Name	
		Making a Note of the User Name and Domain Name	
		Creating a Shared Folder, Making a Note of a Shared Folder	
		Configuring Windows Firewall	
		Scan to Folder Setup Tool for SMB	
		Registering Destinations in the Address Book	
		Adding a Destination (Address Book)	
		Adding a Destination on One Touch Key	
		Adding a Destination on one rodon key	0-40
1	Drinting	from PC	<i>1</i> _1
+	Filling	from PC	
		Printer Driver Print Settings Screen	
		Displaying the Printer Driver Help	
		Changing the Default Printer Driver Settings (Windows 10)	
		Printing from PC	
		Printing on Standard Sized Paper	
		Printing on Non-standard Sized Paper	
		Banner Printing	
		Canceling Printing from a Computer	
		Printing from the Handheld Device	
		Printing by AirPrint	4-16
		Printing by Universal Print	4-16
		Printing by Mopria	4-16
		Printing with Wi-Fi Direct	4-17
		Printing with NFC	
		Printing Data Saved in the Printer	
		Specifying the Job Box from a Computer and Storing the Job	
		Printing Documents from Private Print Box	
		Deleting the Documents Stored in the Private Print Box	
		Printing Document from Stored Job Box	
		Deleting the Documents Stored in the Stored Job Box	
		Printing Document from Quick Copy Box	
		Deleting the Documents Stored in the Quick Copy Box	
		Printing Document from Proof and Hold Box	
		Deleting the Documents Stored in the Proof and Hold Box	
		Monitoring the Printer Status (Status Monitor)	
		Accessing the Status Monitor	
		Exiting the Status Monitor	
		Quick View State	
		Printing Progress Tab	
		Paper Tray Status Tab	
		Toner Status Tab	
		Alert Tab	
		Status Monitor Context Menu	
		Status Monitor Notification Settings	4-26
=	Operation	on on the Machine	E 1
ס	Operation	on on the Machine	
		Loading Originals Placing Originals on the Platen	
		. wong onginal on the rate in atom	. 5-2

Loading Originals in the Document Processor	
Loading Paper in the Multipurpose Tray	
Favorites	5-11
Registering Favorites	5-12
Recalling Favorites	5-12
Editing Favorites	5-13
Deleting Favorites	5-13
Application	5-14
Installing Applications	
Activating Applications	
Deactivating Applications	
Uninstalling Applications	
Registering Shortcuts	0 .0
(Copy, Send, and Document Box Settings)	5-17
Adding Shortcuts	
Editing Shortcuts	
Deleting Shortcuts	
Copying	
Basic Operation	
Proof Copy	
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	
Interrupt Copy	
Canceling Jobs	
Frequently-Used Sending Method	
Sending Document via E-mail	
Configuring Settings before Sending	
Sending Scanned Document via E-mail	
Sending Document to Desired Shared Folder on a Computer (Scan to PC)	
Configuring Settings before Sending	
Sending Document to Desired Shared Folder on a Computer	
Sending Document to Folder on an FTP Server (Scan to FTP)	
Configuring Settings before Sending	5-29
Sending Document to Folder on an FTP Server	
Scanning using TWAIN or WIA	5-31
Configuring Settings before Sending	5-31
Scanning Document Using Application	5-31
Scanning Document stored in a Custom Box	
Configuring Settings before Sending	5-32
Scanning Document Stored in a Box	5-32
Useful Sending Method	
WSD Scan	
Installing the Driver	
Executing WSD scan	
DSM Scan	
Configuring Settings before Sending	
Executing DSM Scan	
Scanning with File Management Utility	
Configuring Settings before Sending	
Using FMU Connection to Scan an Original	
Using MultiCrop Scan	
Configuring Settings before Scanning	
Using MultiCrop Scan to Send/Store an Original	
Sending to Different Types of Destinations (Multi Sending)	
Send to Me (Email)	
Configuring Settings before Sending	
Sending a document to the mail address of the logged in user	
Using a Fax Server to Send (Fax Server Send)	
Canceling Sending Jobs	
Handling Destination	
Specifying Destination	
Choosing from the Address Book	5-48

Choesing from the Search (No.) Checking and Editing Destinations Confirmation Screen of Destinations Recall Re-entering the New Destination Recall Solution How to use the FAX Function Solution Using Document Boxes What is Custom Box? What is Usb Box? What is Usb Drive Box? Fax Box What is Usb Drive Box? Fax Box Basic Operation for Document Box Creating a New Custom Box Editing Custom Box Deleting Custom Box Soloring Documents Box Soloring Documents Box Deleting Custom Box Deleting Custom Box Soloring Documents to a Custom Box Printing Documents in Custom Box Soloring Documents in Custom Box Sending Documents in Custom Box Sending Documents in Custom Box Soloring Documents in Custom Box Copying Documents in Custom Box Soloring Documents in Custom Box Deleting Custom Box Soloring Documents in Custom Box Soloring Solori		Choosing from the One Touch Key	5-50
Confirmation Screen of Destinations Re-antering the New Destination Secall How to use the FAX Function Secall How to use the FAX Function Secall What is Custom Box? What is USB Drive Box? Secan Seca		Choosing from the Search (No.)	5-50
Re-entering the New Destination Recall S- Recall How to use the FAX Function S- Using Document Boxes What is Ustorn Box? What is Job Box? What is Job Box? What is Job Box? S- S- S- What is Job Box? What is Usb Drive Box? Fax Box Basic Operation for Document Box Creating a New Custom Box S- Editing Custom Box S- Deleting Custom Box Soring Documents or Custom Box Soring Documents or Custom Box Sending Documents in Custom Box Copying Documents in Custom Box Copying Documents in Custom Box Into Other Boxes Copying Documents in Custom Box Into Other Boxes Copying Documents in Custom Box Into Other Boxes Soleting Documents in Custom Box Deleting Documents in Custom Box Deleting Documents in Custom Box Deleting Documents in Custom Box Soleting Documents in Custom Box Deleting Documents in Custom Box Soleting Documents in Custom Box Soleting Documents in Custom Box Deleting Documents in Custom Box Soleting Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive Soleting Documents Soleting Infinity Soleting Soletin		Checking and Editing Destinations	5-51
Recall		Confirmation Screen of Destinations	5-52
Recall		Re-entering the New Destination	5-52
How to use the FAX Function S- Using Document Boxes S- What is Custom Box? 5- What is Job Box? 5- What is USB Drive Box? 5- Fax Box 5- Basic Operation for Document Box 5- Editing Custom Box 5- Editing Custom Box 5- Editing Custom Box 5- Storing Documents to a Custom Box 5- Storing Documents to a Custom Box 5- Saving Scanned Documents to a Custom Box 5- Sending Documents in Custom Box 5- Moving Documents in Custom Box 5- Sending Documents in Custom Box 5- Copying Documents in Custom Box 5- Usion Box 5- Copying Documents in Custom Box to E-mail Address of Logged in User 5- Copying Documents in Custom Box to E-mail Address of Logged in User 5- Moving Documents in Custom Box to User Boxe 5- Usion Box 5- Copying Documents in Custom Box to User Boxe 5- John Box 5- Documents in Custom Box User Box 5- John Box 5- Deleting Documents in Custom Box 5- John Box 5- Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs 5- Form for Form Overlay 5- Operating using Removable USB Drive 5- Saving Documents to USB Drive 5- Saving Documents Boxed in Removable USB Drive 5- Saving Documents Boxed in Removable USB Drive 5- Saving Documents Boxed in Removable USB Drive 5- Saving Documents to USB Drive 5- Saving Documents Documents 5- Saving Document		<u> </u>	
Using Document Boxes			
What is Custom Box? 5- What is USB Drive Box? 5- Fax Box 5- Basic Operation for Document Box 5- Creating a New Custom Box 5- Editing Custom Box 5- Deleting Custom Box 5- Storing Documents to a Custom Box 5- Storing Documents in Custom Box 5- Sending Documents in Custom Box 5- Sending Documents in Custom Box 5- Sending Documents in Custom Box to E-mail Address of Logged in User 5- Sending Documents in Custom Box to E-mail Address of Logged in User 5- Acopying Documents in Custom Box to User 5- Copying Documents in Custom Box to Use Drive 5- Copying Documents in Custom Box Uses Drive 5- Joining Documents in Custom Box 5- Joining Documents in Custom Box 5- Jorent or From Overlay 5- Jorent or From Overlay 5- Opperating using Removable USB Drive 5- Printing Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive 5- Saving Documents to USB Drive (Scan to USB)			
What is Job Box? 5- What is USB Drive Box? 5- Fax Box 5- Basic Operation for Document Box 5- Creating a New Custom Box 5- Editing Custom Box 5- Deleting Custom Box 5- Storing Documents in Custom Box 5- Printing Documents in Custom Box 5- Sending Documents in Custom Box 5- Copying Documents in Custom Box to USB Drive 5- Joining Documents in Custom Box 5- Joining Documents in Custom Box 5- Job Box 5- Job Box 5- Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs 5- Form for Form Overlay 5- Printing Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive 5- Printing Documents to USB Drive (Son to USB) 5- Check			
What is USB Drive Box? 5-			
Fax Box Basic Operation for Document Box 5-			
Basic Operation for Document Box Creating a New Custom Box Setting Custom Box Deleting Custom Box Soloning Documents to a Custom Box Soloning Documents in Custom Box Sending			
Creating a New Custom Box			
Editing Custom Box		·	
Deleting Custom Box			
Storing Documents to a Custom Box			
Printing Documents in Custom Box 5- Saving Scanned Documents to a Custom Box 5- Sending Documents in Custom Box 5- Sending Documents in Custom Box 6- Sending Documents in Custom Box 15- Moving Documents in Custom Box 15- Copying Documents in Custom Box to USB Drive 5- Copying Documents in Custom Box to USB Drive 5- Johining Documents in Custom Box 10- Johining Documents in Custom Box 10- Johining Documents in Custom Box 15- Use Box 15- Job Box 15- Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs 5- Form for Form Overlay 5- Form for Form Overlay 5- Form for Form Overlay 15- Operating using Removable USB Drive 15- Saving Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive 15- Saving Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive 15- Check the USB Drive 16- Check the USB Drive 16- Check the USB Drive 16- Launching and Exiting the Browser 15- Launching and Exiting the Browser 15- Launching and Exiting the Browser 15- Manual Staple 5- Manual Staple 5- Manual Staple 6- Functions Available on the Machine 6- Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) 6- Functions Sox (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functions Sox (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functions (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functio			
Saving Scanned Documents to a Custom Box Savending Documents in Custom Box Savending Documents in Custom Box to E-mail Address of Logged in User Savending Documents in Custom Box to E-mail Address of Logged in User Savending Documents in Custom Box into Other Boxes Savending Documents in Custom Box into Other Boxes Savending Documents in Custom Box to USB Drive Savending Documents in Custom Box Savending Documents Savending USB Drive Savending US			
Sending Documents in Custom Box Sending Documents in Custom Box to E-mail Address of Logged in User Sending Documents in Custom Box to E-mail Address of Logged in User Sending Documents in Custom Box to User Boxes Sending Documents in Custom Box to User Boxes Sending Documents in Custom Box to User Boxes Sending Documents in Custom Box Sending Documents Sending Do			
Sending Documents in Custom Box to E-mail Address of Logged in User Moving Documents in Custom Box into Other Boxes 5- Copying Documents in Custom Box into Other Boxes 5- Copying Documents in Custom Box to USB Drive 5- Joining Documents in Custom Box 5- Deleting Documents in Custom Box 5- Deleting Documents in Custom Box 5- Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs 5- Form for Form Overlay 5- Operating using Removable USB Drive 5- Printing Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive 5- Saving Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive 5- Saving Documents to USB Drive (Scan to USB) 5- Check the USB Drive Information 5- Removing USB Drive 5- Using the Internet Browser 5- Using the Internet Browser 5- Using the Browser Screen 5- Manual Staple 5- Manual Staple 6- Functions Available on the Machine Copy Send Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) 6- Functions 6- Functions 6- Paper Selection Mixed Size Originals Original Size 6- Paper Selection Mixed Size Originals Original Contentation 6- Collate/Offset Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 7- Pare Automorphic Versure 7- Pare Automorphic Versure 7- Pare Automorphic Versure 8- Pare Automorphic Versure 8- Pare Automorphic Versure 8- Pare Automorphic			
Moving Documents in Custom Box 5-			
Copying Documents in Custom Box into Other Boxes 5- Copying Documents in Custom Box to USB Drive 5- Joining Documents in Custom Box 5- Deleting Documents in Custom Box 5- Deleting Documents in Custom Box 5- Deleting Documents in Custom Box 5- Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs 5- Form for Form Overlay 5- Operating using Removable USB Drive 5- Printing Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive 5- Saving Documents to USB Drive (Scan to USB) 5- Check the USB Drive Information 5- Removing USB Drive 5- Using the Internet Browser 5- Launching and Exiting the Browser 5- Using the Browser Screen 5- Manual Staple 5- Manual Staple 5- 6 Using Various Functions 6- Functions Available on the Machine 6- Copy 6- Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) 6- USB Drive (Store File, Printing, Send) 6- Original Size 6- Paper Selection 6- Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Contentation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- Paper Output 6- UD Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6- Density 6-			
Copying Documents in Custom Box to USB Drive		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Joining Documents in Custom Box		, , ,	
Deleting Documents in Custom Box 5- Job Box 5- Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs 5- Coutputting Repeat Copy Jobs 5- Form for Form Overlay 5- Operating using Removable USB Drive 5- Printing Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive 5- Saving Documents to USB Drive (Scan to USB) 5- Check the USB Drive Information 5- Removing USB Drive 5- Using the Internet Browser 5- Launching and Exiting the Browser 5- Using the Browser Screen 5- Manual Staple 5- Manual Staple 5- About Functions Available on the Machine 6- Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) 6- USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functions 6- Functions 6- Original Size 6- Original Size 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- Density 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-			
Job Box			
Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs 5- Form for Form Overlay 5- Operating using Removable USB Drive 5- Printing Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive 5- Saving Documents to USB Drive (Scan to USB) 5- Check the USB Drive Information 5- Removing USB Drive 5- Removing USB Drive 5- Using the Internet Browser 5- Launching and Exiting the Browser 5- Using the Browser Screen 5- Using the Browser Screen 5- Manual Staple 5- Functions Available on the Machine 6- Copy 6- Send 6- Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) 6- USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functions 6- Functions 6- Original Size 6- Paper Selection 6- Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Cullate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- Density 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-			
Form for Form Overlay			
Operating using Removable USB Drive 5- Printing Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive 5- Saving Documents to USB Drive (Scan to USB) 5- Check the USB Drive Information 5- Removing USB Drive 5- Using the Internet Browser 5- Launching and Exiting the Browser 5- Using the Browser Screen 5- Manual Staple 5- Manual Staple 5- Functions Available on the Machine 6 Copy 6 Send 6 Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) 6 USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functions 6- Original Size 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Culate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-			
Printing Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive Saving Documents to USB Drive (Scan to USB) Society Saving Documents to USB Drive (Scan to USB) Society S			
Saving Documents to USB Drive (Scan to USB) S-Check the USB Drive Information S-Removing USB Drive S-Removing USB Drive S-Using the Internet Browser S-Launching and Exiting the Browser S-Using the Browser Screen S-Wanual Staple S-Wanual Stapl			
Check the USB Drive Information 5-Removing USB Drive 5-Using the Internet Browser 5-Launching and Exiting the Browser 5-Using the Browser Screen 5-Manual Staple 6-Copy			
Removing USB Drive 5- Using the Internet Browser 5- Launching and Exiting the Browser 5- Using the Browser Screen 5- Using Various Functions 5- Manual Staple 6- Copy		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Using the Internet Browser			
Launching and Exiting the Browser		Removing USB Drive	5-75
Using the Browser Screen		Using the Internet Browser	5-76
Manual Staple 5- 6 Using Various Functions 6- Functions Available on the Machine 6- About Functions Available on the Machine 6- Copy 6- Send 6- Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) 6- USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functions 6- Original Size 6- Paper Selection 6- Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- D Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-		Launching and Exiting the Browser	5-76
6 Using Various Functions 6- Functions Available on the Machine 6- About Functions Available on the Machine 6- Copy 6- Send 6- Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) 6- USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functions 6- Original Size 6- Paper Selection 6- Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-			
Functions Available on the Machine 6 About Functions Available on the Machine 6 Copy 6 Send 6 Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) 6 USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functions 6- Original Size 6- Paper Selection 6- Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-		Manual Staple	5-78
About Functions Available on the Machine 6 Copy 6 Send 6 Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) 6 USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functions 6- Original Size 6- Paper Selection 6- Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-	6 Using Va		
Copy 6 Send 6 Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) 6 USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functions 6- Original Size 6- Paper Selection 6- Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-			
Send 6 Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) 6 USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functions 6- Original Size 6- Paper Selection 6- Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-			
Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) 6 USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functions 6- Original Size 6- Paper Selection 6- Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-			
USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents) 6- Functions 6- Original Size 6- Paper Selection 6- Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-			
Functions 6- Original Size 6- Paper Selection 6- Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Original Size 6- Paper Selection 6- Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Paper Selection 6- Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-			
Mixed Size Originals 6- Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Original Orientation 6- Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-		·	
Fold 6- Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-		<u> </u>	
Collate/Offset 6- Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Staple/Punch 6- Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-			
Paper Output 6- ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-			
ID Card Copy 6- Org. Manual Feed (DP) 6- Density 6-		•	
Org. Manual Feed (DP)6- Density6-			
Density6-		• •	
·		• ,	
Original Image 6-		·	
		Original Image	6-35

	Color Selection	
	Sharpness	6-37
	Background Density Adj. (Background Density Adjustment)	
	Prevent Bleed-thru	
	Contrast	
	Erase Colors	
	Zoom	
	Combine	
	Margin/Centering, Margin, Centering	
	Border Erase, Border Erase/Full Scan	
	Erase Shadowed Areas	
	Booklet	
	Duplex	
	Cover	6-55
	Form Overlay	6-56
	Page #	6-57
	Memo Page	
	Insert Sheets/Chapters	
	Image Repeat	
	Text Stamp	
	Bates Stamp	
	Handwriting Enhancement	
	Continuous Scan	
	Auto Image Rotation	
	Negative Image	
	Mirror Image	
	Job Finish Notice	6-70
	File Name Entry	6-70
	Priority Override	6-71
	Repeat Copy	
	DP Read Action	
	Detect Multi-fed Originals	
	Detect Stapled Originals	
	Skip Blank Page	
	2-sided/Book Original	
	Sending Size	
	Long Original	
	File Format	
	File Separation	
	Scan Resolution	
	Email Subject/Body	6-83
	Send and Print	6-83
	Send and Store	
	FTP Encrypted TX	
	Email Encrypted TX	
	Digital Signature Email	
	File Size Confirmation	
	Delete after Printed	
	Delete after Transmitted	
	Storing Size	
	Encrypted PDF Password	
	JPEG/TIFF Print	
	XPS Fit to Page	6-87
Status/Job	Cancel	7-1
Che	cking Job Status	
	Details of the Status Screens	7-3
	Checking Detailed Information of Jobs	7-8

7

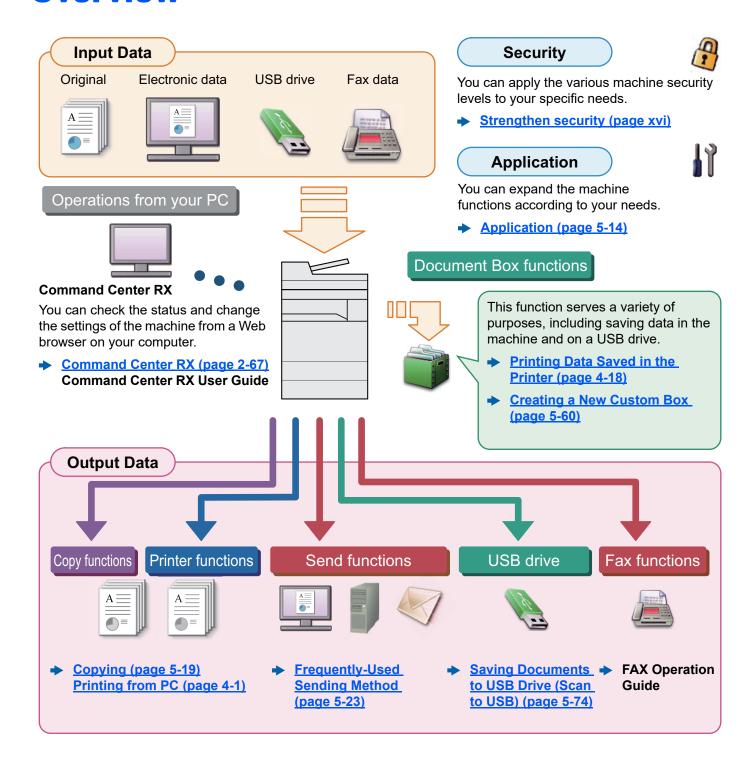
	Checking Job History	7-9
	Checking the Detailed Information of Histories	
	Sending the Log History	7-10
	Job Operation	
	Pause and Resumption of Jobs	
	Canceling of Jobs	
	Priority Override for Waiting Jobs	
	Reordering Print Jobs	
	Device Information	
	Checking the Remaining Amount of Toner and Paper (Supplies/Paper)	
8	Setup and Registration (System Menu)	8-1
	System Menu	
	Operation Method	
	System Menu Settings	
	Device Settings	
	Notification/Report	
	Function Settings	
	Network Settings	
	Security Settings	
	Job Accounting/Authentication	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
	Add/Delete Application	
9	User Authentication and Accounting (User Login, Job Accounting Overview of User Login Administration	
	Managing the Job Account from PC	
	Managing the Users to Use TWAIN for Scanning	
	Managing the Users to Use WIA for Scanning	
	Managing the Users to Send Faxes from a PC	
	Enabling User Login Administration	
	Setting User Login Administration	
	Authentication Security	
	Adding a User (Local User List)	
	Changing User Properties	
	User Login Administration for Printing	0 12
	Managing the Users to Scan Using TWAIN	
	Managing the Users to Scan Using VVAIN	
	Managing the Users that Send Faxes from a PC	
	Local Authorization	
	Server Settings	
	Group Authorization Settings	
	Guest Authorization Settings	
	Obtain NW User Property	
	Simple Login Settings	
	ID Card Settings	
	PIN Login	
	Using User Login Administration	
	Login/Logout	
	Overview of Job Accounting	
	To Manage the Number of Sheets Used on Jobs Printed from a PC	
	Managing the Scan Job Account by Using TWAIN	
	Managing the Scan Job Account by Using WIA	
	Managing the FAX Job Transmitted from a PC	
	Enabling Job Accounting	
	Job Accounting (Local)	
	Adding an Account	
	Restricting the Use of the Machine	9-35

	Editing an Account	9-36
	Deleting an Account	9-37
	Job Accounting for Printing	9-38
	Job Accounting for Scan Using TWAIN	9-39
	Job Accounting for Scan Using WIA	
	Job Accounting for the FAX Transmitted from a Computer	
	Configuring Job Accounting	9-42
	Default Counter Limit	9-42
	Count by Paper Size	9-44
	Counting the Number of Pages Printed	9-45
	Print Accounting Report	9-47
	Using Job Accounting	9-48
	Login/Logout	9-48
	Apply Limit	9-49
	Copier/Printer Count	
	Unknown User Settings	9-51
	Unknown ID Job	9-51
	Registering Information for a User whose ID is Unknown	9-52
10	Troubleshooting	10 1
10	Troubleshooting Regular Maintenance	
	Cleaning	
	Cleaning Glass Platen	
	Cleaning class rateri	
	Cleaning Slit Glass	
	Toner Container Replacement	
	Replace the Waste Toner Box	
	Loading Paper	
	Replacing Staples (Inner Finisher)	
	Replacing Staples (1,000-Sheet Finisher)	
	Replacing Staples (1,000-Sheet Finisher)	
	Replacing Staples (4,000-Sheet Philisher)	
	Replacing Staples (100-sheet Staple Fillisher)	
	Disposing of the Staple Waste	
	Disposing of the Punch Waste	
	1 9	
	Troubleshooting	
	Solving Malfunctions	
	Machine Operation Trouble	
	Printed Image Trouble	
	Remote Operation	
	Responding to Messages	
	Adjustment/Maintenance	
	Overview of Adjustment/Maintenance	
	Tone Curve Adjustment	
	Drum Refresh	
	Calibration	
	Laser Scanner Cleaning	
	Developer Refresh	
	Clearing Paper Jams	
	Jam Location Indicators	
	Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 1	
	Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 2	
	Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 3 and 4 (500-sheet×2)	
	Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 3 (1,500-sheet×2)	
	Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 4 (1,500-sheet×2)	
	Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 5 (Side Feeder)	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Multipurpose Tray	
	Remove any jammed paper in Right Cover 1	
	Remove any jammed paper in Right Cover 2 (500-sheet×2)	10-83

	Remove any jammed paper in Right Cover 2 (1,500-sheet×2)	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Bridge Unit	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Mailbox	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Inner Finisher	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Document Processor (Reverse Automatic)	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Document Processor (Dual Scan)	10-91
	Remove any jammed paper in the Inserter	10-93
	Remove any jammed paper in the Z-fold unit	10-98
	Remove any jammed paper in the 1,000-Sheet Finisher	10-120
	Remove any jammed paper in the 4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Staple Finisher)	
	Remove any jammed paper in the 4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Staple Finish A)	her (Tray
	Remove any jammed paper in the 4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Staple Finish	her (Tray
	B)	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Folding Unit (4,000-sheet Finisher)	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Folding Tray (4,000-sheet Finisher)	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Folding Unit (100-sheet Staple Finisher)	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Folding Tray (100-sheet Staple Finisher) Clearing a Staple Jam	
	Clearing a staple jam of the Inner Finisher	
	Clearing a staple jam of the 1,000-Sheet Finisher	
	Clearing a staple jam of the 4,000-sheet Finisher	
	Clearing a Staple Jam of the 100-sheet Staple Finisher	
	Clearing a Staple Jam of the Folding Unit (4,000-sheet Finisher)	
	Clearing a Staple Jam of the Folding Unit (100-sheet Staple Finisher)	
11 Ap	pendixOptional Equipment	
	Overview of Optional Equipment	
	Applications	
	Character Entry Method	
	Entry Screens	11-10
	Entering Characters	11-12
	Paper	
	Basic Paper Specifications	
	Choosing the Appropriate Paper	
	Special Paper	
	Specifications	
	Machine	
	Copy Functions	
	Printer Functions	
	Scanner Functions	
	Document Processor	
	Paper Feeder (500-sheet×2)	
	Large Capacity Feeder (1,500-sheet×2)	
	Side Feeder (3,000-sheet)	
	Inner Finisher	
	Punch Unit (For Inner Finisher)	
	1,000-sheet Finisher	
	4,000-sheet Finisher	
	·	
	Punch Unit (For 1,000-sheet/4,000-sheet/100-sheet Staple Finisher)	
	Folding Unit (For 4,000-sheet Finisher)	
	Folding Unit (For 100-sheet Staple Finisher)	
	Job Separator Tray	
	Inner Shift Tray	
	Banner Tray	
	•	

Index	ndex-1
Glossary	11-42
Functions List of Security Quick Setup	11-38
Backing up your date using USB Drive	
Backing up your data using Command Center RX	
Backing up your data using KYOCERA Net Viewer	
Backing up your data	
Z Fold Unit	11-36
Inserter Tray	11-35

Overview



NOTE

- Before using the machine, be sure to read the following:
 - ▶ Legal and Safety Information (page 1-1)
- To prepare the device for use, including setting up cable connections and installing software.
 - ▶ Installing and Setting up the Machine (page 2-1)
- To learn how to load paper, set up shared folders, and add addresses to the address book, refer to the following:
 - → Preparation before Use (page 3-1)

Machine Features

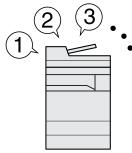
The machine is equipped with many useful functions.

▶ Using Various Functions (page 6-1)

Here are some examples.

Optimize your office workflow

Access to frequently used functions with just one touch (Favorites)

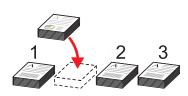


You can preset frequently used functions.

Once you register frequently used settings as favorite, you can call up the settings easily. Using this favorite brings the same results even if operated by another person.

▶ Favorites (page 5-11)

Interrupt other running jobs and execute your copy job immediately (Interrupt Copy)

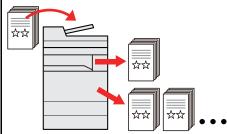


You can interrupt other running jobs and execute your copy job immediately. When other users are copying a large number of sheets, this function allows you to interrupt those jobs and make your copies immediately.

When the interruption copy ends, the machine resumes the paused print jobs.

▶ Interrupt Copy (page 5-22)

Check the finishing before copying a large number of sheets (Proof Copy)



It is possible to copy one sheet before copying a large number of sheets. This enables you to check the contents and finishing and copy the desired number of sheets without scanning the original again if you are satisfied with the result. If you want to make changes, you can change the settings and copy only one sheet again.

▶ Proof Copy (page 5-21)

Optimize your office workflow

Scan originals of different sizes at a time (Mixed Size Originals)





It is useful when preparing conference materials.

You can set the different sized originals at one time so you don't need to reset the originals regardless of size.

 Mixed Size Originals (page 6-22)

Scan a large number of originals in separate batches and produce as one job (Continuous Scan)

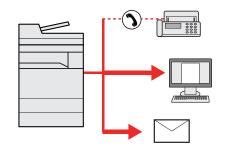


It is useful when preparing manypage handouts.

When a large number of originals cannot be placed in the document processor at one time, the originals can be scanned in separate batches and then copied or sent as one job.

Continuous Scan (page 6-68)

Send one time with multiple sending options (Multi Sending)



You can send a same document to the multiple destinations using a different method.

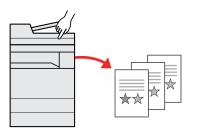
You can specify multiple destinations of different send methods such as Email, SMB, and Fax.

You can reduce your workflow by sending a job at once.

► Sending to Different Types of Destinations (Multi Sending) (page 5-42)

Optimize your office workflow

Save frequently used documents in the machine (Custom Box)



You can save the frequently used document in the machine and print it when needed.

► Creating a New Custom Box (page 5-60)

Recover from low power mode or sleep mode automatically (Motion Sensor)



This model detects that the person is approaching and recover from low power mode or sleep mode automatically.

Reduce waiting time before starting to work.

Motion Sensor (page 2-44)

Save energy and cost

Save energy as needed (Energy Saver function)

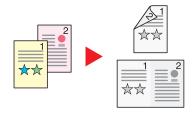


The machine is equipped with Energy Saver function that automatically switched into Low Power Mode or Sleep Mode. You can set appropriate Energy Saver Recovery Level depending on the operation.

In addition, the machine can automatically be switched into Sleep and recovered at a specified time for each day of the week.

► Energy Saver function (page 2-45)

Reduce paper use (Paper Saving Printing)



You can print originals on both sides of the paper. You can also print multiple originals onto one sheet.

→ Favorites (page 5-11)

Skip blank pages when printing (Skip Blank Page)

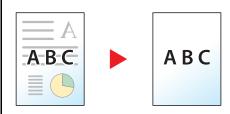


When there are blank pages in a scanned document, this function skips the blank pages and prints only pages that are not blank.

→ Skip Blank Page (page 6-73)

Create attractive documents

Prevent image bleed-through (Prevent Bleed-through)



You can prevent image bleed-through from the reverse side when scanning thin originals.

▶ Prevent Bleed-thru (page 6-38)

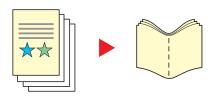
Erase the extra shaded area (Erase Shadowed Areas)



When scanning with the document processor open, erase the extra shaded area.

► Erase Shadowed Areas (page 6-47)

Create a booklet (Booklet)



It is useful when preparing handout. You can create a magazine, pamphlet, or other booklet from sheet originals.

Facing-page, two-sided copies of originals can be folded down the center to create a booklet.

The cover page can be printed onto colored paper or heavy paper.

→ Booklet (page 6-47)

Create attractive documents

Print a stamp on copies (Text Stamp / Bates Stamp)



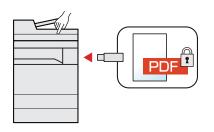
It is useful when adding text or date that is not included in originals.

You can add desired text and date as a stamp.

► Text Stamp (page 6-62)
Bates Stamp (page 6-65)

Strengthen security

Password-protect a PDF file (PDF Encryption Functions)



Use the PDF format's password security options to restrict document viewing, printing and editing.

► Encrypted PDF Password (page 6-87)

Protect data on the hard disk/SSD (Encryption / Overwrite)



You can overwrite the unnecessary data that remains on the hard disk/ SSD automatically.

To prevent an external leakage, the machine is able to encrypt data before writing it to the hard disk/SSD.

▶ Data Security (page 8-73)

Prevent loss of finished documents (Private Print)

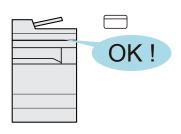


Temporarily saving print jobs in the main unit document box and outputting them when in front of the device can prevent documents from being taken by others.

► Printing Data Saved in the Printer (page 4-18)

Strengthen security

Log in by ID card (Card Authentication)



You can log in simply by touching an ID card. You don't need to enter your user name and password.

★ Card Authentication Kit(B) "Card Authentication Kit" (page 11-6)

Strengthen security (Settings for Administrator)



Various functions are available for administrators to strengthen security.

Strengthening the Security (page 2-65)

Preventing from execution of the unauthorized programs (Allowlisting)

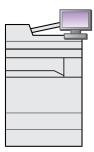


Execution of the unauthorized software or the tampering of the software can be prevented, and possible to maintain the reliability of the system.

→ Allowlisting (page 8-72)

Use functions more efficiently

Expand functions as necessary (Application)



The functionality of the machine can be expanded by installing applications.

Applications that help you perform your daily more efficiently such as a scan feature and an authentication feature are available.

▶ Application (page 5-14)

Display file size before sending / storing a job

(File Size Confirmation)



You can check the file size before sending/storing the document.

If your server specifies an e-mail size limit, you can check and change the size in advance.

► File Size Confirmation (page 6-85)

Install the machine without concerning the network cables (Wireless Network)

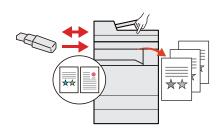


If there is a wireless LAN environment, it is possible to install the unit without worrying about the network wiring. In addition, Wi-Fi Direct, etc. are supported.

- ► Configuring the Wireless
 Network (page 2-35)
- → Setting Wi-Fi Direct (page 2-41)
- Configuring NFC (page 2-43)

Use functions more efficiently

Use USB drive (USB Drive)



It is useful when you need to print documents outside your office or you cannot print documents from your PC.

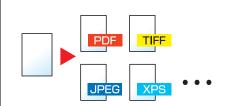
You can print the document from the USB drive by plugging it directly into the machine.

Original scanned at the machine can be saved in the USB drive also.

 Printing Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive (page 5-72) Saving Documents to USB

Drive (Scan to USB) (page 5-74)

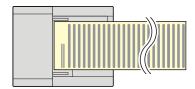
Specify image file format (File Format)



You can select the various file formats when sending/storing images.

→ File Format (page 6-75)

Scan the long originals (Long Original)

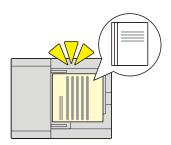


You can scan the long originals such as Contract and Data log.

▶ Long Original (page 6-75)

Use functions more efficiently

Detect the multiple feeding of originals (Detect Multi-fed Originals)

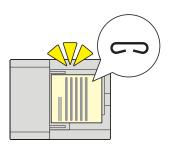


When reading a document from the document processor, if the multiple feeding of documents is detected, then the reading stops automatically.

Detect Multi-fed Originals (page 6-72)

Detect originals fastened with staples

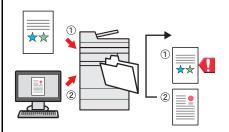
(Detect Stapled Originals)



When reading a document from the document processor, if a stapled document is detected, then the reading stops automatically.

▶ <u>Detect Stapled Originals (page 6-72)</u>

Skip the error job (Job Skip Functions)

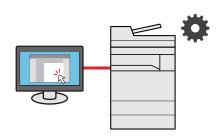


When paper empty error occurs at the cassette by specifying the special paper size or type, the machine skips the error job and perform the next iob

▶ Error Job Skip (page 8-23)

Use functions more efficiently

Perform remote operation (Command Center RX)



You can access to the machine remotely to print, send or download data.

Administrators can configure the machine behavior or management settings.

► Command Center RX (page 2-67)

Color and Image Quality Functions

The machine is equipped with various color and image quality functions. You can adjust the scanned image as desired.

Basic Color Modes

The basic color modes are as follows.

Color mode	Description	Reference image		Reference
Color Illoue		Before	After	page
Color/Gray Color/B & W	Automatically recognizes whether a document being scanned is color or black & white.			6-36
Full Color	Scans a document in full color.			6-36
Grayscale	Scans a document in grayscale.			6-36
Black & White	Scans a document in black & white.		***	6-36

For details, refer to the following:

→ Color Selection (page 6-36)

Adjusting Image Quality and Color

To adjust the image quality or color of an image, use the following functions.

Lucation	Sample	e image	Essentian	Dome			
I want to	Before	After	Function	Page			
Easily adjust the image quality to match your own image							
Remove dark background or bleed-through from the original such as a newspaper.	World News • State Sam • and the state of	World News • The State State The State	Favorites [Newspaper Copy]	5-11			
Clearly reproduce fine lines, faint lines, broken lines, and other fine details in a CAD or other drawings.	711.6 =0 227.4 = 8	716,8 ds 3 277,4 ds 3 5	Favorites [Drawing Copy]	5-11			
Adjust the color precisely.							
Adjust the density.	A <u> </u>	A <u></u>	Density	6-34			
Emphasize or blur the image outline. Example: Emphasize the image outlines			Sharpness	6-37			
Adjust the difference between dark and light parts of the image.			Contrast	6-38			
Darken or lighten the background (the area with no texts or images) of a document. Example: Lightening the background	A ==	A <u></u>	Background Density	6-37			
Prevent bleed-through in 2-sided originals.	ABC	АВС	Prevent Bleed- through	6-38			
Adjust the scanned image							
Decrease the file size and produce the characters clearly.	Сору	Сору	File format [High Comp. PDF]	6-75			
Convert a paper document to PDF with searchable text.	Glossary Accessibility The machine is designed featuri visually impaired. Touch panel c	Glossary Accessibility The machine is designed feature visually impaired. Touch panel of	File format [PDF] or [High Comp. PDF] with [OCR]	6-75			

Guides Provided with the Machine

The following guides are provided with the machine. Refer to each guide as needed.

The contents of the guides are subject to change without notice for the purpose of improvement of machine performance.

Printed guides

Start using the machine quickly

For safe use of the

machine

Quick Guide

Explains how to use basic functions of the machine, how to use convenient features, how to perform routine maintenance, and what to do when problems occur.

Safety Guide

Provides safety and cautionary information for installation environment and use of the machine. Be sure to read this guide before using the machine.

Safety Guide (4004i/5004i/6004i/7004i)

Indicates the space required for machine installation, and describes the cautionary labels and other safety information. Be sure to read this guide before using the machine.

xxi

Guides (PDF) on our website

Use the machine thoughtfully

Operation Guide (This Guide)

 Explains how to load paper and perform copy, print and scan operations, and indicates default settings and other information.

Use the fax functions

FAX Operation Guide

Explains how to use the fax function.

Use the ID card

Card Authentication Kit (B) Operation Guide

Explains how to perform authentication using the ID card.

Strengthen security

Data Encryption/Overwrite Operation Guide

Explains how to introduce and use the Data Encryption/Overwrite Function, and how to overwrite and encrypt data.

Easily register machine information and configure settings

Command Center RX User Guide

Explains how to access the machine from a Web browser on your computer to check and change settings.

Print data from a computer

Printer Driver User Guide

Explains how to install the printer driver and use the printer function.

Directly print a PDF file

KYOCERA Net Direct Print Operation Guide

Explains how to print PDF files without launching Adobe Acrobat or Reader.

Monitor the machine and printers on the network

KYOCERA Net Viewer User Guide

 Explains how to monitor your network printing system (the machine) with KYOCERA Net Viewer.

Scan images and save with information

File Management Utility User Guide

Explains how to use File Management Utility to set various parameters and send and save scanned documents.

Print without using the printer driver

PRESCRIBE Commands Command Reference

Describes the native printer language (PRESCRIBE commands).

PRESCRIBE Commands Technical Reference

Describes the PRESCRIBE command functions and control for each type of emulation.

Adjust the print or scan position

Maintenance Menu User Guide

Maintenance Menu provides the explanation on how to configure the print, scan, and other settings.

Install the following versions of Adobe Reader to view the manuals. Version 8.0 or later

About the Operation Guide (this Guide)

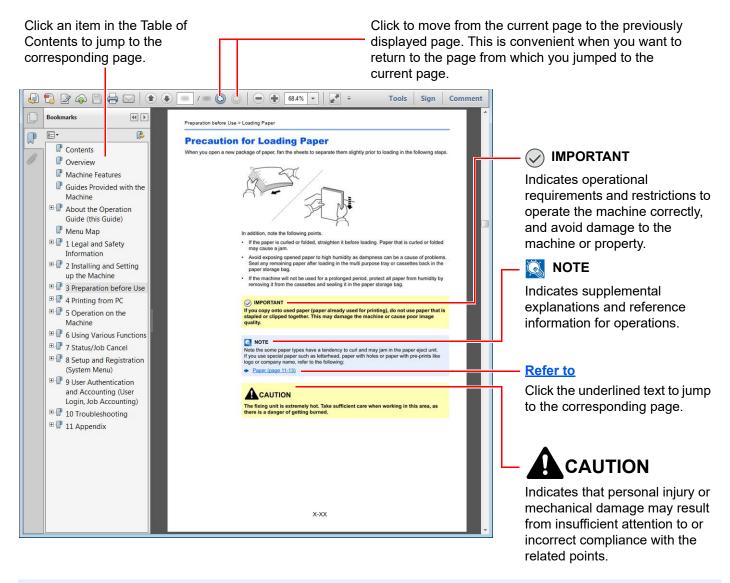
Structure of the guide

The Operation Guide contains the following chapters.

	Chapter	Contents
1	Legal and Safety Information	Provides precautions regarding use of the machine and trademark information.
2	Installing and Setting up the Machine	Explains part names, cable connections, installation of the software, login, logout, and other matters related to administration of the machine.
3	Preparation before Use	Explains preparations and settings that are required in order to use the machine, such as how to load paper and create an address book.
4	Printing from PC	Explains functions that are available when the machine is used as a printer.
5	Operation on the Machine	Explains the basic procedures for using the machine, such as placing originals, making copies, sending documents, and using document boxes.
6	Using Various Functions	Explains convenient functions that are available on the machine.
7	Status/Job Cancel	Explains how to check the status of a job and the job history, and how to cancel jobs being printed or waiting to print. Also explains how to check paper and toner levels, how to check the device status, and how to cancel fax transmission.
8	Setup and Registration (System Menu)	Explains System Menu and how it relates to the operation of the machine.
9	User Authentication and Accounting (User Login, Job Accounting)	Explains user login and job accounting.
10	Troubleshooting	Explains what to do when toner runs out, an error is displayed, or a paper jam or other problem occurs.
11	Appendix	Describes convenient options that are available for the machine. Provides information on media types and paper sizes, and gives a glossary of terms. Explains how to enter characters, and lists the specifications of the machine.

Conventions Used in This Guide

Adobe Reader XI is used as an example in the explanations below.





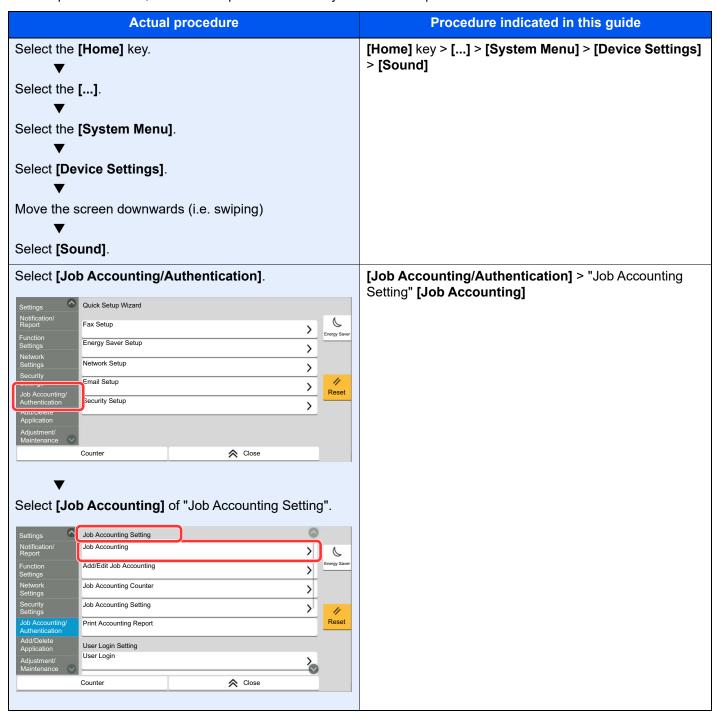
The items that appear in Adobe Reader vary depending on how it is used. If the Table of Contents or tools do not appear, refer to Adobe Reader Help.

Certain items are indicated in this guide by the conventions described below.

Convention	Description	
[Bold]	Indicates keys and buttons.	
"Regular"	Indicates a message or setting.	

Conventions used in procedures for operating the machine

In this Operation Guide, continuous operation of the keys on the touch panel is as follows:



For details on touch panel operation, refer to the following:

→ Using the Touch Panel (page 2-13)

Size and Orientation of Originals and Paper

Original sizes and paper sizes such as A4, B5, and Letter can be used in both the horizontal and vertical orientations. To distinguish the orientations when these sizes are used, "R" is added to sizes used in the horizontal orientation. In addition, the following icons are used to indicate original and paper placement orientations on the touch panel.

Orien	tation	Setting Position (X=Length, Y=Width)	Icons on the touch panel	Indicated size in this Guide [*]
Vertical orientation			Original	A4, B5, Letter .etc
	Paper	Y	Paper	
Horizontal orientation (-R)	Original	Y Original	Original	A4-R, B5-R, Letter-R .etc
	Paper	X	Paner	
		Paper	Paper	

^{*} Original/paper sizes that can be used vary depending on the function and source tray. For details, refer to the following.

[→] Specifications (page 11-21)

Menu Map

This is a list of menus displayed on the touch panel. Depending on the settings, some menus may not be displayed. Some menu names may differ from their reference titles.







Org./Paper/Finishing	Original Size (6-19)		
	Paper Selection (6-20)		
	Mixed Size Originals (6-22)		
	Original Orientation (6-25)		
	Fold (6-26)		
	Collate/Offset (6-28)		
	Staple/Punch	Staple (6-29)	
		Punch (6-31)	
	Paper Output (6-33)		
	ID Card Copy (6-34)		
	Org. Manual Feed (DP) (6-34)		
Layout/Edit	Zoom (6-39)		
	Combine (6-42)		
	Margin/Centering (6-42)		
	Border Erase (6-45)		
	Erase Shadowed Areas (6-47)		
	Booklet (6-47)		
	Duplex (6-52)		
	Cover (6-55)		
	Form Overlay (6-56)		
	Page # (6-57)		
	Memo Page (6-59)		
	Insert Sheets/Chapters (6-60)		
	Image Repeat (6-61)		
	Text Stamp (6-62)		
	Bates Stamp (6-65)		

Image Quality	Density (6-34)
	Original Image (6-35)
	EcoPrint (6-36)
	Sharpness (6-37)
	Background Density Adj. (6-37)
	Prevent Bleed-thru (6-38)
	Contrast (6-38)
	Erase Colors (6-39)
Advanced Setup	Continuous Scan (6-68)
	Auto Image Rotation (6-69)
	Negative Image (6-69)
	Mirror Image (6-69)
	Job Finish Notice (6-70)
	File Name Entry (6-70)
	Priority Override (6-71)
	Repeat Copy (6-71)
	DP Read Action (6-72)
	Detect Multi-fed Originals (6-72)
	Detect Stapled Originals (6-72)
	Skip Blank Page (6-73)
Favorites (5-11)	
Shortcut (5-17)	







Destination	Email (5-24)
	SMB (5-26)
	FTP (5-29)
	Fax (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
	iFax (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
	Fax Server (5-45)
	WSD Scan (5-35)
	DSM Scan (5-37)
	Address Book (5-48)
Org./Sending Data Format	Original Size (6-19)
	Mixed Size Originals (6-22)
	2-sided/Book Original (6-73)
	Sending Size (6-74)
	Original Orientation (6-25)
	Long Original (6-75)
	File Format (6-75)
	File Separation (6-82)
	Org. Manual Feed (DP) (6-34)
Image Quality	Density (6-34)
	Original Image (6-35)
	Scan Resolution (6-82)
	Fax TX Resolution (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
	Color Selection (6-36)
	Sharpness (6-37)
	Background Density Adj. (6-37)
	Prevent Bleed-thru (6-38)
	Contrast (6-38)
	Erase Colors (6-39)

Advanced Setup	Border Erase/Full Scan (6-45)
	Erase Shadowed Areas (6-47)
	Zoom (6-39)
	Job Finish Notice (6-70)
	Fax Delayed Transmission (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
	File Name Entry (6-70)
	Continuous Scan (6-68)
	Email Subject/Body (6-83)
	iFax Subject/Body (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
	Fax Direct Transmission (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
	Centering (6-42)
	Fax Polling RX (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
	Send and Print (6-83)
	Send and Store (6-83)
	FTP Encrypted TX (6-84)
	Email Encrypted TX (6-84)
	Digital Signature to Email (6-84)
	Text Stamp (6-62)
	Bates Stamp (6-65)
	Handwriting Enhancement (6-68)
	File Size Confirmation (6-85)
	Fax TX Report (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
	Detect Multi-fed Originals (6-72)
	Detect Stapled Originals (6-72)
	Skip Blank Page (6-73)
Favorites (5-11)	
Shortcut (5-17)	



Custom Box



Add/Edit (5-60)				
Search (No.) (5-5	Search (No.) (5-56)			
Search (Name) (5-56)				
(Open any box)	Store File	Functions	Original Size (6-19)	
			Mixed Size Originals (6-22)	
			2-sided/Book Original (6-73)	
			Original Orientation (6-25)	
			Storing Size (6-86)	
			Org. Manual Feed (DP) (6-34)	
			Prevent Bleed-thru (6-38)	
			Density (6-34)	
			Original Image (6-35)	
			Scan Resolution (6-82)	
			Color Selection (6-36)	
			Erase Colors (6-39)	
			Sharpness (6-37)	
			Background Density Adj. (6-37)	
			Zoom (6-39)	
		Centering (6-42)		
		Border Erase/Full Scan (6-45)		
			Erase Shadowed Areas (6-47)	
			Continuous Scan (6-68)	
			Job Finish Notice (6-70)	
			File Name Entry (6-70)	
			Detect Multi-fed Originals (6-72)	
			Detect Stapled Originals (6-72)	
			Skip Blank Page (6-73)	
			Contrast (6-38)	
		Favorites (5-11)		
		Shortcut (5-17)		

(Open any box)	Print	Functions	Paper Selection (6-20)	
			Collate/Offset (6-28)	
			Paper Output (6-33)	
			Staple/Punch (6-29)	Staple (6-29)
				Punch (6-31)
			Combine (6-42)	
			Duplex (6-52)	
			Margin/Centering (6-44)	
			Page # (6-57)	
			Fold (6-26)	
			Form Overlay (6-56)	
			Cover (6-55)	
			File Name Entry (6-70)	
			Job Finish Notice (6-70)	
			EcoPrint (6-36)	
			Priority Override (6-71)	
			Delete after Printed (6-85)	
			Zoom (6-39)	
			Booklet (6-47)	
			Text Stamp (6-62)	
			Bates Stamp (6-65)	
		Image Quality	Density (6-34)	
			Original Image (6-35)	
			Sharpness (6-37)	
			Background Density Adj. (6-37)
			Prevent Bleed-thru (6-38)	
			Contrast (6-38)	
		Favorites (5-11)		

(Open any box)	Send	Destination (5-48)		
		Functions	File Format (6-75)	
			Sending Size (6-74)	
			Centering (6-42)	
			Fax TX Resolution (refer to FAX Operation Guide)	
			Job Finish Notice (6-70)	
			Fax Delayed Transmission (refer to FAX Operation Guide)	
			File Name Entry (6-70)	
			Email Subject/Body (6-83)	
			iFax Subject/Body (refer to FAX Operation Guide)	
			Delete after Transmitted (6-86)	
			FTP Encrypted TX (6-84)	
			Email Encrypted TX (6-84)	
			Digital Signature to Email (6-84)	
			Zoom (6-39)	
			File Separation (6-82)	
			Text Stamp (6-62)	
			Bates Stamp (6-65)	
			File Size Confirmation (6-85)	
			Fax TX Report (refer to FAX Operation Guide)	
		Image Quality	Density (6-34)	
			Original Image (6-35)	
			Resolution (6-82)	
			Color Selection (6-36)	
			Sharpness (6-37)	
			Background Density Adj. (6-37)	
			Prevent Bleed-thru (6-38)	
			Contrast (6-38)	
		Favorites (5-11)		

(Open any box)	Others	Join (5-71)
		Move/Copy (5-66)
		Preview (5-58)
		Page Selection (5-56)
		Delete (5-69)
5	Search(Name)	(5-56)
	(5-56)	



Job Box



Private Print/Stored Job (4-19, 4-20)

Quick Copy/Proof and Hold (4-21, 4-22)

Repeat Copy (6-71)

Form for Form Overlay (5-71)



USB Drive



Print	Functions	Paper Selection (6-20)		
		Collate/Offset (6-28)		
		Paper Output (6-33)		
		Staple/Punch (6-29	Staple (6-29)	
			Punch (6-31)	
		Duplex (6-52)		
		Margin (6-44)		
		Job Finish Notice (6-70)		
		EcoPrint (6-36)		
		Priority Override (6-71)		
		Fold (6-26)		
		Text Stamp (6-62)		
		Bates Stamp (6-65)		
		Encrypted PDF Password (6-87	7)	
		JPEG/TIFF Print (6-87)		
		XPS Fit to Page (6-87)	_	

Store File	Functions	Original Size (6-19)	
		Mixed Size Originals (6-22)	
		2-sided/Book Original (6-73)	
		Original Orientation (6-25)	
		Storing Size (6-86)	
		Org. Manual Feed (DP) (6-34)	
		Prevent Bleed-thru (6-38)	
		Density (6-34)	
		Original Image (6-35)	
		Scan Resolution (6-82)	
		Color Selection (6-36)	
		Erase Colors (6-39)	
		Sharpness (6-37)	
		Background Density Adj. (6-37)	
		Zoom (6-39)	
		Centering (6-42)	
		Border Erase/Full Scan (6-45)	
		Erase Shadowed Areas (6-47)	
	Continuous Scan (6-68)		
	File Name Entry (6-70)		
	File Format (6-75)		
	Job Finish Notice (6-70)		
		File Separation (6-82)	
		Text Stamp (6-62)	
		Bates Stamp (6-65)	
		Handwriting Enhancement (6-68)	
		Detect Multi-fed Originals (6-72)	
		Detect Stapled Originals (6-72)	
		Skip Blank Page (6-73)	
		Contrast (6-38)	
		Long Original (6-75)	
Remove USB (5-75)			
USB Info (5-75)			
Delete (5-57)			
 (5-57)			





Printing Jobs	Status (7-3)	
	Log (7-2)	
Sending Jobs	Status (7-5)	
	Scheduled (7-7)	
	Log (7-2)	
Storing Jobs	Status (7-6)	
	Log (7-2)	
Fax Communication Status (refer to FAX Operation Guide)		
Fax Incoming/Outgoing Log (refer to FAX Operation Guide)		





Quick Setup	Fax Setup (2-48)		
Wizard	Energy Saver Setup	(2-48)	
	Network Setup (2-49)		
	Email Setup (2-49)		
	Security Setup (2-49)		
Device Settings	Language/System	Language (8-6)	
	of Units	Measurement (8-6)	
	Keyboard	Keyboard Layout (8-6)	
		Optional Keyboard Type (8-6)	
	Numeric Keypad	Default Display (8-6)	
		Layout (HyPAS Application) (8-6)	
	Date/Time	Date and Time (8-6)	
		Date Format (8-7)	
		Time Zone (8-7)	
	Energy Saver/	Auto Panel Reset (8-7)	
	Timer	Panel Reset Timer (8-7)	
		Low Power Timer (8-7)	
		Sleep Timer (8-7)	
		Sleep Rules (models for Europe) (8-7)	
		Sleep Level (models except for Europe) (8-8)	
		Weekly Timer Settings (8-8)	
		Motion Sensor (8-9)	
		Power Off Timer (models for Europe) (8-8)	
		Power Off Rule (models for Europe) (8-9)	
		Energy Saver Recovery Level (8-9)	
		Interrupt Clear Timer (8-9)	
		Ping Timeout (8-9)	

Device Settings	Display Settings	Display Brightness (8	3-10)
		Default Screen (8-10))
		Wallpaper (2-16)	
		Show Power Off Message (8-10)	
		Quick Setup Registration (Copy) (8-10)	
		Quick Setup Registration (Send) (8-10)	
		Quick Setup Registration (Fax) (refer to FAX Operation Guide)	
		Quick Setup Registration (Storing in Box) (8-10)	
		Quick Setup Registra	ition (Box Print) (8-10)
		Quick Setup Registra	ition (Sending from Box) (8-10)
	Sound	Buzzer (8-11)	
		Fax Speaker Volume	(refer to FAX Operation Guide)
		Fax Monitor Volume ((refer to FAX Operation Guide)
	Original/Scan	Auto Detect Original	Size (8-11)
	Settings	Custom Original Size (8-12)	
		Prevent Light Reflection (8-12)	
		Prevent Original Skewing (8-12)	
	Paper Feeding	Cassette 1 Settings (8-13)	
		Cassette 2 Settings (8-13)	
		Cassette 3 Settings (8-13)	
		Cassette 4 Settings (8-13)	
		Cassette 5 Settings (8-13)
		MP Tray Settings (8-14)	
		Inserter Tray 1 (8-15)	
		Inserter Tray 2 (8-15)	1.
		Custom Paper Settings (8-16)	
		Media Type Setting (8-17)	
		Show Paper Setup Message (8-18)	
		Paper Feed Settings	Default Paper Source (8-18)
		Settings	Paper Selection (8-18)
			Auto Paper Selection (8-18)
			Media for Auto (B&W) (8-18)
			Paper Source for Cover (8-19)
			Separator Paper Source (8-19)
			Special Paper Action (8-19)

Device Settings	Paper Output	Paper Output (8-20)		
		Paper Output	Offset Documents by Job (8-20)	
		Behavior	Offset One Page Documents (8-20)	
	Function Key Assignment (8-21)			
	Operation Assist	Orientation Confirmat	tion (8-21)	
		Preset Limit (8-21)		
		Clear Settings after J	ob Started (8-21)	
	Error Handling	Duplexing Error (8-22	2)	
		Finishing Error (8-22)		
		No Staple Error (8-22)		
		Finished Pages Exceeded (8-22)		
		Punch Waste Full Error (8-22)		
		Paper Mismatch Erro	r (8-22)	
		Wrong Size Paper Lo	paded (8-22)	
		Paper Jam before Sta	aple (8-23)	
		Error Job Skip (8-23)		
		Auto Error Clear (8-23)		
		Continue or Cancel Error Job (8-23)		
		Image Preview at DP	Jam (8-23)	
	Toner Settings	Low Toner Alert (8-24	4)	
		Toner Waste Full Aler	t (8-24)	

Notification/	Printing Report/ List	Status Page (8-25)
Report		Service Status (8-25)
		Network Status (8-25)
		Optional Network Status (8-25)
		Print Accounting Report (9-47)
		Font List (8-26)
		Outgoing Fax Report (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
		Incoming Fax Report (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
		Fax List (Index) (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
		Fax List (No.) (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
		One Touch List (ALL) (8-26)
		One Touch List (Fax) (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
		Fax Box List (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
		Application Status (8-26)
		Configuration List (8-26)
		Data Sanitization Report (8-26)
	Result Report	Send Result Report (8-26)
	Settings	RX Result (refer to FAX Operation Guide
		Job Finish Notice Setting (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
	Device Status	Low Toner Alert (8-24)
	Notification	Toner Waste Full Alert (8-24)
	Message Board Setti	ngs (8-27)
	Fax Communication	Report (refer to FAX Operation Guide)

Notification/	History Settings Sending Log History		Auto Sending (8-28)
Report		History	Destination (8-28)
			Subject (8-28)
			SSFC (8-28)
			Personal Information (8-28)
			Sending Log History (8-28)
		Login History	Login History (8-29)
		Settings	Auto Sending (8-29)
			Destination (8-29)
			Subject (8-29)
			Log Reset (8-29)
		Device Log History Settings	Device Log History (8-30)
			Auto Sending (8-30)
			Destination (8-30)
			Subject (8-30)
		Secure Comm. Error Log	Secure Comm. Error Log (8-31)
			Auto Sending (8-31)
			Destination (8-31)
			Subject (8-31)

Function Settings	Function Defaults	Common	Clear Settings after Job Started (8-33)
			File Name Entry (8-33)
			Border Erase Default (8-33)
			Zoom (8-33)
			System Stamp (Basic Settings) (8-33)
			DP Read Action (8-33)
			Detect Multi-fed Originals (8-34)
			Detect Stapled Originals (8-34)
		Copy/Print	Original Orientation (Copy) (8-34)
			Original Image (Copy) (8-34)
			Background Density Adj. (Copy) (8-34)
			Continuous Scan (Copy) (8-34)
			Prevent Bleed-through (Copy) (8-34)
			Skip Blank Page (Copy) (8-34)
			EcoPrint (8-34)
			Toner Save Level (EcoPrint) (8-34)
			Margin Default (8-35)
			Border Erase (Copy) (8-35)
			Collate/Offset (8-35)
			Auto Image Rotation (Copy) (8-35)
			Repeat Copy (8-35)
			JPEG/TIFF Print (8-35)
			XPS Fit to Page (8-35)
			Reserve Next Priority (8-35)
			Auto Image Rotation Action (8-35)
			Auto % Priority (8-35)
			Paper Size for Small Original (8-35)
			Original Size of Undetected Original (8-36)
			Erase Shadowed Areas (Copy) (8-36)

Function Settings	Function Defaults	Send/Store	Original Orientation (Send/Store) (8-36)
			Color Selection (Send/Store) (8-36)
			Color Type (8-36)
			Scan Resolution (8-36)
			Fax TX Resolution (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
			Org. Image (Send/Store) (8-36)
			Background Density Adj. (Send/Store) (8-36)
			Continuous Scan (Send/Store) (8-36)
			Continuous Scan (Fax) (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
			Prevent Bleed-through (Send/Store) (8-36)
			Border Erase/Full Scan (Send/Store) (8-36)
			Border Erase/Full Scan (Fax) (refer to FAX Operation Guide)
			Skip Blank Page (Send/Store) (8-36)
			File Format (8-36)
			Image Quality (File Format) (8-37)
			High Comp. PDF Image (8-37)
			Color TIFF Compression (8-37)
			PDF/A (8-37)
			OCR Text Recognition Action (8-37)
			OCR Text Recognition (8-37)
			Primary OCR Language (8-37)
			OCR Output Format (8-37)
			File Separation (8-37)
			Email Subject/Body (8-37)
			iFax Subject/Body (8-38)
			Erase Shadowed Areas (Send) (8-38)
			Erase Shadowed Areas (Store) (8-38)

Function Settings	Copy/Print	Quick Setup Registra	tion (Copy) (8-10)	
	Send/Store	Default Screen (8-38)		
		Prevent Mis-	Destination Check before Send (8-39)	
		sending Settings	Entry Check for New Dest. (8-39)	
			Destination Check on Selecting (8-39)	
			New Destination Entry (8-39)	
			Recall Destination (8-39)	
			Broadcast (8-39)	
			Destination History Usage(8-39)	
			Delete Destination History (8-39)	
		Quick Setup Registra	tion (Send) (8-10)	
		Digital Signature	Digital Signature (8-39)	
		to File	Digital Signature Format (8-39)	
			Password Confirmation on Signature Permission (8-39)	
			Password (8-39)	
	Email	Email Settings	SMTP (Email TX) (8-40)	
			SMTP Server Name (8-40)	
			SMTP Port Number (8-40)	
			Sender Address (8-40)	
			SMT Auth and Sender Address (8-40)	
		POP3	POP3 (8-40)	
			Remote Printing (8-40)	
	Sending Job - Folder	FTP Settings (8-40)		
		SMB Settings (8-40)		
	Fax/iFax (refer to FA)	X Operation Guide)		
	WSD	WSD Scan (8-41)		
		WSD Print (8-41)		
	DSM Scan (8-41)			
	Address Book	Add/Edit Machine Ad	·	
		Machine Address Book	Sort (8-42)	
			Narrow Down (8-42)	
			Edit Restriction (8-42)	
		External Address Book (8-42)		
	One Touch I	Address Book Type (<u> </u>	
	One-Touch Key	Add/Edit One Touch	• • •	
	Cond and Farmed (6	Edit Restriction (8-42)	
	Send and Forward (8-42)			
	RX/Forward Rules/Fax Box (refer to FAX Operation Guide)			

Function Settings	S Printer	Emulation (8-47)
		EcoPrint (8-47)
		Toner Save Level (EcoPrint) (8-47)
		Override A4/Letter (8-47)
		Duplex (8-47)
		Copies (8-47)
		Orientation (8-47)
		Form Feed Timeout (8-47)
		LF Action (8-47)
		CR Action (8-48)
		Job Name (8-48)
		User Name (8-48)
		Paper Feed Mode (8-48)
		MP Tray Priority (8-48)
		Auto Cassette Change (8-48)
		Message Banner Print (8-48)
		Wide A4 (8-48)
		Resolution (8-49)
		KIR (8-49)
		Printing Job Terminator (8-49)
		Remote Printing (8-49)
		Direct Printing from Web (8-49)
	Document Box	Custom Box - Add/Edit (5-60)
		Auto File Deletion Time (8-49)
		Quick Setup Registration (Storing in Box) (8-10)
		Quick Setup Registration (Box Print) (8-10)
		Quick Setup Registration (Sending from Box) (8-10)
	Job Box	Quick Copy Job Retention (8-50)
		Repeat Copy Job Retention (8-50)
		Deletion of Job Retention (8-50)
	Fax Memory RX Box	(refer to FAX Operation Guide)

Function Settings	Home	Customize Desktop (2-16)		
		Customize Taskbar (2-16)		
		Wallpaper (2-16)		
	Status	Display Settings (8-51)		
		Job Status/Job Logs Settings (8-51)		
	Internet Browser	Internet Browser (8-51)		
		Browser Environmen	Browser Environment (8-51)	
		Proxy (8-53)		
	Manual Staple (8-52)	Manual Staple (8-52)		
	Remote Services (8-52)			
Network Settings	Network Settings	Host Name (8-53)		
		Proxy (8-53)		
		Wi-Fi Direct Settings	Wi-Fi Direct (8-53)	
			Device Name (8-53)	
			IP Address (8-53)	
			Auto Disconnect (8-54)	
			Persistent Group (8-54)	
			Password (8-54)	
			Frequency band (8-54)	
		Wi-Fi Settings	Wi-Fi (8-54)	
			Setup (8-54)	
			TCP/IP Setting (8-56)	
		Wired Network Settings	TCP/IP Setting (8-58)	
			Others (8-60)	

Network Settings	Network Settings	Protocol Settings	SMTP (Email TX) (8-40)
			POP3 (Email RX) (8-40)
			FTP Client (Transmission) (8-60)
			FTP Server (Reception) (8-60)
			SMB Client (Transmission) (8-60)
			NetBEUI (8-60)
			WSD Scan (8-41)
			WSD Print (8-41)
			iFax (8-60)
			DSM Scan (8-41)
			ThinPrint (8-61)
			LPD (8-61)
			Raw (8-61)
			IPP (8-61)
			IPP over SSL (8-61)
			HTTP (8-62)
			HTTPS (8-62)
			LDAP (8-62)
			SNMPv1/v2c (8-62)
			SNMPv3 (8-62)
			Enhanced WSD (8-62)
			Enhanced WSD over SSL (8-62)
			eSCL (8-62)
			eSCL over SSL (8-63)
			VNC (RFB) (8-63)
			VNC (RFB) over SSL (8-63)
			Enhanced VNC over SSL (8-63)
			REST (8-63)
			REST over SSL (8-64)
			RESTful API Settings (8-64)
		Ping (8-64)	
		Bonjour (8-64)	
		IP Filter (IPv4) (8-65)	
		IP Filter (IPv6) (8-65)	
		IPSec (8-65)	
		Restart Network (8-6	5)

Network Settings	Optional Network	Host Name (8-66)	
		Wireless Network	Connection Status (8-66)
			Setup (8-66)
			TCP/IP Setting (8-67)
			Others (8-67)
		Wired Network Settings Restart Network (8-6	TCP/IP Setting (8-68)
			Others (8-68)
			8)
	Connectivity	Bluetooth Settings (8-69)	
		Fax Server (8-69)	
		NFC (8-69)	
		Remote Operation (8-69)	
	Others	Primary Network (Client) (8-70)	
		Restart Entire Device	e (8-70)

Security Settings	Security Quick Setup (8-70)		
	Interface Block Setting	USB Host (8-71)	
		USB Device (8-71)	
		USB Drive (8-71)	
		Optional Interface 1 ((8-71)
		Optional Interface 2 (8-71)	
		Restart Entire Device	e (8-71)
	Device Security	Unusable Time (refer	r to FAX Operation Guide)
	Settings	Job Status/Job Logs	Settings (8-51)
		Security Level (8-72)	
		Remote Printing (8-7	(2)
		Software Verification (8-72)	
		Administrator Authentication on Firm Update (8-72)	
		Allowlisting (8-72)	
		Data Security	Hard Disk/SSD Initialization (8-73)
			Data Sanitization (8-74)
	System Stamp	Printing Jobs	Text Stamp (8-77)
			Bates Stamp (8-78)
		Sending Jobs	Text Stamp (8-79)
			Bates Stamp (8-80)
		Storing Jobs	Text Stamp (8-81)
			Bates Stamp (8-82)
	Authentication Security	User Account Lockout Settings (9-4)	
		Password Policy Settings (9-5)	
	Unknown User Settings (9-51)		
	Network	SSL (8-83)	
		Network Access (8-83)	

Job Accounting/ Authentication	Job Accounting Setting	Job Accounting (9-33)		
		Add/Edit Job Accounting (9-34)		
		Job Accounting Counter (9-45)		
		Job Accounting	Default Setting (9-49, 9-50)	
		Setting	Default Counter Limit (9-42)	
			Count by Paper Size (9-44)	
		Print Accounting Report (9-47)		
	User Login Setting	User Login (9-3)		
		Add/Edit Local User (9-6)	
		Local Authorization (9	0-16)	
		Obtain NW User Prop	perty (9-23)	
		Group Authorization (9-18)		
		Group List (9-18)		
		Guest Authorization Set. (9-20)		
		Guest Property (9-21)		
		Simple Login (9-25)		
		Simple Login Key (9-26)		
		PIN Login (9-30)		
	Authentication Security	User Account Lockout Settings (9-4)		
		Password Policy Settings (9-5)		
	Unknown User Settings (9-51)			
	ID Card Settings	Keyboard Login (9-28)		
		Additional Authentication (9-29)		
Add/Delete	Application (5-14)	cation (5-14)		
Application	Optional Function (11	on (11-8)		

Adjustment/	Image Adjustment	Density	Copy (8-84)	
Maintenance			Send/Box (8-84)	
			Fax (refer to FAX Operation Guide)	
		Background Density Adj.	Copy (Auto) (8-84)	
			Send/Box (Auto) (8-84)	
		Sharpness Adjustment	Copy (8-84)	
			Send/Box (8-84)	
		Contrast	Copy(8-84)	
			Send/Box (8-84)	
		Auto Color Correction	Auto Color Correction (8-84)	
		Correcting Black Line	es (8-85)	
		Calibration Cycle (8-85)		
		Calibration (8-85)		
		Tone Curve Adjustment (8-85)		
		Developer Refresh (8-85)		
		Auto Drum Refresh (8-85)		
		Drum Refresh (8-86)		
		Laser Scanner Cleaning (8-86)		
	Behavior Adjustment	Silent Mode (8-86)		
		Drum Heater (8-86)		
	Others	Diagnostics	Memory Diagnostics (8-86)	
			Software Verification (8-72)	
		Restart/ Initialization	Restart Network (8-65)	
			Restart Network (Optional Network) (8-68)	
			Restart Entire Device (8-70)	
			Format SSD (8-87)	
			Format SD Card (8-87)	
			System Initialization (8-87)	

1 Legal and Safety Information

Please read this information before using your machine. This chapter provides information on the following topics. Legal Restriction on Copying/Scanning1-9 Energy Saving Control Function 1-13

Warranty (the United States and Canada) 1-14

Notice

Safety Conventions in This Guide

The sections of this guide and parts of the machine marked with symbols are safety warnings meant to protect the user, other individuals and surrounding objects, and ensure correct and safe usage of the machine. The symbols and their meanings are indicated below.



WARNING: Indicates that serious injury or even death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with the related points.



CAUTION: Indicates that personal injury or mechanical damage may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with the related points.

Symbols

The \triangle symbol indicates that the related section includes safety warnings. Specific points of attention are indicated inside the symbol.



... [General warning]



✓ ... [Warning of high temperature]

The \bigcirc symbol indicates that the related section includes information on prohibited actions. Specifics of the prohibited action are indicated inside the symbol.



... [Warning of prohibited action]



... [Disassembly prohibited]

The ● symbol indicates that the related section includes information on actions which must be performed. Specifics of the required action are indicated inside the symbol.



... [Alert of required action]



... [Remove the power plug from the outlet]



... [Always connect the machine to an outlet with a ground connection]

Please contact your service representative to order a replacement if the safety warnings in this Operation Guide are illegible or if the guide itself is missing (fee required).



NOTE

An original which resembles a bank note closely may not be copied properly in some rare cases because this machine is equipped with a counterfeiting prevention function.

Environment

The service environmental conditions are as follows:

Temperature	50 to 90.5 °F (10 to 32.5 °C) (But humidity should be 70% or less when temperature is 90.5 °F (32.5 °C).)
Humidity	10 to 80% (But temperature should be 86 °F (30 °C) or less when humidity is 80%.)

Avoid the following locations when selecting a site for the machine.

- Avoid locations near a window or with exposure to direct sunlight.
- Avoid locations with vibrations.
- Avoid locations with drastic temperature fluctuations.
- · Avoid locations with direct exposure to hot or cold air.
- · Avoid poorly ventilated locations.

If the floor is delicate against casters, when this machine is moved after installation, the floor material may be damaged.

During copying, some ozone is released, but the amount does not cause any ill effect to one's health. If, however, the machine is used over a long period of time in a poorly ventilated room or when making an extremely large number of copies, the smell may become unpleasant. To maintain the appropriate environment for copy work, it is suggested that the room be properly ventilated.

Precautions for Use

Cautions when handling consumables



Do not attempt to incinerate parts which contain toner. Dangerous sparks may cause burns.

Keep parts which contain toner out of the reach of children.

If toner happens to spill from parts which contain toner, avoid inhalation and ingestion, as well as contact with your eyes and skin.

- If you do happen to inhale toner, move to a place with fresh air and gargle thoroughly with a large amount of water. If coughing develops, contact a physician.
- If you do happen to ingest toner, rinse your mouth with water and drink 1 or 2 cups of water to dilute the contents of your stomach. If necessary, contact a physician.
- If you do happen to get toner in your eyes, flush them thoroughly with water. If there is any remaining tenderness, contact a physician.
- If toner does happen to get on your skin, wash with soap and water.

Do not attempt to force open or destroy parts which contain toner.

Other precautions

Return the exhausted toner container and waste toner box to your dealer or service representative. The collected toner container and waste toner box will be recycled or disposed in accordance with the relevant regulations.

Store the machine while avoiding exposure to direct sunlight.

Store the machine in a place where the temperature stays below 40 °C while avoiding sharp changes of temperature and humidity.

If the machine will not be used for an extended period of time, remove the paper from the cassette and the Multipurpose (MP) Tray, return it to its original package and reseal it.

Laser Safety (Europe)

Laser radiation could be hazardous to the human body. For this reason, laser radiation emitted inside this machine is hermetically sealed within the protective housing and external cover. In the normal operation of the product by user, no radiation can leak from the machine.

This machine is classified as Class 1 laser product under IEC/EN 60825-1:2014.

Caution: Performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

These labels are attached to the laser scanner unit inside the machine and are not in a user access area.

警告 该产品为38类激光产品、打开盖子后会有激光辐射、请避免光束照射。 | 경고 CLASS 3B 가시 레이저광선을 직접 보지마십시오.
警告 該産品為38類電射産品・打開蓋子後會有雷射輻射・請避免光束照射。 | 警告 こで順くとフラス38のレーザ放射が出る。 ピームの被はくを避けること。
CAUTION CLASS 3B LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.
WARNUNG LASERSTRAHLUNG KLASSE 3B, WENN ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET NICHT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.
AVERTISSEMENT CLASSE 3B RAYONNEMENT LASER EN CAS D'OUVERTURE. EXPOSITION DANGEREUSE AU FAISCEAU.
CLASSE 3B RAYONNEMENT LASER EN CAS D'OUVERTURE. EXPOSITION DANGEREUSE AU FAISCEAU.
CLASSE 3B LASER RADIAZIONE IN CASO DI APERTURA. EVITARE L'ESPOSIZIONE AL FASCIO.
ADVERTENCIA CLASSE 3B QUANDO ABERTO EVITAR EXPOSIÇÃO DIRETA NO FEIXE.
CLASE 3B RADIAZIONE LASER CUANDO SE ABRE. EVITAR EXPONERSE AL RAYO.

Regarding CLASS 1 laser products, information is provided on the rating label.

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
KLASSE 1 LASER PRODUKT

SAFETY OF LASER BEAM (USA)

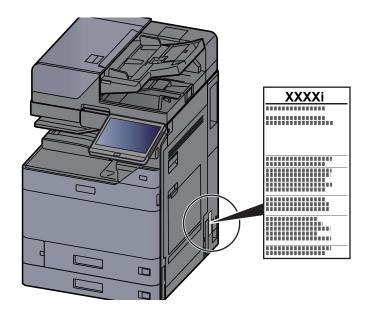
1. Safety of laser beam

This machine has been certified by the manufacturer to Class 1 level under the radiation performance standards established by the U.S.DHHS (Department of Health and Human Services) in 1968. This indicates that the product is safe to use during normal operation and maintenance. The laser optical system, enclosed in a protective housing and sealed within the external covers, never permits the laser beam to escape.

2. The CDRH Act

A laser-product-related act was implemented on Aug. 2, 1976, by the Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA). This act prohibits the sale of laser products in the U.S. without certification, and applies to laser products manufactured after Aug. 1, 1976. The label shown below indicates compliance with the CDRH regulations and must be attached to laser products marketed in the United States.

The position of the rating label is show below.



3. Optical unit

When checking the optical unit, avoid direct exposure to the laser beam, which is invisible. Shown at below is the label located on the cover of the optical unit.

警告 该产品为88类激光产品. 打开盖子后会有激光辐射、请避免光束照射。 | 경고 CLASS 3B 가시 레이저광선을 직접 보지마십시오.
警告 該産品為88類電射產品・打開蓋子後會有雷射輻射、請避免光束照射。 | 警告 ここを開くとクラス38のレーザ放射が出る。 ビームの被ばくを避けること。
CAUTION CLASS 3B LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN、AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.
AVARNING LASERSTRAHLIUM KLASSE 3B, WENN ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET NICHT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.
AVVERTIMENTO CLASSE 3B RAYONNEMENT LASER EN CAS D'OUVERTURE. EXPOSITION DANGEREUSE AU FAISCEAU.
AVIGITUS RADIAÇÃO DE LASER CLASSE 3B QUANDO ABERTO EVITAR EXPOSIÇÃO DIRETA NO FEIXE.
CLASE 3B RADIACIONE LASER CLASSE 3B QUANDO ABERTO EVITAR EXPONERSE AL RAYO.

4. Maintenance

For safety of the service personnel, follow the maintenance instructions in the other section of this manual.

5. Safety switch

The power to the laser unit is cut off when the front cover is opened.

Safety Instructions Regarding the Disconnection of Power

Caution: The power plug is the main isolation device! Other switches on the equipment are only functional switches and are not suitable for isolating the equipment from the power source.

Attention: Le débranchement de la fiche secteur est le seul moyen de mettre l'appareil hors tension. Les interrupteurs sur l'appareil ne sont que des interrupteurs de fonctionnement: ils ne mettent pas l'appareil hors tension.

Compliance and Conformity

Hereby, KYOCERA Document Solutions Inc. declares that the radio equipment type 4004i, 5004i, 6004i, 7004i are in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: https://www.kyoceradocumentsolutions.eu/index/service/dlc.html

Module name, Option	Software Ver.	Frequency band in which the radio equipment operates:	Maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band in which the radio equipment operates:
IB-51 (option)	2.2.6	2.4GHz	100mW
IB-37 (option)	1.0	2.4GHz	100mW
		5GHz	50mW - 1W
IB-38 (option)	1.0	2.4GHz	100mW
Transmitter Module(SRD)	2005.11	13.56MHz	0.2nW

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 and Part 18 of the FCC Rules.

These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.
- The use of a non-shielded interface cable with the referenced device is prohibited.

FCC Caution: Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

IMPORTANT NOTE:

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 and Part 18 of the FCC Rules.

*Only when ZF-7100 is installed to this equipment.

These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Industry Canada statement:

This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s) / receiver(s) that complies with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS (s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause interference.
- (2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The antenna(s) used for this transmitter must be installed to provide a separation distance of at least 20 cm from all persons and must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other transmitter.

Industry Canada ICES-003 Compliance Label: CAN ICES-3B/NMB-3B

- * This machine complies with CAN ICES-3 A/NMB-3 A only when ZF-7100 is installed.
- * The above statements are valid only in the United States of America and Canada.

Warning — Operation of this equipment in a residential environment could cause radio interference.(Only when ZF-7100 is installed.)

* The above statements are valid only in the EU Countries.

NOTE — Use shielded interface cables.

Caution:

The device for operation in the band 5150-5250 MHz is only for indoor use to reduce the potential for harmful interference to co-channel mobile satellite systems;

Operations in the 5.25-5.35GHz band are restricted to indoor usage only.

Radiation Exposure Statement:

This equipment complies with Canada radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance 20cm between the radiator & your body.

* These above statements are valid in the United States of America, Canada and EU.

For Singapore (IB-37)

Complies with IMDA Standards DB01846

For Brazil

IB-37 e IB-38



18780-20-09076

Para maiores informações, consulte o site da ANATEL www.anatel.gov.br

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

For Paraguay

IB-37 IB-38



NR: 2021-01-I-0031 NR: 2021-01-I-0032

Radio Tag Technology

In some countries the radio tag technology used in this equipment to identify the toner container may be subject to authorization and the use of this equipment may consequently be restricted.

Other precautions (for users in California, the United States)

Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Legal Restriction on Copying/Scanning

It may be prohibited to copy/scan copyrighted material without permission of the copyright owner.

Copying/Scanning the following items is prohibited and may be penalized by low. It may not be limited to these items. Do not knowingly copy/scan the items that are not to be copied/scanned.

- · Paper money
- · Bank note
- Securities
- Stamp
- Passport
- · Certificate

Local laws and regulations may prohibit or restrict copying/scanning of other items not mentioned above.

EN ISO 7779

Maschinenlärminformations-Verordnung 3. GPSGV, 06.01.2004: Der höchste Schalldruckpegel beträgt 70 dB (A) oder weniger gemäß EN ISO 7779.

EK1-ITB 2000

Das Gerät ist nicht für die Benutzung im unmittelbaren Gesichtsfeld am Bildschirmarbeitsplatz vorgesehen. Um störende Reflexionen am Bildschirmarbeitsplatz zu vermeiden, darf dieses Produkt nicht im unmittelbaren Gesichtsfeld platziert werden.

Wireless Connection (Mexico only)

The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) it is possible that this equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes dos condiciones:

(1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause interferencia perjudicial y (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar su operación no deseada.

Security Precautions when Using Wireless LAN (If equipped)

Wireless LAN allows information to be exchanged between wireless access points instead of using a network cable, which offers the advantage that a WLAN connection can be established freely within an area in which radio waves can be transmitted.

On the other hand, the following problems may occur if security settings are not configured, because radio waves can pass through obstacles (including walls) and reach everywhere within a certain area.

Secretly Viewing Communication Contents

A third person with malicious objectives may intentionally monitor radio waves and gain unauthorized access to the following communication contents.

- · Personal information including ID, passwords, and credit card numbers
- Contents of email messages

Illegal Intrusion

A third party with malicious intent may gain unauthorized access to personal or company networks and conduct the following illegal actions.

- Extracting personal and confidential information (information leak)
- Entering into communication while impersonating a specific person and distributing unauthorized information (spoofing)
- Modifying and retransmitting intercepted communications (falsification)
- Transmitting computer viruses and destroying data and systems (destruction)

Wireless LAN cards and wireless access points contain built-in security mechanisms to address these problems and to reduce the possibility of these problems occurring by configuring the security settings of wireless LAN products when the product is used.

We recommend that customers take responsibility and use their judgment when configuring the security settings and that they ensure that they fully understand the problems that can occur when the product is used without configuring the security settings.

Limited Use of This Product (If equipped)

- Radio waves transmitted from this product may affect medical equipment. When using this product in a medical institution or in the vicinity of medical instruments, either use this product according to the instructions and precautions provided by the administrator of the institution or those provided on the medical instruments.
- Radio waves transmitted from this product may affect automatic control equipment including automatic doors and fire
 alarms. When using this product in the vicinity of the automatic control equipment, use this product according to the
 instructions and precautions provided on the automatic control equipment.
- If this product is used in devices that are directly related to service including airplanes, trains, ships, and automobiles or this product is used in applications requiring high reliability and safety to function and in devices requiring accuracy including those used in disaster prevention and crime prevention and those used for various safety purposes, please use this product after considering the safety design of the entire system including adoption of a failsafe design and redundancy design for reliability and safety maintenance of the entire system. This product is not intended for use in applications requiring high reliability and safety including aerospace instruments, trunk communication equipment, nuclear power control equipment, and medical equipment; hence, the decision as to whether to use this product in these applications needs to be fully considered and determined.

Sólo México (Mexico only)

Este equipo utiliza el módulo de interfaz de red inalámbrica modelo IB-37 (DHUA-K77-7) / IB-38 (DHUA-K77-8) para conectarse a las redes Inalámbricas.

Legal Information

Copying or other reproduction of all or part of this guide without the prior written consent of KYOCERA Document Solutions Inc. is prohibited.

Regarding Trade Names

- · PRESCRIBE is registered trademark of Kyocera Corporation.
- · KPDL is a trademark of Kyocera Corporation.
- Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, Internet Explorer, Excel and PowerPoint are registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and/or other countries.
- · PCL is a trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.
- · Adobe Acrobat, Adobe Reader and PostScript are trademarks of Adobe Systems, Incorporated.
- Ethernet is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.
- IBM and IBM PC/AT are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.
- AppleTalk, Bonjour, Macintosh, and Mac OS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- All European language fonts installed in this machine are used under licensing agreement with Monotype Imaging Inc.
- Helvetica, Palatino and Times are registered trademarks of Linotype GmbH.
- ITC Avant Garde Gothic, ITC Bookman, ITC ZapfChancery and ITC ZapfDingbats are registered trademarks of International Typeface Corporation.
- ThinPrint is a trademark of Cortado AG in Germany and other countries.
- UFST™ MicroType® fonts by Monotype Imaging Inc. are installed in this machine.
- · iPad, iPhone and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- AirPrint and the AirPrint logo are trademarks of Apple Inc.
- iOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and is used under license by Apple Inc.
- Google is trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Google LLC.
- Mopria[™] is registered trademarks of Mopria[™] Alliance.
- Wi-Fi, Wi-Fi Direct and Wi-Fi Protected Setup are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance.
- Powered by ABBYY FineReader.
 ABBYY and FineReader are trademarks of ABBYY Software Ltd.
- RealVNC, VNC and RFB are registered trademarks of RealVNC Ltd. in the U.S. and in other countries.

All other brands and product names are registered trademarks or trademarks of their respective companies. The designations ™ and ® will not be used in this Operation Guide.

Monotype Imaging License Agreement

- 1 *Software* shall mean the digitally encoded, machine readable, scalable outline data as encoded in a special format as well as the UFST Software.
- You agree to accept a non-exclusive license to use the Software to reproduce and display weights, styles and versions of letters, numerals, characters and symbols (*Typefaces*) solely for your own customary business or personal purposes at the address stated on the registration card you return to Monotype Imaging. Under the terms of this License Agreement, you have the right to use the Fonts on up to three printers. If you need to have access to the fonts on more than three printers, you need to acquire a multiuser license agreement which can be obtained from Monotype Imaging. Monotype Imaging retains all rights, title and interest to the Software and Typefaces and no rights are granted to you other than a License to use the Software on the terms expressly set forth in this Agreement.
- 3 To protect proprietary rights of Monotype Imaging, you agree to maintain the Software and other proprietary information concerning the Typefaces in strict confidence and to establish reasonable procedures regulating access to and use of the Software and Typefaces.
- 4 You agree not to duplicate or copy the Software or Typefaces, except that you may make one backup copy. You agree that any such copy shall contain the same proprietary notices as those appearing on the original.
- 5 This License shall continue until the last use of the Software and Typefaces, unless sooner terminated. This License may be terminated by Monotype Imaging if you fail to comply with the terms of this License and such failure is not remedied within thirty (30) days after notice from Monotype Imaging. When this License expires or is terminated, you shall either return to Monotype Imaging or destroy all copies of the Software and Typefaces and documentation as requested.
- 6 You agree that you will not modify, alter, disassemble, decrypt, reverse engineer or decompile the Software.
- 7 Monotype Imaging warrants that for ninety (90) days after delivery, the Software will perform in accordance with Monotype Imaging-published specifications, and the diskette will be free from defects in material and workmanship. Monotype Imaging does not warrant that the Software is free from all bugs, errors and omissions.
 - The parties agree that all other warranties, expressed or implied, including warranties of fitness for a particular purpose and merchantability, are excluded.
- 8 Your exclusive remedy and the sole liability of Monotype Imaging in connection with the Software and Typefaces is repair or replacement of defective parts, upon their return to Monotype Imaging.
 - In no event will Monotype Imaging be liable for lost profits, lost data, or any other incidental or consequential damages, or any damages caused by abuse or misapplication of the Software and Typefaces.
- 9 Massachusetts U.S.A. law governs this Agreement.
- 10 You shall not sublicense, sell, lease, or otherwise transfer the Software and/or Typefaces without the prior written consent of Monotype Imaging.
- 11 Use, duplication or disclosure by the Government is subject to restrictions as set forth in the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at FAR 252-227-7013, subdivision (b)(3)(ii) or subparagraph (c)(1)(ii), as appropriate. Further use, duplication or disclosure is subject to restrictions applicable to restricted rights software as set forth in FAR 52.227-19 (c)(2).
- 12 You acknowledge that you have read this Agreement, understand it, and agree to be bound by its terms and conditions. Neither party shall be bound by any statement or representation not contained in this Agreement. No change in this Agreement is effective unless written and signed by properly authorized representatives of each party. By opening this diskette package, you agree to accept the terms and conditions of this Agreement.

Open Source Software License

For the "Open Source Software license", go into the following URL and select Country > Product Name > OS > Language and then, refer to the "OSS_Notice" from the manual tab in the "Download". https://kyocera.info/

Energy Saving Control Function

The device comes equipped with a Low Power Mode where energy consumption is reduced after a certain amount of time elapses since the device was last used, as well as a Sleep where printer and fax functions remain in a waiting state but power consumption is still reduced to a minimum when there is no activity with the device within a set amount of time.

- → Sleep (page 2-46)
- ▶ Power Off Timer (models for Europe) (page 2-47)

Automatic 2-Sided Print Function

This device includes 2-sided printing as a standard function. For example, by printing two 1-sided originals onto a single sheet of paper as a 2-sided print, it is possible to lower the amount of paper used.

→ Duplex (page 6-52)

Printing in duplex mode reduces paper consumption and contributes to the conservation of forest resources. Duplex mode also reduces the amount of paper that must be purchased, and thereby reduces cost. It is recommended that machines capable of duplex printing be set to use duplex mode by default.

Resource Saving - Paper

For the preservation and sustainable use of forest resources, it is recommended that recycled as well as virgin paper certified under environmental stewardship initiatives or carrying recognised ecolabels, which meet EN 12281:2002* or an equivalent quality standard, be used.

This machine also supports printing on 64 g/m² paper. Using such paper containing less raw materials can lead to further saving of forest resources.

* : EN12281:2002 "Printing and business paper - Requirements for copy paper for dry toner imaging processes"

Your sales or service representative can provide information about recommended paper types.

Environmental benefits of "Power Management"

To reduce power consumption when idle, this machine is equipped with a power management function that automatically activates energy-saving mode when the machine is idle for a certain period of time. Although it takes the machine a slight amount of time to return to READY mode when in energy-saving mode, a significant reduction in energy consumption is possible. It is recommended that the machine be used with the activation time for energy-saving mode set to the default setting.

Energy Star (ENERGY STAR®) Program



We participate in the ENERGY STAR® Program.

We provide the products complied with ENERGY STAR® to the market.

ENERGY STAR[®] is an energy efficiency program with the goal of developing and promoting the use of products with high energy efficiency in order to help prevent global warming. By purchasing the products complied with ENERGY STAR[®], customers can help reduce emissions of greenhouse gases during product use and cut energy-related costs.

Warranty (the United States and Canada)

4004i/5004i/6004i/7004i COLOR MULTIFUNCTIONAL PRODUCT LIMITED WARRANTY

KYOCERA Document Solutions America, Inc. and KYOCERA Document Solutions Canada, Ltd. (both referred to as "KYOCERA") warrant the Customer's new Color Multifunctional Product (referred to as "MFP"), and the new accessories installed with the initial installation of the MFP, against any defects in material and workmanship for a period of one year, or 600,000 copies/prints from date of installation, whichever first occurs. In the event the MFP or an accessory is found to be defective within the warranty period, KYOCERA's only obligation and the Customer's exclusive remedy shall be replacement of any defective parts. KYOCERA shall have no obligation to furnish labor.

This warranty is valid only for the original retail purchaser (referred to as the "Customer") of a new KYOCERA MFP in the United States of America or Canada, based upon the country of purchase.

In order to obtain performance of this warranty, the Customer must immediately notify the Authorized KYOCERA Dealer from whom the product was purchased. If the KYOCERA Dealer is not able to provide service, write to KYOCERA at the address below for the name and address of the Authorized KYOCERA Dealer in your area, or check KYOCERA's website at www.kyoceradocumentsolutions.com/us for KYOCERA Document Solutions Canada, Ltd.

This warranty does not cover MFPs or accessories which: (a) have become damaged due to operator negligence, misuse, accidents, improper storage or unusual physical or electrical stress, (b) have used parts or supplies which are not genuine KYOCERA brand parts or supplies, (c) have been installed or serviced by a technician not employed by KYOCERA or an Authorized KYOCERA Dealer, or (d) have had the serial number modified, altered, or removed.

This warranty gives the Customer specific legal rights. The Customer may also have other rights, which vary from state to state, or province to province. Neither the seller, nor any other person, is authorized to extend the time period or expand this warranty on behalf of KYOCERA.

THIS WARRANTY IS MADE IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, AND KYOCERA SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THIS WARRANTY SHALL NOT EXTEND TO, AND KYOCERA SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR, ANY INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHICH MAY ARISE OUT OF THE USE OF, OR INABILITY TO USE, THE MFP.

KYOCERA Document Solutions America, Inc.

225 Sand Road, Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008, USA **KYOCERA Document Solutions Canada, Ltd.**

6120 Kestrel Rd., Mississauga, ON L5T 1S8, Canada

2 Installing and Setting up the Machine

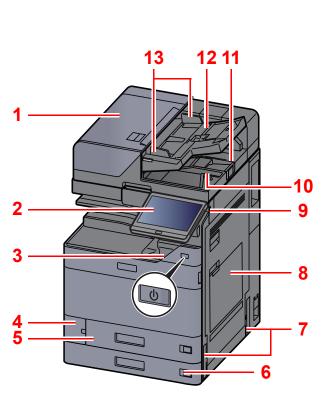
This chapter provides information for the administrator of this machine, such as part names, cable connection, and software installation.

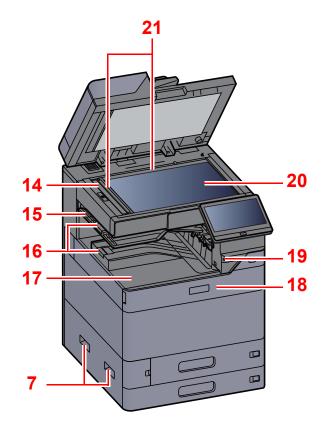
2-4
2-5
2-7
2-8
2-8
2-9
2-9
. 2-10
. 2-10
. 2-10
2-11
2-11
2-11
2-12
. 2-13
. 2-13
. 2-15
. 2-20
. 2-22
. 2-23
2-24
. 2-24
. 2-26
. 2-28
. 2-29
. 2-30
. 2-30
. 2-31
. 2-32
. 2-32
. 2-33
. 2-33
. 2-35
. 2-41
. 2-43
. 2-44
. 2-45
. 2-45
. 2-46
. 2-46
. 2-46
. 2-47

Part Names (Machine Exterior) 2-2

Energy Saver Recovery Level	2-47
Weekly Timer Settings	
Power Off Timer (models for Europe)	2-47
Quick Setup Wizard	2-48
Installing Software	
Published Software (Windows)	2-51
Installing Software in Windows	
Uninstalling the Software	
Installing Software in Mac	
Computer	2-58
Setting TWAIN Driver	2-61
Setting WIA Driver	2-63
Checking the Counter	2-64
Additional Preparations for the	
Administrator	
Sending Documents to a PC	2-65
Strengthening the Security	2-65
Command Center RX	2-67
Accessing Command Center RX	2-68
Changing Security Settings	2-69
Changing Device Information	2-70
E-mail Settings	2-71
Registering Destinations	2-75
Creating a New Custom Box	2-76
Printing a Document Stored in a	
Custom Box	2-77
Transferring Data from Our Other	
Products	
Migrating the Address Book	2-78

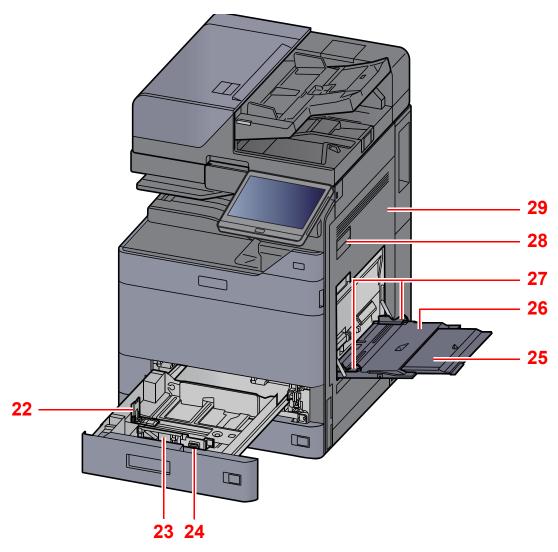
Part Names (Machine Exterior)





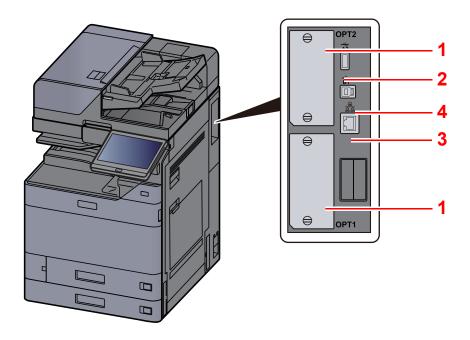
- 1 Document Processor
- 2 Operation Panel
- 3 Power Switch
- 4 Waste Toner Box Cover
- 5 Cassette 1
- 6 Cassette 2
- 7 Handles
- 8 Multipurpose Tray
- 9 USB Memory Slot
- 10 Original Eject Table
- 11 Original Stopper

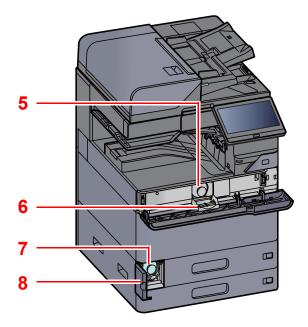
- 12 Original Table
- 13 Original Width Guides
- 14 Slit Glass
- 15 Job Separator Tray
- 16 Paper Stopper
- 17 Inner Tray
- 18 Front Cover
- 19 Motion Sensor
- 20 Platen
- 21 Original Size Indicator Plates



- 22 Paper Length Guide
- 23 Paper Width Guide
- 24 Paper Width Adjusting Tab
- 25 Support Tray Section of the Multipurpose Tray
- 26 Multipurpose Tray
- 27 Paper Width Guide
- 28 Right Cover 1 Lever
- 29 Right Cover 1

Part Names (Connectors/Interior)

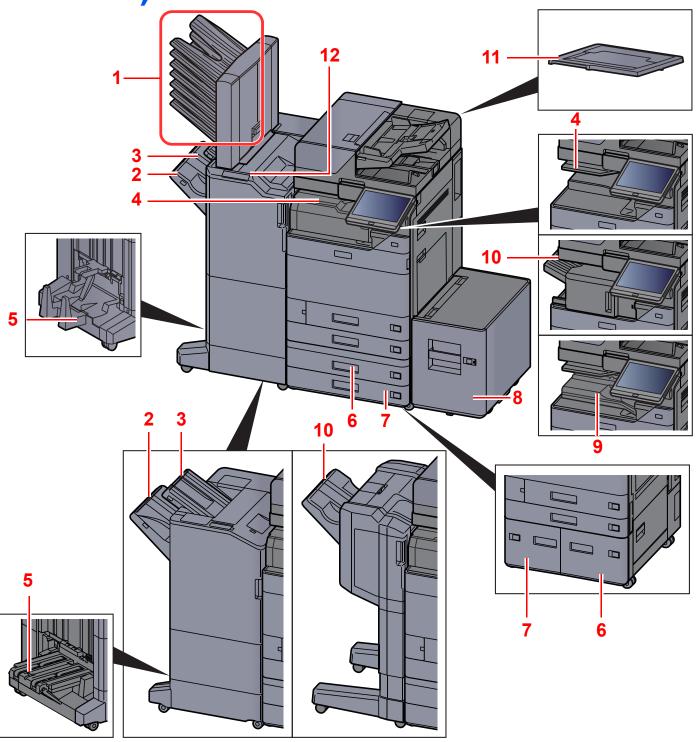




- 1 Option Interface Slot
- 2 USB Port
- 3 USB Interface Connector
- 4 Network Interface Connector

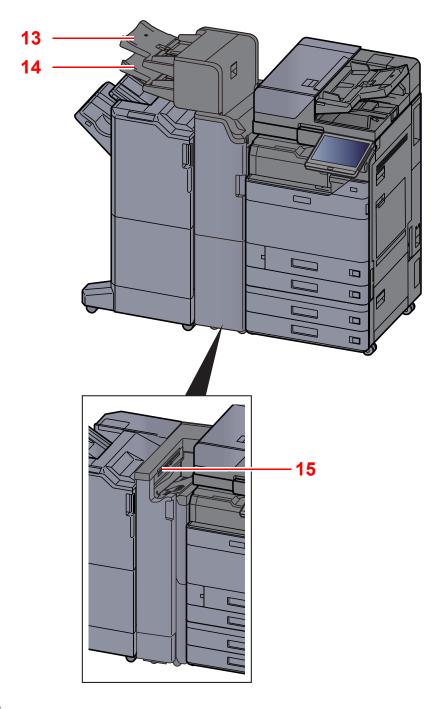
- 5 Toner Container (Black)
- 6 Toner Container Cover
- 7 Waste Toner Box
- 8 Waste Toner Box Cover

Part Names (With Optional Equipments Attached)



- 1 Tray 1 to 7 (tray 1 is the top tray)
- 2 Tray A
- 3 Tray B
- 4 Job Separator Tray
- 5 Folding Tray
- 6 Cassette 3
- Optional Equipment (page 11-2)

- 7 Cassette 4
- 8 Cassette 5
- 9 Inner Shift Tray
- 10 Finisher Tray
- 11 Original Cover
- 12 Control Section of the Finisher
- → Manual Staple (page 5-78)



13 Inserter Tray 1

14 Inserter Tray 2

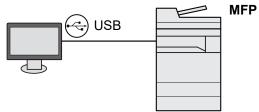
15 Z fold unit Tray

→ Optional Equipment (page 11-2)

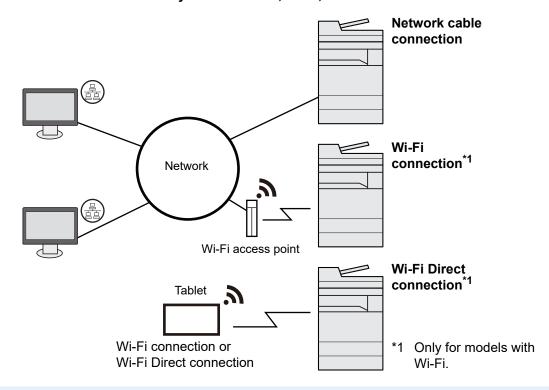
Connecting the Machine and Other Devices

Prepare the cables necessary to suit the environment and purpose of the machine use.

When Connecting the Machine to the PC via USB



When Connecting the Machine to the PC or Tablet by network cable, Wi-Fi, or Wi-Fi direct





If you are using wireless LAN, refer to the following.

Configuring the Wireless Network (page 2-35)

Cables that Can Be Used

Connection Environment	Function	Necessary Cable
Connect a LAN cable to the machine.	Printer/Scanner/Network FAX*1	LAN cable (10BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, 1000BASE-T)
Connect a USB cable to the machine.	Printer	USB 3.0 compatible cable (Hi-Speed USB compliant, max. 5.0 m, shielded)

^{*1} Function available when using optional FAX kit. For more information on using the Network FAX, refer to the **FAX Operation Guide**.



Using a cable other than a USB 3.0 compatible cable may cause failure.

Connecting Cables

Connecting LAN Cable

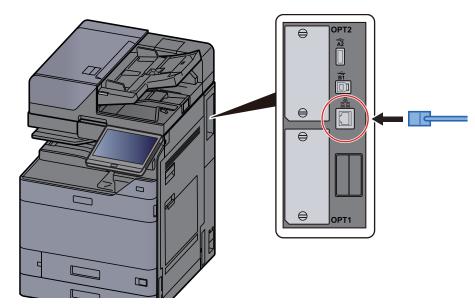
⊘ IMPORTANT

Make sure that the power to the machine is turned off.

▶ Power Off (page 2-10)

Connect the cable to the machine.

1 Connect the LAN cable to the network interface connector.



2 Connect the other end of the cable to the hub or the PC.

Power on the machine and configure the network.

→ Network Setup (page 2-33)

Connecting USB Cable

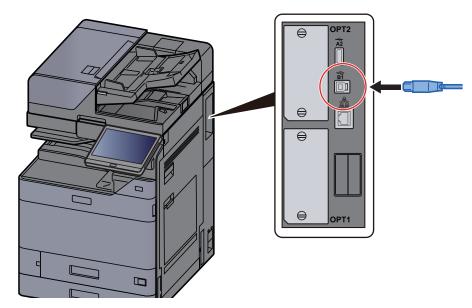
⊘ IMPORTANT

Make sure that the power to the machine is turned off.

→ Power Off (page 2-10)

Connect the cable to the machine.

1 Connect the USB cable to the USB interface connector located on the left side of the body.



2 Connect the other end of the cable to the PC.

Power on the machine.

Connecting the Power Cable

Connect the cable to the machine.

Connect one end of the supplied power cable to the machine and the other end to a power outlet.

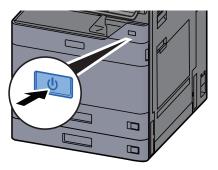
⊘ IMPORTANT

Only use the power cable that comes with the machine.

Power On/Off

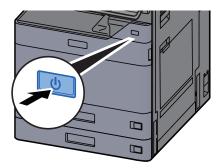
Power On

Turn the power switch on.



Power Off

Turn the power switch off.



The confirmation message for power supply off is displayed.

→ Show Power Off Message (page 8-10)

It takes several minutes for power off.



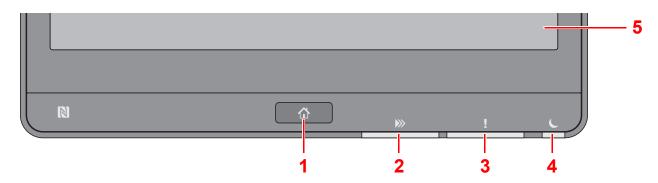
If this machine will be left unused for an extended period (e.g. overnight), turn it off at the power switch. If the machine will not be used for an even longer period of time (e.g. vacation), remove the power plug from the outlet as a safety precaution.

◯ IMPORTANT

- Do not press and hold the power switch more than 5 seconds continuously. Forcibly turning off the power may damage the HDD or the memory so that it causes the failure.
- If using the products equipped with the fax function, note that turning the machine off at the power switch disables fax transmission and reception.
- Remove paper from the cassettes and seal it in the paper storage bag to protect it from humidity.

Using the Operation Panel

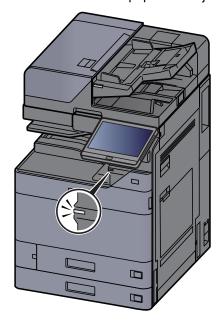
Operation Panel Keys



- 1 [Home] key: Displays the Home screen.
- 2 [Data] indicator: Blinks while the machine is printing or sending/receiving, or accessing the hard disk/SSD. Also, it lights when there is a sending job FAX using delayed transmission.
- 3 [Attention] indicator: Lights or blinks when an error occurs and a job is stopped.
- 4 [Energy Saver] indicator: Blinks while the machine is asleep.
- 5 Touch Panel: Displays icons for configuring machine settings.

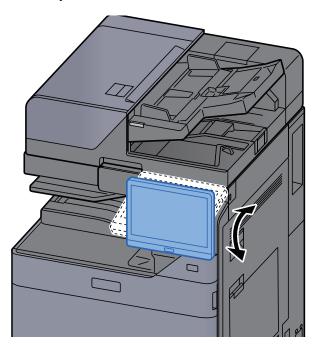
[Job Separator] indicator

Blinks when there is paper in the job separator tray.



Adjusting the Operation Panel Angle

The angle of the operation panel can be adjusted.



Touch Panel

Using the Touch Panel

This section explains the basic operation of the touch panel.

Tapping

This is the operation used to select an icon or key.

In this document, the tap operation is expressed as "select."



Popover

Tap the icons and keys to display detailed information on the icons and menus. A popover displays information and menus without switching between screens.



Swiping

This is the operation used to switch between screens and to display items that are not displayed in the list.

Move in one direction as if tracing on the screen.

Example: Home Screen

Move the screen to the left and right.

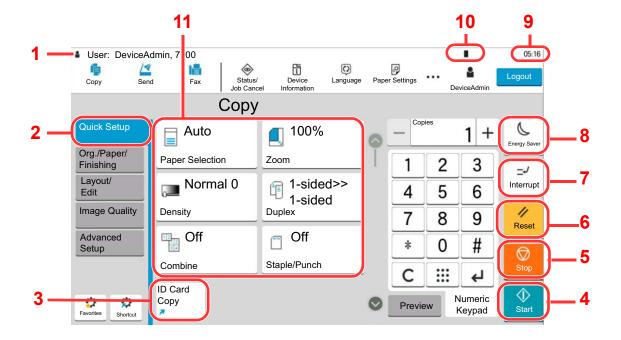


Example: System Menu Screen

Move the screen up and down.



Operating the touch panel



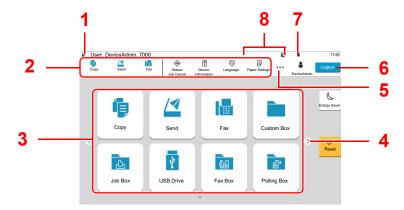
- 1 Displays the status of the equipment as well as necessary operation messages.
- 2 Displays the Quick Setup screen.
- 3 Displays registered shortcuts.
- 4 [Start] key: Starts copying and scanning operations and processing for setting operations.
- 5 [Stop] key: Cancels or pauses the job in progress.
- 6 [Reset] key: Returns settings to their default states.
- 7 [Interrupt] key: Displays the Interrupt Copy screen.
- 8 [Energy Saver] key: Puts the machine into Sleep Mode.
- 9 Displays the time.
- 10 Remaining amount of toner.
- 11 Set the copy functions.

Home Screen

This screen is displayed by selecting the [**Home**] key on the operation panel. Touching an icon will display the corresponding screen.

You can change the icons to display on the Home screen as well as its background.

▶ Editing the Home Screen (page 2-16)



* The appearance may differ from your actual screen, depending on your configuration and option settings.

No.	Item	Description
1	Status Area	Displays the messages and status icons for the current status. Displays the logged-in user name when user login administration is enabled.
2	Taskbar	Displays task icons. If an error occurs, the [Status/Job Cancel] icon will show "!". Once the error clears, the display will return to normal.
3	Desktop	Displays the application icons. Icons that are not displayed on the first page will appear by changing the page.
4	Screen-switching keys	Use these buttons to switch between desktop pages. NOTE It is also possible to use swiping to switch between displays. → Using the Touch Panel (page 2-13)
5	[]	Displays every task icons including the icons displayed in an taskbar area in a popover.
6	[Login] / [Logout]	Logs in or logs out when user login administration is enabled.
7	Remaining amount of toner	Displays the remaining amount of toner. Select this icon to display details of the remaining amount of toner in a popover.

No.	Item	Description
8	Sub status icons	Displays the icons that indicate the status of the machine. 5 icons can be displayed. Select this area to display the icon information in a popover.
	Status Icon (Wi-Fi)	The icon " is displayed when Wi-Fi is connected. When Wi-Fi is not connected, " is displayed.
	Status Icon (Security level: Low)	"🌣" is displayed when the security level is set at [Low].
	Status Icon (Remote operation)	"்ଲ" is displayed when using the remote operation.
	Status Icon (Security	When you activate the Data Encryption/Overwrite Function, the Security information icon will be displayed.
	information)	" is displayed while the data is overwriting.
		"ଛ" is displayed if remaining data is in HDD.
		"⊜" is displayed if remaining data is not in HDD.
	Status Icon (FAX Memory RX Box capacity)	"is displayed when the capacity of the FAX Memory RX Box is 10% or less.
	Status Icon (USB drive)	" 🖟 " is displayed when a USB drive is connected to this machine.
		Tapping the USB drive icon and selecting [Remove USB] allows you to safely remove the USB drive.

Editing the Home Screen

You can change the background of the Home screen as well as which icons are displayed.

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Home]



If user login administration is enabled, you can only change the settings by logging in with administrator privileges or as a user with privileges to configure this setting. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Configure the settings.

The available settings are shown below.

Item	Description	
Customize	Specify the function icons to display on the desktop.*1	
Desktop	Select [Add] to display the screen for selecting the function to display. Select [Function Type] to narrow down the functions by applications and favorites. Select the function to display and [OK].	
	Select an icon and [Previous] or [Next] to change the display position of the selected icon on the Desktop.	
	To delete an icon from desktop, select the desired one and select [Delete].	
Customize Taskbar	Specify the task icons to display on the taskbar. Select [Taskbar Button 1 (to 4)]. Select the function to display, and select [OK]. 4 task icons can be displayed.	
	NOTE	
	Functions that are hidden can be displayed by selecting [] (popover icon) on the right end of the taskbar.	
	Taskbar buttons for which [None] has been selected will not be displayed. Other taskbar buttons will be displayed in order from the left.	
Wallpaper	Configure the wallpaper of the Home screen.	
	Value: Images 1 to 8	

^{*1} Displays a maximum of 60 function icons including the installed applications and the functions that can be used when options are installed.

Available Functions to Display on Desktop

Function	lcon	Description	Reference page
Copy*1	F	Displays the Copy screen.	5-19
Send*1	<u> </u>	Displays the Send screen.	5-23
Fax Server		Displays the FAX Server screen.	5-45
Fax*2		Displays the FAX screen.	Refer to FAX Operation Guide.
Custom Box*1		Displays the Custom Box screen.	5-60
Job Box*1	Ь	Displays the Job Box screen.	4-18
USB Drive*1	ψ	Displays the USB Drive screen.	5-72
Fax Box ^{*2}	(a)	Displays the Fax Box screen.	Refer to FAX Operation Guide.
Polling Box*2		Displays the Polling Box screen. Refer Opera Guide	
Fax Memory RX Box*2	(L)	Displays the Fax Memory RX Box screen.	Refer to FAX Operation Guide.
Internet Browser	(1)	Displays the Internet Browser screen. 5-76	
Send to Me (Email) ^{*3}	<u> </u>	Displays the Send screen. The E-mail address of the logged-in user is set as the destination. 5-44	
Send to Me from Box (Email)*3	4	Displays the Custom Box screen. The E-mail address of the logged-in user is set as the destination.	5-66
Favorites		Calls up the registered favorite. The icon will change according to the function of the favorite.	5-11
Application Name*4	_	Displays the selected applications.	5-14

^{*1} Selected at the time of shipment from factory.

^{*2} Displayed only on products with the fax function installed.*3 Displayed when user login administration is enabled.

^{*4} The icon of the application appears.

Available Functions to Display on Taskbar

Function	lcon	Description	Reference page
Status/Job Cancel*1		Displays the Status/Job Cancel screen. —	
Device Information*1	: :	Displays the Device Information screen. Check the system and network information, and information on the options that are used. It is possible to print various reports and lists.	2-22
Language*1		Displays the Language setting screen in System Menu.	8-6
Paper Settings*1	Ş	Displays the Paper setting screen in System Menu.	8-13
Wi-Fi Direct*2	((1))	Wi-Fi Direct is set and a list of information relating to the machine that can use the network appears.	2-41
Help	?	Displays the Help screen.	2-28
User Property	2	Displays the User Property screen.	9-10
Incoming Fax Log*3	Ğ	Displays the Incoming Fax Log screen.	Refer to FAX Operation Guide.
Outgoing Fax Log*3	Ĉ	Displays the Outgoing Fax Log screen.	Refer to the FAX Operation Guide.
System Menu	*	Displays the System Menu screen.	8-2
Counter	123	Displays the Counter screen.	2-64
Accessibility/ Standard	Ť	Magnifies the text and icons on the screen. Select [Accessibility/Standard] again to return to the previous view.	2-29
Massage Board	ê	Displays the Message Board screen. NOTE To use this function, set "Message Board" to [ON] in System Menu.	8-27
Numeric Keypad	•••	Displays the numeric keys on the touch panel.	_
Favorites	☆	Displays the favorite list screen.	5-11

^{*1} Selected at the time of shipment from factory.

^{*2} Displayed when the optional Wireless Network Interface Kit is installed.

^{*3} Displayed only on products with the fax function installed.

Assigning Functions to Function Keys

Function keys are keys to which various functions and applications, including copy and scan, can be assigned. Frequently used functions and applications can be assigned and the screen can easily be displayed.

For this machine, the following functions are pre-assigned; however, alternative functions can be registered by re-assigning these functions.

- [F1 | (Function key 1): Copy
- [F2] (Function key 2): Send
- [F3] (Function key 3): FAX (Option)

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Function Key Assignment]

NOTE

If user login administration is enabled, you can only change the settings by logging in with administrator privileges or as a user with privileges to configure this setting. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Configure the settings.

- 1 Select the function key to be set.
- Select the function to be assigned.

Function	Description	Reference page
None	No function has been assigned.	_
Сору	Displays the Copy screen.	5-19
Send	Displays the Send screen.	5-23
Fax Server	Displays the Fax Server screen.	5-45
Fax*1	Displays the Fax screen.	Refer to FAX Operation Guide.
Custom Box	Displays the Custom Box screen.	5-55
Job Box	Displays the Job Box screen.	4-18
USB Drive	Displays the USB Drive screen.	5-72
Fax Box*1	Displays the Fax Box screen.	
Polling Box*1	Displays the Polling Box screen.	Operation Guide.
Fax Memory RX Box*1	Displays the Fax Memory RX Box screen.	
Send to Me (Email)*2	Displays the Send screen. The E-mail address of the logged-in user is set as the destination.	5-44
Send to Me from Box (Email)*2	Displays the Custom Box screen. The E-mail address of the logged-in user is set as the destination.	5-66

Function	Function Description	
Internet Browser	Displays the Internet Browser screen.	5-76
ID Card Copy	Displays the ID Card Copy screen.	6-34
Favorites Name	Calls up the registered favorite.	5-11
Application Name	Displays the selected applications.	5-14

^{*1} Displayed only on products with the fax function installed.*2 Displayed when user login administration is enabled.

Display for Device Information

Shows device Information. It is possible to check the status of the system and network, the status of consumables such as toner and paper and the situation of the options being used. It is also possible to print various reports and lists.

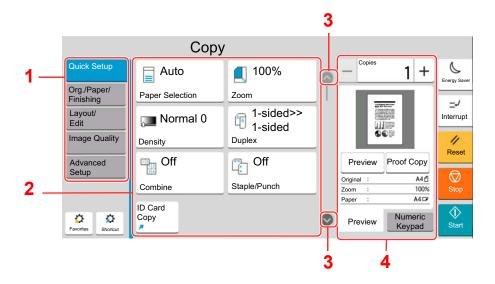
- 1 [Home] key > [Device Information]
- 2 Check the device Information.

Tab	Description	
Identification/Wired Network	You can check ID information such as the model name, serial number, host name and location, and the IP address of the wired network.	
Wi-Fi	You can check the status of Wi-Fi connection, such as the device name, network name and IP address.	
Supplies/Paper	You can check the remaining amount of toner, and paper.	
Fax*1	You can check the local fax number, local fax name, local fax ID and other fax information.	
USB/NFC/Bluetooth	You can check the connection status of USB drive, NFC (Near Field Communication) and Bluetooth keyboard.	
Option/Application	You can check information on the options and applications that are used.	
Capability/Software Version	You can check the software version and performance.	
Security	You can check the security information on the machine.	
Report	You can print various reports and lists.	
Remote Ope. Status	You can check the status of remote operation.	

^{*1} Displayed only on products with the fax function installed.

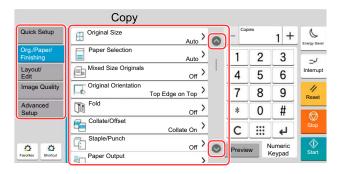
Display Setting Screen

The following procedure is an example of the Copy screen.



- Global Navigation
 Displays the function categories.
- 2 Body Display functions and shortcuts of copy.
- 3 Arrow Button Moves the screen up or down.
- 4 Right Pane Area
 Displays specific functions such
 as preview or numeric keypad.

Select Global Navigation and configure each function. Select the Arrow Button to display the following functions.

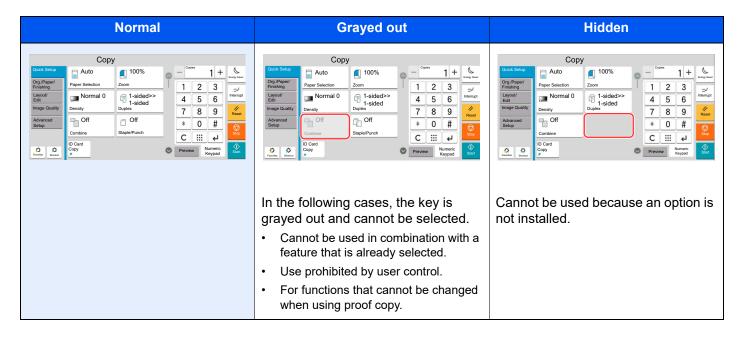


When an On/Off Flipswitch is displayed for a function, select the switch to change between ON and OFF.



Display of Keys That Cannot Be Set

Keys of features that cannot be used due to feature combination restrictions or non-installation of options are in a non-selectable state.





- If a key that you wish to use is grayed out, the settings of the previous user may still be in effect. In this case, select the [Reset] key and try again.
- If the key is still grayed out after the [**Reset**] key is selected, it is possible that you are prohibited from using the function by user login administration. Check with the administrator of the machine.

Original Preview

You can display a preview image of the scanned document on the panel.



To view a preview of an image stored in a Custom Box, refer to the following:

Previewing Documents/Checking Document Details (page 5-58)

The procedure described here is for copying a single-page original.

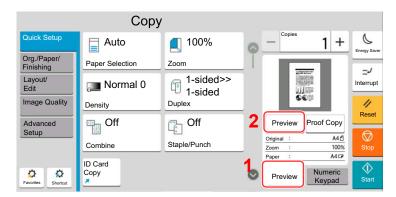
1 Display the screen.

[Home] key > [Copy]

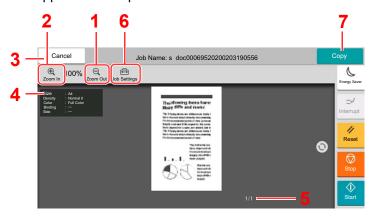
Place the originals.

Display a preview image.

1 Select [Preview] tab > [Preview].



The machine starts scanning the original. When scanning is completed, the preview image appears on the panel.



- Zoom out.
- 2 Zoom in.
- 3 Cancel the job.
- 4 Displays the data information.
- 5 Displays the current number of pages and overall number of pages.
- 6 You can change the job settings.
- 7 Start the copying.

Duplex Printing

Settings for duplex printing appear.



NOTE

- To change the quality or the layout, select [Cancel].
 Change the settings and select [Preview] again to see a preview image with the new settings.
- Depending on the function you are using, even if you scan a multi-page original, only the first page can be previewed.
- 2 If there is no problem with the preview image, select [Copy]. Copying starts.

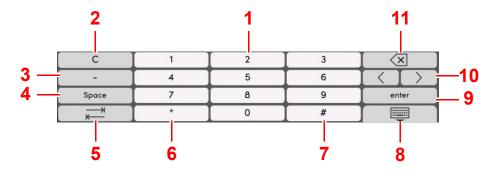
Using the Preview Screen

When the Preview screen is displayed, you can do the following by moving the finger that is touching the touch panel.

Function	Description		
Swipe	If a document with multiple pages is placed on the Document Processor, then all of the document is read and then the preview for the first page is displayed. Swipe the preview to the left and right to display a preview of the pages in the order read.		
Drag	With the finger touching the touch panel, slide the finger to move the position of the displayed preview.		
Pinch in Pinch out	With two fingers touching the touch panel, widen or tighten the space between the two fingers to zoom in and out on the view.		

Entering Numbers

When entering numbers, numeric keys appear on the touch panel if you select the area in which the number is entered.

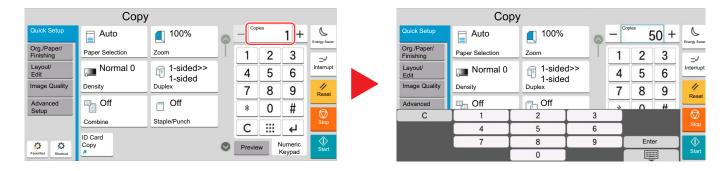


- 1 Enter numbers.
- 2 Clear entered numbers.
- 3 Enters [-].
- 4 Insert a space.
- 5 Move to the next input box.
- 6 When [.] is displayed: Enters the decimal point. The numbers entered after selecting this key will be the numbers after the decimal point.
 - When [*] is displayed: Enters [*].
- 7 When [+/-] is displayed: Switches between positive and negative numbers.
 - When [#] is displayed: Enters [#].
- 8 Close the numeric keypad.
- 9 Entry by numeric keys is confirmed.
- 10 Move the cursor.
- 11 Delete a character to the left of the cursor.

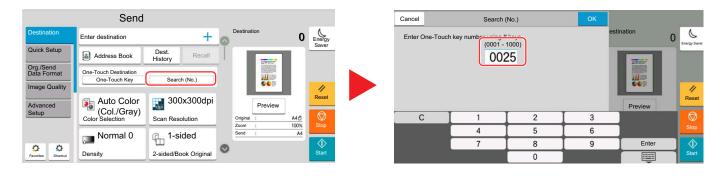
NOTE

- Depending on the item being entered, some of the keys other than the number keys may not be usable.
- · Numeric keys do not appear on the touch panel if an optional numeric keypad is installed.

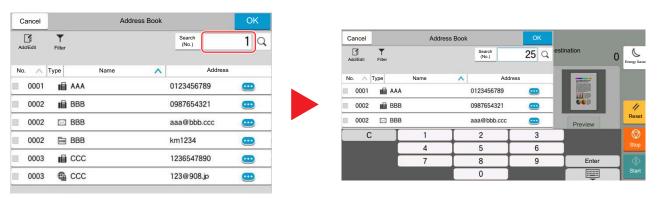
Example: When entering the number of copies



Example: When entering a one-touch key number



Example: When searching for an address number



NOTE

For copy and print screens, you can set numeric keys to be displayed in advance. In addition, you can select the layout for numeric keys that are used on the application.

Numeric Keypad (page 8-6)

Help Screen

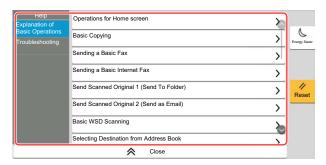
If you have difficulty operating the machine, you can check how to operate it using the touch panel.

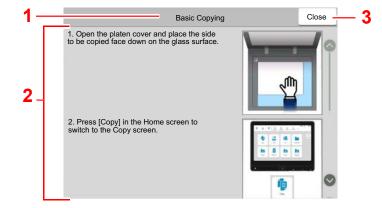
Select [Help] on the Home screen to show the Help list.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [Help]



Select the items to check from the list.





- 1 Help titles
- 2 Displays information about functions and machine operation.
- 3 Closes the Help screen and returns to the original screen.5

Accessibility Functions (Magnifying the View)

You can magnify the text and keys displayed on the touch panel. You can also select items and move to the next screen using the numeric keys.

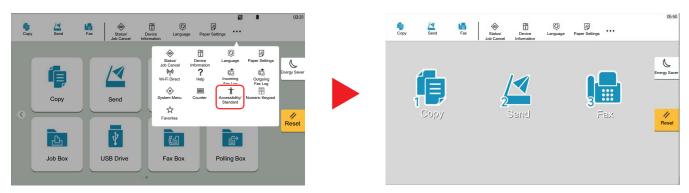
Select [Home] key > [...] > [Accessibility/Standard]

Large keys and text appear on the touch panel.



NOTE

- This function can be used on the Home screen and on the functions that were registered via Copy/Send/Fax Quick Setup.
- To configure any functions that are not displayed on the Accessibility screen, you need to return to the original view. Select [Accessibility/Standard] again.
- Long press the [Home] key to switch between the Standard screen and the Accessibility screen.



You can also control the screen using the numeric key corresponding to the number in circle. (Example: Select the [2] key on the numeric key pad to display the Send screen.)

Control the functions according to the display on the screen.

Login/Logout

If you are setting a function that requires administrator rights, or if user login administration is enabled, you must enter your login user name and login password.

■ NOTE

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

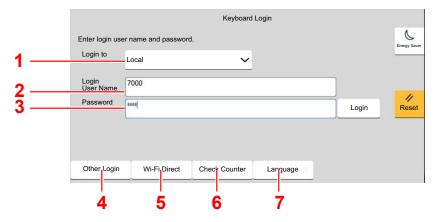
You will be unable to login if you forget your login user name or login password. In this event, login with administrator privileges and change your login user name or login password.

Login

Normal login

Enter the login user name and login password to login.

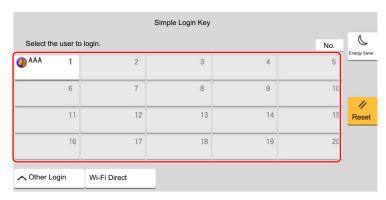
If this screen is displayed during operations, enter the login user name and login password.



- 1 If [Network Authentication] is selected as the user authentication method, authentication destinations are displayed and either [Local] or [Network] can be selected as the authentication destination.
- 2 Enter the login user name.
- 3 Enter the login password.
 - Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
- Select the login method from [Simple login], [PIN code login] and [IC card login].
 - User Authentication and Accounting (User Login, Job Accounting) (page 9-1)
- 5 Check the Wi-Fi Direct environment.
- Refer to the number of pages printed and the number of pages scanned. Displayed when job accounting is enabled.
- 7 Set the language to use for the touch panel display.

Select [Login].

Simple Login



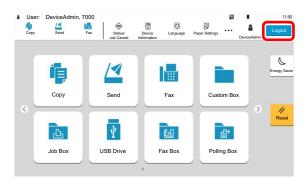
If this screen is displayed during operations, select a user and log in.



If a user password is required, an input screen will be displayed.

→ Simple Login Settings (page 9-25)

Logout



To logout from the machine, select the [**Logout**] key to return to the login user name/login password entry screen.

Users are automatically logged out in the following circumstances:

- When the machine enters the sleep state.
- When the auto panel reset function is activated.

Default Settings of the Machine

The default settings of the machine can be changed in System Menu. Before using this machine, configure such settings as date and time, network configuration, and energy saving functions as needed.



NOTE

For settings that are configurable from System Menu, refer to the following:

→ Setup and Registration (System Menu) (page 8-1)

Setting Date and Time

Follow the steps below to set the local date and time at the place of installation.

When you send an E-mail using the transmission function, the date and time as set here will be printed in the header of the E-mail message. Set the date, time and time difference from GMT of the region where the machine is used.

NOTE

- To make changes after this initial configuration, refer to the following:
 - → Date/Time (page 8-6)
- The correct time can be periodically set by obtaining the time from the network time server.
 - Command Center RX User Guide

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Date/Time]

Configure the settings.

[Time Zone] > [Date/Time] > [Date Format]

Item	Description
Time Zone	Set the time difference from GMT. Choose the nearest listed location from the list. If you select a region that utilizes summer time, configure settings for summer time.
Date and Time	Set the date and time for the location where you use the machine. If you perform Send as E-mail, the date and time set here will be displayed on the header.
	Value: Year (2000 to 2035), Month (1 to 12), Day (1 to 31), Hour (0 to 23), Minute (0 to 59), Second (0 to 59)
Date Format	Select the display format of year, month, and date. The year is displayed in Western notation.
	Value: MM/DD/YYYY (Month/Day/Year), DD/MM/YYYY (Day/Month/Year), YYYY/MM/DD (Year/Month/Day)

Network Setup

Configuring the Wired Network

The machine is equipped with network interface, which is compatible with network protocols such as TCP/IP (IPv4), TCP/IP (IPv6), NetBEUI, and IPSec. It enables network printing on the Windows, Macintosh, UNIX and other platforms. Set up TCP/IP (IPv4) to connect to the Windows network.

Be sure to connect the network cable before configuring the settings.

Connecting LAN Cable (page 2-8)

Configuration Method	Description	Reference Page
Configuring the Connection from the Operation Panel on This Machine	Use Quick Setup Wizard when configuring the network in a wizard-style screen, without setting individually in System menu.	Quick Setup Wizard (page 2-48)
	Use Wired Network Settings or Optional Network to configure the network in details from System menu.	Wired Network Settings (page 8-58) Optional Network (page 8-66)
Configuring Connections on the Web Page	For the equipped network interface, the connection can be set by using Command Center RX. For the optional IB-50, the connection can be set by using the dedicated Web page.	Command Center RX User Guide IB-50 Operation Guide
Setting the Connection by Using the Setup Utility of IB-50	This is the setup tool included in the CD of IB-50. You can use it on Windows.	IB-50 Operation Guide



NOTE

When you want to switch to the network interface other than Wired (default), select the desired setting on "Primary Network (Client)".

▶ Primary Network (Client) (page 8-70)

For other network settings, refer to the following:

Network Settings (page 8-53)



NOTE

If user login administration is enabled, you can only change the settings by logging in with administrator privileges or as a user with privileges to configure this setting.

If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter a login user name and password, and select [Login].

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

IPv4 setting

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Wired Network Settings] > "TCP/IP Setting" [IPv4 Settings]

Configure the settings.

When using DHCP server

• [DHCP]: Set to [On].

When setting the static IP address

- [DHCP]: Set to [Off].
- [Auto-IP]: Set to [Off].
- [IP Address]: Enter the address.
- [Subnet Mask]: Enter the subnet mask in decimal representation (0 to 255).
- [Default Gateway]: Enter the address.

When using the Auto-IP

Enter "0.0.0.0" in [IP Address].

When setting the DNS server

In the following cases, set the IP address of DNS (Domain Name System) server.

- · When using the host name with "DHCP" setting set to "Off".
- When using the DNS server with IP address that is not assigned by DHCP automatically.

Select [Use DNS Server from DHCP] or [Use following DNS Server]. When [Use following DNS Server] is selected, you can enter static DNS server information in the Primary and Secondary fields provided.



IMPORTANT

After changing the setting, restart the network from System Menu, or turn the machine OFF and then ON.

Restart Network (page 8-65)



NOTE

Ask your network administrator for the IP address in advance, and have it ready when you configure this setting.

Configuring the Wireless Network

When the wireless network function is available or the Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB-51) is installed on the machine and the connection settings are configured, it is possible to print or send in a wireless network (wireless LAN) environment. The configuration methods are as follows: .

Configuration Method	Description	Reference Page
Configuring the Connection from the Operation Panel on This Machine	Use Quick Setup Wizard when configuring the network in a wizard-style screen, without setting individually in System menu.	Quick Setup Wizard (page 2-48)
	Use Wi-Fi Settings or Wireless Network to configure the network in details from System menu.	Wi-Fi Settings (page 8-54) Wireless Network (page 8-66)
Setting the Connection by Using the Wi-Fi Setup Tool	This is a tool that can be downloaded from our website. You can configure the connection according to the instructions provided by the wizard.	Setting the Connection by Using the Wi-Fi Setup Tool (page 2-35)
Setting the Connection by Using the Setup Utility of IB-51	This is the setup tool included in the CD of IB-51. You can use it on both Windows and Mac OS.	IB-51 Operation Guide
Configuring Connections on the Web Page	The connection can be set from the Command Center RX.	Command Center RX User Guide
	For the IB-51, the connection can be set on the dedicated Web page.	IB-51 Operation Guide



NOTE

When you want to switch to the network interface other than Wired (default), select the desired setting on "Primary Network (Client)".

Primary Network (Client) (page 8-70)

Setting the Connection by Using the Wi-Fi Setup Tool

To send the Wi-Fi settings configured in the Wi-Fi Setup Tool to the machine, connect the computer or handheld device with the machine locally. The connection methods are wired connection via LAN cable and wireless LAN connection (Wi-Fi Direct).



NOTE

- To use Wi-Fi Direct, confirm that the Wi-Fi Direct is enabled (Wi-Fi Direct is set to [ON]) and Restart Network from the operation panel, before your computer will be connected to this machine with Wi-Fi Direct.
- To use a wired LAN cable directly connected to the machine, the Auto-IP (Link-local) address will be assigned to the machine and the computer. This machine applies Auto-IP as the default settings.
- Configure the settings on the operation panel if your computer supports WPS.
 - → Wi-Fi Settings (page 8-54)
 - Wireless Network (page 8-66)

Wired Connection by Using LAN Cable

Connect the machine with a computer.

- 1 Connect the machine with a computer via LAN cable when the machine is powered on.
- 2 Turn on the computer.

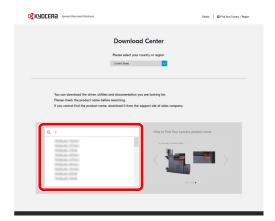
IP addresses (link local addresses) of the machine and computer are generated automatically.

2 Launch the Wi-Fi Setup Tool.

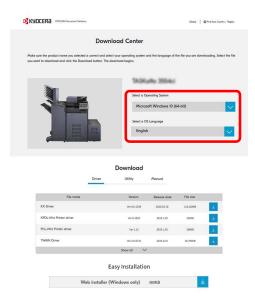
- 1 Launch a web browser.
- 2 Enter "https://kyocera.info/" to the browser's address bar or location bar.



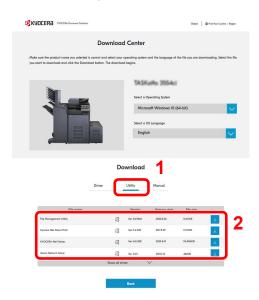
3 Enter and search the product name, and select this product from the candidate list.



4 Change the selected operating system and its language setting as needed.



5 Utility tab > "Wi-Fi Setup Tool" The Wi-Fi Setup Tool will be downloaded.



6 Double-click the downloaded installer to launch.



- Installation on Windows must be done by a user logged on with administrator privileges.
- If the user account management window appears, click [Yes] ([Allow]).

Configure the settings.

- 1 [Do not use automatic configuration] > [Next] > [Next]
- 2 [Use LAN cable] > [Next] > [Next]
- 3 [Easy setup] > [Next]

The machine is detected.

NOTE

- Only one machine can be searched using Wi-Fi Setup Tool. It may take times to search the machine.
- If the machine is not detected, select [Advanced setup] > [Next]. Select [Express] or [Custom] as device discovery method and specify the IP address or host name to search the machine.
- 4 Select the machine > [Next]
- 5 Select [Use the device settings.] on [Authentication mode], and enter the login user name and password. Login user name and Password.

Login User Name: Admin

Login Password: xxxxxxxxx (Serial Number)

- → Checking the Equipment's Serial Number (page i)
- 6 Configure the communication settings > [Next]
- 7 Change the settings of access point as necessary > [Next]
 The network is configured.

Wireless LAN Connection by Using Wi-Fi Direct

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Wi-Fi Direct Settings]

Configure the settings.

"Wi-Fi Direct": [On] > [Close]

Restart the network.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Restart Network] > [Restart]

Connect a computer or a handheld device with the machine.

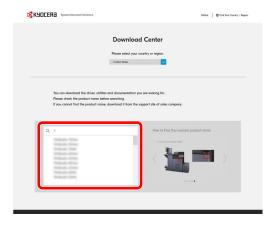
▶ Setting Wi-Fi Direct (page 2-41)

5 Launch the Wi-Fi Setup Tool.

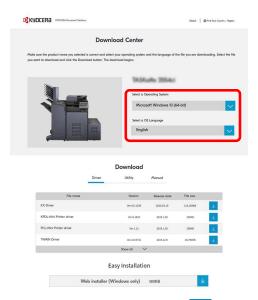
- 1 Launch a web browser.
- 2 Enter "https://kyocera.info/" to the browser's address bar or location bar.



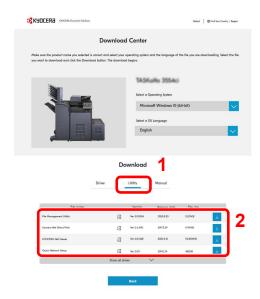
3 Enter and search the product name, and select this product from the candidate list.



4 Change the selected operating system and its language setting as needed.



5 Utility tab > "Wi-Fi Setup Tool"
The Wi-Fi Setup Tool will be downloaded.



6 Double-click the downloaded installer to launch.



- Installation on Windows must be done by a user logged on with administrator privileges.
- If the user account management window appears, click [Yes] ([Allow]).

6 Configure the settings.

- 1 [Do not use automatic configuration] > [Next] > [Next]
- 2 [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Next] > [Next]
- 3 [Advanced setup] > [Next]

Select [**Express**] or [**Custom**] as device discovery method and specify the IP address or host name to search the machine.

- 4 Select the machine > [Next]
- 5 Select [Use the device settings.] on [Authentication mode], and enter the login user name and password. Login user name and Password.

Login User Name: Admin

Login Password: xxxxxxxxx (Serial Number)

- → Checking the Equipment's Serial Number (page i)
- 6 Configure the communication settings > [Next]
- 7 Change the settings of access point as necessary > [Next] The network is configured.

Setting Wi-Fi Direct

Setting Wi-Fi Direct enables you to print from the Wi-Fi Direct environment. The configuration methods are as follows:

Configuring the Connection from the Operation Panel on This Machine

Connecting to Computers or Handheld Devices that Support Wi-Fi Direct

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Wi-Fi Direct Settings]

Configure the settings.

"Wi-Fi Direct": [On] > [OK]

Restart the network.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Restart Network] > [Restart]

4 Specify the machine name from the computer or handheld device.

If a confirmation message appears on the operation panel of the machine, select [Yes]. The network between this machine and the handheld device is configured.

Connecting to Computers or Handheld Devices Unsupported Wi-Fi Direct

Here, we'll explain the procedures for connecting to iOS handheld devices.

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Wi-Fi Direct Settings]

Configure the settings.

"Wi-Fi Direct": [On] > [OK]

Restart the network.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Restart Network] > [Restart]

[Home] key > [Device Information] > [Wi-Fi]

5 Note the "Wi-Fi Direct" network name (SSID), IP address, and password.

Configure the handheld device.

- 1 [Settings] > [Wi-Fi]
- 2 Select the network name (SSID) appeared in step 5 from the list.
- 3 Enter the password that was provided in step 5 > [Connect]
 The network between this machine and the handheld device is configured.

Configuring the Connection by Using Push Button

When your computer or handheld device does not support Wi-Fi Direct but supports WPS, you can configure the network using push button.

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Wi-Fi Direct Settings]

Configure the settings.

"Wi-Fi Direct": [On] > [OK]

Restart the network.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Restart Network] > [Restart]

[Home] key > [Device Information] > [Wi-Fi]

Press the push button on the computer or handheld device and select "Wi-Fi Direct" [Push Button Setup] > [OK] on the screen of operation panel.

The network between this machine and the computer or handheld device is configured.

⊘ IMPORTANT

You can connect up to ten handheld devices at the same time using Wi-Fi Direct setting. When the devices that support Wi-Fi Direct are connected, if you want to connect other device, disconnect the already-connected devices from the network. The disconnection methods are as follows:

- · Disconnect the network from the computer or handheld computer
- Disconnecting all devices from the network on the operation panel
 Select [Home] key > [Device Information] > [Wi-Fi] > "Wi-Fi Direct" [Device] > [Disconnect] > [Disconnect]
- Configuring auto disconnecting time from the System menu
 - Wi-Fi Direct Settings (page 8-53)
- Configuring auto disconnecting time from the Command Center RX
 - Command Center RX User Guide

Configuring NFC

NFC (Near Field Communication) is the internal standard for near field communication in which the data communication distance is limited to approximately 10 cm. Establishing data communication simply requires you to show the handheld device supporting NFC to this machine.

The configuration methods are as follows:

Configuring Connections on the Web Page

You can set NFC from the Command Center RX.

Command Center RX User Guide

Configuring the Connection from the Operation Panel on This Machine

Configure the NFC from the System Menu.

▶ NFC (page 8-69)

This section presents an example for configuring the NFC from the System Menu.

Display the screen.

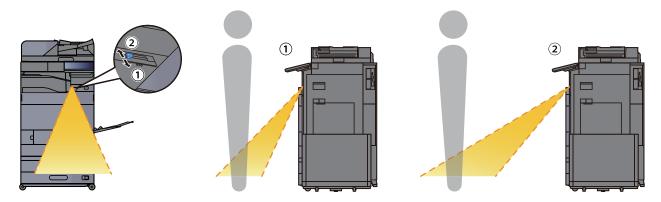
[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Connectivity" [NFC]

Configure the settings.

"NFC": [On] > [OK]

Motion Sensor

This model detects that the person is approaching and recover from low power mode or sleep mode automatically. The range of detection of the Motion Sensor can be switched using the lever on the front.



For more information on Motion Sensor settings, refer to the following:

→ Motion Sensor (page 8-9)

Energy Saver function

If a certain period of time elapses after the machine is last used, the machine automatically enters Low Power Mode to reduce power consumption. If a further period of time elapses without the machine being used, the machine automatically enters sleep mode, which minimizes power consumption.

Low Power Mode

If the machine is not operated for a certain period of time, the energy saver indicator will light up and the screen will become dark to reduce power consumption. This status is referred to as Low Power Mode. In the Low Power Mode, the touch panel turns off and the Energy Saver indicator lights up.

The amount of time before entering Low Power Mode: 3 minutes (default setting).

If print data is received during Low Power Mode, the machine automatically wakes up and starts printing. Also when fax data arrives while the machine is in Low Power Mode, the machine automatically wakes up and starts printing.

To resume, perform one of the following actions.

- Select any key on the operation panel.
- Touch the touch panel.
- Place originals in the document processor.
- Open the document processor.

Recovery time from Low Power Mode is as follows.

14.4 seconds or less

Note that ambient environmental conditions, such as ventilation, may cause the machine to respond more slowly.

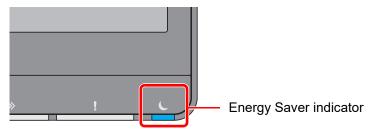


NOTE

If the Low Power Timer is equal to the Sleep Timer, a Sleep mode is preceded.

Sleep

To enter Sleep, select the [**Energy Saver**] key. Touch panel and all indicators on the operation panel will go out to save a maximum amount of power except the Energy Saver indicator, and then the Energy Saver indicator is flashing. This status is referred to as Sleep.



If print data is received during Sleep, the machine automatically wakes up and starts printing. Also when fax data arrives while the machine is in Sleep, the machine automatically wakes up and starts printing.

When Using the Machine

Automatically wakes up when someone approaches the machine while the Motion Sensor is being used.

For more information on Motion Sensor settings, refer to the following:

→ Motion Sensor (page 8-9)

If the Motion Sensor is not being used, perform one of the following actions.

- · Select any key on the operation panel.
- Touch the touch panel.
- · Place originals in the document processor.
- Open the document processor.

Recovery time from Sleep Mode is as follows.

14.4 seconds or less

Note that ambient environmental conditions, such as ventilation, may cause the machine to respond more slowly.

Auto Sleep

Auto Sleep automatically switches the machine into Sleep if left idle for a preset time.

The amount of time before entering Sleep is as follows.

10 minutes (default setting)

To change the preset sleep time, refer to the following:

Quick Setup Wizard (page 2-48)



If the Low Power Timer is equal to the Sleep Timer, a Sleep mode is preceded.

Sleep Rules (models for Europe)

You can set whether sleep mode operates for each function. When the machine enters sleep mode, the ID card cannot be recognized.

For more information on Sleep Rules settings, refer to the following:

Sleep Rules (models for Europe) (page 8-7)

Sleep Level (Energy Saver) (models except for **Europe**)

This mode reduces power consumption even more than normal Sleep mode, and allows Sleep Mode to be set separately for each function. Printing from a computer connected with a USB cable is not available while the machine is asleep. The time required for the machine to wake up from power save mode and resume normal operation will be longer than for normal Sleep Mode.



NOTE

If the optional network interface kit is installed, Energy Saver cannot be specified.

For more information on Sleep Level (Home) Mode settings, refer to the following:

Quick Setup Wizard (page 2-48)

Energy Saver Recovery Level

This machine can reduce power consumption when recovering from Energy Saver Mode.

For EnergySaver RecoveryLevel, "Full Recovery" or "Normal Recovery" can be selected.

The factory default is "Normal Recovery".

For more information on Energy Saver Mode settings, refer to the following:

- Quick Setup Wizard (page 2-48)
- Energy Saver Recovery Level (page 8-9)

Weekly Timer Settings

Set the machine to automatically sleep and wake up at times specified for each day.

For more information on Weekly Timer Settings, refer to the following:

- Quick Setup Wizard (page 2-48)
- Weekly Timer Settings (page 8-8)

Power Off Timer (models for Europe)

If the machine is not used while in sleep mode, the power automatically turns off. The Power Off Timer is used to set the time until the power turns off.

The factory setting for the time until the power turns off: 3 days

Power Off Timer (models for Europe) (page 8-8)

Quick Setup Wizard

The following settings can be configured in a wizard-style screen.

Fax Setup		Configures basic fax settings. This function is displayed when the optional FAX Kit is installed. FAX Operation Guide		
		Dialing/RX Mode	Dialing Mode (Port 1, Port 2*1)*2 Reception Mode Auto (DRD)*3	
		Local Fax Information	Local Fax Name (Fax Port 1, Fax Port 2*1) Local Fax Number (Fax Port 1, Fax Port 2*1) Local Fax ID TTI	
		Volume	Fax Speaker Volume Fax Monitor Volume Job Finish	
		Rings	Rings (Normal)*4 Rings (TAD)*4 Rings (Fax/Phone)*4	
		Paper Source/Output	Paper Source Settings Fax Port 1 Fax Port 2*1	
		Redial	Retry Times	
	Show Power Off Message	Show Power Off Message		
Energy Sa	ver Setup	Configures sleep mode and low power mode.		
		Sleep Mode	For Europe Sleep Timer Sleep Rules Except for Europe Sleep Timer Sleep Level	
		Low Power Mode	Low Power Timer	
		Recovery Mode	Energy Saver Recovery Level	
		Weekly Timer	Weekly Timer Settings Schedule*5 Retry*5 Retry Times*5 Retry Interval*5	

Network Setup	Configures network settings.	
	Network	Network Selection
		Wi-Fi ^{*6}
		DHCP*7
		IP Address ^{*8}
		Subnet Mask ^{*8}
		Default Gateway ^{*8}
Email Setup	Set SMTP server name and sender address to enable mail sending.	
	Email	SMTP (Email TX)
		SMTP Server Name ^{*9}
		SMTP Port Number ^{*9}
		Sender Address ^{*9}
Security Setup	Specify the security level.	
	Security Quick Setup	

- *1 This is displayed when the option of two FAX Kits has been installed.
- *2 Inch version only.
- *3 DRD reception mode is available for some countries.
- *4 This setting does not appear in some regions.
- *5 This function is displayed when [Weekly Timer] is set to [On].
- *6 This function is displayed when [Network Selection] is set to [Wi-Fi].
- *7 This function is displayed when [Network Selection] is set to [Wired Network].
- *8 This function is displayed when [DHCP] is set to [Off].
- *9 This function is displayed when [SMTP (Email TX)] is set to [On].

NOTE

If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [Login].

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Quick Setup Wizard]

Select a function.

3 Configure the settings.

Start the wizard. Follow the instructions on the screen to configure settings.



If you experience difficulty configuring the settings, refer to the following:

→ Help Screen (page 2-28)

Control	Description
End	Exits the wizard. Settings configured so far are applied.
Previous	Returns to the previous item.

Control	Description
Skip	Advances to the next item without setting the current item.
Next	Advances to the next screen.
Back	Returns to the previous screen.
Complete	Register the settings and exit the wizard.

Installing Software

To use printer function, TWAIN/WIA connection, or network fax function, download and install prerequisite softwares from our website (https://kyocera.info/).

Published Software (Windows)

Software	Description	Recommended software
KX DRIVER	This driver enables files on a computer to be printed by the machine. Multiple page description languages (PCL XL, KPDL, etc.) are supported by a single driver. This printer driver allows you to take full advantage of the features of the machine. Use this driver to create PDF files.	0
KPDL mini-driver/PCL mini-driver	This is a Microsoft MiniDriver that supports PCL and KPDL. There are some restrictions on the machine features and option features that can be used with this driver.	-
FAX Driver	This makes it possible to send a document created in a computer software application as a fax via the machine.	-
TWAIN Driver	This driver enables scanning on the machine using a TWAIN-compliant software application.	0
WIA Driver	WIA (Windows Imaging Acquisition) is a function of Windows that enables reciprocal communication between an imaging device such as a scanner and an image processing software application. An image can be acquired using a WIA-compliant software application, which is convenient when a TWAIN-compliant software application is not installed in the computer.	-
KYOCERA Net Viewer	This is a utility that enables monitoring of the machine on the network.	-
Status Monitor	This is a utility that monitors the printer status and provides an ongoing reporting function.	0
File Management Utility	This makes it possible to send and save a scanned document to a specified network folder.	-
KYOCERA Net Direct Print	This makes it possible to print a PDF file without starting Adobe Acrobat/Reader.	-
FONTS	These are display fonts that enable the machine's built-in fonts to be used in a software application.	0
Wi-Fi Setup Tool	This is a tool for wireless network (wireless LAN) configuration of this machine.	-
Scan to Folder Setup Tool for SMB	This is a tool to create a shared folder in personal computers and set the shared folder as a destination.	-

NOTE

- Installation on Windows must be done by a user logged on with administrator privileges.
- The optional FAX Kit is required in order to make use of fax functionality.

Installing Software in Windows

Downloading and installing from the website

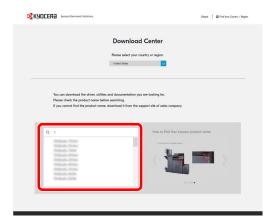
Download and install a software from our website.

Download a software from the website.

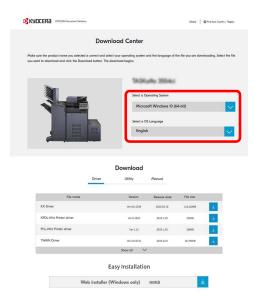
- 1 Launch a web browser.
- 2 Enter "https://kyocera.info/" to the browser's address bar or location bar.



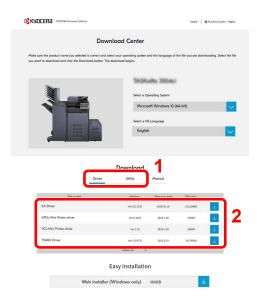
3 Enter and search the product name, and select this product from the candidate list.



4 Change the selected operating system and its language setting as needed.



5 Driver tab or Utility tab > of the software you want to download
An installer of the selected software will be downloaded.



Double-click the downloaded installer to launch.

Follow the guidance on the screen to install the software.

NOTE

- Installation on Windows must be done by a user logged on with administrator privileges.
- If the user account management window appears, click [Yes] ([Allow]).

Using the web installer

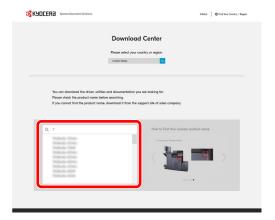
Install a software by using a web installer downloaded from our website.

1 Download a software from the website.

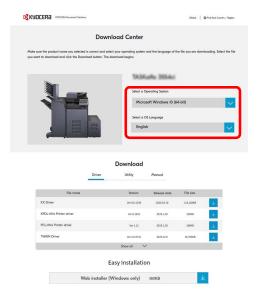
- 1 Launch a web browser.
- 2 Enter "https://kyocera.info/" to the browser's address bar or location bar.



3 Enter and search the product name, and select this product from the candidate list.

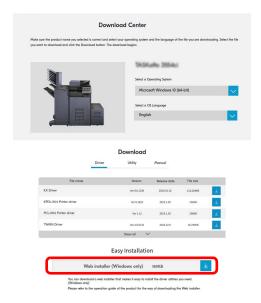


4 Change the selected operating system and its language setting as needed.



5 Click "Web installer"

A web installer will be downloaded.

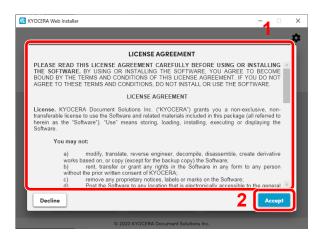


Double-click the downloaded installer to launch.



- Installation on Windows must be done by a user logged on with administrator privileges.
- If the user account management window appears, click [Yes] ([Allow]).

Display the screen.



- 1 Read the license agreement.
- 2 Click [Accept] if there is no problem.

Click [Install].



Select a model and click [Next]. 5



NOTE

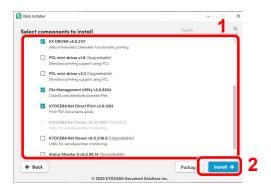
- The machine cannot be detected unless it is on. If the computer fails to detect the machine, verify that it is connected to the computer via a network or USB cable.
- · If a desired device is not displayed, select [Add custom device] to directly select the device you want to use.

Install the softwares. 6

Select softwares you want to install.



Softwares recommended to install have vin their checkboxes by default. Configure them as needed.

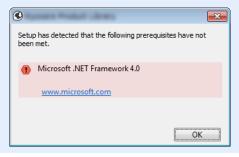


2 Click [Install].

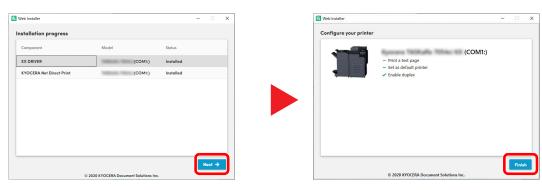
When [Install] is clicked, a screen which asks for cooperation for data collection may appear. Select one of the answer choices and click [OK].



- If the Windows security window appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].
- · To install Status Monitor for Windows 8.1, it is necessary to install Microsoft.NET Framework 4.0 beforehand.



Finish the installation.



Click [Next] > [Finish] to finish the installation wizard.

If a system restart message appears, restart the computer by following the screen prompts. This completes the printer driver installation procedure.

If you are installing the TWAIN driver, continue by configuring the following:

Setting TWAIN Driver (page 2-61)

Uninstalling the Software

Perform the following procedure to delete the Software from your computer.



Uninstallation on Windows must be done by a user logged on with administrator privileges.

Display the screen.

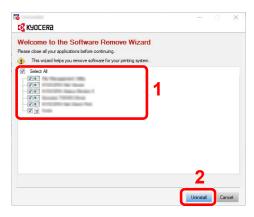
Click Search box in taskbar, and enter "Uninstall Kyocera Product Library" in the search box. Select [Uninstall Kyocera Product Library] in the search list.



In Windows 8.1, click [Search] in charms, and enter "Uninstall Kyocera Product Library" in the search box. Select [Uninstall Kyocera Product Library] in the search list.

Uninstall the software.

Place a check in the check box of the software to be deleted.



Finish uninstalling.

If a system restart message appears, restart the computer by following the screen prompts. This completes the software uninstallation procedure.



The software can also be uninstalled using Web Installer. In the screen of Web Installer, click [Uninstall], and follow the on-screen instructions to uninstall the software.

Installing Software in Mac Computer

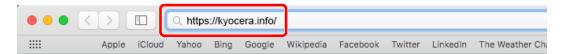
Printer driver for Macintosh can be installed.

NOTE

- Installation on Mac OS must be done by a user logged on with administrator privileges.
- When printing from a Macintosh computer, set the machine's emulation to [KPDL] or [KPDL(Auto)].
 - → Printer (page 8-47)
- If connecting by Bonjour, enable Bonjour in the machine's network settings.
 - → Bonjour (page 8-64)
- In the Authenticate screen, enter the name and password used to log in to the operating system.
- When printing via AirPrint, you do not have to install the software.

Download a software from the website.

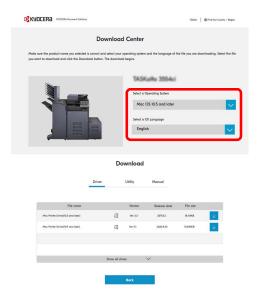
- 1 Launch a web browser.
- 2 Enter "https://kyocera.info/" into the address bar.



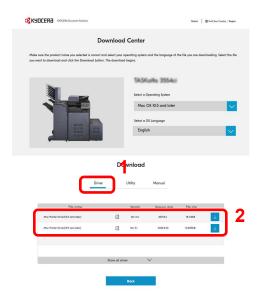
3 Enter and search the product name, and select this product from the candidate list.



4 Change the selected operating system and its language setting as needed.



5 Driver tab > "Mac Printer Driver(x.x and later)"
An installer of the selected software will be downloaded.



2 Install the Printer Driver.

Double click to launch the downloaded installer.



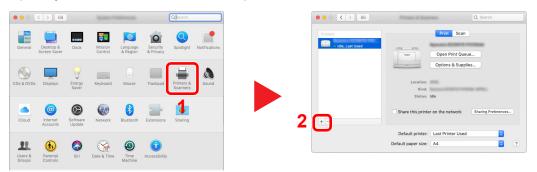
Install the printer driver as directed by the instructions in the installation software.

This completes the printer driver installation.

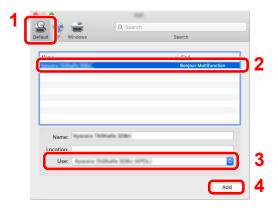
If a USB connection is used, the machine is automatically recognized and connected. If an IP connection is used, the settings below are required.

? Configure the printer.

1 Open System Preferences and add the printer.



2 Select [Default] and click the item that appears in "Name" and then select the driver in "Use".



The selected machine is added.



NOTE

When using an IP connection, click the IP icon for an IP connection and then enter the host name or IP address. The number entered in "Address" will automatically appear in "Name". Change if needed.

3 Select the printer added newly, and click the [**Options & Supplies...**] to select the options equipped with the machine.



Setting TWAIN Driver

Register this machine to the TWAIN Driver. Instructions are based on interface elements as they appear in Windows 10.

Display the screen.

1 Click Search box in taskbar, and enter "TWAIN Driver Setting" in the search box. Select [TWAIN Driver Setting] in the search list.

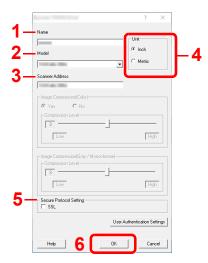


In Windows 8.1, Click [Search] in charms, and enter "TWAIN Driver Setting" in the search box. Select [TWAIN Driver Setting] in the search list.

2 Click [Add].



Configure TWAIN Driver.



- 1 Enter the machine name.
- 2 Select this machine from the list.
- 3 Enter the machine's IP address or host name.
- 4 Set units of measurement.
- 5 When using SSL, select the checkbox beside SSL.
- 6 Click [OK].



When the machine's IP address or host name is unknown, contact Administrator.

Finish registering.





Click [Delete] to delete the added machine. Click [Edit] to change names.

Setting WIA Driver

Register this machine to the WIA Driver. Instructions are based on interface elements as they appear in Windows 10.

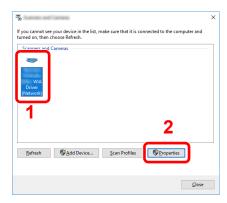
Display the screen.

1 Click Search box in taskbar, and enter "View scanners and cameras" in the search box. Select [View scanners and cameras] in the search list then the Scanners and Cameras screen appears.

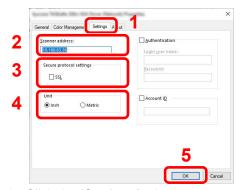
NOTE

In Windows 8.1, click [Search] in charms, and enter "View scanners and cameras" in the search box. Select [View scanners and cameras] in the search list then the Scanners and Cameras screen appears.

Select the same name as this machine from WIA Drivers, and click [Properties].



Configure WIA Driver.



- 1 Click the [Settings] tab.
- 2 Enter the machine IP addresses or host name.
- 3 When using SSL, select the checkbox beside SSL.
- Set units of measurement.
- 5 Click [OK].

Checking the Counter

Check the number of sheets printed and scanned.

- **Display the screen.**[Home] key > [...] > [Counter]
- Check the counter.

Additional Preparations for the Administrator

In addition to the information provided in this chapter, the administrator of this machine should check the following, and configure the settings as needed.

Sending Documents to a PC

To Send to a Shared Folder (Send to Folder (SMB))

To send a document that has been loaded, you need to create a shared folder to receive the document on your computer.

▶ Preparation for Sending a Document to a Shared Folder in a PC (page 3-24)

To E-mail Scanned Images (Send as E-mail)

You can send a scanned original image as an E-mail attachment.

E-mail Settings (page 2-71)

Strengthening the Security

This machine is shipped with two default users registered one with Machine Administrator rights, and another with Administrator rights. Logging in as this user will allow you to configure all settings; therefore, please change the login user name and password.

In addition, this machine is equipped with user authentication function, which can be configured to limit the access to this machine to only those who have a registered login name and password.

User Authentication and Accounting (User Login, Job Accounting) (page 9-1)



NOTE

Protection of confidential information by TPM

This product is equipped with the security chip called TPM (Trusted Platform Module). The encryption key used to encrypt confidential information on this machine is stored in a dedicated storage area on the TPM chip. Since this storage area cannot be read from outside the TPM, confidential information can be safely protected.

I want to	Function	Reference page
Restrict the users of the machine.	User Login	9-2
	Authentication Security	9-4
	Auto Panel Reset	8-7
	ID Card Settings*1	9-28
Restrict the basic functions that can be	Local Authorization	9-16
used.	Group Authorization Set.	9-18
	Guest Authorization Set.	9-20
Prevent another user from handling the documents stored in the machine.	Custom Box	5-55
Output the document stored in the machine at the time when user operates the device via operation panel.	Remote Printing	8-49

I want to	Function	Reference page
Prevent the data stored in the machine	Data Overwrite ^{*2}	Refer to the
from being leaked.	Encryption*2	Data Encryption/ Overwrite Operation Guide.
	PDF Encryption Functions	6-77
Completely delete the data on the machine before disposing of the machine.	Data Sanitization	8-74
Record the operation history of users.	Login History Settings	8-29
	Device Log History Settings	8-30
	Secure Comm. Error Log	8-31
Protect the transmission from interception	IPP over SSL	8-61
and wiretapping.	HTTPS	8-62
	LDAP Security	Refer to the Command Center RX User Guide.
	SMTP Security	8-40
	POP3 Security	8-40
	FTP Encrypted TX	6-84
	Enhanced WSD (SSL)	8-62
	IPSec	8-65
	SNMPv3	8-62
Verify the software in the machine.	Software Verification	8-72
Preventing from execution of the unauthorized programs	Allowlisting	8-72

^{*1} The optional Card Authentication Kit is required.

^{*2} It is necessary to activate the Data Security Function.

Command Center RX

If the machine is connected to the network, you can configure various settings using Command Center RX.

This section explains how to access Command Center RX, and how to change security settings and the host name.

Command Center RX User Guide



To fully access the features of the Command Center RX pages, enter the User Name and Password and click [Login]. Entering the predefined administrator password allows the user to access all pages, including Document Box, Address Book, and Settings on the navigation menu. The factory default setting for the default user with administrator privileges is shown below. (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).)

Login User Name: **Admin**

Login Password: xxxxxxxxx (Serial Number) → Checking the Equipment's Serial Number (page i)

Settings that the administrator and general users can configure in Command Center RX are as follows.

Setting	Description	Administ- rator	General User
Device Information/ Remote Operation	The machine's structure can be checked.	0	0
Job Status	Displays all device information, including print and scan jobs, storing jobs, scheduled jobs, and job log history.	0	0
Document Box	Add or delete document boxes, or delete documents within a document box.	0	○*1
Address Book	Create, edit, or delete addresses and address groups.	0	O*1
Device Settings	Configure the advanced settings of the machine.	0	_
Function Settings	Configure the advanced function settings.	0	_
Network Settings	Configure the network advanced settings.	0	_
Security Settings	Configure the security advanced settings.	0	_
Management Settings	Configure the advanced management settings.	0	_

^{*1} The logged in user may not be able to configure some settings, depending on the permissions of the user.



NOTE

The optional FAX Kit is required in order to make use of fax functionality. Here, information on the FAX settings has been omitted.

FAX Operation Guide

Accessing Command Center RX

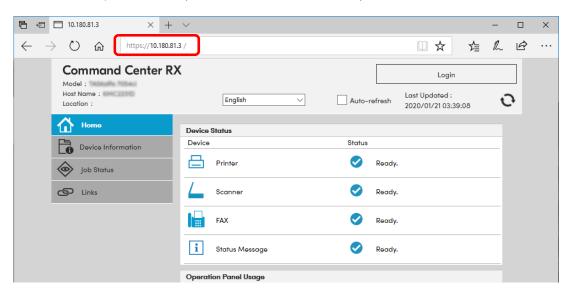
Display the screen.

- 1 Launch your Web browser.
- 2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.
 Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.

[Device Information] in the home screen > [Identification/Wired Network]

Examples: https://10.180.81.3/ (for IP address)

https://MFP001 (if the host name is "MFP001")



The web page displays basic information about the machine and Command Center RX as well as their current status.

NOTE

If the screen "There is a problem with this website's security certificate." is displayed, configure the certificate.

Command Center RX User Guide

You can also continue the operation without configuring the certificate.

Configure the function.

Select a category from the navigation bar on the left of the screen.

NOTE

To fully access the features of the Command Center RX pages, enter the User Name and Password and click [**Login**]. Entering the predefined administrator password allows the user to access all pages, including Document Box, Address Book, and Settings on the navigation menu. The factory default setting for the default user with administrator privileges is shown below. (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).)

Login User Name: Admin

Login Password: xxxxxxxxxx (Serial Number)

➤ Checking the Equipment's Serial Number (page i)

Changing Security Settings

Display the screen.

- 1 Launch your Web browser.
- 2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.
 Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.
 [Device Information] in the home screen > [Identification/Wired Network]
- 3 Log in with administrator privileges.



The factory default setting for the default user with administrator privileges is shown below. (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).)

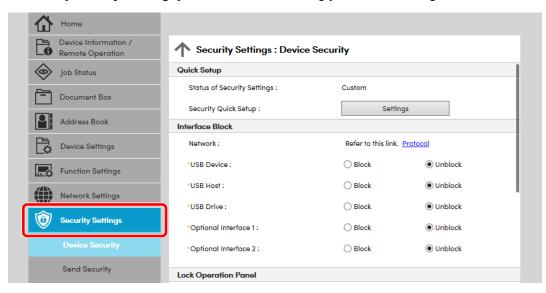
Login User Name: Admin

Login Password: xxxxxxxxx (Serial Number)

- → Checking the Equipment's Serial Number (page 1-i)
- 4 Click [Security Settings].

Configure the Security Settings.

From the [Security Settings] menu, select the setting you want to configure.



NOTE

For details on settings related to certificates, refer to the following:

Command Center RX User Guide

Changing Device Information

Display the screen.

- 1 Launch your Web browser.
- 2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.
 Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.
 [Device Information] in the home screen > [Identification/Wired Network]
- 3 Log in with administrator privileges.

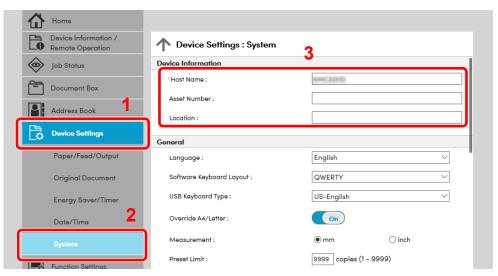


The factory default setting for the default user with administrator privileges is shown below. (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).)

Login User Name: Admin

Login Password: xxxxxxxxx (Serial Number)

- → Checking the Equipment's Serial Number (page 1-i)
- 4 From the [Device Settings] menu, click [System].



Specify the host name.

Enter the device information, and then click [Submit].



After changing the setting, restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON. To restart the network interface card, click [Reset] in the [Management Settings] menu, and then click [Restart Network] in "Restart".

E-mail Settings

By configuring the SMTP settings, it is possible to send the images scanned by the machine as E-mail attachments and to send E-mail notices when jobs have been completed.

To use this function, this machine must be connected to a mail server using the SMTP protocol.

In addition, configure the following.

SMTP settings
 Item: "SMTP Protocol" and "SMTP Server Name" in "SMTP"

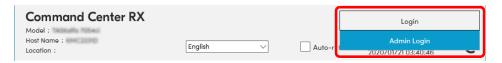
- The sender address when the machine sends E-mails Item: "Sender Address" in "E-mail Send Settings"
- The setting to limit the size of E-mails
 Item: "E-mail Size Limit" in "E-mail Send Settings"

The procedure for specifying the SMTP settings is explained below.

Display the screen.

Display the SMTP Protocol screen.

- 1 Launch your Web browser.
- 2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.
 Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.
 [Device Information] in the home screen > [Identification/Wired Network]
- 3 Log in with administrator privileges.



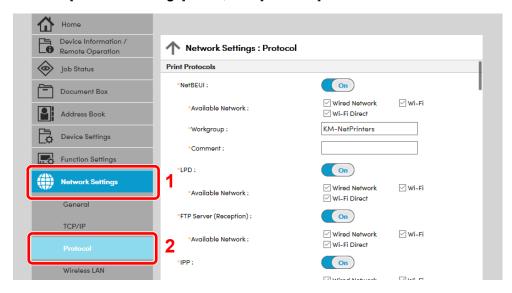
The factory default setting for the default user with administrator privileges is shown below. (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).)

Login User Name: Admin

Login Password: xxxxxxxxx (Serial Number)

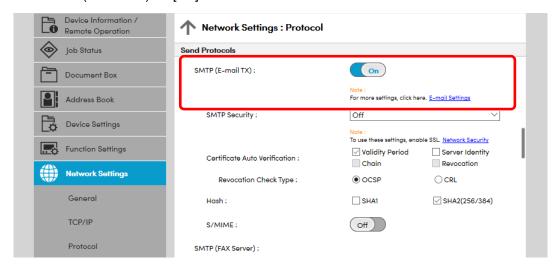
Checking the Equipment's Serial Number (page 1-i)

4 From the [Network Settings] menu, click [Protocol].



Configure the settings.

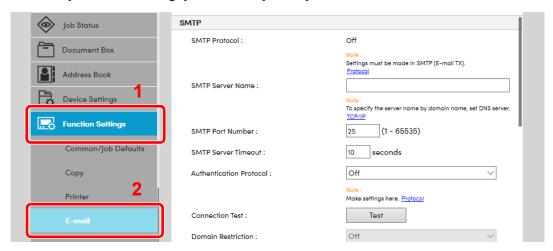
Set "SMTP (E-mail TX)" to [On] in the "Send Protocols".



3 Display the screen.

Display the E-mail Settings screen.

From the [Function Settings] menu, click [E-mail].



Configure the settings.

Enter "SMTP" and "E-mail Send Settings" items.

	Setting	Description
SMTP		Set to send e-mail from the machine.
	SMTP Protocol	Displays the SMTP protocol settings. Check that "SMTP Protocol" is set to [On]. If [Off] is set, click [Protocol] and set the SMTP protocol to [On].
	SMTP Server Name*1	Enter the host name or IP address of the SMTP server.
	SMTP Port Number	Specify the port number to be used for SMTP. The default port number is 25.
	SMTP Server Timeout	Set the amount of time to wait before time-out in seconds.
	Authentication Protocol	To use SMTP authentication, enter the user information for authentication.
	SMTP Security	Set SMTP security.
		Turn on "SMTP Security" in "SMTP (E-mail TX)" on the [Protocol Settings] page.
	Connection Test	Tests to confirm that the E-mail function is operating under the settings without sending a mail.
	Domain Restriction	To restrict the domains, click the [Domain List] and enter the domain names of addresses to be allowed or rejected. Restriction can also be specified by e-mail address.

Setting		Description	
POP3	POP3 Protocol	You don't need to set the following items when you only enable the function of	
	Check Interval	sending e-mail from the machine. Set the following items if you want to enable the function of receiving e-mail on the machine.	
	Run once now	→ Command Center RX User Guide	
	Domain Restriction		
	POP3 User Settings		
E-mail Send Settings	E-mail Size Limit	Enter the maximum size of E-mail that can be sent in kilobytes. When E-mail size is greater than this value, an error message appears and E-mail sending is cancelled. Use this setting if you have set E-mail Size Limit for SMTP server. If not, enter a value of 0 (zero) to enable E-mail sending regardless of the size limit.	
	Sender Address ^{*1}	Specify the sender address for when the machine sends E-mails, such as the machine administrator, so that a reply or non-delivery report will go to a person rather than to the machine. The sender address must be entered correctly for SMTP authentication. The maximum length of the sender address is 256 characters.	
	Signature	Enter the signature. The signature is free form text that will appear at the end of the E-mail body. It is often used for further identification of the machine. The maximum length of the signature is 512 characters.	
	Function Defaults	Change the function default settings in [Common/Job Default Settings] page.	

^{*1} Be sure to enter the items.

5 Click [Submit].

Registering Destinations

Display the screen.

- 1 Launch your Web browser.
- 2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.
 Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.
 [Device Information] in the home screen > [Identification/Wired Network]
- 3 Log in with administrator privileges.

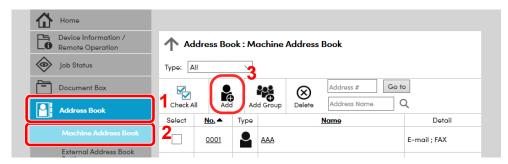


The factory default setting for the default user with administrator privileges is shown below. (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).)

Login User Name: Admin

Login Password: xxxxxxxxx (Serial Number)

- → Checking the Equipment's Serial Number (page 1-i)
- 4 From the [Address Book] menu, click [Machine Address Book].



5 Click [Add].

2 Populate the fields.

1 Enter the destination information.

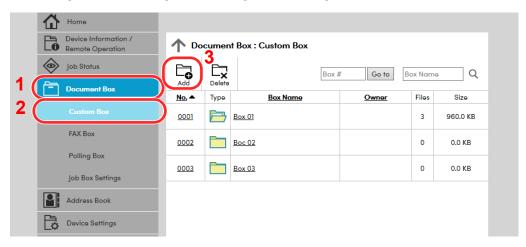
Enter the information for the destination you want to register. The fields to populate are the same as when registering via operation panel.

- → Registering Destinations in the Address Book (page 3-38)
- 2 Click [Submit].

Creating a New Custom Box

Display the screen.

- 1 Launch your Web browser.
- 2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.
 Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.
 [Device Information] in the home screen > [Identification/Wired Network]
- 3 From the [Document Box] menu, click [Custom Box].



4 Click [Add].

Configure the Custom Box.

1 Enter the box details.

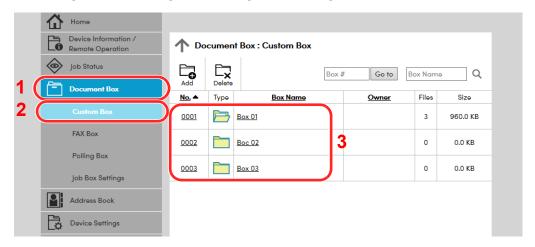
Enter the information for the custom box you want to register. For details on the fields to populate, refer to the following:

- Command Center RX User Guide
- 2 Click [Submit].

Printing a Document Stored in a Custom Box

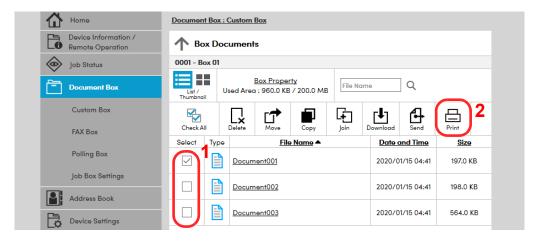
Display the screen.

- 1 Launch your Web browser.
- 2 In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.
 Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.
 [Device Information] in the home screen > [Identification/Wired Network]
- 3 From the [Document Box] menu, click [Custom Box].



4 Click the number or name of the Custom Box in which the document is stored.

Print the document.



- Select the document you wish to print.
 Select the checkbox of the document to be printed.
- 2 Click [Print].
- 3 Configure settings for printing, click [Print].

Transferring Data from Our Other Products

By using the machine's utility, you can smoothly migrate address books when the machine is to be replaced.

This section explains how to transfer data between our products.

Migrating the Address Book

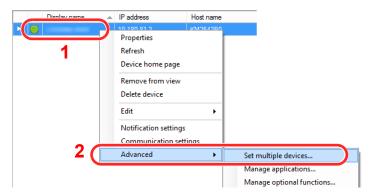
The Address Book registered on the machine can be backed up or migrated using the KYOCERA Net Viewer downloaded from our website.

For details on operating the KYOCERA Net Viewer, refer to the following:

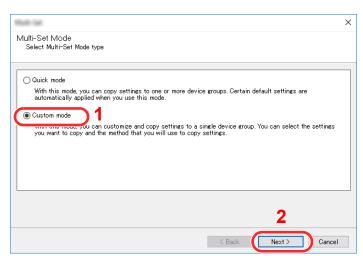
KYOCERA Net Viewer User Guide

Backing Up Address Book Data to PC

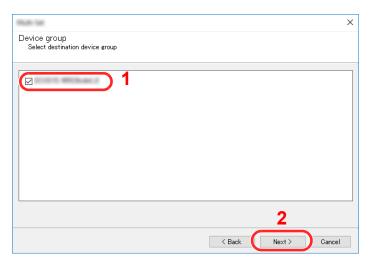
- Launch the KYOCERA Net Viewer.
- Create a backup.
 - 1 Right-click on the model name from which you want to back up the Address Book, and select [Advanced] - [Set multiple devices].



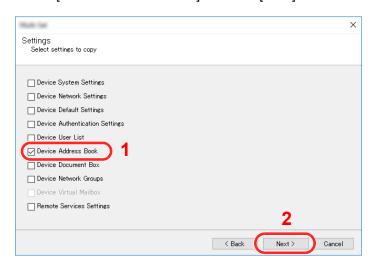
2 Select [Custom mode] and click [Next].



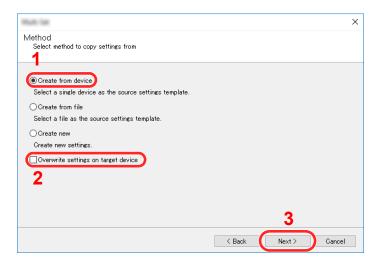
3 Select destination device group and click [Next].



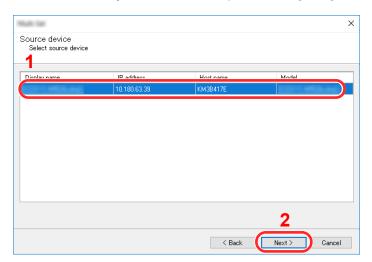
4 Select [Device Address Book] and click [Next].



5 Select [Create from device] and remove the checkmark from [Overwrite settings on target device], and then click [Next].



6 Select the model you want to back up, and click [Next].



NOTE

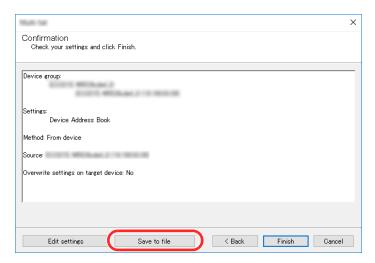
If the "Admin Login" screen appears, enter the "Admin Login" and "Login Password", and then click [**OK**]. The default settings are as follows (Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive)).

Login User Name: Admin

Login Password: xxxxxxxxx (Serial Number)

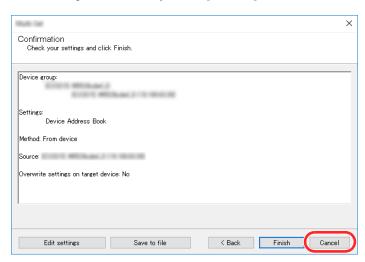
Checking the Equipment's Serial Number (page i)

7 Click on [Save to file].



8 Specify the location to save the file, enter the file name, and then click [Save].
For "Save as type", make sure to select "XML File".

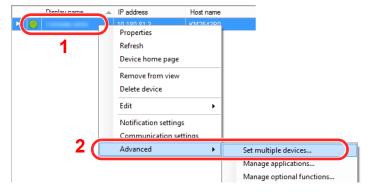
9 After saving the file, always click [Cancel] to close the screen.



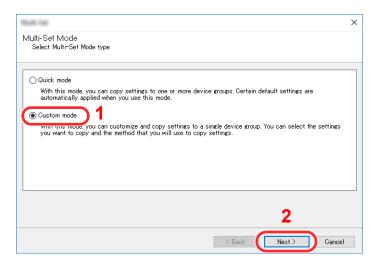
Please note that selecting [Finish] will write the data to the machine's Address Book.

Writing Address Book Data to the Machine

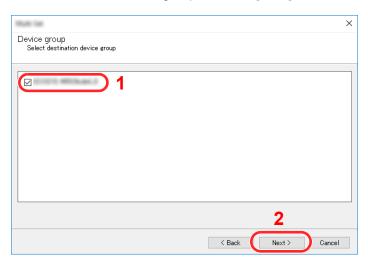
- Launch the KYOCERA Net Viewer.
- Load the Address Book data.
 - 1 Right-click on the model name to which you want to transfer the Address Book, and select [Advanced] [Set multiple devices].



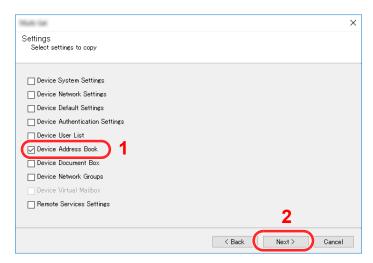
2 Select [Custom Mode] and click [Next].



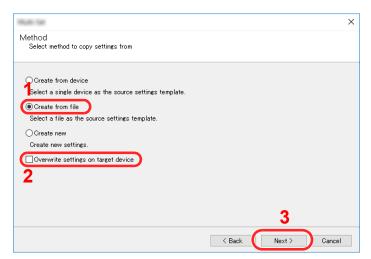
3 Select destination device group and click [Next].



4 Select [Device Address Book] and click [Next].

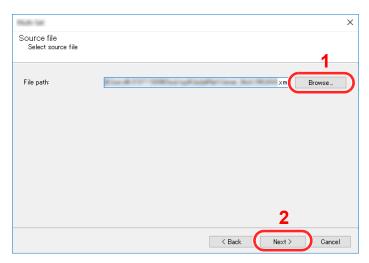


5 Select [Create from file] and remove the checkmark from [Overwrite settings on target device], and then click [Next].

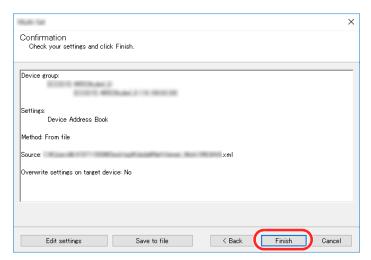


Selecting the [Overwrite settings on target device] checkbox will overwrite the machine's Address Book from entry No.1.

6 Click [Browse] and select the backup Address Book file, and then click [Next].



7 Click [Finish].



The write process of the Address Book data starts.

8 Once the write process is complete, click [Close].

3 Preparation before Use

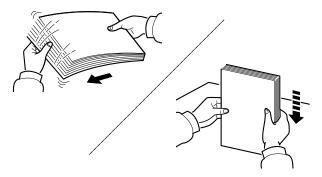
This chapter explains the following operations.

Loading Paper	
Precaution for Loading Paper	3-2
Selecting the Paper Feeder Units	3-3
Loading in Cassette 1	3-4
Loading in Cassette 2	3-7
Loading Envelopes or Cardstock in the Cassettes	3-10
Loading in the Large Capacity Feeder	3-14
Loading in the Side Feeder	3-16
Loading in the Inserter	3-18
Precautions for Outputting Paper	3-19
Paper Stopper	3-19
Envelope Stack Guide	3-19
Stack Level Adjuster	3-20
Folding Unit (For 4,000-sheet Finisher)	3-22
Folding Unit (For 100-sheet Staple Finisher)	
Preparation for Sending a Document to a Shared Folder in a PC	3-24
Making a Note of the Computer Name and Full Computer Name	
Making a Note of the User Name and Domain Name	
Creating a Shared Folder, Making a Note of a Shared Folder	3-25
Configuring Windows Firewall	
Scan to Folder Setup Tool for SMB	3-33
Registering Destinations in the Address Book	3-38
Adding a Destination (Address Book)	3-38
Adding a Destination on One Touch Key	3-45

Loading Paper

Precaution for Loading Paper

When you open a new package of paper, fan the sheets to separate them slightly prior to loading in the following steps.



Fan the paper, then tap it on a level surface.

In addition, note the following points.

- If the paper is curled or folded, straighten it before loading. Paper that is curled or folded may cause a jam.
- Avoid exposing opened paper to high humidity as dampness can be a cause of problems. Seal any remaining paper after loading in the multipurpose tray or cassettes back in the paper storage bag.
- Leaving paper in the cassette for a long time may cause a discoloration of paper by heat from the cassette heater.
- If the machine will not be used for a prolonged period, protect all paper from humidity by removing it from the cassettes and sealing it in the paper storage bag.



IMPORTANT

If you copy onto used paper (paper already used for printing), do not use paper that is stapled or clipped together. This may damage the machine or cause poor image quality.



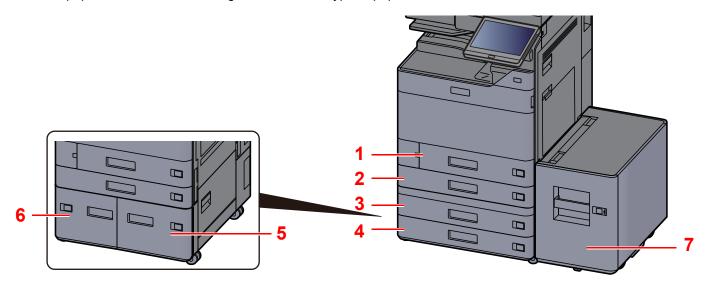
NOTE

If you use special paper such as letterhead, paper with holes or paper with pre-prints like logo or company name, refer to the following:

Paper (page 11-13)

Selecting the Paper Feeder Units

Select the paper feeder units according to the size and type of paper.



No.	Name	Paper Size	Paper Type	Capacity	Page	
1	Cassette 1	A4-R, A4, A5-R, A5, A6-R, B5-R, B5, B6-R, 216×340 mm, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Executive, Oficio II, Folio, 16K-R, 16K, ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard), Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Nagagata 3, Custom 1 to 4	Plain, Rough, Vellum, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Envelope, Thick, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8	500 sheets (80 g/m ²)	3-4	
2	Cassette 2	A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, A5, A6-R, B4, B5-R, B5, B6-R, 216×340 mm, SRA3, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Executive, 12×18", Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K, ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard), Kakugata 2, Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Nagagata 3, Custom 1 to 4				
3	Cassette 3					
4	Cassette 4					
5	Cassette 3	A4, Letter, B5 (Fixed to one of sizes.)	,	Plain, Rough, Vellum, Recycled,	1,500 sheets (80 g/m ²)	3-14
6	Cassette 4		Preprinted, Bond, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8	(ou g/III)		
7	Cassette 5			3,000 sheets (80 g/m ²)	3-16	

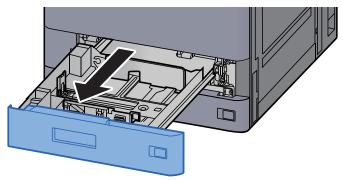
NOTE

- The number of sheets that can be held varies depending on your environment and paper type.
- You should not use inkjet printer paper or any paper with a special surface coating. (Such paper may cause paper jams or other faults.)
- For higher quality color printing, use special color paper.

Loading in Cassette 1

Load the paper in Cassette. The procedures here represent the Cassette 1.

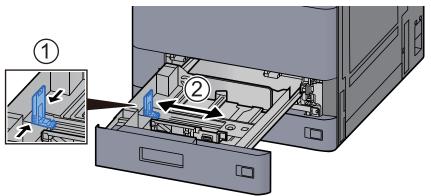
Pull the cassette completely out of the machine.



NOTE

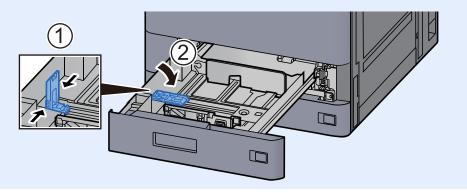
Do not pull out more than one cassette at a time.

Adjust the paper length guide to the paper size required.

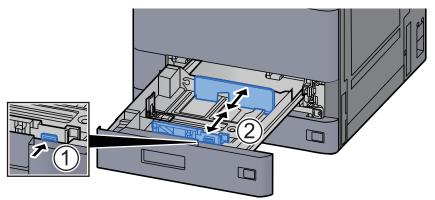


NOTE

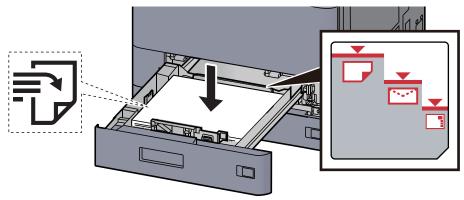
When using Legal size paper, move the paper length guide to the extreme left and lay it down.



3 Adjust the position of the paper width guides located on the left and right sides of the cassette.



Load paper.

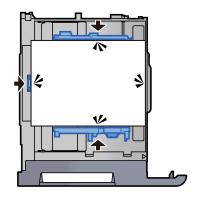


⊘ IMPORTANT

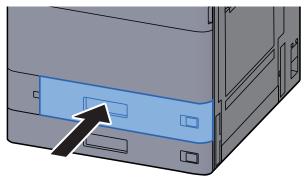
- · Load the paper with the print side facing up.
- After removing new paper from its packaging, fan the paper before loading it in the cassette.
 - ▶ Precaution for Loading Paper (page 3-2)
- Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded. Paper that is curled or folded may cause paper jams.
- Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicator (see illustration above).
- If paper is loaded without adjusting the paper length guide and paper width guide, the paper may skew or become jammed.

5 Be sure that the paper length and width guides rest securely against the paper.

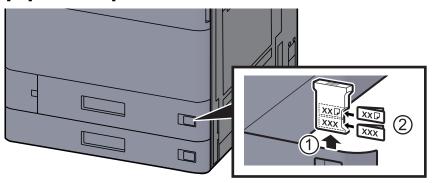
If there is a gap, readjust the guides to fit the paper.



Gently push the cassette back in.



7 Insert the indication on the sheet so as to match the size and type of paper to be placed.



8 Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Setting] > [Paper Feeding] > [Cassette 1]

Configure the function.

Select the paper size and paper type.

→ Cassette 1 (to 5) Settings (page 8-13)

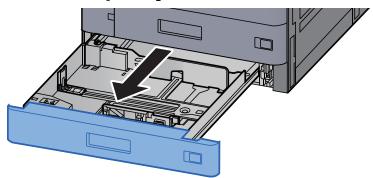
NOTE

Paper size can be automatically detected and selected, refer to the following.

- ▶ Paper Selection (page 6-20)
- → Cassette 1 (to 5) Settings (page 8-13)

Loading in Cassette 2

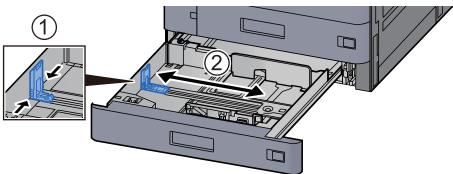
Pull the cassette completely out of the machine.



NOTE

Do not pull out more than one cassette at a time.

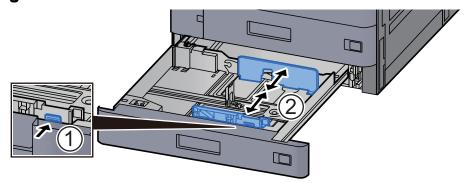
Adjust the paper length guide to the paper size required.



NOTE

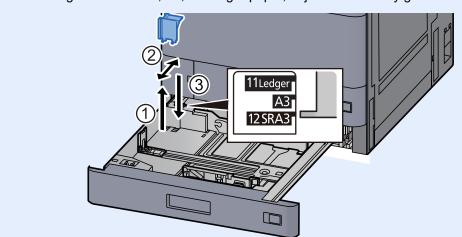
When using 12×18" size paper, move the paper length guide to the extreme left and lay it down.

3 Adjust the position of the paper width guides located on the left and right sides of the cassette.

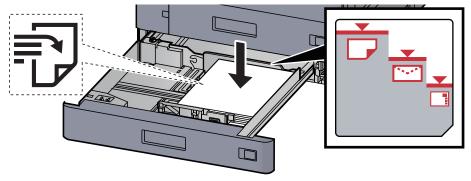


NOTE

When using SRA3/12×18", A3, or Ledger paper, adjust the auxiliary guide accordingly.



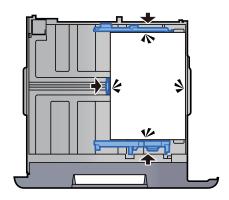
Load paper.



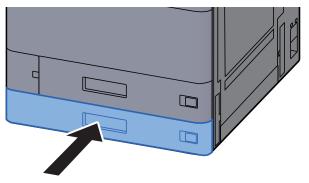
- Load the paper with the print side facing up.
- After removing new paper from its packaging, fan the paper before loading it in the cassette.
 - ▶ Precaution for Loading Paper (page 3-2)
- Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded. Paper that is curled or folded may cause paper jams.
- Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicator (see illustration above).
- If paper is loaded without adjusting the paper length guide and paper width guide, the paper may skew or become jammed.

5 Be sure that the paper length and width guides rest securely against the paper.

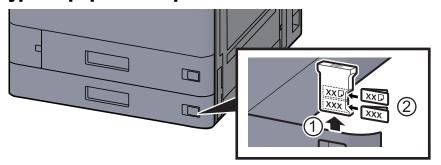
If there is a gap, readjust the guides to fit the paper.



Gently push the cassette back in.



7 Insert the indication on the sheet so as to match the size and type of paper to be placed.



R Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Setting] > [Paper Feeding] > [Cassette 2]

Configure the function.

Select the paper size and paper type.

→ Cassette 1 (to 5) Settings (page 8-13)

NOTE

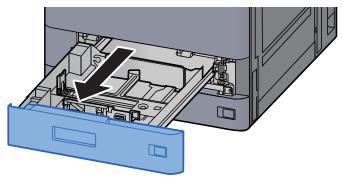
Paper size can be automatically detected and selected, refer to the following.

- → Paper Selection (page 6-20)
- Cassette 1 (to 5) Settings (page 8-13)

Loading Envelopes or Cardstock in the Cassettes

Load envelope or cardstock in the cassettes. Here, we'll explain the procedures for cassette 1, as an example.

Pull Cassette 1 completely out of the machine.

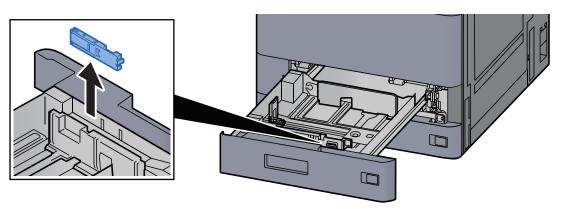


NOTE

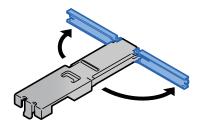
Do not pull out more than one cassette at a time.

Remove the envelope feed guide.

When loading cardstock, go to step 5.

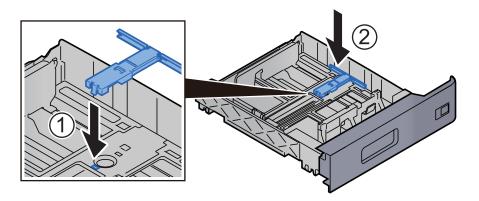


3 Expand the lever of the envelope feed guide when loading envelopes larger than Envelope C5 which has a width of 162 mm (6.4").

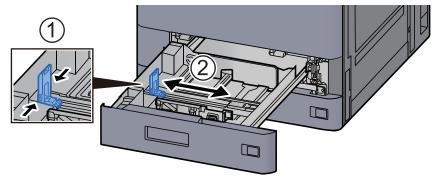


Attach the envelope feed guide as shown in the illustration.

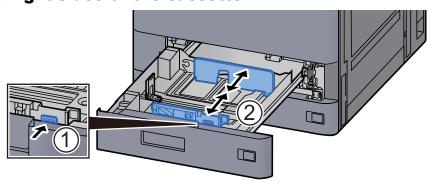
The illustration below shows that the lever of the envelope feed guide is expanded.



5 Adjust the paper length guide to the paper size required.

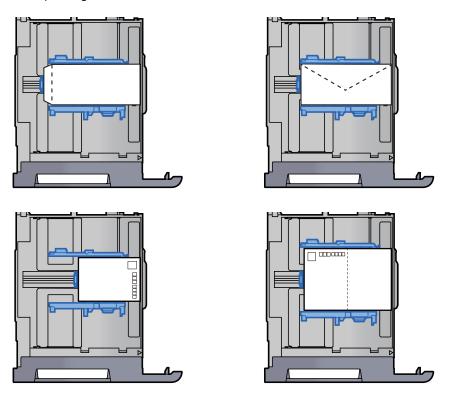


Adjust the position of the paper width guides located on the left and right sides of the cassette.



Load the envelope with the print side facing up.

Example: When printing the address.



⊘ IMPORTANT

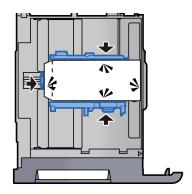
- · How to load envelopes (orientation and facing) will differ depending on the type of envelope. Be sure to load it in correctly, otherwise printing may be done in the wrong direction or on the wrong face.
- Ensure that loaded envelopes do not exceed the level indicator.



Approximately 100 post cards or 30 envelopes can be set.

Be sure that the paper length and width guides rest securely 8 against the paper.

If there is a gap, readjust the guides to fit the paper.



Gently push Cassette 1 back in.

1 Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Setting] > [Paper Feeding] > [Cassette 1]

11 Configure the function.

Select the paper size and type of envelope.

→ Cassette 1 (to 5) Settings (page 8-13)

1 9 Set by using the printer driver on the PC.

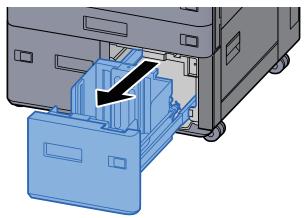
Select the paper size and type of envelope using the printer driver on the PC.

- → Printing on Standard Sized Paper (page 4-4)
- → Printing on Non-standard Sized Paper (page 4-6)

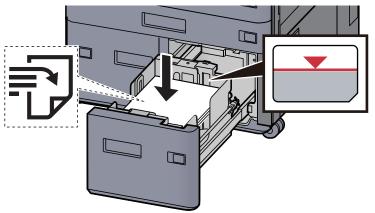
Loading in the Large Capacity Feeder

The procedures here represent the cassette 3.

Pull the cassette completely out of the machine.



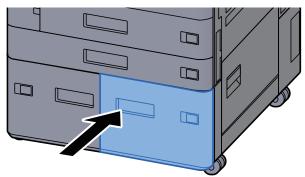
2 Load paper.



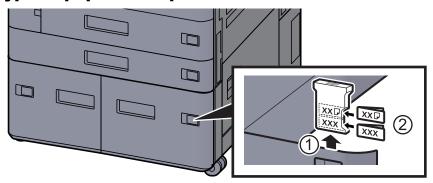
⊘ IMPORTANT

- · Load the paper with the print side facing up.
- After removing new paper from its packaging, fan the paper before loading it in the cassette.
 - → Precaution for Loading Paper (page 3-2)
- Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded. Paper that is curled or folded may cause paper jams.
- Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicator.

Gently push the cassette back in.



Insert the indication on the sheet so as to match the size and type of paper to be placed.



5 Display the screen.

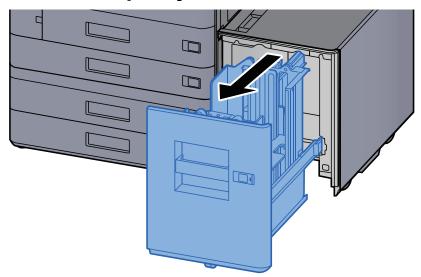
[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Setting] > [Paper Feeding] > [Cassette 3]

6 Configure the function.

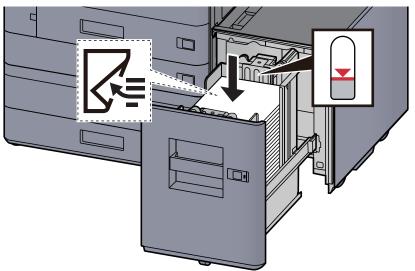
Select the paper type.

Loading in the Side Feeder

Pull the cassette completely out of the machine.



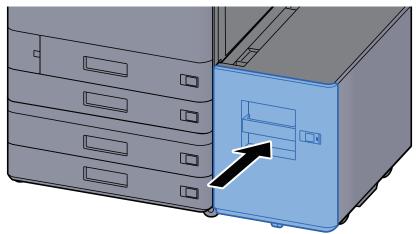
Load paper.



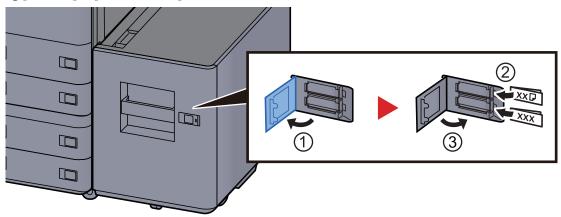
⋈ IMPORTANT

- · Load the paper with the print side facing down.
- After removing new paper from its packaging, fan the paper before loading it in the cassette.
 - ▶ Precaution for Loading Paper (page 3-2)
- Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded. Paper that is curled or folded may cause paper jams.
- Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicator.

Gently push the cassette back in.



Insert the indication on the sheet so as to match the size and type of paper to be placed.



5 Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Setting] > [Paper Feeding] > [Cassette 5]

6 Configure the function.

Select the paper type.

→ Cassette 1 (to 5) Settings (page 8-13)

Loading in the Inserter

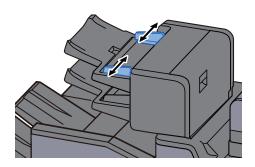
Item	Paper Size	Paper Type	No. Sheets
Inserter Tray 1 Inserter Tray 2	A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, B4, B5R, B5, Folio, SRA3, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement, 12×18", Executive, Oficio II, 8K,16K, 16K-R, ISO B5, custom1~4 (148 × 210~320 × 457 mm)	Plain, Thin, recycled, Preprint, Bond, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8	250 sheets (64 g/m2)

◯ NOTE

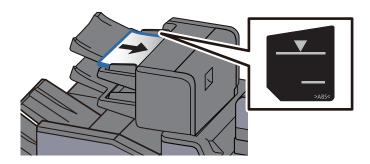
- The number of sheets that can be held varies depending on your environment and paper type.
- · You should not use inkjet printer paper or any paper with a special surface coating. (Such paper may cause paper jams or other faults.)

Load paper in the inserter tray. Here, the inserter tray 1 is used as an example.

Adjust the inserter tray size.



Load paper.



IMPORTANT

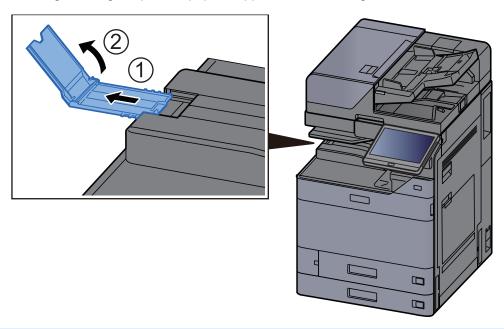
- · Load the paper with the surface side facing up.
- · Paper loading method when Booklet setting is set, refer to the following:
 - → Booklet (page 6-47)
- · After removing new paper from its packaging, fan the paper before loading it in the
 - Precaution for Loading Paper (page 3-2)
- Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded. Paper that is curled or folded may cause paper jams.
- Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicator.

Upper: Plain paper Lower: Thick paper

Precautions for Outputting Paper

Paper Stopper

When using paper A3/Ledger or larger, open the paper stopper shown in the figure.

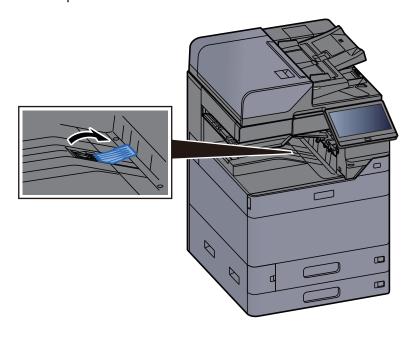


NOTE

When using the Job Separator for output, you can if needed open the paper stopper on the Job Separator.

Envelope Stack Guide

To use an envelope, open the Envelope Stack Guide as shown below.

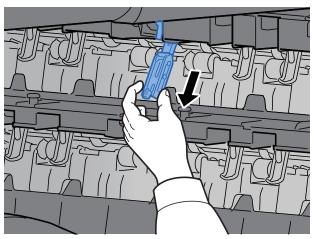


Stack Level Adjuster

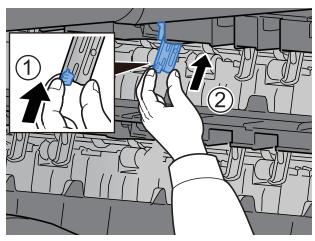
If the paper output is significantly curled, you can extend the Stack Level Adjuster as described in the figure.

Job Separator Tray

Extending the Stack Level Adjuster

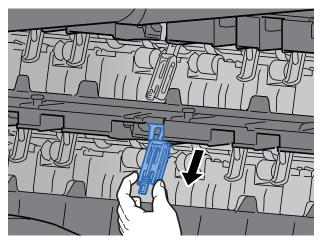


Restoring the Stack Level Adjuster

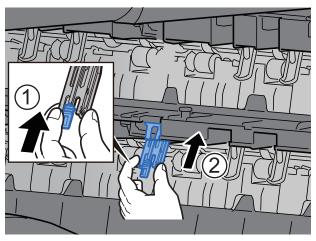


Inner Shift Tray

Extending the Stack Level Adjuster



Restoring the Stack Level Adjuster



Folding Unit (For 4,000-sheet Finisher)

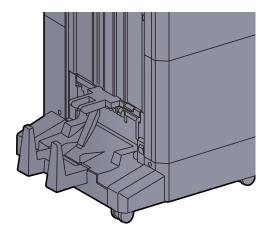
In case of ejecting number of sets exceeding the storage limit in the folding unit, detach the folding tray.



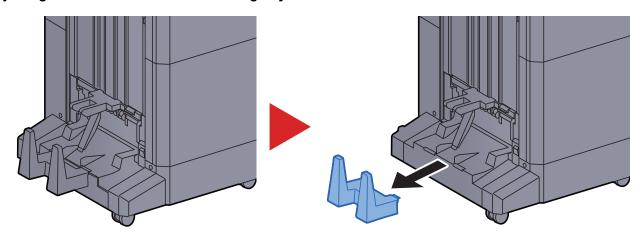
Refer to the following for maximum number for storage of folding unit.

→ Folding Unit (For 4,000-sheet Finisher) (page 11-32)

In case of ejecting to the folding tray



In case of ejecting more than the limit of the folding tray



Folding Unit (For 100-sheet Staple Finisher)

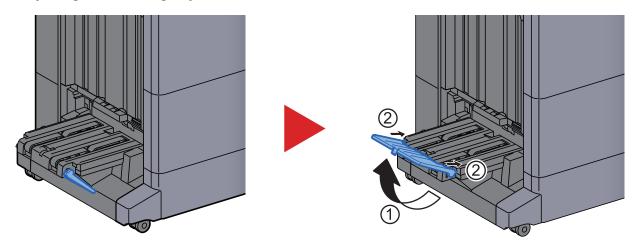
In case of ejecting nunmber of sets exceeding the storage limit in the folding unit, store them in the sub tray.



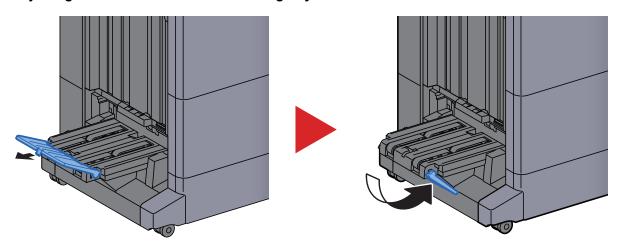
Refer to the following for maximum number for storage of folding unit.

→ Folding Unit (For 100-sheet Staple Finisher) (page 11-33)

In case of ejecting to the folding tray



In case of ejecting more than the limit of the folding tray



Preparation for Sending a Document to a Shared Folder in a PC

Check the information that needs to be set on the machine and create a folder to receive the document on your computer. Screens of Windows 10 are used in the following explanation. The details of the screens will vary in other versions of Windows.



NOTE

Log on to Windows with administrator privileges.

Making a Note of the Computer Name and Full **Computer Name**

Check the name of the computer name and full computer name.

Display the screen.

Click [Start] button on the Windows and then select [Windows System], [Control Panel], [System and Security], and [System].



NOTE

In Windows 8.1, right-click [PC] in the Start screen and select [Properties]. Or, right-click the Window icon and select [System].

Check the computer name.



Check the computer name and full computer name.

Screen example:

Computer name: PC001

Full computer name: PC001.abcdnet.com

After checking the computer name, click the [X [Close] button to close the "System" screen.

Making a Note of the User Name and Domain Name

Check the domain name and user name for logging onto Windows.

Display the screen.

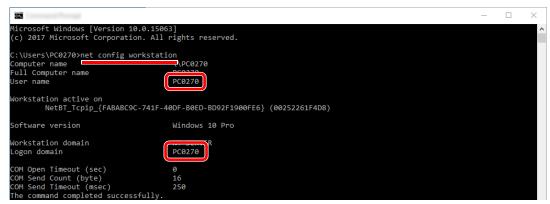
Click [Start] button on the Windows and then select [Windows System] and [Command Prompt].

In Windows 8.1, click [Search] in charms, and enter "Command Prompt" in the search box. Select [Command Prompt] in the search list.

The Command Prompt window appears.

Check the domain name and user name.

At the Command Prompt, enter "net config workstation" and then press [Enter].



Check the user name and domain name.

Screen example:

User Name: PC0270 Domain Name: PC0270

Creating a Shared Folder, Making a Note of a Shared Folder

Create a shared folder to receive the document in the destination computer.

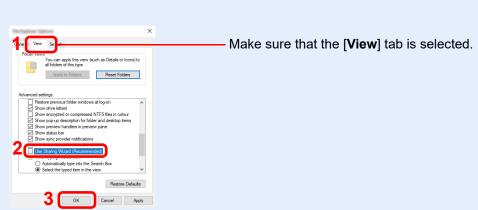
NOTE

If there is a workgroup in System Properties, configure the settings below to limit folder access to a specific user or group.

Open up a window in File Explorer and select [View], [Options], and then [Folder Options].

In Windows 8.1, select [Settings] in charms on Desktop, and select [Control Panel], [Appearance and Personalization], and then [Folder Options].

2



Remove the checkmark from [**Use Sharing Wizard (Recommended)**] in "Advanced settings".

Create a folder.

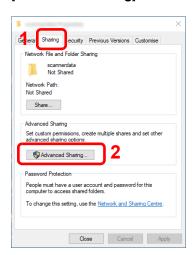
Create a folder on your computer.

For example, create a folder with the name "scannerdata" on the desktop.



Configure permission settings.

1 Right-click the "scannerdata" folder, select [Property], and click [Sharing] and [Advanced Sharing].

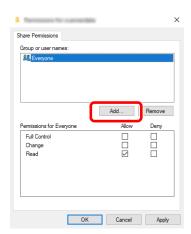


2 Select the [Share this folder] checkbox and click the [Permissions] button.

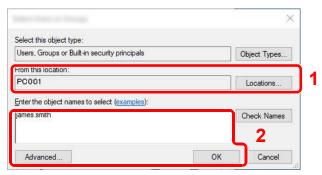


3 Make a note of the [Share name].

4 Click the [Add] button.



5 Specify the location.



1 If the computer name that you made a note of on 3-24 is the same as the domain name: If the computer name is not shown in "From this location", click the [Locations] button, select the computer name, and click the [OK] button.

Example: PC001

If the computer name that you made a note of on **3-24** is not the same as the domain name:

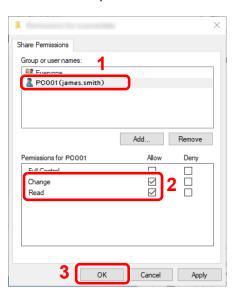
If the text after the first dot (.) in the full computer name that you made a note of does not appear in "From this location", click the [**Locations**] button, select the text after the dot (.), and click the [**OK**] button.

Example: abcdnet.com

- ▶ Making a Note of the User Name and Domain Name (page 3-24)
- 2 Enter the user name that you made a note of on page in the text box, and click the [**OK**] button.

Also the user name can be made by clicking the [**Advanced**] button and selecting a user.

6 Set the access permission for the user selected.



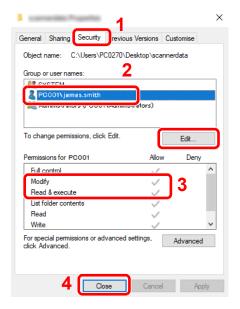
- 1 Select the user you entered.
- 2 Select the [Allow] checkbox of the "Change" and "Read" permissions
- 3 Press [OK].



NOTE

"Everyone" gives sharing permission to everyone on the network. To strengthen security, it is recommended that you select "Everyone" and remove the "Read" [Allow] checkmark.

- 7 Click the [OK] button in the "Advanced Sharing" screen to close the screen.
- 8 Check the details set in the [Security] tab.



- 1 Select the [Security] tab.
- Select the user you entered. If the user does not appear on "Group or user names", click [Edit] button to add user in a similar way of "configuration of permission settings".
- 3 Make sure that checkmarks appear on [Allow] checkbox for the "Modify" and "Read & execute" permissions.
- 4 Click the [Close] button.

Configuring Windows Firewall

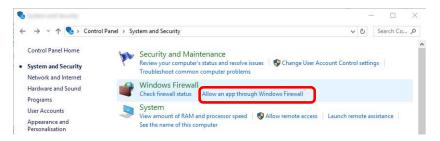
Permit sharing of files and printers and set the port used for SMB transmission.



Log on to Windows with administrator privileges.

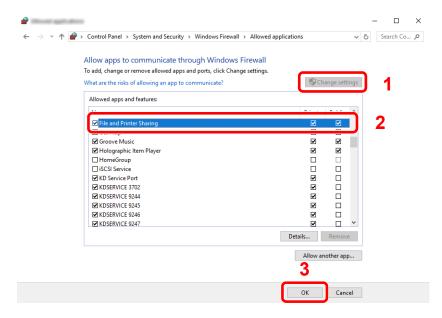
Check file and printer sharing.

1 Click [Start] button on the Windows and then select [Windows System], [Control Panel], [System and Security], and [Allow an app through Windows Firewall].



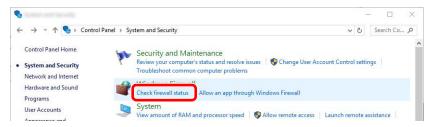
NOTE

- In Windows 8.1, in charms on Desktop, click [Settings], [Control Panel], [System and Security], and then [Windows Firewall].
- If the User Account Control dialog box appears, click the [Continue] button.
- Select the [File and Printer Sharing] checkbox.



Add a port.

1 Click [Start] button on the Windows and then select [Windows System], [Control Panel], [System and Security], and [Check firewall status].



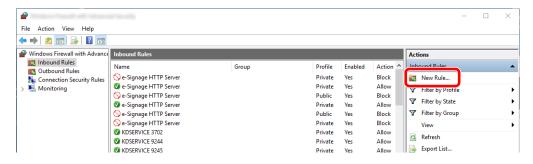
2 Select [Advanced settings].



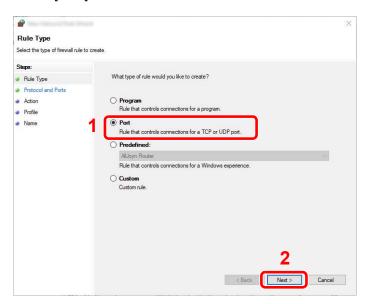
3 Select [Inbound Rules].



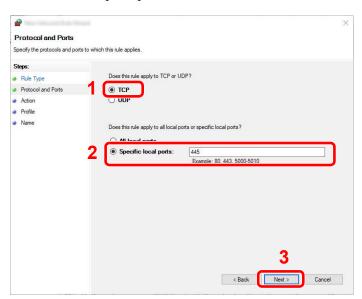
4 Select [New Rules].



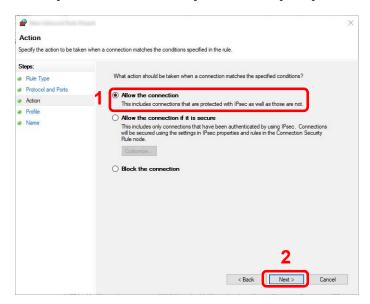
5 Select [Port].



6 Select [TCP] as the port to apply the rule to. Then select [Specific local ports] and enter "445" then click [Next].



7 Select [Allow the connection] and click the [Next] button.



Profile
Specify the profiles for which this rule applies.

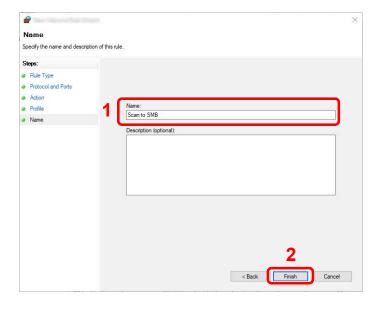
Steps:
Rule Type
Protocol and Pots
Action
Profile
Name

When does this rule apply?

Domain
Applies when a computer is connected to its corporate domain.
Private
Applies when a computer is connected to a private network location, such as a home or work place.
Public
Applies when a computer is connected to a public network location.

8 Make sure all checkboxes are selected and click the [Next] button.

9 Enter "Scan to SMB" in "Name" and click [Finish].



In Windows 8.1

1 In Windows 8.1, select [Settings] in charms on Desktop, and select [Control Panel], [System and Security], and then [Windows Firewall].

< Back Next

Cancel

If the User Account Control dialog box appears, click the [Continue] button.

- 2 Configure the settings.
 - → Configuring Windows Firewall (page 3-29)

Scan to Folder Setup Tool for SMB

An environment for sending a document to Windows can be set up smoothly by using the Scan to Folder Setup Tool for SMB downloaded from our website.

By operating the Scan to Folder Setup Tool for SMB, you can configure the following settings.

- Create a shared folder in a PC for receiving documents
 A new folder can be easily created on the desktop. Also, the newly created folder is automatically set as a shared folder.
- Set the created shared folder as an address on this machine
 Information about such things as the name of the computer and shared names for the shared folder is easily recorded in the address book of this machine with a sequence of actions. Can also be registered on the One Touch Keys.

NOTE

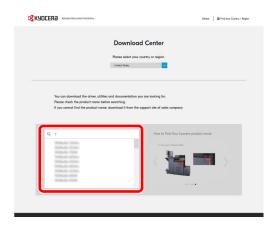
- · Log in to Windows with administrator privileges.
- If user login administration is enabled, log in with administrator privileges or as a user with execution authority.

Download a software from the website.

- 1 Launch a web browser.
- 2 Enter "https://kyocera.info/" to the browser's address bar or location bar.



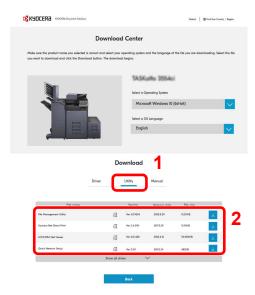
3 Enter and search the product name, and select this product from the candidate list.



4 Change the selected operating system and its language setting as needed.



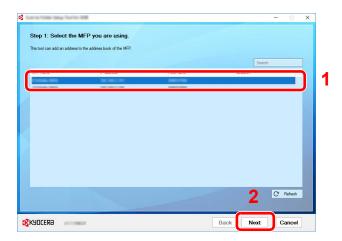
5 Utility tab > "Scan to Folder Setup Tool for SMB"
Scan to Folder Setup Tool for SMB will be downloaded.



6 Double click to launch the downloaded installer.

Configure the settings.

1 Select the device to use and click [Next].

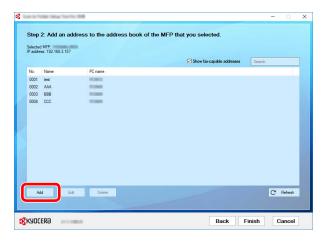


NOTE

- The machine cannot be detected unless it is on. If the computer fails to detect the machine, verify that it is connected to the computer via a network cable and that it is turned on and click [C Refresh].
- If user administration is valid on this machine, the user authentication screen appears. Log in with administrator privileges or as a user with execution authority.

The address book of the device appears.

2 Select [Add].



NOTE

- · Clicking on [Edit] after selecting the registered address allows you to change the content of the registration.
- Unchecking the [Show fax-capable addresses] check-box will hide the address containing the fax.

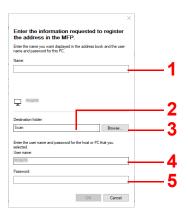
3 Create a new folder.



Select "Create a new folder on the desktop" and click [**OK**] to create a new folder on the desktop. (The default folder name is "Scan".)

NOTE

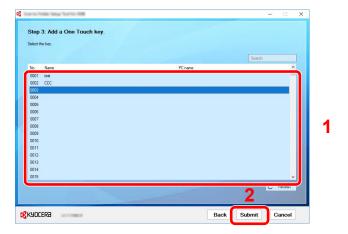
- Click [Edit] to change the desktop folder name.
- Selecting [Select an existing folder and address] allows you to select an existing folder that is already set as a shared folder on the PC.
- 4 Enter the information requested to register the address.



- 1 Enter the name for display in the address book.
- 2 Display the folder name and path to the shared folder.
- 3 Shared folders can be selected from a PC on the network.
- 4 Display the user name of the selected PC.
- 5 Enter the password corresponds to the log in user name of the selected PC.
- 5 Click [**OK**] to register the address to the address book.
- 6 Click [Close].
- 7 To register the registered address in a One Touch key, click [Yes].



8 Select a One Touch Key with no registered destination, and click [Submit].



- 9 Click [Close].
- **10** Click [Finish] to exit the Scan to Folder Setup Tool.

Registering Destinations in the Address Book

Save frequently used destinations to the Address Book or One Touch Keys. The saved destinations can be changed. The destinations are available for Send as E-mail, Send to Folder, and Fax Transmission (Only on products with the fax function installed).



- Registering and editing of the Address Book can also be done in Command Center RX.
 - → Registering Destinations (page 2-75)
- Editing of the Address Book and One Touch Keys can be restricted to administrators.
 - Edit Restriction (page 8-42)

Adding a Destination (Address Book)

Add a new destination to the Address Book. There are two registering methods, contacts and groups. When adding a group, enter the group name and select group members from the Address Book.



NOTE

If registering and editing of the Address Book is restricted to administrators, you can edit the Address Book by logging in with administrator privileges.

- Edit Restriction (page 8-42)
- **Command Center RX User Guide**

Registering a contact address

A maximum of 2,000 contact addresses can be registered. Each address can include the information such as destination name, E-mail address, FTP server folder path, computer folder path, and FAX No. (Only on products with the fax function installed).

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Address Book] > [Add/Edit Machine Address Book] > [Add] > [Contact]

Add the name.

1 Enter the destination name to be displayed on the Address Book.



NOTE

Refer to the following for details on entering characters.

Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

2 Enter an address number.

To have the number assigned automatically, select [Auto].



NOTE

Address Number is an ID for a destination. You can select any available number out of 2,000 numbers for contacts and 500 numbers for groups.

If you specify an address number that is already in use, an error message appears when you select [Save] and the number cannot be registered. If you set [Auto] (0000) as the address number, the address is registered under the lowest available number.

Add the address.

Select the address type icon.

: Email Address

: Folder (SMB) Address

: Folder (FTP) Address

: Fax

: iFax Address



NOTE

Refer to the following for details on adding FAX and i-FAX address.

FAX Operation Guide

E-mail Address

Select the entry field, and enter the E-mail address.



NOTE

Refer to the following for details on entering characters.

Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

The Folder (SMB) Address

To search for a folder on a PC on the network, select [Search Folder from Network] or [Search Folder by Host Name].

If you selected [Search Folder from Network], you can search all PCs on the network for a destination.

If you selected [Search Folder by Host Name], you can enter the "Domain/Workgroup", and "Host Name" to search PCs on the network for the destination.

A maximum of 500 addresses can be displayed. Select the host name (PC name) that you want to specify in the screen that appears, and select [OK]. The login user name and login password entry screen appears.

After you enter the login user name and login password name of the destination PC, the shared folders appear. Select the folder that you want to specify and select [OK]. The address of the selected shared folder is set.

Select the folder from the Search Results list.

To directly specify the SMB folder, enter the "Host name," "Port," "Folder Path," "Login User Name" and "Login Password."



NOTE

For the computer name, share name, domain name, and user name, enter the information that you noted when you created the shared folder. For details on creating shared folders, refer to the following:

Preparation for Sending a Document to a Shared Folder in a PC (page 3-24)

The table below explains the items to be entered.

Item	Description
Host Name*1	Computer name
Port	Port number If the port number is not specified, the default port number is 445.
Folder Path	Share name For example: scannerdata If saving in a folder in the shared folder: share name\folder name in shared folder
Login User Name ^{*2}	If the computer name and domain name are the same: User Name For example: james.smith If the computer name and domain name are different: Domain name\User name For example: abcdnet\james.smith
Login Password	Windows logon password (Case sensitive.)

^{*1 &}quot;Host name" or "IP address" To enter the IPv6 address, enclose the address in brackets []. (Example: [2001:db8:a0b:12f0::10])

^{*2} When sending a document through an optional network interface (IB-50 or IB-51), "\" cannot be used. If the computer name is different from the domain name, login user name needs to be input by using "@." (Example: james.smith@abcdnet)

NOTE

- · Refer to the following for details on entering characters.
 - Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
- · Select [Connection Test] to check the connection to the server you chose. If the connection fails, check the entries you made.

The Folder (FTP) Address

Enter "Host Name", "Port", "Folder Path", "Login User Name" and "Login Password".

The table below explains the items to be entered.

Item	Descriptions
Host Name*1	Host name or IP address of FTP server
Port	Port number If the port number is not specified, the default port number is 21.
Folder Path*2	Path for the file to be stored For example: User\ScanData If no path is entered, the file is stored in the home directory.
Login User Name	FTP server login user name
Login Password	FTP server login password

^{*1 &}quot;Host name" or "IP address"

To enter the IPv6 address, enclose the address in brackets [].

(Example: [2001:db8:a0b:12f0::10])

*2 When the FTP server is based on Linux/UNIX, the path including the sub-folder is combined by the slash "/" not using the back-slash.

NOTE

- · Refer to the following for details on entering characters.
 - → Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
- Select [Connection Test] or [Connection Test (Encrypted TX)] to check the connection to the FTP server you chose. If the connection fails, check the entries you made.

Check if the destination entry is correct > [Register]

The destination is added to the Address Book.

To add a new address to the One Touch Key, select [Register] and follow the on-screen instructions to enter the necessary information.



NOTE

Refer to the following for registering the One Touch Key.

Adding a Destination on One Touch Key (page 3-45)

Add the group

Compile two or more contacts into a group. Designations in the group can be added at the same time. When adding a group, a maximum of 500 groups can be added in the Address Book.



NOTE

To add a group, you need individually added destinations. Register one or more individual destinations as needed before proceeding. Up to 100 destinations for the E-mail, 500 destinations for the FAX, 100 destinations for the i-FAX, and a total of 10 destinations for the FTP and SMB can be registered per group.

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Address Book] > [Add/Edit Machine Address Book] > [Add] > [Group]

Add the name.

1 Enter an address number.

To have the number assigned automatically, select [Auto].

NOTE

- Address Number is an ID for a group. You can select any available number out of 2,000 numbers for contacts and 500 numbers for groups.
- If you specify an address number that is already in use, an error message appears when you select [Save] and the number cannot be registered. If you set [Auto] (0000) as the address number, the address is registered under the lowest available number.
- 2 Enter the group name displayed on the Address Book.



Refer to the following for details on entering characters.

→ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

Select the destinations.

Select destinations (contacts) to add to the group. Put a checkmark in the checkbox to select an item and remove the checkmark to cancel the selection.



Destinations can be sorted or searched by destination name or address number.

Checking and Editing Destinations (page 5-51)

Check if the group entry is correct > [Save]

The group is added to the Address Book.

To add a new address to the One Touch Key, select [**Register**] and follow the on-screen instructions to enter the necessary information.



Refer to the following for registering the One Touch Key.

→ Adding a Destination on One Touch Key (page 3-45)

Editing Address Book Entries

Edit the destinations (contacts) you added to the Address Book.

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Address Book] > [Add/Edit Machine Address Book]
- 2 Select [] (information icon) for the destination or group to edit.
 - **NOTE**

Destinations can be sorted or searched by destination name or address number.

Destination Search (page 5-49)

Edit the destination.

Editing a Contact

- 1 Change "Name", "Address Number" and destination type and address.
 - → Adding a Destination (Address Book) (page 3-38)
- 2 [Save] > [OK]

Register the changed destination.

Editing a destination to a group

- 1 Change "Name" and "Address Number".
 - → Add the group (page 3-42)
- 2 Change the destination. Put a checkmark in the checkbox to select an item and remove the checkmark to cancel the selection.
- 3 [Save] > [OK]

Register the changed destination.

Deleting Address Book Entries

Delete the destinations (contacts) you added to the Address Book.

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Address Book] > [Add/Edit Machine Address Book]
- **2** Select a destination or group to delete.
 - **NOTE**

Destinations can be sorted or searched by destination name or address number.

→ Destination Search (page 5-49)

property [Delete] property [Delete]

Delete the contact or group.

Adding a Destination on One Touch Key

Assign a new destination (contact or group) to an one touch key.

NOTE

- · Refer to the following for use of One Touch Key.
 - Specifying Destination (page 5-48)
- You can add One Touch keys and change their settings on Command Center RX.
 - Registering Destinations (page 2-75)
- If registering and editing of the One Touch Keys is restricted to administrators, you can edit the One Touch Keys by logging in with administrator privileges.
 - → Edit Restriction (page 8-42)
 - Command Center RX User Guide

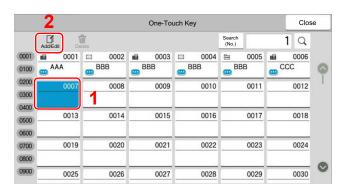
Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [One-Touch Key] > [Add/Edit One Touch Key]

Add One Touch Keys.

Select a One Touch Key number for the destination > [Add/Edit]
Enter a number in "Search (No.)" and select [Q] (search icon) to display that One Touch Key.

Select a One Touch Key with no registered destination.



2 Enter the One Touch Key name displayed in the send base screen.

NOTE

Refer to the following for details on entering characters.

- Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
- 3 Select [Destination].

The Address Book appears.

4 Select a destination (contact or group) to add to the One Touch Key number > [OK] Selecting [...] (information icon) shows the detailed information of the selected destination.



Destinations can be sorted or searched by destination name or address number.

Destination Search (page 5-49)

5 Select [OK].

The destination will be added to the One Touch Key.

Editing One Touch Key

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [One-Touch Key] > [Add/ Edit One Touch Key]
- Select a One Touch Key number to edit.

Enter a number in "Search (No.)" and select [Q] (search icon) to display that One Touch Key.

NOTE

Select [...] (information icon) for the One Touch Key to display the information registered in the One Touch Key.

Change the Registered Information.

1 Change "Display Name".

NOTE

Refer to the following for details on entering characters.

- Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
- 2 Select [**Destination**], and select a new destination (contact or group). Selecting [...] (information icon) shows the detailed information of the selected destination.
 - NOTE

Destinations can be sorted or searched by destination name or address number.

- → Destination Search (page 5-49)
- 3 [OK] > [OK]

Add the destination to the One Touch Key.

Deleting the Destination to the One Touch Key

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [One-Touch Key] > [Add/ Edit One Touch Key]
- Select a One Touch Key number to delete.

Enter a number in "Search (No.)" and select [Q] (search icon) to display that One Touch Key.

Delete the Registered Information.

[Delete] > [Delete]

The data registered in the One Touch Key is deleted.

4 Printing from PC

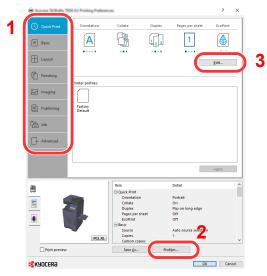
This chapter explains the following topics:

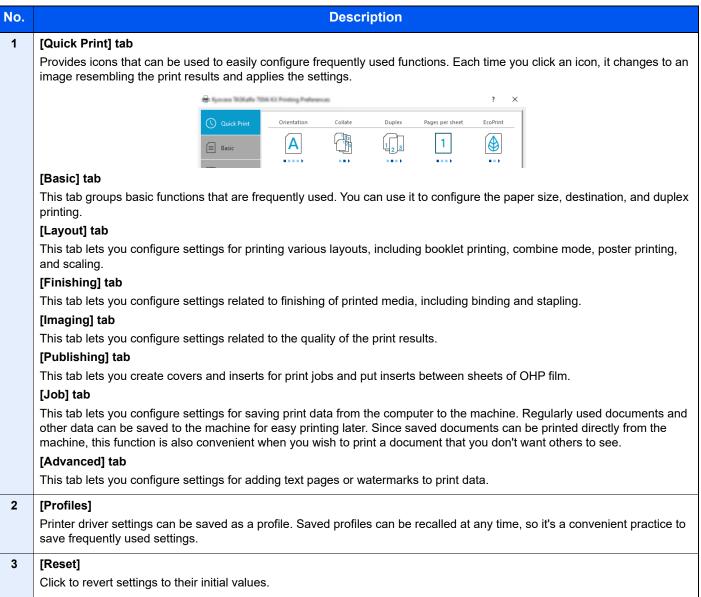
Printer Driver Print Settings Screen	4-2
Displaying the Printer Driver Help	4-3
Changing the Default Printer Driver Settings (Windows 10)	4-3
Printing from PC	4-4
Printing on Standard Sized Paper	4-4
Printing on Non-standard Sized Paper	4-6
Banner Printing	4-9
Canceling Printing from a Computer	4-15
Printing from the Handheld Device	4-16
Printing by AirPrint	4-16
Printing by Universal Print	4-16
Printing by Mopria	4-16
Printing with Wi-Fi Direct	4-17
Printing with NFC	4-17
Printing Data Saved in the Printer	4-18
Specifying the Job Box from a Computer and Storing the Job	4-18
Printing Documents from Private Print Box	4-19
Deleting the Documents Stored in the Private Print Box	4-19
Printing Document from Stored Job Box	4-20
Deleting the Documents Stored in the Stored Job Box	4-20
Printing Document from Quick Copy Box	4-21
Deleting the Documents Stored in the Quick Copy Box	4-21
Printing Document from Proof and Hold Box	4-22
Deleting the Documents Stored in the Proof and Hold Box	4-22
Monitoring the Printer Status (Status Monitor)	4-23
Accessing the Status Monitor	4-23
Exiting the Status Monitor	4-23
Quick View State	4-23
Printing Progress Tab	4-24
Paper Tray Status Tab	4-24
Toner Status Tab	4-24
Alert Tab	4-25
Status Monitor Context Menu	4-25
Status Monitor Notification Settings	4-26

Printer Driver Print Settings Screen

The printer driver print settings screen allows you to configure a variety of print-related settings.

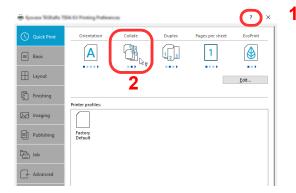
Printer Driver User Guide





Displaying the Printer Driver Help

The printer driver includes Help. To learn about print settings, open the printer driver print settings screen and display Help as explained below.



- 1 Click the [?] button in the upper right corner of
- 2 Click the item you want to know about.



NOTE

The Help appears, even when you click the item you want to know about and press the [F1] key on your keyboard.

Changing the Default Printer Driver Settings (Windows 10)

The default printer driver settings can be changed. By selecting frequently used settings, you can omit steps when printing. For the settings, refer to the following:

- **Printer Driver User Guide**
 - Click [Start] button on the Windows and then select [Windows System], [Control Panel], and [Devices and Printers].
 - Right-click the printer driver icon of the machine, and click the [Printer properties] menu of the printer driver.
 - Click the [Basic] button on the [General] tab.
 - Select the default settings and click the [OK] button.

Printing from PC

This section provides the printing method using the KX DRIVER.

NOTE

- To print the document from applications, install the printer driver downloaded from our website on your computer.
- In some environments, the current settings are displayed at the bottom of the printer driver.



- When printing the cardstock or envelopes, load the cardstock or envelopes in the multipurpose tray before
 performing the following procedure.
 - ▶ Loading Paper in the Multipurpose Tray (page 5-6)

Printing on Standard Sized Paper

If you loaded a paper size that is included in the print sizes of the machine, select the paper size in the [Basic] tab of the print settings screen of the printer driver.

NOTE

Specify the paper size and media type to print from the operation panel.

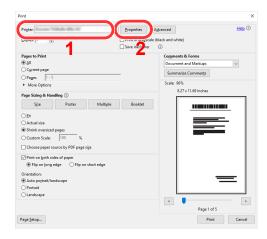
▶ Paper Feeding (page 8-13)

1 Display the screen.

Click [File] and select [Print] in the application.

Configure the settings.

1 Select the machine from the "Printer" menu and click the [Properties] button.



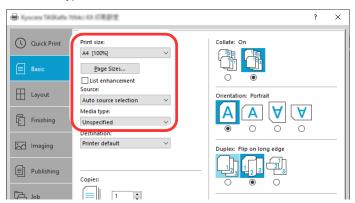
2 Select the [Basic] tab.

3 Click "Print size" menu and select the paper size to use for printing.

To load the paper of size that is not included in print sizes of the machine such as cardstock or envelopes, the paper size needs to be registered.

▶ Printing on Non-standard Sized Paper (page 4-6)

To print on the special paper such as thick paper or transparency, click "Media type" menu and select the media type.



4 Click [**OK**] button to return to the Print dialog box.

Start printing.

Click the [OK] button.

Printing on Non-standard Sized Paper

If you loaded a paper size that is not included in the print sizes of the machine, register the paper size in the [Basic] tab of the print settings screen of the printer driver.

The registered size can be selected from the "Print size" menu.



To execute printing at the machine, set the paper size and type in the following:

Paper Feeding (page 8-13)

Display the screen.

1 Click [Start] button on the Windows and then select [Windows System], [Control Panel], and [View devices and printers].

NOTE

In Windows 8.1, in charms on Desktop, click [Settings], [Control Panel], and then [Devices and Printers].

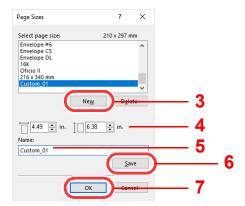
- 2 Right-click the printer driver icon of the machine, and click the [**Printer properties**] menu of the printer driver.
- 3 Click the [Preferences] button on the [General] tab.

Register the paper size.

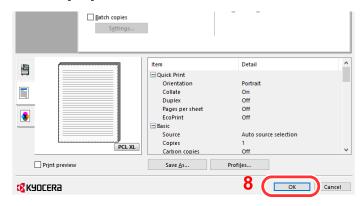
1 Click the [Basic] tab.



- 2 Click the [Page Size...] button.
- 3 Click the [New] button.



- 4 Enter the paper size.
- 5 Enter the name of the paper.
- 6 Click the [Save] button.
- 7 Click the [OK] button.
- 8 Click the [OK] button.

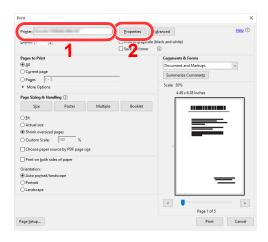


Display the print settings screen.

Click [File] and select [Print] in the application.

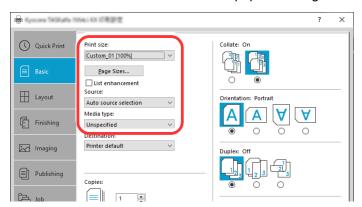
▲ Select the paper size and type of non-standard size paper.

1 Select the machine from the "Printer" menu and click the [**Properties**] button.



2 Select the [Basic] tab.

3 Click "Print size" menu and select the paper size registered in step 2.



To print on the special paper such as thick paper or transparency, click "Media type" menu and select the media type.

NOTE

If you loaded a postcard or envelope, select [**Cardstock**] or [**Envelope**] in the "Media type" menu.

- 4 Select the paper source in the "Source" menu.
- 5 Click [**OK**] button to return to the Print dialog box.

5 Start printing.

Click the [OK] button.

Banner Printing

When a document length from 488.1 mm (19.22") to a maximum of 1,220 mm (48.03") is specified for printing, the print job is treated as banner printing.

Max. number of sheets	1 sheet (manual feed), 10 sheets (when optional banner tray is attached [*])
Paper width	210 mm to 304.8 mm (8.26" to 12")
Paper length	488.1 mm to 1,220 mm (19.22" to 48.03")
Paper weight	136 to 163 g/m ²
Media type	Heavy 2

When the banner tray (option) is used, up to 10 sheets of banner paper can be fed continuously For details, refer to the follows:

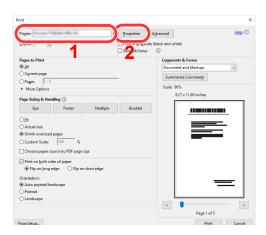
Follow the steps below to set banner paper in the printer driver.

Display the screen.

Click [File] and select [Print] in the application.

Configure the settings.

1 Select the machine from the "Name" menu and click the [Properties] button.



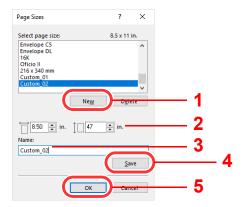
2 Select the [Basic] tab.



3 Click the [Page Size...] button.

[▶] Using the Banner Tray (Option) (page 4-12)

Register the paper size.



- 1 Click the [New] button.
- 2 Enter the length (488.1 mm (19.22") or longer), and width of the custom paper size being registered.
- 3 Enter the name of the paper.
- 4 Click the [Save] button.
- 5 Click the [**OK**] button.

Configure the print paper size.

1 Click "Print size" menu and select the paper size registered in step 3.



- 2 Click "Source" menu and select [Multipurpose tray].
- 3 Click "Media type" menu and select [Plain].
- 4 Click the [OK] button.

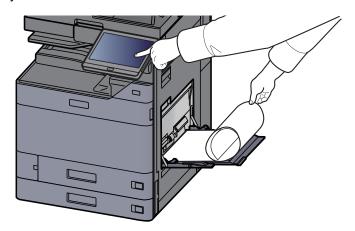


When banner printing, a resolution of 600 dpi is set.

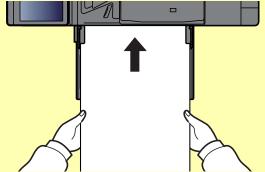
5 Start printing.

Click the [OK] button.

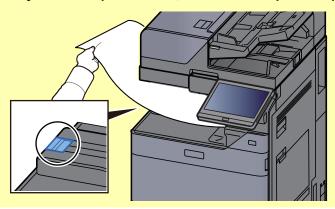
When you execute printing in this case, a message appears on the machine's operation panel. Place the paper in the multipurpose tray, continue to support it so that it does not fall, and select [**Continue**]. If paper has been loaded beforehand, no message is displayed and printing starts automatically.



- If an output tray that cannot be used for banner printing such as Mailbox (option) is selected in the printer driver, the output tray automatically changes to a tray that can be used.
- After pressing [Continue], support the paper with both hands so that it feeds in correctly.



After printing starts, catch the paper when it is output so that it does not fall. When
using the inner tray as the output location, do not stand up the stopper.



Set whether the confirmation screen appears before each sheet is printed when printing multiple banner sheets.

→ Message Banner Print (page 8-48)

Using the Banner Tray (Option)

When the banner tray (option) is used, up to 10 sheets of banner paper can be fed continuously.

The operation procedure for setting the banner paper by using the printer driver is the same as that of using the multipurpose tray.

Banner Printing (page 4-9)

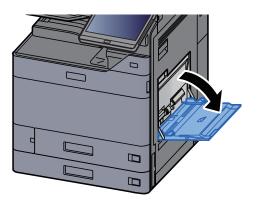


The paper length supported in banner tray is 488.1 mm to 1,220 mm (18.5" to 48.03").

Open the multipurpose tray.

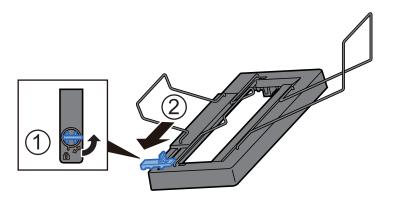
Open the multipurpose tray until it stops.

Do not extend the multipurpose auxiliary tray.

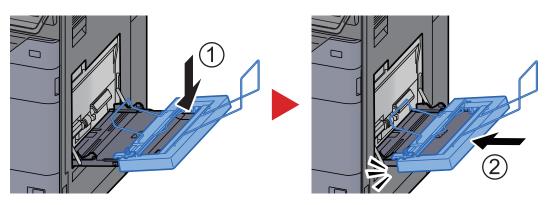


Attach the banner tray.

1 Release the paper width guide lock on the banner tray and open to the maximum width.



2 Attach the banner tray to the multipurpose tray.



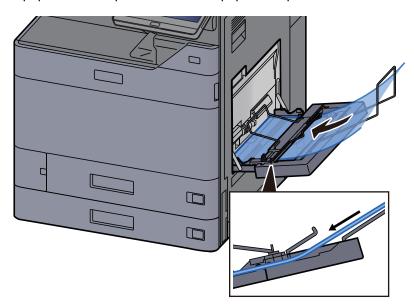
Coad paper.

1 Open the paper width guides on the multipurpose tray to the maximum width.

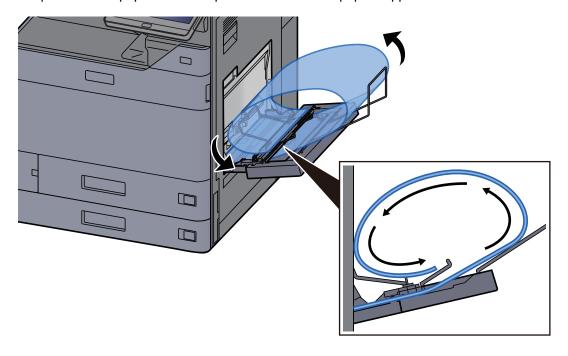


Make sure that the banner tray is attached so that the paper width guides on the banner tray are outside the paper width guides on the multipurpose tray.

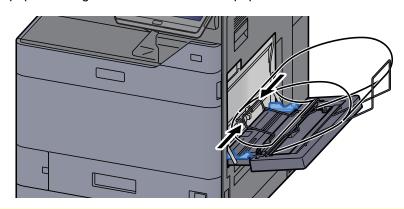
2 Load banner paper so that it passes under the paper clamp bar.



3 Loop the banner paper back and place the end on the paper support.



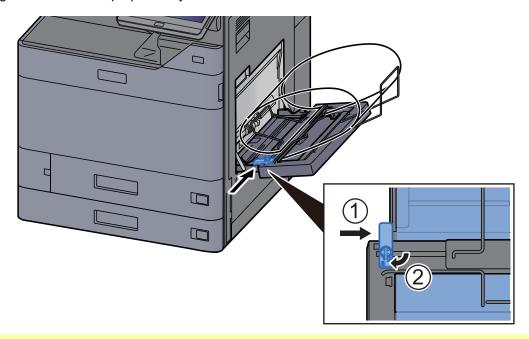
4 Adjust the paper width guides to the width of the paper.



⊘ IMPORTANT

If there is a gap between the paper and the paper width guides, readjust the guides to fit the paper in order to prevent skewed feeding and paper jams.

5 Adjust the paper width guides on the banner tray to the same width as the paper width guides on the multipurpose tray and lock.



Remove the paper when banner printing finishes, or when you are not using the banner tray.

NOTE

The print confirmation screen can be set in System Menu to not appear when the banner tray is attached. This will allow continuous printing on multiple sheets. Refer to the follows:

→ Message Banner Print (page 8-48)

Canceling Printing from a Computer

To cancel a print job executed using the printer driver before the printer begins printing, do the following:



When canceling printing from this machine, refer to the following:

- → Canceling Jobs (page 5-22)
- 1 Double-click the printer icon () displayed on the taskbar at the bottom right of the Windows desktop to display a dialog box for the printer.
- Click the file for which you wish to cancel printing and select [Cancel] from the "Document" menu.

Printing from the Handheld Device

This machine supports the AirPrint and Mopria. According to the supported OS and application, you can print the job from any handheld device or computer without installing a printer driver.

Printing by AirPrint

AirPrint is a printing function that is included standard in iOS 4.2 and later products, and Mac OS X 10.7 and later products.

To use the AirPrint, make sure that the AirPrint setting is enabled in the Command Center RX.

Command Center RX User Guide



Printing by Universal Print

Universal Print is a printing service provided by Microsoft. This service enables a user with a Azure Active Directory to print from a machine connected to the Internet.

The machine can be configured in the Command Center RX.

Command Center RX User Guide



NOTE

- · In order to use Universal Print, it is necessary for Windows 10 or Microsoft365 license, and Azure Active Directory account. If not, please acquire those license and the account.
- · It is also necessary to register the machine in the Azure portal in advance. The machine can be registered from a PC connected to the same network.

Printing by Mopria

Mopria is a standard on printing function included in Android 4.4 or later products.

Mopria Print Service needs to be installed and enabled in advance.

For details on how to use, refer to a Web site of Mopria Alliance.



Printing with Wi-Fi Direct

Wi-Fi Direct is a wireless LAN standard that Wi-Fi Alliance has been established. This is one of the functions of the wireless LAN, without a wireless LAN access point or wireless LAN router, between devices can communicate directly on a peer to peer basis.

The printing procedure by the Wi-Fi Direct is the same as that from the normal handheld devices.

When you use a printer name or Bonjour name on the port settings of the printer property, you can print the job by specifying the name at Wi-Fi Direct connection.

When you use an IP address for the port, specify the IP address of this machine.

Printing with NFC

When the Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct has been configured in advance, the network between this machine and handheld device will be configured by simply tapping an NFC tag.

- Configuring the Wireless Network (page 2-35)
- → Setting Wi-Fi Direct (page 2-41)

Printing Data Saved in the Printer

You can save the print job into the Job Box of this device and print it as necessary.

If you configure settings in the [Job] tab of the printer driver and then print, the print job will be saved in the Job Box (memory) and printing can be executed at the machine.

Follow the work flow below when using Job Box.

Specifying the Job Box from a computer and sending the print job. (4-18)



Using the operation panel to specify a file within a Box and printing it.

You can print the documents from the following boxes.

- Printing Documents from Private Print Box (page 4-19)
- Printing Document from Stored Job Box (page 4-20)
- Printing Document from Quick Copy Box (page 4-21)
- Printing Document from Proof and Hold Box (page 4-22)

Specifying the Job Box from a Computer and Storing the Job

- Click [File] and select [Print] in the application. The Print dialog box displays.
- Select the machine from the "Name" menu.
- Click the [Properties] button. The Properties dialog box displays.
- Click the [Job] tab and select the [Job storage (e-MPS)] check box to set the function.



NOTE

For information on how to use the printer driver software, refer to the following:

Printer Driver User Guide

Printing Documents from Private Print Box

In Private Printing, you can specify that a job is not to be printed until you operate the machine. When sending the job from the application software, specify a password in the printer driver. The job is released for printing by entering the password on the operation panel, ensuring confidentiality of the print job. If you do not specify a password, you will be able to print without entering a password. The data will be deleted upon completion of the print job or after the power switch is turned off.

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [Job Box]
- 2 Select [Private Print/Stored Job].
- 3 Select the creator of the document.

Print the document.

- 1 Select the document to print > [Print]
- 2 Enter the password.

 If a password is not set, go to step 3.
- 3 Specify the number of copies to print as desired.
- 4 Select [Start Print].

Printing starts.

Upon completion of printing, the Private Print job is automatically deleted.

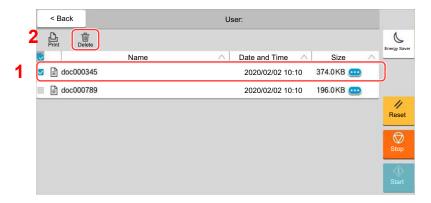
Deleting the Documents Stored in the Private Print Box

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [Job Box]
- 2 Select [Private Print/Stored Job].
- 3 Select the creator of the document.

Delete the document.

1 Select the document to delete > [**Delete**]



2 If the document is protected by a password, enter the password.

The document is deleted.

Printing Document from Stored Job Box

In Stored Job, the print data sent from the application is saved to the machine. You can set up a password as necessary. If you set up a password, enter the password when printing. Print data will be stored in the Stored Job Box after printing. This will allow printing of the same print data repeatedly.

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [Job Box]
- 2 Select [Private Print/Stored Job].
- 3 Select the creator of the document.

Print the document.

- 1 Select the document to print > [**Print**]
- 2 Enter the password.
- 3 Specify the number of copies to print as desired.
- 4 Select [Start Print].

Printing starts.



NOTE

If the document is protected by a password, the password entry screen will be displayed. Enter the password.

Deleting the Documents Stored in the Stored Job Box

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [Job Box]
- 2 Select [Private Print/Stored Job].
- 3 Select the creator of the document.

Delete the document.

- 1 Select the document to delete > [Delete]
- 2 If the document is protected by a password, enter the password.

The document is deleted.

Printing Document from Quick Copy Box

Quick Copy feature facilitates additional prints of a document already printed. Activating Quick Copy and printing a document using the printer driver allow the print data to be stored in the Quick Copy Job Box. When additional copies are required, you can reprint the required number of copies from the touch panel. By default, up to 32 documents can be stored. When power is turned off, all stored jobs will be deleted.

NOTE

- When the number of jobs reaches the limit, the oldest job will be overwritten by the new one.
- To maintain free space on the box, you can set the maximum number of stored jobs.
- → Quick Copy Job Retention (page 8-50)

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [Job Box]
- 2 Select [Quick Copy/Proof and Hold].
- 3 Select the creator of the document.

Print the document.

- 1 Select the document to print > [Print]
- 2 Specify the number of copies to print as desired.
- 3 Select [Start Print].
 Printing starts.

Deleting the Documents Stored in the Quick Copy Box

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [Job Box]
- 2 Select [Quick Copy/Proof and Hold].
- 3 Select the creator of the document.

Delete the document.

Select the document to delete > [Delete] > [Delete]

The document is deleted.

Printing Document from Proof and Hold Box

The Proof and Hold feature produces only a single proof print of multiple-print job and holds printing of the remaining copies. Printing a multiple-print job in Proof and Hold using the printer driver allows only a single copy to be printed while maintaining the document data in the Job Box. To continue to print the remaining copies, use the touch panel. You can change the number of copies to print.

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [Job Box]
- 2 Select [Quick Copy/Proof and Hold].
- 3 Select the creator of the document.

Print the document.

- 1 Select the document to print > [**Print**]
- 2 Specify the number of copies to print as desired.
- 3 Select [Start Print].
 Printing starts.

Deleting the Documents Stored in the Proof and Hold Box

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [Job Box]
- 2 Select [Quick Copy/Proof and Hold].
- **3** Select the creator of the document.

Delete the document.

Select the document to delete > [Delete] > [Delete]

The document is deleted.

Monitoring the Printer Status (Status Monitor)

The Status Monitor monitors the printer status and provides an ongoing reporting function.

NOTE

When you activate Status Monitor, check the status below.

- KX DRIVER is installed.
- Either [Enhanced WSD] or [Enhanced WSD(SSL)] is enabled.
 - Network Settings (page 8-53)

Accessing the Status Monitor

The Status Monitor also starts up when printing is started.

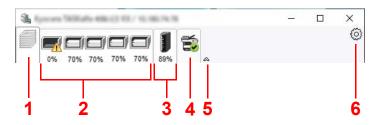
Exiting the Status Monitor

Use either of the methods listed below to exit the Status Monitor.

- Exit manually:
 Click the settings icon and select Exit in the menu to exit the Status Monitor.
- Exit automatically:
 The Status Monitor automatically shuts down after 7 minutes if it is not being used.

Quick View State

The status of the printer is displayed using icons. Detailed information is displayed when the Expand button is clicked.

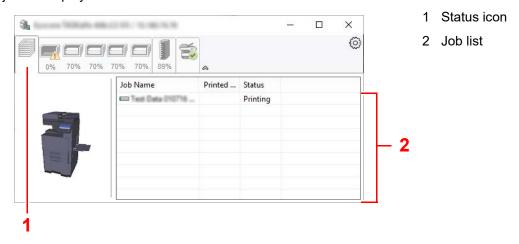


- 1 Printing progress tab
- 2 Paper tray status tab
- 3 Toner status tab
- 4 Alert tab
- 5 Expand button
- 6 Settings icon

Detailed information is displayed by clicking on each icon tab.

Printing Progress Tab

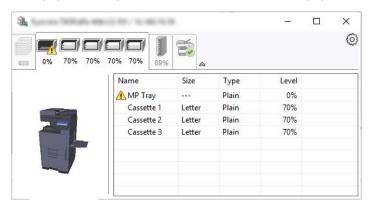
The status of the print jobs is displayed.



Select a job on the job list and it can be canceled using the menu displayed with a right-click.

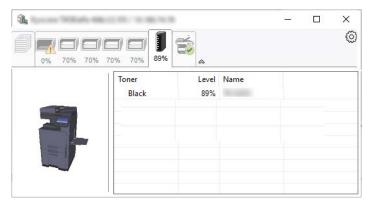
Paper Tray Status Tab

Information is displayed about the paper in the printer and about the amount of paper remaining.



Toner Status Tab

The amount of toner remaining is displayed.



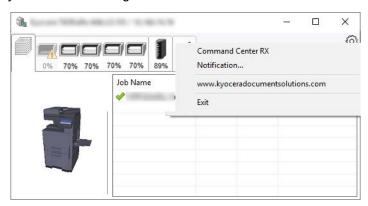
Alert Tab

If an error occurs, a notice is displayed using a 3D image and a message.



Status Monitor Context Menu

The following menu is displayed when the settings icon is clicked.



Command Center RX

If the printer is connected to a TCP/IP network and has its own IP address, use a web browser to access the Command Center RX to modify or confirm the network settings. This menu is not displayed when using USB connection.

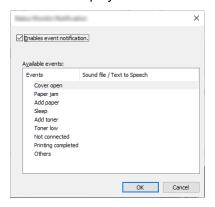
- **▶** Command Center RX User Guide
- Notification...

This sets the display of the Status Monitor.

- **▶** Status Monitor Notification Settings (page 4-26)
- www.kyoceradocumentsolutions.com
 Open our website.
- Exit
 Exits the Status Monitor.

Status Monitor Notification Settings

The Status Monitor settings and event list details are displayed.



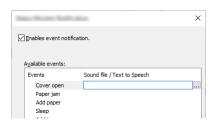
Select whether notification is performed when an error in the event list occurs.

Select Enable event notification.

If this setting is set to Off, then the Status Monitor will not start up even when printing is executed.

- Select an event to use with the text to speech function in Available events.
- Click Sound file / Text to Speech column.

Click the browse (...) button to notify the event by sound file.





The available file format is WAV.

When customizing the message texts to read on the screen aloud, enter the texts in the text box.

5 Operation on the Machine

This chapter explains the following topics:	This ch	napter	expla	ains	the	following	ng to	pics:
---	---------	--------	-------	------	-----	-----------	-------	-------

Loading Originals	5-2
Placing Originals on the Platen	
Loading Originals in the Document Processor .	
Loading Paper in the Multipurpose Tray	5-6
Favorites	
Registering Favorites	
Recalling Favorites	
Editing Favorites	
Deleting Favorites	
Application	
Installing Applications	
Activating Applications	
Deactivating Applications	
Uninstalling Applications	
Registering Shortcuts (Copy, Send, and Document	3-10
Box Settings)	5 17
Adding Shortcuts	
Editing Shortcuts	
Deleting Shortcuts	
Copying	
Basic Operation	
Proof Copy	
Interrupt Copy	
Canceling Jobs	
Frequently-Used Sending Method	
Sending Document via E-mail	
Configuring Settings before Sending	
Sending Scanned Document via E-mail	5-24
Sending Document to Desired Shared Folder on a	
Computer (Scan to PC)	
Configuring Settings before Sending	5-26
Sending Document to Desired Shared	
Folder on a Computer	5-26
Sending Document to Folder on an FTP Server	
(Scan to FTP)	
Configuring Settings before Sending	5-29
Sending Document to Folder on an FTP	
Server	
Scanning using TWAIN or WIA	5-31
Configuring Settings before Sending	
Scanning Document Using Application	5-31
Scanning Document stored in a Custom Box	5-32
Configuring Settings before Sending	5-32
Scanning Document Stored in a Box	5-32
Useful Sending Method	5-34
WSD Scan	5-35
Installing the Driver	5-35
Executing WSD scan	
DSM Scan	
Configuring Settings before Sending	
Executing DSM Scan	
Scanning with File Management Utility	
Configuring Settings before Sending	
Using FMU Connection to Scan an Original	
Using MultiCrop Scan	
Configuring Settings before Scanning	
5 5 5	-

Using MultiCrop Scan to Send/Store an	
Original	5-40
Sending to Different Types of Destinations (Multi	- A
Sending)	
Send to Me (Email)	
Configuring Settings before Sending Sending a document to the mail address of	3-4 ²
the logged in user	5 A
Using a Fax Server to Send (Fax Server Send)	5 4
Canceling Sending Jobs	
Handling Destination	
Specifying Destination	
Choosing from the Address Book	5-48
Choosing from the One Touch Key	
Choosing from the Search (No.)	
Checking and Editing Destinations	
Confirmation Screen of Destinations	
Recall	
How to use the FAX Function	
Using Document Boxes	
What is Custom Box?	5-55
What is Job Box?	
What is USB Drive Box?	
Fax Box	
Basic Operation for Document Box	
Creating a New Custom Box	
Editing Custom Box	5-61
Deleting Custom Box	5-62
Storing Documents to a Custom Box	5-62
Printing Documents in Custom Box	5-63
Saving Scanned Documents to a Custom Box	
Sending Documents in Custom Box	5-65
Sending Documents in Custom Box to E-	
mail Address of Logged in User	
Moving Documents in Custom Box	5-66
Copying Documents in Custom Box into	
Other Boxes	5-67
Copying Documents in Custom Box to USB	
Drive	
Joining Documents in Custom Box	
Deleting Documents in Custom Box	
Job Box	
Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs	
Form for Form Overlay	
Operating using Removable USB Drive	5-72
Printing Documents Stored in Removable	
USB Drive	5-72
Saving Documents to USB Drive (Scan to	
USB) Check the USB Drive Information	
Removing USB Drive	5-15
Using the Internet Browser Launching and Exiting the Browser	5-10
Using the Browser Screen	
	5-78

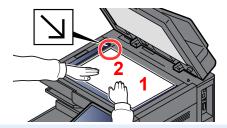
Loading Originals

Load the originals on the platen or document processor, depending on the original size, type, volume, and function.

- Platen: Place the sheet, book, postcards, and envelopes.
- Document Processor: Place the multiple originals. You can also place the two sided originals.

Placing Originals on the Platen

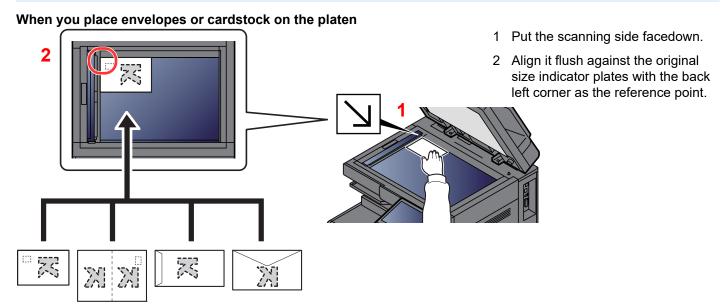
You may place books or magazines on the platen in addition to ordinary sheet originals.



- 1 Put the scanning side facedown.
- 2 Align it flush against the original size indicator plates with the back left corner as the reference point.

NOTE

- A5 is detected as A4-R. Set the paper size to A5 by using the function key on the touch panel.
 - Original Size (page 6-19)
- · For details on Original Orientation, refer to the following:
 - Original Orientation (page 6-25)

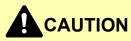




NOTE

For the procedure for feeding envelopes or cardstock, refer to the following:

When you load envelopes or cardstock in the multipurpose tray (page 5-8)



Do not leave the document processor open as there is a danger of personal injury.

(IMPORTANT

- Do not push the document processor forcefully when you close it. Excessive pressure may crack the platen glass.
- · When placing books or magazines on the machine, do so with the document processor in the open position.

Loading Originals in the Document Processor

The document processor automatically scans each sheet of multiple originals. Both sides of two-sided originals are scanned.

The document processor supports the following types of originals.

Detail	Document Processor (Automatic 2-Sided)	Document Processor (Dual scan DP)		
Туре	DP-7150	DP-7160 DP-7170 (Skewed, Multifeed and Staple Detection)		
Weight	35 to 160 g/m ² (duplex: 50 to 120 g/m ²)	35 to 220 g/m ² (duplex: 50 to 220 g/m ²)		
Sizes	Maximum A3/Ledger (11.69" × 17"/ 297 × 432 mm) (Long-sized 11.69" × 74.8"/297 × 1,900 mm) to Minimum A6-R/Statement-R (4.13" × 5.82"/105 × 148 mm)			
No. of sheets	Plain paper (80 g/m²), Recycled paper, Vellum paper: 140 sheets (Mixed size originals: 30 sheets) Thick paper (120 g/m²): 93 sheets Art paper: 1 sheet	Plain paper (80 g/m²), Recycled paper, Vellum paper: 320 sheets (A4 or less), 200 sheets (A3, B4) (Mixed size originals: 30 sheets) Thick paper (120 g/m²): 180 sheets Art paper: 1 sheet		

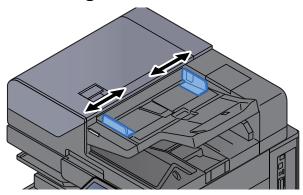
Do not use the document processor for the following types of originals. Otherwise, the originals may be jammed or the document processor may become dirty.

- Originals bound with clips or staples (Remove the clips or staples and straighten curls, wrinkles or creases before loading. Failure to do so may cause the originals to jam.)
- Originals with adhesive tape or glue
- · Originals with cut-out sections
- Curled original
- · Originals with folds (Straighten the folds before loading. Failure to do so may cause the originals to jam.)
- · Carbon paper
- · Crumpled paper

⊘ IMPORTANT

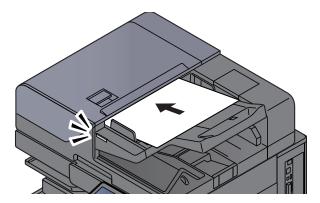
- Before loading originals, be sure that there are no originals left on the original eject table. Originals left on the original eject table may cause the new originals to jam.
- Do not make an impact on the document processor top cover, such as aligning the originals on the top cover. It may cause an error in the document processor.

Adjust the original width guides.



Place the originals.

1 Put the side to be scanned (or the first side of two-sided originals) face-up. Slide the leading edge into the document processor as far as it will go. The original loaded indicator lights when the original is placed correctly.



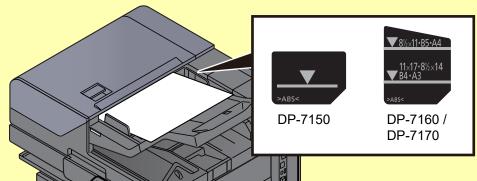
NOTE

For details on Original Orientation, refer to the following:

→ Original Orientation (page 6-25)

IMPORTANT

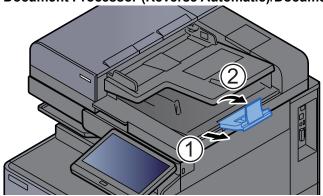
• Confirm that the original width guides exactly fit the originals. If there is a gap, readjust the original width guides. The gap may cause the originals to jam.



- Ensure that loaded originals do not exceed the level indicator. Exceeding the maximum level may cause the originals to jam.
- Originals with punched holes or perforated lines should be placed in such a way that the holes or perforations will be scanned last (not first).

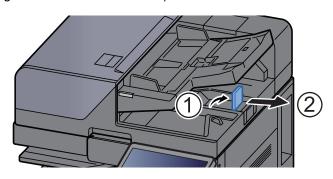
2 Open the original stopper to fit the size of the original set.



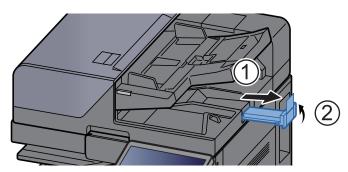


Document Processor (Dual Scan with Skewed, Multifeed and Staple Detection)

(Original size: A4/Letter or less)



(Original size: B4/Legal or more)



Loading Paper in the Multipurpose Tray

The multipurpose tray will hold up to 150 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m²).

For details of the supported paper sizes, refer to the following:

➤ Choosing the Appropriate Paper (page 11-14)

For the paper type setting, refer to the following:

Media Type Setting (page 8-17)

Be sure to use the multipurpose tray when you print on any special paper.

◯ IMPORTANT

- If you are using a paper weight of 106 g/m² or more, set the media type to Thick and set the weight of the paper you are using.
- Remove each transparency from the inner tray as it is printed. Leaving transparencies in the inner tray may cause a paper jam.

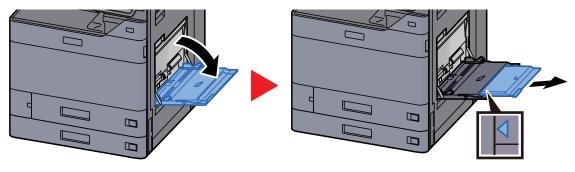
The capacity of the multipurpose tray is as follows.

- A4 or smaller plain paper (80 g/m²), recycled paper or color paper: 150 sheets
- B4 or larger plain paper (80 g/m²), recycled paper or color paper: 50 sheets
- Thick paper (209 g/m²): 10 sheets
- Thick paper (157 g/m²): 50 sheets
- Thick paper (104.7 g/m²): 50 sheets
- · Hagaki (Cardstock): 30 sheets
- Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6 3/4, Envelope Monarch, Kakugata 2, Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Younaga 3, Nagagata 3, Nagagata 4: 10 sheets
- · OHP film: 10 sheet
- Coated: 10 sheets
- Banner paper: 488.1 mm (19.22") to a maximum of 1,220 mm (48.03"): 1 sheet (manual feed), 10 sheets (when optional banner tray is attached)
- · Index tab dividers: 15 sheets

NOTE

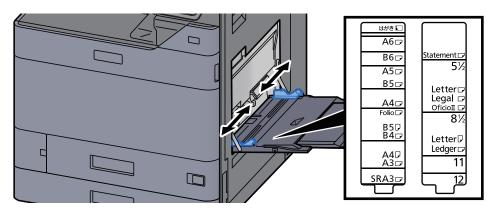
- When you load custom size paper, enter the paper size by referring to the following:
 - ▶ Paper Feeding (page 8-13)
- When you use special paper such as transparencies or thick paper, select the media type by referring to the following:
 - ▶ MP Tray Settings (page 8-14)
- Paper size can be automatically detected and selected, refer to the following:
 - Paper Selection (page 6-20)
 - ▶ MP Tray Settings (page 8-14)

1 Open the multipurpose tray.



Adjust the multipurpose tray size.

Paper sizes are marked on the multipurpose tray.



Coad paper.



Insert the paper along the paper width guides into the tray until it stops.

After removing new paper from its packaging, fan the paper before loading it in the multipurpose tray.

▶ Precaution for Loading Paper (page 3-2)

⊘ IMPORTANT

- When loading the paper, keep the print side facing down.
- · Curled paper must be uncurled before use.
- When loading paper into the multipurpose tray, check that there is no paper left over in the tray from a previous job before loading the paper. If there is just a small amount of paper left over in the multipurpose tray and you want to add more, first remove the left-over paper from the tray and include it with the new paper before loading the paper back into the tray.
- If there is a gap between the paper and the paper width guides, readjust the guides to fit the paper in order to prevent skewed feeding and paper jams.
- Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the load limits.

4 Specify the type of paper loaded in the multipurpose tray using the operation panel.

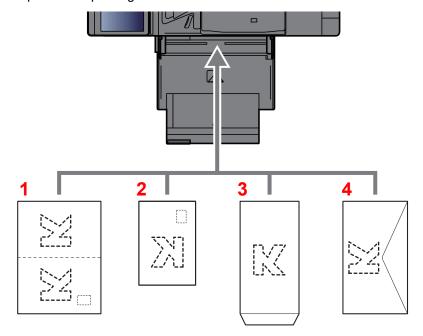
→ MP Tray Settings (page 8-14)

When you load envelopes or cardstock in the multipurpose tray

Load the paper with the print side facing down. For the procedure for printing, refer to the following:

Printer Driver User Guide

Example: When printing the address.



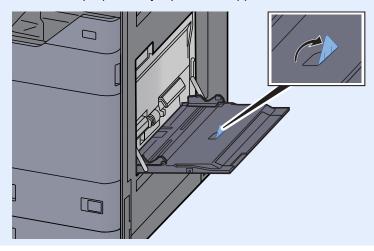
- 1 Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard)
- 2 Hagaki (Cardstocks)
- 3 Portrait form envelopes (Open the flap)
- 4 Landscape form envelopes (Close the flap)

⋈ IMPORTANT

- Use unfolded Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard).
- How to load envelopes (orientation and facing) will differ depending on the type of envelope. Be sure to load it in correctly, otherwise printing may be done in the wrong direction or on the wrong face.

NOTE

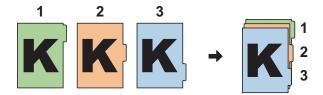
- When you load envelopes in the multipurpose tray, select the envelope type by referring to the following:
 - → MP Tray Settings (page 8-14)
- When you load cardstocks in the multipurpose tray, open the stopper as shown below.



Loading Index Paper in the Multipurpose Tray

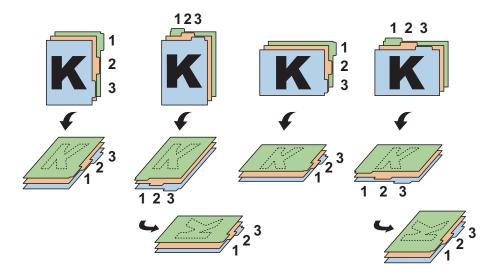
Prepare paper.

Sort the pages so that the 1st page is at the back.



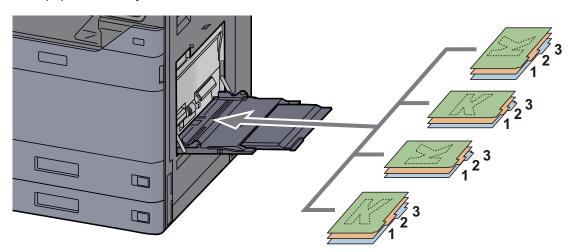
Orient the paper in the same orientation.

Place the paper print side down, oriented so that the tabs are on the trailing side of the paper when it feeds in.



Coad paper.

Load paper in the tray.



For the procedure for printing, refer to the following:

Printer Driver User Guide

Index paper must meet the following conditions.

Item	Description
Paper size	A4/Letter
Paper weight	136 to 256 g/m ²
Number of tabs	1 to 15
Length of tabs	30 mm or less

Favorites

After you add frequently used functions to Favorites, you can recall them quickly and easily. You can also name the favorites for easy identification when recalling.

The favorites below have been preregistered. The registered contents can be re-registered for easier use in your environment.

Favorite name	Description	Default Registration
ID Card Copy	Use this when you want to copy a driver's license or an insurance card. When you scan the front and back of the card, both sides will be combined and copied onto a single sheet.	 Copying Functions Original Size: [A5]/[Statement] Paper Selection: [Cassette 1] Zoom: [100%] Erase Shadowed Areas: [On]
Eco Copy	Use this to save toner consumption when printing. This changes color printing to black & white with lighter density, so that the toner consumption can be reduced.	Copying FunctionsEcoPrint: [On] (Level [5])
Newspaper Copy	Use this when you want to copy a newspaper article, or other originals printed on a colored substrate. This adjusts the image quality so that the color of the substrate or the text on the reverse side will not show on the copy.	 Copying Functions Prevent Bleed-thru: [On] Background Density Adj.: [Auto]
Technical Drawing Copy	Use this when you want to copy a drawing that contains shapes drawn with lines, and graphics. Use this also when you want to copy colored lines in black & white.	 Copying Functions Original Image: [Text] Sharpness (All): [+3] Background Density Adj.: [Auto]
Confidential Stamp	Use this to show a translucent text "Confidential" on the center of the document.	Copying Functions Prevent Bleed-thru: [On] Stamp: [Confidential] Font Size: [middle] Font Color: [Black] Stamp Position: [Center] Display Pattern: [Transparent]

⋒ NOTE

- Up to 50 functions combining copying and sending can be registered in the favorites.
- If user login administration is enabled, you can only register functions by logging in with administrator privileges.

Registering Favorites

The following procedure is an example of registering the copying function.

Display the screen.

- **1** [Home] key > [Copy]
- 2 Select [Favorites] while the copy mode is accessed.

Register the favorite.

1 [Add/Edit] > Select a number (01 to 50) for the favorite number



If you register on a favorite number already registered, delete the currently registered favorite before registering.

2 Enter the new favorite name > [Register]

The favorite is registered.

To display a registered favorite on the Home screen, select **[Add]** on the confirmation screen that appears.

3 Select [OK].

Recalling Favorites

Recall the favorite.

- 1 [Home] key > [...] > [Favorites] or select the icon of a favorite.
 If you selected the icon of a favorite, that favorite will be recalled. If you selected [Favorites], proceed to step 1-2.
- 2 Select the favorite number you want to recall.
 Select [Search] to enter the favorite number (01 to 50) directly for recalling.
 - NOTE

If the favorite cannot be recalled, the Document Box or the form overlay specified in the favorite might have been deleted. Check the Document Box.

Execute the favorite.

Place the originals > [Start] key

NOTE

[Favorites] can be selected in each function to call up the favorite registered for the function.

Editing Favorites

You can change favorite number and favorite name.

Display the screen.

- **1** [Home] key > [...] > [Favorites]
- 2 Select [Add/Edit].

Edit the favorite.

- 1 Select corresponding to the favorite number (01 to 50) to change.
- 2 Select [Edit] to change the favorite number and favorite name.
 - ▶ Registering Favorites (page 5-12)
- 3 [OK] > [OK]

Deleting Favorites

Display the screen.

- **1** [Home] key > [...] > [Favorites]
- 2 Select [Add/Edit].

Delete the favorite.

- 1 Select corresponding to the favorite number (01 to 50) to delete.
- 2 [Delete] > [Delete]

Application

The functionality of the machine can be expanded by installing applications.

Applications that help you perform your daily more efficiently such as a scan feature and an authentication feature are available.

For details, consult your sales representative or dealer.

Installing Applications

To use applications, first install the application in the machine and then activate the application.



NOTE

You can install applications and certificates on the machine. The number of applications you can run may vary according to the type of application.

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Add/Delete Application] > "Application" [Add/Delete Application]



· If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Select [Print Report] to print an application report.

Install the application.

- 1 [Add] > [OK]
- Insert the USB drive containing the application to be installed into the USB Memory Slot.



NOTE

When the message "USB Drive is recognized. Displaying files." is displayed, select [Cancel].

3 Select the application to be installed > [Install]

You can view detailed information on the selected application by selecting [] (information icon).

4 Select [Yes].

Installation of the application begins. Depending on the application being installed, the installation may take some time.

Once the installation ends, the original screen reappears.

NOTE

- To install another application, repeat steps 2-3 and 2-4.
- To remove the USB drive, select [Remove USB] and wait until the message "USB Drive can be safely removed." appears. Then remove the USB drive.

Activating Applications

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Add/Delete Application] > "Application" [Add/Delete Application]



NOTE

If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Activate the application.

1 Select the desired application > [Activate]

You can view detailed information on the selected application by selecting [____] (information icon).

2 Enter the license key > [Official]

Some applications do not require you to enter a license key. If the license key entry screen does not appear, go to step 2-3. To use the application as a trial, select [Trial] without entering the license key.

3 Select [Yes].



◯ IMPORTANT

- If you change the date/time while using the trial version of an application, you will no longer be able to use the application.
- Icons of activated application are displayed in the Home screen.
- 4 Select the application icon in the Home screen.

Select the application icon.

The application will start up.

Deactivating Applications

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Add/Delete Application] > "Application" [Add/Delete Application]

NOTE

If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Deactivate the application.

Select the desired application to exit > [Deactivate]

NOTE

- Select [x] on the screen if you want to exit the already activated application.
- · The procedure for exiting some applications may differ.

Uninstalling Applications

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Add/Delete Application] > "Application" [Add/Delete Application]

NOTE

If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Delete the application.

- 1 Select the application you want to delete > [Delete]
 You can view detailed information on the selected application by selecting [...] (information icon).
- 2 Select [Yes].

Registering Shortcuts (Copy, Send, and Document Box Settings)

You can register shortcuts for easy access to the frequently used functions. A function name linked to a registered shortcut can be changed as necessary.

Adding Shortcuts

Shortcut registration is performed in the basic screen of each function.

- Display the basic screen you want to register.
- Register the shortcuts.
 - Select [Shortcut].
 Display the shortcut menu.
 - 2 Select [Add].



- 3 Select the settings you want to add > [Next >]
- 4 Enter the shortcut name > [Next >].
 - NOTE

The function name will be displayed if you do not enter a shortcut key.

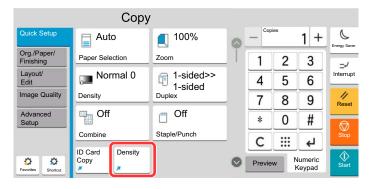
5 Confirm the entry.

Select [Shortcut Name], [Function], or [Permission] to change the settings.

NOTE

[Permission] is displayed when the user login administration is enabled.

6 Select [Finish].



The shortcut is registered.

Editing Shortcuts

Display the screen.

- Select [Shortcut].
 Display the shortcut menu.
- 2 Select [1] (edit icon).

Edit the shortcut.

- Select the shortcut key you want to edit.
- 2 Select [Edit].
- 3 Select [Shortcut Name] or [Function] > Change the settings > [OK].
- 4 [Finish] > [Update]

Deleting Shortcuts

Display the screen.

- Select [Shortcut].
 Display the shortcut menu.
- 2 Select [] (edit icon).

Delete the shortcut.

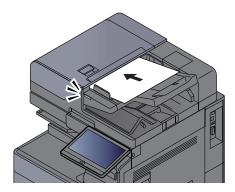
Select the shortcut key you want to delete > [Delete] > [Delete]

Copying

The procedures here represent the basic copy operation and how to cancel the copy.

Basic Operation

- [Home] key > [Copy]
- Place the originals.



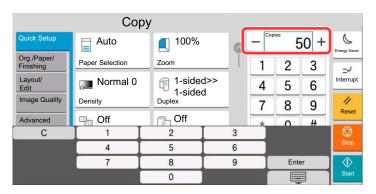


- **▶** Loading Originals (page 5-2)
- 3 Select the functions.

To configure the settings for functions, select the Global Navigation.

- → About Functions Available on the Machine (page 6-2)
- Use the numeric keys to enter the copy quantity.

Select the area for inputting the number of sheets to display the numeric keypad. Or, use [+] or [-] to enter the number of sheets. Specify the desired number up to 9999.



Check the preview image. 5

Select [Preview] tab > [Preview] to show a preview image.



Original Preview (page 2-24)

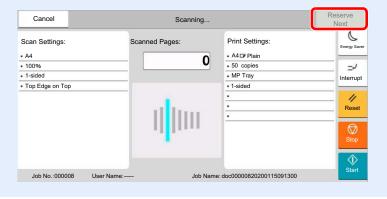
Press the [Start] key. 6

Copying begins.

NOTE

This function allows you to reserve the next job during printing. Using this function, the original will be scanned while the machine is printing. When the current print job ends, the reserved copy job is printed. If "Reserve Next Priority" is set to [Off], [Reserve Next] will appear. Select [Reserve Next] and configure the necessary settings for the copy job.

Reserve Next Priority (page 8-35)



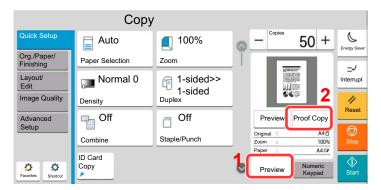
Proof Copy

It is possible to copy one sheet before copying a large number of sheets. This enables you to check the contents and finishing and copy the desired number of sheets without scanning the original if you are satisfied with the result. If you want to make changes, you can change the settings and copy only one sheet again.

Configure the settings.

Place the originals onto the machine, and configure the copy settings.

Select [Preview] tab > [Proof Copy].



A confirmation copy is printed.

? Check.

Check contents and finishing.

Modify copy settings according to results. All functions except for functions whose keys are grayed out on the touch panel can be corrected.

To perform a proof copy again, select [Proof Copy].

Press the [Start] key.

Remaining sheets are copied.

Interrupt Copy

This function allows you to pause the current jobs in progress when you need to make copies immediately.

When the interruption copy ends, the machine resumes the paused print jobs.

NOTE

 If the machine is left unused for 60 seconds in interrupt copy mode, interrupt copying is automatically cancelled and printing resumes.

You can change the delay until interrupt copying is canceled. Change the delay as required.

- Interrupt Clear Timer (page 8-9)
- The interrupt copy function may be unavailable depending on the status of document finisher usage. In this case, try the priority override.
 - → Priority Override (page 6-71)

Configure the settings.

Select the [Interrupt] key.

The current print job is temporarily interrupted.

Place the originals onto the machine for interrupt copy, and configure the copy settings.

Press the [Start] key.

Interrupt copying begins.

When interrupt copying ends, select the [Interrupt] key.

The machine resumes the paused print jobs.

Canceling Jobs

- Select the [Stop] key with the copy screen displayed.
- Cancel a job.

When there is a job is being scanned

The copy job is canceled.

When there is a job printing or on standby

Canceling job screen appears. The current print job is temporarily interrupted.

Select the job you wish to cancel > [Cancel] > [Yes]



If "Reserve Next Priority" is set to [Off], the Copying screen appears in the touch panel. In such case, selecting the [Stop] key or [Cancel] will cancel the printing job in progress.

→ Reserve Next Priority (page 8-35)

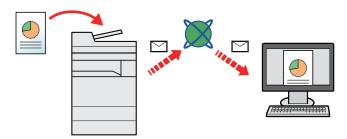
Frequently-Used Sending Method

This machine can send a scanned image as an attachment of an E-mail message or to a PC linked to the network. In order to do this, it is necessary to register the sender and destination (recipient) address on the network.

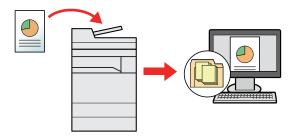
A network environment which enables the machine to connect to a mail server is required in order to send E-mail. It is recommended that a Local Area Network (LAN) be used to assist with transmission speed and security issues.

Follow the steps below for basic sending. The following four options are available.

- · Send as E-mail (E-mail Addr Entry): Sends a scanned original image as an E-mail attachment.
 - → Sending Document via E-mail (page 5-24)



- · Send to Folder (SMB): Stores a scanned original image in a shared folder of any PC.
 - → Sending Document to Desired Shared Folder on a Computer (Scan to PC) (page 5-26)
- Send to Folder (FTP): Stores a scanned original image in a folder of an FTP server.
 - → Sending Document to Folder on an FTP Server (Scan to FTP) (page 5-29)



- Image Data Scanning with TWAIN / WIA: Scan the document using a TWAIN or WIA compatible application program.
 - ➤ Scanning using TWAIN or WIA (page 5-31)

NOTE

- · Different sending options can be specified in combination.
 - → Sending to Different Types of Destinations (Multi Sending) (page 5-42)
- The fax function can be used on products equipped with fax capability.
 - FAX Operation Guide

Sending Document via E-mail

When transmitting using wireless LAN, select the interface dedicated to the send function in advance.

▶ Primary Network (Client) (page 8-70)

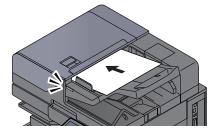
Configuring Settings before Sending

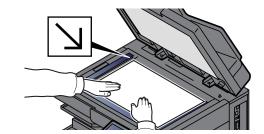
Before sending an E-mail, configure the SMTP and E-mail settings using the Command Center RX.

► E-mail Settings (page 2-71)

Sending Scanned Document via E-mail

- [Home] key > [Send]
- Place the originals.





- <u>▶ Loading Originals (page 5-2)</u>
- In the destination screen for sending, select [+] > [Email]
- 4 Enter destination E-mail address > [OK]

Up to 256 characters can be entered.

◆ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

If the [Entry Check for New Dest.] is set to [On], re-entry screen of the destination information is displayed.

Re-entering the New Destination (page 5-52)

To enter multiple destinations, select [**Next Destination**] and enter the next destination. Up to 100 E-mail addresses can be specified.

You can register the entered E-mail address in the Address Book by selecting [**Add to Address Book**]. You can also replace the information for a previously registered destination.

Destinations can be changed later.

Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-52)



- If "Broadcast" is set to [**Permit**], the destination is displayed after the message "The destination below is selected."
- If "Broadcast" is set to [Prohibit], multiple destinations cannot be entered.
 - → Broadcast (page 8-39)

Select the functions.

Select the Global Navigation to display other functions.

→ Send (page 6-5)

⋈ W W

- [Email Encrypted TX] and [Digital Signature to Email] appear when setting S/MIME on the Command Center RX.
 - Command Center RX User Guide
- When using [Email Encrypted TX] and [Digital Signature to Email], specify the E-mail addresses which have encryption certificate, from the address book. The directly-entered address can not be configured these functions. When entering E-mail address from the operation panel, you can not use these functions.

6 Press the [Start] key.

NOTE

If the [Destination Check before Send] is set to [On], the confirmation screen is displayed.

▶ Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-52)

7 Press the [Start] key.

NOTE

When multiple destinations are specified, confirmation message is displayed on the screen. After the confirmation, select **[Yes**].

Sending starts.

Sending Document to Desired Shared Folder on a Computer (Scan to PC)

You can store the scanned document into the desired shared folder on a computer.

Configuring Settings before Sending

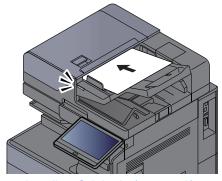
Before sending a document, configure the following settings.

- · Make a note of the computer name and full computer name
 - ▶ Making a Note of the Computer Name and Full Computer Name (page 3-24)
- · Make a note of the user name and domain name
 - → Making a Note of the User Name and Domain Name (page 3-24)
- Create a shared folder and make a note of a shared folder
 - Creating a Shared Folder, Making a Note of a Shared Folder (page 3-25)
- · Configure the Windows firewall
 - Configuring Windows Firewall (page 3-29)

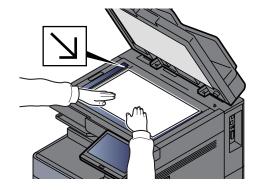
Sending Document to Desired Shared Folder on a Computer

When transmitting using wireless LAN, select the interface dedicated to the send function in advance.

- ▶ Primary Network (Client) (page 8-70)
 - [Home] key > [Send]
 - Place the originals.







3 In the destination screen for sending, select [+] > [SMB]

4 Enter the destination information.

• To search for a folder on a PC on the network, select [Search Folder from Network] or [Search Folder by Host Name].

If you selected [**Search Folder from Network**], you can search all PCs on the network for a destination.

If you pressed [**Search Folder by Host Name**], you can enter the "Domain/Workgroup", and "Host Name" to search PCs on the network for the destination.

Up to 500 addresses can be displayed. Select the host name (PC name) that you want to specify in the screen that appears, and select [**OK**]. The login user name and login password entry screen appears.

After you enter the login user name and login password name of the destination PC, the shared folders appear. Select the folder that you want to specify and select [**OK**]. The address of the selected shared folder is set.

Select the folder from the Search Results list.

- To directly specify the SMB folder, select [Folder Path Entry] and enter each item.
 - → Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

If the [Entry Check for New Dest.] is set to [On], re-entry screen of the destination information is displayed.

→ Re-entering the New Destination (page 5-52)

The table below lists the items to be set.

Item	Description	Max. characters
Host Name ^{*1}	Computer name	Up to 256 characters
Port	Port number If the port number is not specified, the default port number is 445.	_
Folder Path	Share name For example: scannerdata If saving in a folder in the shared folder: share name\folder name in shared folder	Up to 260 characters
Login User Name*2	 If the computer name and domain name are the same: User Name For example: james.smith If the computer name and domain name are different: Domain name\User name For example: abcdnet\james.smith 	Up to 64 characters
Login Password	Windows logon password (Case sensitive.)	Up to 128 characters

^{*1} Enter the Host name or IP address.

To enter the IPv6 address, enclose the address in brackets [].

(Example: [2001:db8:a0b:12f0::10])

*2 Domain name\User name

For example: abcdnet\james.smith

When sending a document through an optional network interface (IB-50 or IB-51), "\" cannot be used. If the computer name is different from the domain name, login user name needs to be input by using "@."

(Example: james.smith@abcdnet)

Check the status.

Check the information.

Change the delay as required.

2 Select [Connection Test] to check the connection.

"Connected." appears when connection to the destination is correctly established. If "Cannot connect." appears, review the entry.

To enter multiple destinations, select [Next Destination] and enter the next destination.

You can register the entered information in the Address Book by selecting [**Add to Address Book**].

NOTE

- If "Broadcast" is set to [Permit], the destination is displayed after the message "The
 destination below is selected."
- If "Broadcast" is set to [Prohibit], multiple destinations cannot be entered.
 - **▶** Broadcast (page 8-39)

6 Select [OK].

Destinations can be changed later.

→ Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-52)

Select the functions.

Select the Global Navigation to display other functions.

→ Send (page 6-5)

Press the [Start] key.



If the [Destination Check before Send] is set to [On], the confirmation screen is displayed.

▶ Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-52)

Opening of the second of th



When multiple destinations are specified, confirmation message is displayed on the screen. After the confirmation, select **[Yes**].

Sending starts.

Sending Document to Folder on an FTP Server (Scan to FTP)

Configuring Settings before Sending

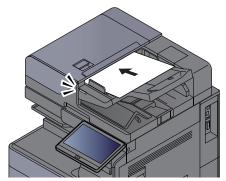
Before sending a document, configure the FTP Client (Transmission).

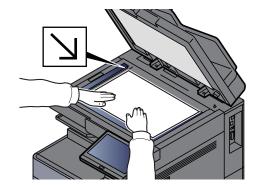
▶ Protocol Settings (page 8-60)

Sending Document to Folder on an FTP Server

When transmitting using wireless LAN, select the interface dedicated to the send function in advance.

- → Primary Network (Client) (page 8-70)
 - [Home] key > [Send]
 - Place the originals.





- ▶ Loading Originals (page 5-2)
- 3 In the destination screen for sending, select [+] > [FTP]
- Enter the destination information.
 - → Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

If the [Entry Check for New Dest.] is set to [On], re-entry screen of the destination information is displayed.

→ Re-entering the New Destination (page 5-52)

The table below lists the items to be set.

Item	Descriptions	Max. characters
Host Name*1	Host name or IP address of FTP server	Up to 64 characters
Port	Port number If the port number is not specified, the default port number is 21.	_
Folder Path*2	Path for the file to be stored For example: User\ScanData If no path is entered, the file is stored in the home directory.	Up to 128 characters
Login User Name	FTP server login user name	Up to 64 characters
Login Password	FTP server login password (Case sensitive.)	Up to 64 characters

- *1 To enter the IPv6 address, enclose the address in brackets []. (Example: [2001:db8:a0b:12f0::10])
- *2 When the FTP server is based on Linux/UNIX, the path including the sub-folder is combined by the slash "/" not using the back-slash.

Check the status.

1 Check the information.

Change the delay as required.

2 Select [Connection Test] to check the connection.

"Connected." appears when connection to the destination is correctly established. If "Cannot connect." appears, review the entry.

To enter multiple destinations, select [Next Destination] and enter the next destination.

You can register the entered information in the Address Book by selecting [**Add to Address Book**].

NOTE

- If "Broadcast" is set to [**Permit**], the destination is displayed after the message "The destination below is selected."
- If "Broadcast" is set to [Prohibit], multiple destinations cannot be entered.
 - → Broadcast (page 8-39)

6 Select [OK].

Destinations can be changed later.

→ Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-52)

7 Select the functions.

Select the Global Navigation to display other functions.

→ Send (page 6-5)

Press the [Start] key.

NOTE

If the [Destination Check before Send] is set to [On], the confirmation screen is displayed.

→ Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-52)

Opening of the property of

NOTE

When multiple destinations are specified, confirmation message is displayed on the screen. After the confirmation, select **[Yes**].

Sending starts.

Scanning using TWAIN or WIA

When transmitting using wireless LAN, select the interface dedicated to the send function in advance.

Primary Network (Client) (page 8-70)

Configuring Settings before Sending

Before sending a document, confirm that TWAIN/WIA driver is installed on a computer and the settings are configured.

- Setting TWAIN Driver (page 2-61)
- Setting WIA Driver (page 2-63)

Scanning Document Using Application

This subsection explains how to scan an original using TWAIN. The WIA driver is used in the same way.

Display the screen.

- 1 Activate the TWAIN compatible application software.
- Select the machine using the application and display the dialog box.
 - **NOTE**

For selecting the machine, see the Operation Guide or Help for each application

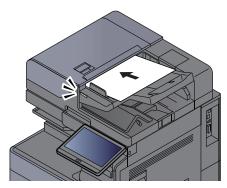
Configure the scan settings.

Select scanning settings in the dialog box that opens.

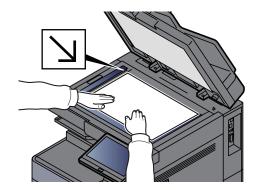
NOTE

For the settings, refer to Help in the dialog box.

Place the originals.



Loading Originals (page 5-2)



Scan the originals.

Click the [Scan] button. The document data is scanned.

Scanning Document stored in a Custom Box

Follow the steps as below for scanning a document stored in a custom box using the TWAIN driver. When transmitting using wireless LAN, select the interface dedicated to the send function in advance.

Primary Network (Client) (page 8-70)

Configuring Settings before Sending

Before sending a document, confirm that TWAIN driver is installed on a computer and the settings are configured.

Setting TWAIN Driver (page 2-61)

Scanning Document Stored in a Box

This subsection explains how to scan an original using an application supporting TWAIN.



To load a document saved in the Custom Box, select the model name with (Box) from "Model" on the TWAIN driver configuration screen.

Display the screen.

- 1 Activate the TWAIN compatible application software.
- Select the machine using the application and display the dialog box.



■ NOTE

For selecting the machine, see the Operation Guide or Help for each application software.

Display lists of documents.

- 1 Select a custom box stored a document. If a password has been set for the box, the password entry screen appears. Enter the password and click the [OK] button. When you select a box, the document files in the Custom Box appear in "Document List".
- 2 Set how to display the document data. Click the [Setting] button to select each item.



NOTE

For the settings, refer to Help in the dialog box.

3 Click [OK] button.

Scan the originals.

1 Select the document data to be scanned from [Document List].

Enter the document data name in the Search (Name) to find the data having the same document data name or the document data name with the same beginning.

Click the [Detail] button to display the selected document data. When the document data includes multiple pages, select the checkbox beside the pages you want to scan. The selected pages will be scanned.

◯ NOTE

In this case, the scanned page or the selected document data will not be deleted from the Custom Box.

2 Click the [Acquire] button.

The document data is scanned.

Useful Sending Method

You can specify the following useful scanning (sending) methods.

- WSD Scan: Saves images of originals scanned on this machine as files on a WSD-compatible computer.
 - → WSD Scan (page 5-35)
- DSM Scan: A scanned document can be automatically saved in any format or sent to any destination by reading a scan process from Active Directory.
 - → DSM Scan (page 5-37)
- Scanning with File Management Utility: Scans a document using the settings of File Management Utility and saves it to a specified network folder or PC.
 - → Scanning with File Management Utility (page 5-39)
- Scanning using the fax server: A scanned original is send via a fax server.
 - → Using a Fax Server to Send (Fax Server Send) (page 5-45)
- Sending to different types of destinations (Multi sending): Sends to different types of destination (E-mail addresses, folders, etc.) in a single operation.
 - → Sending to Different Types of Destinations (Multi Sending) (page 5-42)
- Send to Me (Email): Sends to the E-mail address of the logged in user when user login is enabled.
 - → Send to Me (Email) (page 5-44)

WSD Scan

WSD Scan saves images of originals scanned on this machine as files on a WSD-compatible computer.

NOTE

- To use WSD Scan, confirm that the computer used for WSD scanning and the machine is network-connected, and "WSD Scan" is set to [**On**] in the network settings.
 - → WSD Scan (page 8-60)
- For information on operating the computer, refer to the computer's help or the operation guide of your software.

When transmitting using wireless LAN, select the interface dedicated to the send function in advance.

▶ Primary Network (Client) (page 8-70)

Installing the Driver

For Windows 10

- Right-click [Start] button on the Windows and select [Control Panel] and then [View devices and printer].
- Install the driver.

Click [Add a device]. Select the machine's icon and then click [Next].

When the machine's icon is displayed in "**Printers**" on the [**Devices and Printers**] screen, the installation is completed.

For Windows 8.1 and Microsoft Windows Server 2012

- 1 Click [Search] in charms, [Control Panel], and then [View devices and printers].
- Install the driver.

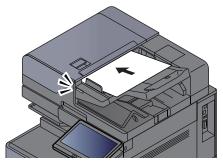
Click [Add a device]. Select the machine's icon and then click [Next].

When the machine's icon is displayed in "**Printers**" on the [**Devices and Printers**] screen, the installation is completed.

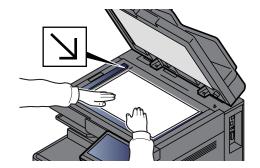
Executing WSD scan

[Home] key > [Send]

Place the originals.







Display the screen.

In the destination screen for sending, select [+] > [WSD Scan]

Scan the originals.

Procedure using this machine

- 1 [From Operation Panel] > [Next]
- 2 Select the destination computer > [OK]
 Select [Reload] to reload the computer list.
 You can view information on the selected computer by selecting [...] (information icon).
- 3 Set the type of original, file format, etc., as desired.
- 4 Press the [Start] key.
 Sending begins and the software installed on the computer is activated.

Procedure from Your Computer

- 1 [From Computer] > [Start]
- 2 Use the software installed on the computer to send the images.

DSM Scan

A scanned document can be automatically saved in any format or sent to any destination by reading a scan process from Active Directory. For details, refer to Windows Server Help.

When transmitting using wireless LAN, select the interface dedicated to the send function in advance.

→ Primary Network (Client) (page 8-70)

Configuring Settings before Sending

If you are performing DSM scan, check the items below.

- The machine is connected to an Active Directory on the network that the scan process can reference.
- "DSM Scan", "LDAP" and "HTTP" are set to [On] in Network.
 - ▶ Protocol Settings (page 8-60)
- · "Network" [SSL] is set to [On] in Security Settings.
 - → SSL (page 8-83)
- [Network Authentication] is set in.
 - **▶** Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)



If the Active Directory that the scan process can reference is not on the network authentication server, DSM must be set in Command Center RX.

Command Center RX User Guide

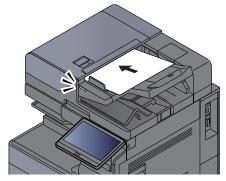
Executing DSM Scan

[Home] key > [Send]

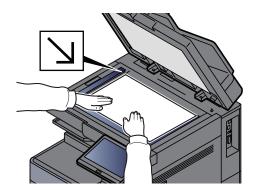


Depending on the settings, the address book screen may appear. In this event, select **[Cancel]** to display the destination screen for sending.

Place the originals.



Loading Originals (page 5-2)



3 Display the screen.

In the destination screen for sending, select [+] > [DSM Scan]

Select the scan process to be used > [OK].

Select [Reload] to reload the computer list.

To check the settings, select [...] (information icon).

Change the settings and add destinations as needed.

Only E-mail addresses can be added as destinations.

In the send destination screen, select [**Detail/Edit**], [**Destination**], and then [**Address Book**] or [**E-mail Addr Entry**], and add a destination.

In some scan processes, it may not be possible to change settings or add destinations.

6 Press the [Start] key.

NOTE

If the [Destination Check before Send] is set to [On], the confirmation screen is displayed.

→ Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-52)

Press the [Start] key.

NOTE

When multiple destinations are specified, confirmation message is displayed on the screen. After the confirmation, select **[Yes**].

Sending starts.

Scanning with File Management Utility

"FMU Connection" is installed on the machine as a standard application.

FMU Connection can be used to scan an original according to the settings configured with "File Management Utility" downloaded from our website, and save the image data and scanning information on a specified server or in a specified folder. Unlike regular transmission functions, this application lets you use metadata such as the scan date and time and the data format.

Configuring Settings before Sending

The first time you use FMU Connection, you must enable it in System Menu.

Add/Delete Application (page 8-83)

To use this function, you must install File Management Utility on your computer and configure settings for the multifunction machine to be used, scanning conditions, and the file save location. To install File Management Utility, refer to the following.

→ Installing Software (page 2-51)



For information on using File Management Utility, refer to the following:

File Management Utility User Guide

Using FMU Connection to Scan an Original

- 1 Make sure that File Management Utility is running on the computer (or server) on which File Management Utility is installed.
- Place the original.
- 3 Select [FMU Connection].

FMU Connection starts.

- 4 Follow the on-screen instructions to enter the necessary information and select [Next].
- When the scan settings screen appears, select each item and configure the necessary settings.

The features that can be set depend on File Management Utility.

6 Press the [Start] key.

Sending starts.

Using MultiCrop Scan

MultiCrop Scan is installed as a standard application in this machine.

Using MultiCrop Scan function, you can scan multiple receipts, invoices, business cards, etc., cut them out individually, file them, and send them to a specified destination or save them on a USB drive.



To send to the specified destination, configure the network.

▶ Network Setup (page 2-33)

Configuring Settings before Scanning

The first time you use MultiCrop Scan function, you must enable it in System Menu.

Add/Delete Application (page 8-83)

Using MultiCrop Scan to Send/Store an Original

Place the original.

IMPORTANT

- Before placing originals, clean the platen glass.
- Place the original and close the cover of Document Processor to use MultiCrop
- Allow at least 15 mm between originals.
- Use square originals for scanning correctly.
- A maximum of 16 original sizes from 50 × 50 mm to 210 × 210 mm can be detected. Areas longer than 210mm are clipped and scanned.

NOTE

- The maximum number of continuous scanning pages is 982.
- Using MultiCrop Scan, you can correct the skew of the original (range of -45 degrees clockwise). Place the originals so that the correct scan results are obtained.

[Home] key > [MultiCrop Scan]

MultiCrop Scan function starts.

Select [Send] or [Store to USB].

- 1 When selecting [Send], select [Address book] or [Manual entry] to add the destinations. When selecting [Store to USB], select [Open] or [Back] to specify the location to store the file in USB drive, and go to step 4.
- When selecting [Address book], select the destination to send the file and then select [Back].
 - Sending method are SMB, FTP and E-mail. Up to 10 destinations are selected.
 - When selecting [Manual entry], add details of destination and select [Add to list].
- 3 Confirm whether the selected destinations are correct.

Select [Scan & send].

Configure the functions.

You can use or combine the following functions.

For details of each function, access to the reference page in the table.

Item	Value	Reference Page
File Format	PDF, TIFF, JPEG	6-75
Image Quality	Low to High (5 levels)	-
Color Selection	Full Color, Black & White, Grayscale	6-36
Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto	6-25
Scan Resolution	200 x 200 dpi, 300 x 300 dpi, 400 x 400 dpi, 600 x 600 dpi	6-82
File Separation	ON, OFF	6-82
Continuous Scan	ON, OFF	6-68
Density	-4.0 (Lighter) to ;4.0 (Darker)	6-34
File Name	Enter the file name (within 32 characters). You can also add [Job No.] and [Data and Time] .	6-70
Border Erase	Standard, Full Scan, Border Erase Sheet, Border Erase Book, Individual Border Erase	6-45

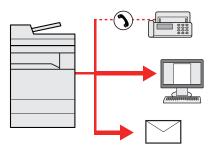
Select [<] or [>] to move the function pages.

6 Select [Start Scanning].

The originals are scanned, and sent them to the specified destinations or stored them to the USB drive.

Sending to Different Types of Destinations (Multi Sending)

You can specify destinations that combine E-mail addresses, folders (SMB or FTP), fax numbers and i-FAX. This is referred to as Multi Sending. This is useful for sending to different types of destination (E-mail addresses, folders, etc.) in a single operation.



No. of broadcast items: Up to 500

However, number of items are restricted for the following sending options.

E-mail: Up to 100

Folders (SMP, FTP): Total of 10 SMB and FTP

i-FAX: Up to 100

Also, depending on the settings, you can send and print at the same time.

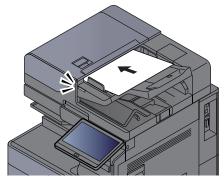
Procedures are the same as used in specifying the destinations of respective types. Continue to enter E-mail address or folder path so that they appear in the destination list. Press the [Start] key to start transmission to all destinations at one time.

NOTE

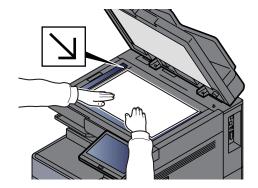
- If the destinations include a fax, the images sent to all destinations will be black and white.
- · If "Broadcast" is set to [Prohibit], multiple destinations cannot be entered
 - ◆ Broadcast (page 8-39)

[Home] key > [Send]

Place the originals.



Loading Originals (page 5-2)



Specify the destination.



If "Broadcast" is set to [**Permit**], the destination is displayed after the message "The destination below is selected."

The following screen is displayed after adding the destination.



Set the functions.

Select the Global Navigation to display other functions.

→ Send (page 6-5)

5 Press the [Start] key.

NOTE

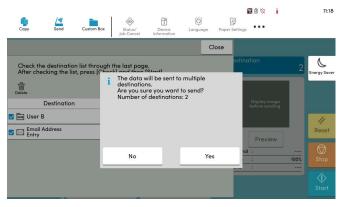
If the [Destination Check before Send] is set to [On], the confirmation screen is displayed.

→ Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-52)

6 Press the [Start] key.



When multiple destinations are specified, confirmation message is displayed on the screen. After the confirmation, select **[Yes**].



Sending starts.

Send to Me (Email)

When user login is enabled, the document is sent to the E-mail address of the logged in user.

Configuring Settings before Sending

To use this function, configure the followings.

- To use this function, the function icon must be displayed in the home screen.
 - → Editing the Home Screen (page 2-16)
- · An E-mail address must be set in user login for the user who logs in.
 - → Adding a User (Local User List) (page 9-6)

Sending a document to the mail address of the logged in user

- Select [Home] key.
- 2 Select [Send to Me (Email)].

Using a Fax Server to Send (Fax Server Send)

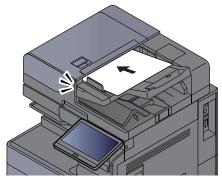
You can send a scanned document via a fax server.

NOTE

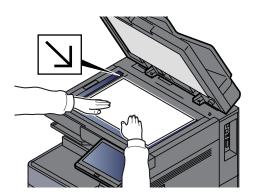
- A fax server is required to use this function. For information about the fax server, contact the applicable administrator.
- · FAX server settings must be configured to send a FAX.
 - Command Center RX User Guide
 - → Fax Server (page 8-69)

[Home] key > [Send]

Place the originals.







3 Display the screen.

In the destination screen for sending, select [+] > [Fax Server]

4 Enter recipient information.

Entering Information Directly

- 1 Select [Fax No. Entry].
- 2 Enter the fax number > [OK]

NOTE

- Use the numeric keys to enter a number.
- If the [Entry Check for New Dest.] is set to [On], re-entry screen of the destination information is displayed.
 - Re-entering the New Destination (page 5-52)

Destinations can be changed later.

→ Checking and Editing Destinations (page 5-51)

Selecting from the Address Book

1 Select [Address Book].

- 2 Specify the destination > [OK]
 - ◆ Choosing from the Address Book (page 5-48)

Destinations can be changed later.

Checking and Editing Destinations (page 5-51)

Selecting from an External Address Book

- 1 Select [Ext Address Book].
- 2 Specify the destination > [OK]
 - ◆ Choosing from the Address Book (page 5-48)

Destinations can be changed later.

→ Checking and Editing Destinations (page 5-51)



For details on the External Address Book, refer to the following:

Command Center RX User Guide

Select the functions. 5

Select the Global Navigation to display other functions.

→ Send (page 6-5)

Press the [Start] key. 6



If the [Destination Check before Send] is set to [On], the confirmation screen is displayed.

→ Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-52)

Press the [Start] key.

NOTE

When multiple destinations are specified, confirmation message is displayed on the screen. After the confirmation, select [Yes].

Sending starts.

Canceling Sending Jobs

- Select the [Stop] key with the send screen displayed.
- Cancel a job.

When there is a job is being scanned

Job Cancel appears.

When there is a job sending or on standby

Canceling job screen appears. Select the job you wish to cancel > [Cancel] > [Yes]



Selecting the [Stop] key will not temporarily stop a job that you have already started sending.

Handling Destination

This section explains how to select and confirm the destination.

Specifying Destination

Select the destination using either of the following methods except entering address directly:

- Choosing from the Address Book
 - Choosing from the Address Book (page 5-48)
- Choosing from the External Address Book

For details on the External Address Book, refer to the following:

- Command Center RX User Guide
- Choosing from One Touch key
 - → Choosing from the One Touch Key (page 5-50)
- Choosing from the Search (No.)
 - → Choosing from the Search (No.) (page 5-50)
- Choosing from the FAX
 - FAX Operation Guide



- You can set the machine up so that the address book screen appears when you select the [Send] key.
 - → Default Screen (page 8-38)
- · If you are using the products equipped with the fax function, you can specify the fax destination. Enter the other party number using the numeric keypad.

Choosing from the Address Book

For more information about how to register destinations in the Address Book, refer to the following:

Registering Destinations in the Address Book (page 3-38)

In the destination screen for sending, select [Address Book] (!!).



NOTE

For details on the External Address Book, refer to the following:

Command Center RX User Guide

Select the destinations.

Select the checkbox to select the desired destination from the list. The selected destinations are indicated by a checkmark in the check box. To use an address book on the LDAP server, select [Selection] > [Address Book] > [Ext Address Book].

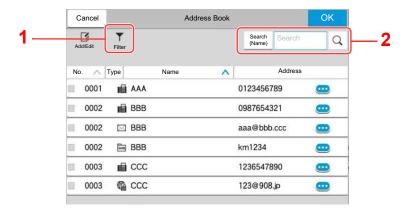
You can change the order in which the destinations are listed by selecting [Name] or [No.].



- To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.
- If "Broadcast" is set to [Prohibit], multiple destinations cannot be selected. This also applies to a group in which multiple destinations are registered.
 - → Broadcast (page 8-39)

Destination Search

Destinations registered in the Address Book can be searched. Advanced search by type or by initial letter is also available.



Keys used	Search type	Subjects searched
1	Filter	Advanced search by type of registered destination (Email, Folder, Fax, iFax or Group). (Fax: Only when the optional FAX Kit is installed. iFax: Only when the optional Internet FAX Kit is activated.)
		You can set this function up so that destination types are selected when the address book is displayed. For details, refer to the following:
		Narrow Down (page 8-42)
2	Search (No.)	Search by registered address number or name. Select eithe [Search (No.)] or [Search (Name)] to switch between [Search (No.)] and [Search (Name)].
Sea	Search (Name)	

Accept the destination > [OK]

Destinations can be changed later.

→ Checking and Editing Destinations (page 5-51)

NOTE

- To delete the destination, select [\scale] > [\overline{\ove
- You can set the default sort setting of the address for the address book.
 - **→** Sort (page 8-42)

Choosing from the One Touch Key

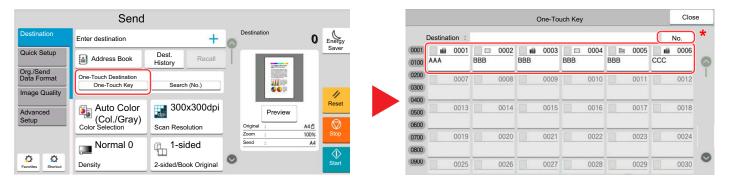
In the destination screen for sending, select the One Touch Keys where the destination is registered.



NOTE

If the One Touch Keys for the desired destination is hidden on the touch panel, select [a] or [] to display all One Touch Keys. This procedure assumes that One Touch Keys have already been registered. For more information on adding One Touch keys, refer to the following:

Adding a Destination on One Touch Key (page 3-45)



The [No.] key has the same function as [Search (No.)] displayed on the touch panel. Use to directly enter a number with the numeric keys, such as specifying a transmission address using a one-touch key number, or calling up a stored program using the program number. For information on one-touch key numbers, refer to the following:

Choosing from the Search (No.)

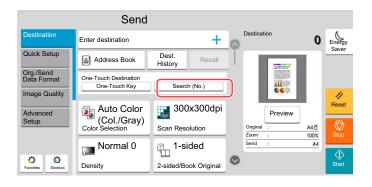
Access the destination by specifying the 4-digit (0001 to 1000) One Touch Key number.

In the destination screen for sending, select [Search (No.)] to display the numeric entry screen. Select the entry field, and use the numeric keys to enter the speed dial number.



NOTE

If you entered the One Touch Key in 1 to 3-digit, select [OK].



Checking and Editing Destinations

Display the screen.

Specify the destination.

→ Specifying Destination (page 5-48)

Check and edit the destination.

Select [∨] to display a destination list.

- Select [...] (information icon) to check the destination.
- Select [] (edit icon) to edit the destination.

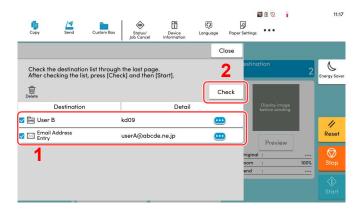
NOTE

- When selecting [**On**] for Entry Check for New Destination, the confirmation screen appears. Enter the same destination again, and select [**OK**].
 - ► Entry Check for New Dest. (page 8-39)
- When selecting [On] for Destination Check before Send, the confirmation screen appears after pressing the [Start] key.
 - → Destination Check before Send (page 8-39)
 - → Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-52)

Confirmation Screen of Destinations

When selecting [On] for Destination Check before Send, the confirmation screen of destinations appears after pressing the [Start] key.

Destination Check before Send (page 8-39)



Move the screen to the bottom and confirm all destinations.

If the destination is correct, select the check box at the left end of the destination and make a check mark.

Selecting [...] (information icon) shows the detailed information of the destination.

To delete the destination, select the destination you want to delete > [Delete] > [Delete]
To add the destination, select [Close] and then return to the destination screen.

2 Select [Check].

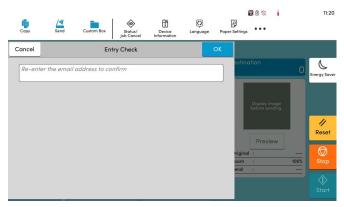


Be sure to confirm all destination by displaying them on the touch panel. You cannot select [Check] unless you have confirmed all destination.

Re-entering the New Destination

If the [Entry Check for New Dest.] is set to [On], re-entry screen of the destination information is displayed.

Entry Check for New Dest. (page 8-39)



Enter the same destination information again and select [OK].

Recall

Recall is a function allowing you to send the last entered destination once again. When you want to send the image to the same destination, select [Recall], and you can call the destination you sent on the destination list.

Select [Recall].

The destination you sent is displayed on the destination list.



NOTE

When the last sending included FAX, folders and E-mail destinations, they are also displayed. If necessary, add or delete the destination.

Press the [Start] key.

Sending starts.



NOTE

- When [On] is selected in "Destination Check before Send", a destination confirmation screen is displayed when you press the [Start] key.
 - → Confirmation Screen of Destinations (page 5-52)
- Recall information is canceled in the following conditions.
 - When you turn the power off
 - When you send a next image (new recall information is registered)
 - When you log out

How to use the FAX Function

On products with a FAX function, it is possible to use the FAX function. The optional FAX Kit is required in order to make use of FAX functionality.

FAX Operation Guide

Using Document Boxes

Document Box is a function for saving print data from a computer and sharing it with multiple users.

The available Document Boxes are as follows: Custom Box, Job Box, USB drive Box, and Fax Box.

What is Custom Box?

Custom Box is a component box which you can create within the Document Box and store data for later retrieval. You can create or delete a Custom Box.

The following operations are possible:

- Creating a new Custom Box
- Printing Document in a Custom Box
- Saving scanned documents to a Custom Box
- Sending Documents in a Custom Box
- Editing Documents in a Custom Box
- Deleting Documents in a Custom Box



The operation on Custom Box you perform from operation panel can also be made using Command Center RX.

Command Center RX User Guide

What is Job Box?

Job Box is a generic name for the "Private Print/Stored Job Box", "Quick Copy/Proof and Hold Box", "Repeat Copy Box", and "Form for Form Overlay Box". These Job Boxes cannot be created or deleted by a user.



- You can set up the machine so that temporary documents in job boxes are automatically deleted.
 - → Deletion of Job Retention (page 8-50)
- For details on operating the Job Box, refer to the following:
 - Printing Data Saved in the Printer (page 4-18)

Repeat Copy Box

Repeat Copy feature stores the copied original document data in the Job Box and allows you to print additional copies later. By default, up to 32 documents can be stored. When power is turned off, all stored jobs will be deleted.

Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs (page 5-70)



NOTE

Repeat Copy function is not available when the Data Security Function is active.

Form for Form Overlay Box

Image Overlay feature copies the original document overlaid with a form or image. This Job Box is used to store the forms or images for overlaying.

Form for Form Overlay (page 5-71)

What is USB Drive Box?

A USB drive can be connected to the USB memory slot on the machine to print a saved file. You can print data directly from the USB drive without a PC. Image files scanned using this machine can also be saved to USB drive in the PDF, TIFF, JPEG, XPS, OpenXPS, high compression PDF, Word, Excel or PowerPoint format (Scan to USB).



Word, Excel and PowerPoint will be saved in a Microsoft Office 2007 or later file format.

Fax Box

Fax Box store the fax data. The optional FAX Kit is required in order to make use of FAX functionality.

FAX Operation Guide

Basic Operation for Document Box

This section explains basic operations for document boxes, using examples where tasks are carried out with custom boxes.

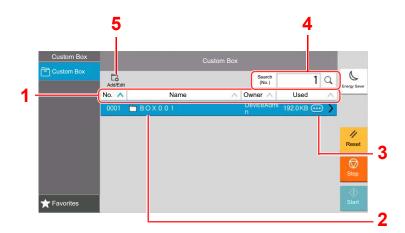


NOTE

In the following explanation, it is assumed that user login administration is enabled. For details on User Logon privileges, refer to the following:

▶ Editing Custom Box (page 5-61)

Box List

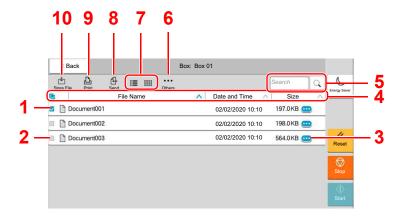


- 1 Sorts the box number, box name, owner name and size of data saved in the box in ascending/ descending order.
- 2 This is a custom box. Select it to open it.
- Displays the details for the selected box.
- 4 A box can be searched for by Box No. or Box Name. Select either [Search (No.)] or [Search (Name)] to switch between [Search (No.)] and [Search (Name)].
- Registers new boxes and checks, modifies or deletes box information.

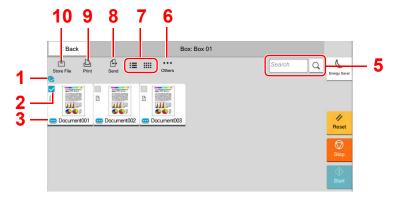
Document List

The document list is a list of the documents stored in the custom box. Documents can be listed either by name or as thumbnails. The list can be used as shown below.

List



- **Thumbnail**



- 1 Selecting more than one document at a time.
- 2 Selecting documents by checking checkboxes.
- 3 Display the details for the selected document.
- 4 Sorts the file name, date and time and size of data in ascending/descending order.
- 5 A document can be searched for by Name.
- 6 The menu for document operations will be displayed.
- 7 Switches between list display and thumbnail display.
- 8 Sends the selected documents.
- 9 Prints the selected documents.
- 10 Saves the document in the open box.



You can select multiple documents by pressing the respective document checkboxes. However, note that you cannot select multiple documents when you are sending documents.

Viewing Box Details

1 Select [...] (information icon) for the box whose details you wish to check in the box list screen.



If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

- Check the box details.
- Select [Close].

The display returns to the default Document Box screen.

Editing Box Details

- Select [Add/Edit] in the box list screen.
- Select the box whose details you wish to edit and select [Edit].
 - NOTE

If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

Edit the box details.

Enter new details.

If you have changed the details, select [OK] and then select [OK] in the confirmation screen.

If you do not change the details, select [Cancel].

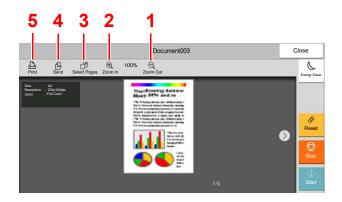
5 Select [Close].

The display returns to the default Document Box screen.

Previewing Documents/Checking Document Details

- Select a document to preview and then select [Others] > [Preview].
- Preview the document or check the document details.

The operations available in the preview screen are shown below.



- 1 Zoom out.
- 2 Zoom in.
- 3 Select to select any page of the open document and print, send or copy to USB Drive.
 - → Selecting a Page (page 5-59)
- 4 Sends the selected documents.
- 5 Prints the selected documents.



The preview display can be controlled by moving your finger(s) on the touch panel.

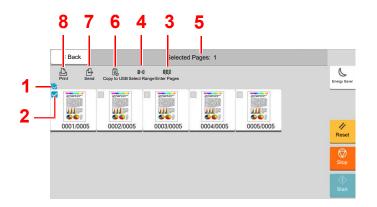
- → Original Preview (page 2-24)
- Confirm the document and select [Close].

Selecting a Page

When printing, sending, or copying a document within a Custom Box, you can specify any pages at will.

Select [Others] > [Page Selection] in the document list screen of the Custom Box, or [Page Selection] in the Preview screen, to display the page selection screen.

Select the pages you want to work with, and select [Print], [Send], or [Copy to USB].



- Printing Documents in Custom Box (page 5-63)
- → Sending Documents in Custom Box (page 5-65)
- **▶** Moving Documents in Custom Box (page 5-66)

- 1 Selecting more than one document at a time.
- 2 Selecting documents by checking checkboxes.
- 3 Use a "," (comma) to separate numbers when specifying pages that are not consecutive.
- 4 Specify a continuous page range.
- 5 Displaying the number of pages selected.
- 6 Selected pages can be copied to USB drive.
- 7 Selected pages can be sent.
- 8 Selected pages can be printed.

Creating a New Custom Box

NOTE

 If user login administration is enabled, you can only change the settings by logging in with administrator privileges or as a user with privileges to configure this setting. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

- · If user login administration is enabled, log in with administrator privileges to perform the following operations. They cannot be performed with user privileges.
 - Creating a box
 - Deleting a box of which owner is another user.

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [Custom Box] > [Add/Edit]

Register the Custom Box.

1 [Add] > Enter the information for each item

The table below lists the items to be set.

Item	Description
Box Name	Enter a box name consisting of up to 32 characters.
	→ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
Box No.	Enter the box number by selecting [+], [-] or number keys. The box number can be from 0001 to 1000. A Custom Box should have a unique number. If you select [Auto] (0000), the smallest number available will be automatically assigned.
Owner*1	Set the owner of the box. Select the owner from the user list that appears.
Permission*2	Select whether to share the box.
Box Password	User access to the box can be restricted by specifying a password to protect the box. Entering a password is not mandatory. Enter the same password of up to 16 characters in both "Box Password" and "Confirmation".
	This can be set if [Shared] is selected in Permission.
Usage Restriction	The usage for a box can be restricted. To enable a capacity restriction enter a value for the storage capacity of the Custom Box in megabytes by selecting [-], [+] or number keys. You can enter a limit between 1 and 30,000 (MB).
Auto File Deletion	Automatically deletes stored documents after a set period of time. Select [On] to enable automatic deletion and then use [+] and [-] or the numeric keys to enter the number of days for which documents are stored. You can enter any number between 1 and 31 (day(s)). To disable automatic file deletion, select [Off].

Item	Description
Free Space	Displays the free space on the box.
Overwrite Setting	Specifies whether or not old stored documents are overwritten when new documents are stored. To overwrite old documents, select [Permit]. To retain old documents, select [Prohibit].
Delete after Printed	Automatically delete a document from the box once printing is complete. To delete the document, select [On]. To retain the document, select [Off].

Displayed when the user login administration is enabled.

2 Select [OK].

The Custom Box is created.

Editing Custom Box

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [Custom Box] > [Add/Edit]

Edit the custom box.

Select the box > [Edit] > Enter the information for each item > [OK]



- When you have logged in as a user, you can only edit a box whose owner is set to that user.
- When you have logged in as administrator, you can edit all boxes.

When user login administration is enabled, the settings that can be changed varies depending on the privileges of the logged in user.

^{*2} Not displayed when "Owner" is set to [No Owner].

Privileges	Settings that can be changed
Administrator	Box Name
	Box No.
	Owner
	Permission
	Usage Restriction
	Auto File Deletion
	Free Space
	Overwrite Setting
	Delete after Printed
User	Box Name
	Box Password
	Usage Restriction
	Auto File Deletion
	Overwrite Setting
	Delete after Printed

For details on each items, refer to the following:

→ Creating a New Custom Box (page 5-60)

[OK] > [Close]

The display returns to the default Document Box screen.

Deleting Custom Box

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [Custom Box] > [Add/Edit]

Delete the custom box.

Select the box > [Delete] > [Delete]



- · When you have logged in as a user, you can only delete a box whose owner is set to that
- When you have logged in as administrator, you can edit all boxes.

Storing Documents to a Custom Box

Custom box stores the print data which is sent from a PC. For the operation of the printing from the PC, refer to the following:

Printer Driver User Guide

Printing Documents in Custom Box

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [Custom Box]
- 2 Select the box containing the document you want to print.
 - **NOTE**

If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

Print the document.

1 Select the document in the list that you want to print by selecting the checkbox.

The document is marked with a checkmark.

NOTE

To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.

- 2 Select [Print].
- **3** Set the paper selection, duplex printing, etc., as desired.

For the features that can be selected, refer to the following:

Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) (page 6-9)

NOTE

Select [Favorites] when registering or recalling favorites.

- Registering Favorites (page 5-12)
- → Recalling Favorites (page 5-12)

If a document stored from a computer is selected, the print settings selection screen appears.

To use the settings used at the time of printing (when the document was saved), select [**Print As Is**]. Select [**Start Print**] to start printing.

To change the print settings, select [Print after Change Settings (Use File Settings)] or [Print after Change Settings (Do Not Use File Settings)] and change the print settings.

After a document saved in the machine is selected, [**Use File Settings**] may appear in the setting screen for the feature to be used.

To use the settings saved with the document, select [Use File Settings].

If you need to change the print settings, select the desired feature.

4 Press the [Start] key.

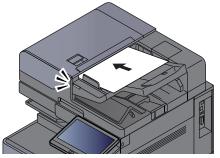
Printing of the selected document begins.

Saving Scanned Documents to a Custom Box

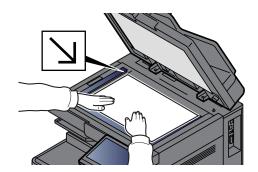
Display the screen.

[Home] key > [Custom Box]

Place the originals.







Store the document.

- 1 Select the box > [Store File]
- 2 Set the type of original, file format, etc., as desired.
 For the features that can be selected, refer to the following:
 - → Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) (page 6-9)

NOTE

- Enter up to 32 characters as the file name.
- Select [Favorites] when registering or recalling favorites.
 - → Registering Favorites (page 5-12)
 - → Recalling Favorites (page 5-12)
- 3 Press the [Start] key.

The original is scanned and the data is stored in the specified Custom Box.

Sending Documents in Custom Box

When transmitting using wireless LAN, select the interface dedicated to the send function in advance.

Primary Network (Client) (page 8-70)

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [Custom Box] > Select the box

NOTE

If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

Send the document.

1 Select the document you wish to send by checking the checkbox.

The document is marked with a checkmark.

NOTE

- · You cannot select and send multiple documents.
- To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.
- 2 Select [Send].
 - **NOTE**

Depending on the settings, the address book screen may appear.

3 Set the destination.

For more information on selecting destinations, refer to the following:

→ Specifying Destination (page 5-48)

◯ IMPORTANT

Only when specifying the E-mail addresses which have encryption certificate from the address book, [Email Encrypted TX] and [Digital Signature to Email] can be used. When entering E-mail address from the operation panel, you can not use these functions.

4 Set the sending size, original image, etc., as desired.

For the features that can be set, refer to the following:

Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send) (page 6-9)

NOTE

Select [Favorites] when registering or recalling favorites.

- → Registering Favorites (page 5-12)
- ▶ Recalling Favorites (page 5-12)
- 5 Press the [Start] key.

Sending of the selected document begins.

Sending Documents in Custom Box to E-mail Address of Logged in User

When user login is enabled, documents in the custom box are sent to the E-mail address of the logged in user.

Setting before send

Before using this function, the following are necessary.

- The function icon must be displayed in the home screen.
 - → Editing the Home Screen (page 2-16)
- An E-mail address must be set in user login for the user who logs in.
 - → Adding a User (Local User List) (page 9-6)

Sending to the E-mail address of the logged in user.

When user login is enabled, documents in the custom box are sent to the E-mail address of the logged in user. Send to the E-mail address of the logged in user. The procedure is as follows.

Select [Home] key.

Select [Send to Me(Email)].



When this function is used, functions other than transmission cannot be used.

Moving Documents in Custom Box

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [Custom Box] > Select the box

NOTE

If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

Move the documents.

Select the document in the list that you want to move by selecting the checkbox.
The document is marked with a checkmark.

NOTE

To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.

2 [Others] > [Move/Copy] > [Move to Custom Box] > select the destination of move > [Move] > [Move]

The selected document is moved.

NOTE

If the box to which the document is to be moved is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

Copying Documents in Custom Box into Other Boxes

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [Custom Box] > Select the box

NOTE

If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

Copy the documents.

1 Select the document in the list that you want to copy by selecting the checkbox.

The document is marked with a checkmark.

NOTE

To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.

2 [Others] > [Move/Copy] > [Copy to Custom Box] > select the destination of copy > [Copy] > [Copy]

The selected document is copied.

NOTE

If the box to which the document is to copied is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

Copying Documents in Custom Box to USB Drive

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [Custom Box] > Select the box

NOTE

If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

Copy the documents.

Select the document in the list that you want to copy by selecting the checkbox.
The document is marked with a checkmark.

NOTE

To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.

2 [Others] > [Move/Copy] > [Copy to USB Drive] > select the destination of copy > [Next] > [Copy] > [Copy]

The selected document is copied.

Joining Documents in Custom Box

You can join documents within a custom box into one file.



You can only join a document to other documents in the same custom box. If necessary, move the documents to be joined beforehand.

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [Custom Box] > Select the box

NOTE

If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

Join the document.

1 Select the documents in the list that you wish to join by selecting the checkbox.

The document is marked with a checkmark.

You can join up to 10 documents.

NOTE

To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.

- **2** [Others] > [Join].
- 3 Arrange the documents into the order in which they are to be joined.
 Select the document you want to rearrange and select [Up] or [Down] to move it to the correct place in the sequence.
- 4 [Next] > Enter the file name for the joined document
 - NOTE

Enter up to 64 characters as the file name.

5 [Join] > [Join]

The documents are joined.

NOTE

After joining, the original documents are left unchanged. Delete the documents if they are no longer needed.

Deleting Documents in Custom Box

Display the screen.

- 1 [Home] key > [Custom Box]
- 2 Select the box containing the document.
 - **NOTE**

If a custom box is protected by a password, enter the correct password.

Delete the document.

1 Select the document in the list that you want to delete by selecting the checkbox.

The document is marked with a checkmark.

NOTE

- [Delete] is disabled until a document is selected.
- To deselect, select the checkbox again and remove the checkmark.
- 2 [Others] > [Delete] > [Delete]

The document is deleted.

Job Box

This section explains the Repeat Copy Box and the Form for Form Overlay Box. For Private Print/Stored Job Box and Quick Copy/Proof and Hold Box, refer to the following:

Printing Data Saved in the Printer (page 4-18)

Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs

Repeat Copy feature stores the copied original document data in the Job Box and allows you to print additional copies later. By default, up to 32 documents can be stored. When power is turned off, all stored jobs will be deleted. This section explains how to print documents saved by the Repeat Copy function.

Repeat Copy (page 6-71)

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [Job Box] > [Repeat Copy]

Print the document.

- 1 Select the document to print > [Print]
 If the document is protected by a password, enter the password using the numeric keys.
- 2 Specify the number of copies to print as desired > [Start Print]
 Printing begins.
 The Repeat Copy box job will be deleted when the power switch is turned off.

Form for Form Overlay

Image Overlay feature copies the original document overlaid with a form or image. This Job Box is used to store the forms or images for overlaying.

Storing a Form

You can store forms to be used for the form overlay in the job box. One page can be registered in one form.

- Place the original.
- Display the screen.

[Home] key > [Job Box] > [Form for Form Overlay]

- Store the forms.
 - 1 Select [Store File].
 - 2 If necessary, select the image quality of original, scanning density, etc. before the original is scanned.
 - 3 Press the [Start] key.

The original is scanned and stored in the [Form for Form Overlay] box.

Deleting a Form Stored

You can delete the form stored in the job box

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [Job Box] > [Form for Form Overlay]

Delete the forms.

Select the form to delete > [Delete] > [Delete]

The form is deleted.

Operating using Removable USB Drive

Plugging USB drive directly into the machine enables you to quickly and easily print the files stored in the USB drive without having to use a computer.

The following file types can be printed:

- PDF file (Version 1.7 or older)
- TIFF file (TIFF V6/TTN2 format)
- JPEG file
- XPS file
- OpenXPS file
- · Encrypted PDF file

In addition, you can store scanned image files in USB drive connected to the machine.

The following file types can be stored:

- PDF file format
- TIFF file format
- JPEG file format
- XPS file format
- OpenXPS file format
- High-compression PDF file format
- Word file format
- Excel file format
- PowerPoint file format



NOTE

Word, Excel and PowerPoint will be saved in a Microsoft Office 2007 or later file format.

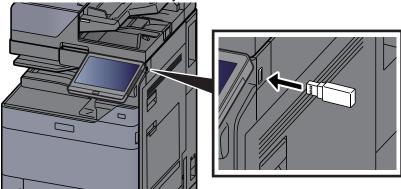
Printing Documents Stored in Removable USB Drive

NOTE

- PDF files you wish to print should have an extension (.pdf).
- · Use USB drive properly formatted by this machine.
- Plug the USB drive directly into the USB Memory Slot.

Plug the USB drive.

1 Plug the USB drive into the USB Memory Slot.



When the machine reads the USB drive, "USB Drive is recognized. Displaying files." may appear. Select [Continue].

Displays the USB Drive screen.



If the message does not appear, select [USB Drive] on the Home screen.

Print the document.

Select the folder containing the file to be printed.

NOTE

- 1,000 documents can be displayed.
- To return to a higher level folder, select [UP].
- Select the file to be printed > [Print]
- 3 Change the number of copies, duplex printing, etc. as desired.

For the features that can be selected, refer to the following:

→ <u>USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents) (page 6-15)</u>

NOTE

After a document saved in the machine is selected, [**Use File Settings**] may appear in the setting screen for the feature to be used.

- To use the settings saved with the document, select [Use File Settings].
- If you need to change the print settings, select the desired feature.
- 4 Press the [Start] key.

Printing of the selected file begins.

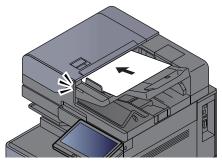
Saving Documents to USB Drive (Scan to USB)

You can store scanned documents to a removal USB drive.

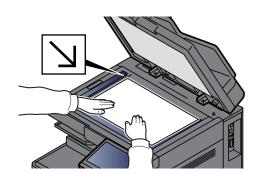


The maximum number of the storable files is 1,000.

Place the originals.

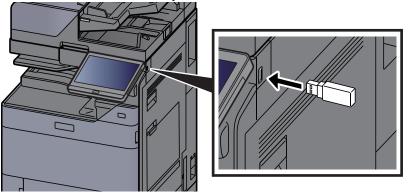






Plug the USB Drive.

1 Plug the USB drive into the USB Memory Slot.



When the machine reads the USB memory, "USB Drive is recognized. Displaying files." may appear. Select [Continue].

Displays the USB Drive screen.



■ NOTE

If the message does not appear, select [USB Drive] on the Home screen.

Store the document.

- Select the folder where the file will be stored.
- 2 Select [Store File].
- 3 Set the type of original, file format, etc., as desired. For the features that can be set, refer to the following:
 - → USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents) (page 6-15)
- 4 Check the storing image.

5 Press the [Start] key.

The original is scanned and the data is stored in the USB drive.

Check the USB Drive Information

- In the USB Drive screen, select [USB Info].
- Once you confirm the information, select [Close].

Removing USB Drive



IMPORTANT

Be sure to follow the proper procedure to avoid damaging the data or USB drive.

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [USB Drive]

Select [Remove USB].

Select [OK], and remove the USB Drive after "USB Drive can be safely removed." is displayed.



USB drive can also be removed after checking the Device Information.

→ Device Information (page 7-13)

Tapping the USB drive icon shown at the top of the touch panel and selecting [Remove USB] allows you to safely remove the USB drive.

Home Screen (page 2-15)

Using the Internet Browser

If the machine is connected to the network, you can browse the Internet on the touch panel.

NOTE

To use the internet browser, "Internet Browser" must be set to [On] in Function Settings.

→ Internet Browser (page 8-51)

Launching and Exiting the Browser

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [Internet Browser]

The Internet browser starts up.

2 Use the browser screen to browse web pages.

For information on how to use the browser screen, refer to the following:

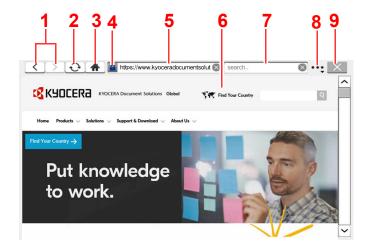
- → Using the Browser Screen (page 5-77)
- 3 To exit the browser, select [X] (Close) and then select [OK] in the exit confirmation screen.
 - NOTE

You can specify preferences such as the way the Internet browser screen is displayed.

▶ Browser Environment (page 8-51)

Using the Browser Screen

The operations available in the Internet browser screen are shown below.



- 1 **Back/Forward**: Displays the previous page or the next page.
- 2 Reload: Updates the page.
- 3 **Home page**: Displays your specified home page. You can set your home page in the <u>Browser</u> <u>Environment (page 8-51)</u>.
- 4 **Security lock icon**: Displayed when you are viewing a protected page.
- 5 **Enter URL**: Use this to display a desired web page by entering the URL for that page.
- 6 **Text box**: Pressing the text box displays a keyboard that allows you to type text.
- 7 Search (Search Internet): Use the selected search site to search with the entered keyword.
- 8 Menu: Displays the browser setup menu. You can use this menu to specify the browser's display magnification, set the text encoding scheme and check the server certificate.
 - **Retrieval in page**: Search from the entered keyword in the currently displayed page. You can continue your search by selecting [**SearchUp**] or [**SearchDown**].
- 9 **Close**: Closes the Internet browser and returns you to the application list screen.

Manual Staple

You can staple copied paper manually without any print operation. It is useful when you have forgotten to set the staple sort mode before starting copying, or when you want to staple originals.

NOTE

- · This function requires the optional Document Finisher:
 - <u>◆ 4,000-sheet Finisher (page 11-30)</u>
 - ◆ 100-sheet Staple Finisher (page 11-31)
- If there are no staples when manual stapling is performed, the stapling position lamps and stapling position key LEDs all blink. Add staples.
 - → Replacing Staples (4,000-Sheet Finisher) (page 10-12)
 - → Replacing Staples (100-sheet Staple Finisher) (page 10-14)
- Manual stapling cannot be executed when the machine is in operation.

Maximum number of sheets available for manual stapling

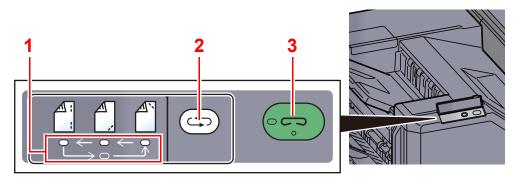
4,000-sheet Finisher

	Paper weight		
Paper size	52 - 90 g/m ² (14.0 - 24.0 lb. Bond)	91 - 105 g/m ² (24.3 - 28.0 lb. Bond)	
A4, A4-R, B5, Letter, Letter-R, 16K	65 sheets	55 sheets	
A3, B4, Folio, Ledger	30 sheets	30 sheets	

100-sheet Staple Finisher

	Paper weight		
Paper size	52 - 90 g/m ² (14.0 - 24.0 lb. Bond)	91 - 105 g/m ² (24.3 - 28.0 lb. Bond)	
A4, A4-R, B5, Letter, Letter-R, 16K	100 sheets	70 sheets	
A3, B4, Folio, Ledger	50 sheets	35 sheets	

Use the keys on the control section of the Finisher (optional) for manual stapling.



- 1 Stapling position lamps
- 2 Stapling position key
- 3 Stapling key / lamp

Press the stapling position key on the stapling control section.

The shutter of the paper exit area is opened and this equipment enters into the manual staple mode.

Set the staple position.

Press the stapling position key to select the stapling position

(Back ⚠ / Front ⚠ / 2 Points ⚠).

Operation is not possible while the stapling position lamps are blinking. Operate after the lamps light solidly.

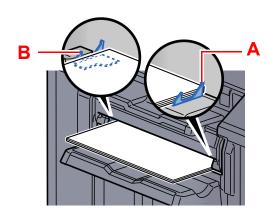
Load the paper.

Straighten the edges of the paper well and place the paper front side down in the shutter opening of the output unit.

If the near side of the paper () will be stapled, place the paper against the front guide (A).

If the far side of the paper () will be stapled, place the paper against the back guide (B).

If the edge of the paper () will be stapled at two points, place the paper with the center aligned to the center point between the two side guides (A and B).





CAUTION

Do not insert your hand inside the open shutter.

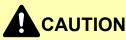
NOTE

- · Press the stapling position key before you place the paper. Once the paper is placed, the stapling position key cannot be used.
- · The stapling lamp lights when the paper is properly placed. If it does not light, replace the paper.

Staple the paper.

Let go of the paper, and then press the stapling key.

Stapling starts. Stapling finishes and the output is delivered to tray.



Be sure that your hands are away from the paper while stapling is in progress.

Finishing the manual staple mode

Press the stapling position key several times until the stapling position lamps turn off. The shutter of the paper exit area closes. It means that manual stapling is finished.

If no operation is performed for approx, 10 seconds, the manual staple mode will be automatically finished.



NOTE

The time after which manual staple mode is automatically exited can be changed.

Manual Staple (page 8-52)

6 Using Various Functions

This chapter explains the following topics:

Functions Available on the Machine	. 6-2
About Functions Available on the	
Machine	
Copy	
Send	. 6-5
Custom Box (Store File, Printing,	
Send)	. 6-9
USB Drive (Store File, Printing	6-15
Documents)	6-18
Original Size	6-19
Paper Selection	6-20
Mixed Size Originals	
Original Orientation	6-25
Fold	6-26
Collate/Offset	6-28
Staple/Punch	6-29
Paper Output	6-33
ID Card Copy Org. Manual Feed (DP)	6-34
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	6-34
Density	6-35
Original Image EcoPrint	6-36
Color Selection	6-36
Sharpness	6-37
Background Density Adj.	0-37
(Background Density Adjustment)	6-37
Prevent Bleed-thru	6-38
Contrast	6-38
Erase Colors	6-39
Zoom	
Combine	
Margin/Centering, Margin, Centering	
Border Erase, Border Erase/Full	. 0-4-
Scan	6-45
Erase Shadowed Areas	6-47
Booklet	6-47
Duplex	6-52
	6-55
Form Overlay	
Page #	
Memo Page	
Insert Sheets/Chapters	
Image Repeat	
Text Stamp	
Bates Stamp	
Handwriting Enhancement	
	6-68
Auto Image Rotation	

Negative Image	6-69
Mirror Image	6-69
Job Finish Notice	6-70
File Name Entry	6-70
Priority Override	6-7
Repeat Copy	6-7
DP Read Action	6-72
Detect Multi-fed Originals	6-72
Detect Stapled Originals	6-72
Skip Blank Page	6-73
2-sided/Book Original	6-73
Sending Size	6-74
Long Original	6-75
File Format	6-75
File Separation	6-82
Scan Resolution	6-82
Email Subject/Body	6-83
Send and Print	6-83
Send and Store	6-83
FTP Encrypted TX	6-84
Email Encrypted TX	6-84
Digital Signature Email	6-84
File Size Confirmation	6-85
Delete after Printed	6-85
Delete after Transmitted	6-86
Storing Size	6-86
Encrypted PDF Password	6-87
JPEG/TIFF Print	6-87
XPS Fit to Page	6-87

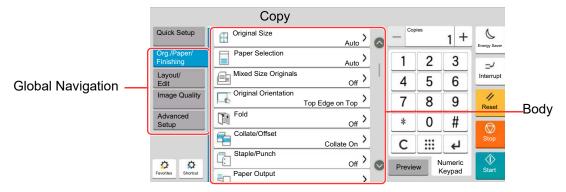
Functions Available on the Machine

About Functions Available on the Machine

This machine provides the various functions available.

Copy

Each function is displayed in the Body when Global Navigation is selected.



For details on each function, see the table below.

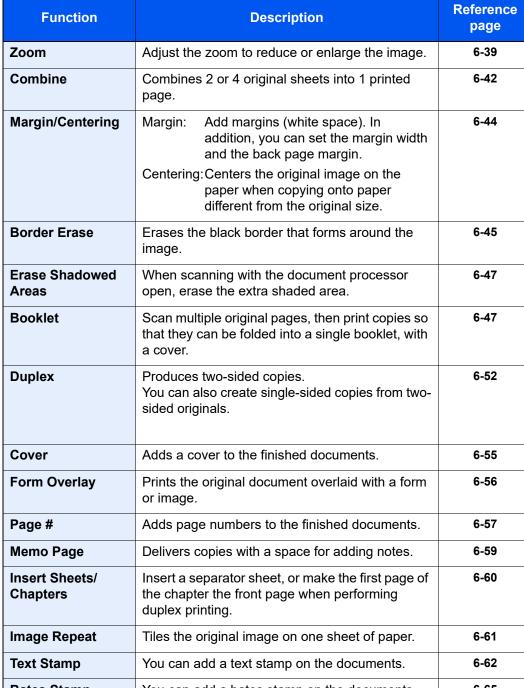
Global Navigation
Org./Paper/ Finishing Configure the settings for originals, paper, and finishing such as collate and staple.

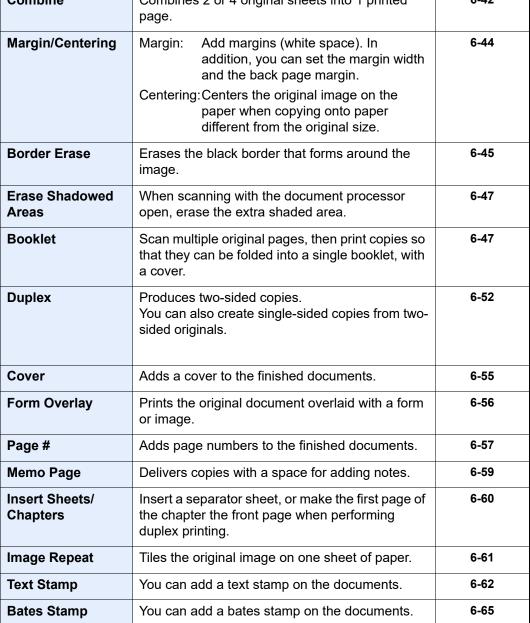
Function	Description	Reference page
Original Size Specify the original size to be scanned		6-19
Paper Selection	Select the cassette or multipurpose tray that contains the required paper size.	6-20
Mixed Size Originals		
Original Orientation	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.	6-25
Fold	Fold the finished documents.	6-26
Collate/Offset	Offsets the output by page or set.	6-28
Staple/Punch Staples or punches printed documents.		6-29
Paper Output	Paper Output Specify the output tray.	
ID Card Copy	Use this when you want to copy a driver's license or an insurance card. When you scan the front and back of the card, both sides will be combined and copied onto a single sheet.	6-34
Org. Manual Feed (DP)	Multi-sheet documents such as slips can be read on the document processor whilst still bound together. When placing a document on the document processor, place one copy at a time.	6-34

Global Navigation

Layout/Edit Configure the settings for duplex

printing and stamp.

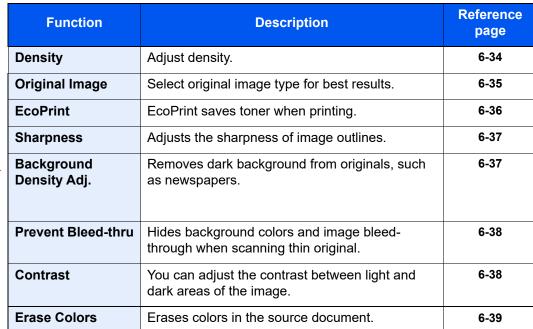




Global Navigation

Image Quality

Configure he settings for density, quality of copies, and color balance.



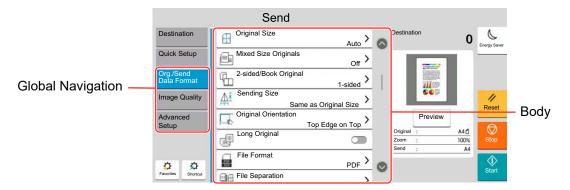
Advanced Setup

Configure the settings for continuous scanning, mirror image copies, and Skip Blank Page

) 4'	0	2.00
Scans a large number of originals in separate batches and then produce as one job.		6-68
Auto Image Rotation	Automatically rotates the image 90 degrees when the sizes of the original and the loaded paper matches but the orientations are different.	6-69
Negative Image	Inverts black and white portions of the image for printing.	6-69
Mirror Image	Copies the mirrored image of the original.	6-69
Job Finish Notice	Sends E-mail notice when a job is complete.	6-70
File Name Entry	Adds a file name.	6-70
Priority Override	Suspends the current job and gives a new job top priority.	6-71
Repeat Copy	Enables additional copies in the desired quantity as necessary after a copy job is completed.	6-71
DP Read Action	When the document processor is used, select the scanning operation for the document processor.	6-72
Detect Multi-fed Originals	When reading a document from the document processor, if the multiple feeding of documents is detected, then the reading stops automatically.	6-72
Detect Stapled Originals	When reading a document from the document processor, if a stapled document is detected, then the reading stops automatically.	6-72
Skip Blank Page	When there are blank pages in a scanned document, this function skips the blank pages and prints only pages that are not blank.	6-73

Send

Each function is displayed in the Body when Global Navigation is selected.



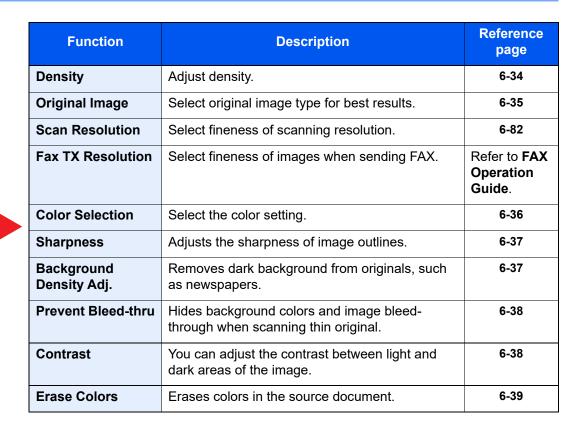
For details on each function, see the table below.

Global Navigation		Function	Description	Reference page
		Original Size	Specify the original size to be scanned.	6-19
		Mixed Size Originals	Scan the documents of different sizes that are set in the document processor all at once.	6-22
		2-sided/Book Original	Select the type and orientation of the binding based on the original.	6-73
		Sending Size	Select size of image to be sent.	6-74
Org./Sending Data Format Configure the settings for original type and file format.		Original Orientation	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.	6-25
		Long Original	Reads long-sized original documents using a document processor.	6-75
		File Format	Specify the image file format. Image quality level can also be adjusted.	6-75
		File Separation	Creates several files by dividing scanned original data page by specified number of pages, and sends the files.	6-82
		Org. Manual Feed (DP)	Multi-sheet documents such as slips can be read on the document processor whilst still bound together. When placing a document on the document processor, place one copy at a time.	6-34

Global Navigation

Image Quality

Configure the settings for density, quality of copies, and color balance.

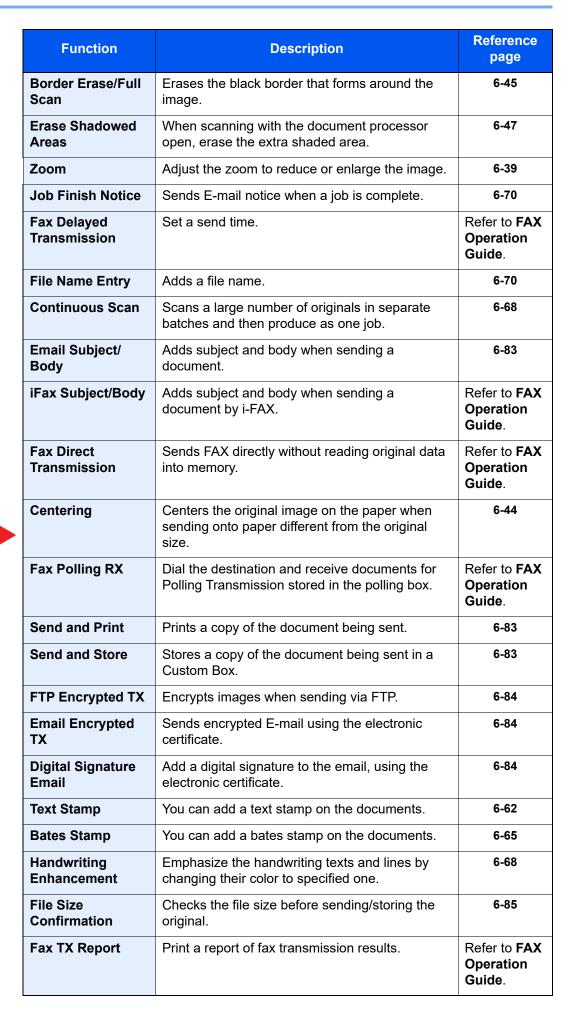




Global Navigation

Advanced Setup

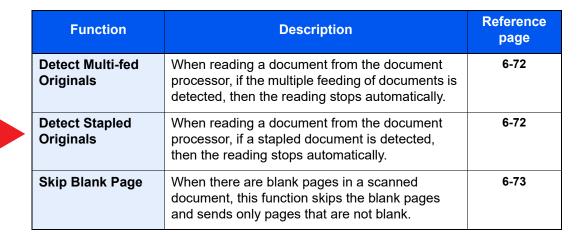
Configure the settings for transmission copy, encrypted transmission, and file size confirmation.





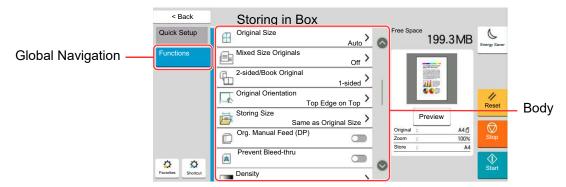
Advanced Setup

Configure the settings for transmission copy, encrypted transmission, and file size confirmation.



Custom Box (Store File, Printing, Send)

Each function is displayed in the Body when Global Navigation is selected.



For details on each function, see the table below.

Store File

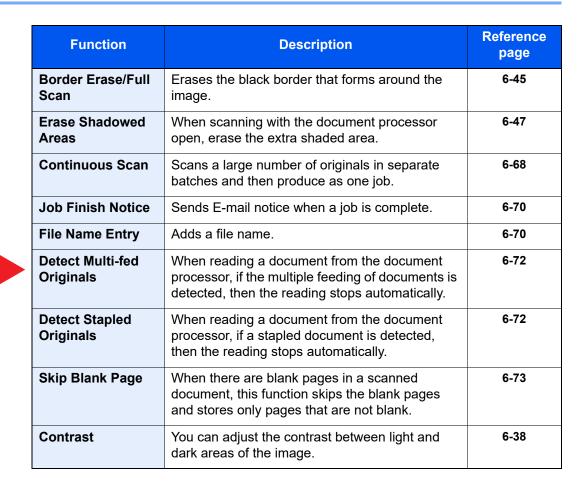
Global Navigation	
Functions Configure the settings when storing the document in the Custom Box.	

Function	Description	Reference page
Original Size	Specify the original size to be scanned.	6-19
Mixed Size Originals	Scan the documents of different sizes that are set in the document processor all at once.	6-22
2-sided/Book Original	Select the type and orientation of the binding based on the original.	6-73
Original Orientation	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.	
Storing Size	Select size of image to be stored.	6-86
Org. Manual Feed (DP)	Multi-sheet documents such as slips can be read on the document processor whilst still bound together. When placing a document on the document processor, place one copy at a time.	6-34
Prevent Bleed-thru	Hides background colors and image bleed-through when scanning thin original.	6-38
Density	Adjust density.	6-34
Original Image	Select original image type for best results.	6-35
Scan Resolution	Select fineness of scanning resolution.	6-82
Color Selection	Select the color setting.	6-36
Erase Colors	Erases colors in the source document.	6-39
Sharpness	Adjusts the sharpness of image outlines.	6-37
Background Density Adj.	Removes dark background from originals, such as newspapers.	6-37
Zoom	Adjust the zoom to reduce or enlarge the image.	6-39
Centering	Centers the original image on the paper when storing onto paper different from the original size.	6-44

Global Navigation

Functions

Configure the settings when storing the document in the Custom Box.



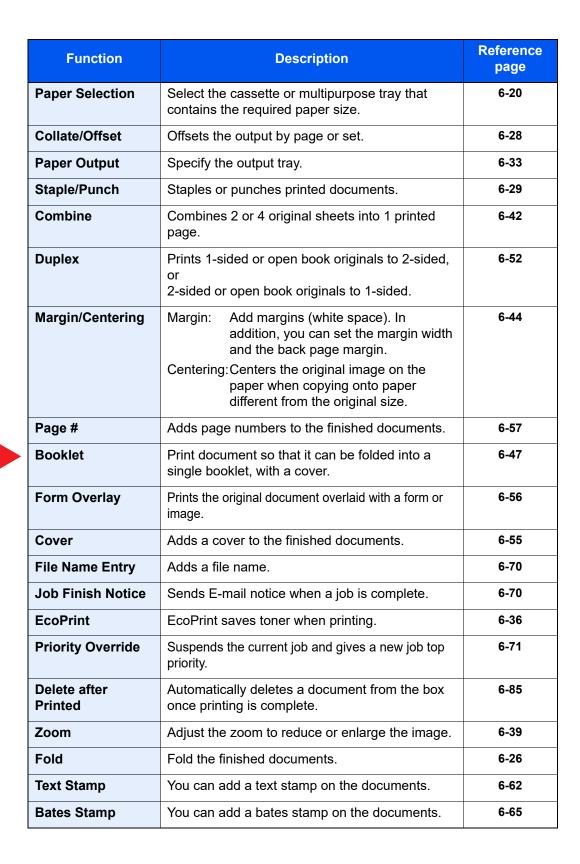


Print

Global Navigation

Functions

Configure the settings for paper selection and duplex printing when printing from the Custom Box.



Global Navigation
Image Quality
Configure the
settings for density,
quality of copies,

and color balance.



Function	Description	Reference page
Density	Adjust density.	6-34
Original Image	Select original image type for best results.	6-35
Sharpness	Adjusts the sharpness of image outlines.	6-37
Background Density Adj.	Removes dark background from originals, such as newspapers.	6-37
Prevent Bleed-thru	Hides background colors and image bleed-through when scanning thin original.	6-38
Contrast	You can adjust the contrast between light and dark areas of the image.	6-38

Send

Global Navigation

Configure the

settings for file format and FAX transmission when sending from the Custom Box.

Functions

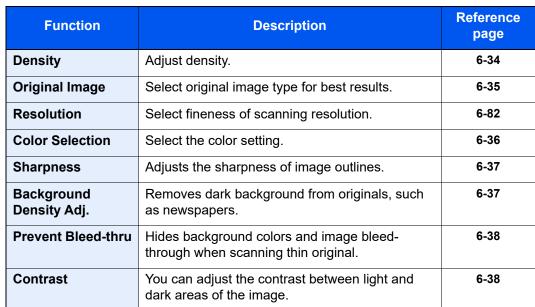


Function	Description	Reference page
File Format	Specify the image file format. Image quality level can also be adjusted.	6-75
Sending Size	Select size of image to be sent.	6-74
Centering	Centers the original image on the paper when sending onto paper different from the original size.	6-44
Fax TX Resolution	Select fineness of images when sending FAX.	Refer to FAX Operation Guide.
Job Finish Notice	Sends E-mail notice when a job is complete.	6-70
Fax Delayed Transmission	Set a send time.	Refer to FAX Operation Guide.
File Name Entry	Adds a file name.	6-70
Email Subject/ Body	Adds subject and body when sending a document.	6-83
iFax Subject/Body	Adds subject and body when sending a document by i-FAX.	Refer to FAX Operation Guide.
Delete after Transmitted	Automatically deletes a document from the box once transmission is complete.	6-86
FTP Encrypted TX	Encrypts images when sending via FTP.	6-84
Email Encrypted TX	Sends encrypted E-mail using the electronic certificate.	6-84
Digital Signature Email	Add a digital signature to the email, using the electronic certificate.	6-84
Zoom	Adjust the zoom to reduce or enlarge the image.	6-39
File Separation	Creates several files by dividing scanned original data page by specified number of pages, and sends the files.	6-82
Text Stamp	You can add a text stamp on the documents.	6-62
Bates Stamp	You can add a bates stamp on the documents.	6-65
File Size Confirmation	Checks the file size before sending/storing the original.	6-85
Fax TX Report	Print a report of fax transmission results.	Refer to FAX Operation Guide.

Global Navigation

Image Quality

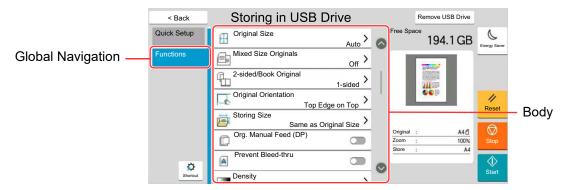
Configure the settings for density, quality of copies, and color balance.





USB Drive (Store File, Printing Documents)

Each function is displayed in the Body when Global Navigation is selected.



For details on each function, see the table below.

Store File

Global Navigation	Functio
	Original Size
	Mixed Size Originals
	2-sided/Bool Original
	Original Orientation
	Storing Size
Functions Configure the	Org. Manual (DP)
settings for color selection and document name	Prevent Blee
when storing the	Density
document in the JSB drive.	Original Ima
	Scan Resolu
	Color Select
	Erase Colors
	Sharpness
	Background Density Adj.
	_

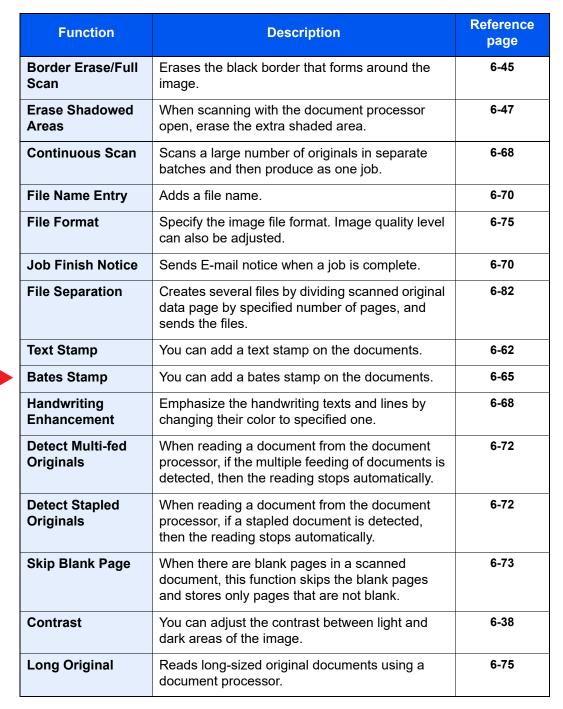
Function	Description	Reference page
Original Size	Specify the original size to be scanned.	6-19
Mixed Size Originals	Scan the documents of different sizes that are set in the document processor all at once.	6-22
2-sided/Book Original	Select the type and orientation of the binding based on the original.	6-73
Original Orientation	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.	6-25
Storing Size	Select size of image to be stored.	6-86
Org. Manual Feed (DP)	Multi-sheet documents such as slips can be read on the document processor whilst still bound together. When placing a document on the document processor, place one copy at a time.	6-34
Prevent Bleed-thru	Hides background colors and image bleed-through when scanning thin original.	6-38
Density	Adjust density.	6-34
Original Image	Select original image type for best results.	6-35
Scan Resolution	Select fineness of scanning resolution.	6-82
Color Selection	Select the color setting.	6-36
Erase Colors	Erases colors in the source document.	6-39
Sharpness	Adjusts the sharpness of image outlines.	6-37
Background Density Adj.	Removes dark background from originals, such as newspapers.	6-37
Zoom	Adjust the zoom to reduce or enlarge the image.	6-39
Centering	Centers the original image on the paper when storing onto paper different from the original size.	6-44

Global Navigation

Configure the

settings for color selection and document name when storing the document in the USB drive.

Functions



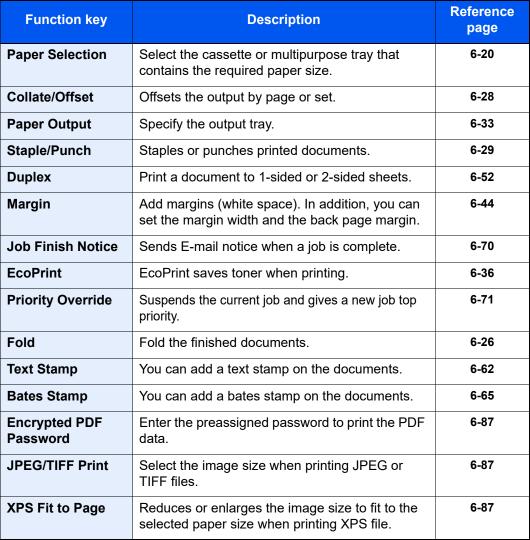


Print

Global Navigation

Functions

Configure the settings for paper selection and duplex printing when printing from the USB drive.





Functions

On pages that explain a convenient function, the modes in which that function can be used are indicated by icons.

Icon	Description
Org./Paper /Finishing	Access to the function is indicated by icons. Example: Select [Org./Paper/Finishing] in the Copy screen to use the function.
Org./Sending Data Format	Access to the function is indicated by icons. Example: Select [Org./Sending Data Format] in the Send screen to use the function.
Custom Functions	Access to the function is indicated by icons. Example: Select [Functions] in the Custom Box screen to use the function.
USB Drive Functions	Access to the function is indicated by icons. Example: Select [Functions] in the USB Drive screen to use the function.

Original Size



Org./Paper /Finishing



Org./Sending **Data Format**





Specify the original size to be scanned.

Select [Auto (Document Processor)], [Metric], [Inch], [Others] or [Size Entry] to select the original size.

Item	Value	Description
Auto (Document Processor)	_	Have the size of original detected automatically.
Metric	A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, A5, A6, B4, B5-R, B5, B6-R, B6, Folio, 216 x 340 mm	Select from the Metric series standard sizes.
Inch	Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Statement, 11" × 15", Oficio II	Select from the Inch series standard sizes.
Others	8K, 16K-R, 16K, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufukuhagaki (Return postcard), Custom 1-4 ^{*1}	Select from special standard sizes and custom sizes.
Size Entry	Metric X: 50 to 432 mm (in 1 mm increments) Y: 50 to 297 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch X: 2.00 to 17.00" (in 0.01" increments) Y: 2.00 to 11.69" (in 0.01" increments)	Enter the size not included in the standard sizes.*2 When you have selected [Size Entry], select [+] or [-] to set the sizes of "X" (horizontal) and "Y" (vertical). Select the entry field to use the numeric keys for entry.

^{*1} For instructions on how to specify the custom original size, refer to the following:

[→] Measurement (page 8-6)



Be sure to always specify the original size when using custom size original.

Custom Original Size (page 8-12)

^{*2} The input units can be changed in System Menu. For details, refer to the following:

Paper Selection







Select the cassette or multipurpose tray that contains the required paper size.

Select from [1] (Cassette 1) to [5] (Cassette 5) to use the paper contained in that cassette.

If [Auto] is selected, the paper matching the size of the original is selected automatically.



- Specify in advance the size and type of the paper loaded in the cassette.
 - ▶ Paper Feeding (page 8-13)
- · Cassettes after Cassette 2 are displayed when the optional paper feeder is installed.

In case of changing the paper size and the media type of the multi purpose tray, select **[Change Multipurpose Tray Settings]** and change Paper Size and Media Type. The available paper sizes and media types are shown in the table below.

Item		Value	Description
Paper Size	Metric	A3 ^{*1*2} , A4-R ^{*1*2} , A4 ^{*1*2} , A5-R ^{*1*2} , A5 ^{*1} , A6 ^{*1*2} , B4 ^{*1*2} , B5-R ^{*1*2} , B5 ^{*1*2} , B6 ^{*1*2} , Folio ^{*1*2} , 216 × 340 mm, SRA3 ^{*1*2}	Select from the Metric standard size.
	Inch	Ledger*1*2, Letter-R*1*2, Letter*1*2, Legal*1*2, Statement*1*2, 12" × 18"*1*2, Executive, Oficio II	Select from the Inch standard size.
	Others	8K, 16K-R, 16K, ISO5, Envelope#10, Envelope#9, Envelope#6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Hagaki (Cardstock), *1*2, Oufukuhagaki (Return postcard), Kakugata 2, Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Younaga 3, Nagagata 3, Nagagata 4, Custom 1-4*3	Select from special standard sizes and custom sizes.
	Size Entry	Metric X: 148 to 457 mm (in 1 mm increments) Y: 98 to 320 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch	Enter the size not included in the standard size.*4 When you have selected [Size Entry], use [+]/[-] or the numeric keys to set the sizes of "X" (horizontal) and "Y" (vertical). Select the entry field to use the numeric keys for entry.
		X: 5.83 to 18" (in 0.01" increments) Y: 3.86 to 12.60" (in 0.01" increments)	
Media type Plain, Transparency, Rou Color, Prepunched*5, Let Dividers, Custom 1-8*6		Color, Prepunched ⁵ , Letterhead	um, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted ^{*5} , Bond, Cardstock, ^{*5} , Thick, Envelope, Coated, High Quality, Index Tab

- *1 Paper size automatically detected in the cassette.
- *2 Paper size automatically detected in the Multipurpose Tray.
- *3 For instructions on how to specify the custom paper size, refer to the following:
 - Custom Paper Settings (page 8-16)
- *4 The input units can be changed in System Menu. For details, refer to the following:
 - → Measurement (page 8-6)
- *5 To print on preprinted or prepunched paper or on letterhead, refer to the following:
 - ◆ Special Paper Action (page 8-19)
- *6 For instructions on how to specify the custom paper types 1 to 8, refer to the following:
 - → Media Type Setting (page 8-17)

NOTE

- You can conveniently select in advance the size and type of paper that will be used often and set them as default.
 - → MP Tray Settings (page 8-14)
- If the specified size of paper is not loaded in the paper source cassette or multipurpose tray, a confirmation screen appears. Load the required paper in the multipurpose tray and select [**Continue**] to start copying.

Mixed Size Originals









Scan the documents of different sizes that are set in the document processor all at once.

This function cannot be used if platen is used. Different Width is not displayed in inch models.

Copying

Metric Models

	Item	Value	Description
Off			
Mixed Size Copies	Original Width	Same Width, Different Width	Select options for the width of set original.
Same Size	Original Width	Same Width, Different Width	Select options for the width of set original.
Copies	Top Page Direction	Long Edge Left, Short Edge Left	Select the original orientation of the first page.

Inch Models

Item		Value	Description		
Off	Off				
Mixed Size Copies	Original Width	Same Width	Originals are detected individually for size and copied to the same size paper as originals.		
Same Size Copies	Original Width	Same Width	Select the original orientation of the first		
	Top Page Direction	Long Edge Left, Short Edge Left	page.		

Sending/Storing

Item	Value	Description	
Mixed Size Originals	Off		
	Same Width	Scans and sends/stores multiple sheets of the same width using the document processor.	
	Different Width	Scans and sends/stores multiple sheets of different width using the document processor.	

Supported Combinations of Originals

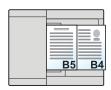
Same Width

When the original widths are the same, the combinations of originals that can be placed are as follows.

- B4 and B5
- Ledger and Letter (A3 and A4)
- Legal and Letter-R (Folio and A4-R)

Example: B4 and B5







■ NOTE

When mixing the original sizes as using the following combination, make sure to set "Auto Detect Original Size" to [On] for "Folio".

Folio and A4

→ Auto Detect Original Size (page 8-11)

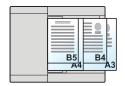
Different Width (Available for metric models only)

The supported combinations of originals are as follows.

- A3, B4, A4, B5
- B4, A4-R, B5
- A4-R, B5-R, Folio

Example: A3, B4, A4, B5





Set the originals of A4 and B5 with vertical orientation.

NOTE

- · Number of sheet that can be placed in the document processor: up to 30 sheets
- · When mixing the original sizes as using the following combination, make sure to set "Auto Detect Original Size" to [On] for "Folio".

A4-R, B5-R, and Folio

◆ Auto Detect Original Size (page 8-11)



IMPORTANT

When placing originals of different width, arrange the originals so that their left sides and top sides are aligned, and place the originals in alignment with the far width guide. If the originals are not aligned in this way, they may not be scanned correctly, and skewing or original jams may result.

Selecting How to Copy Originals

Set the paper size (copy size) when printing scanned document. Select whether you wish to create individual copies on different size paper matching the original sizes or to produce all copies on the same size paper.



NOTE

This function is available regardless of whether originals have the same width or not.

Mixed Size Copies

Originals are detected individually for size and copied to the same size paper as originals.



Same Size Copies

Originals are all copied to the same size paper.



Original Orientation



Org./Paper /Finishing







Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.

To use any of the following functions, the document's original orientation must be set.

- Zoom
- Duplex
- Margin/Centering
- Border Erase, Border Erase/Full Scan
- Combine
- Memo page

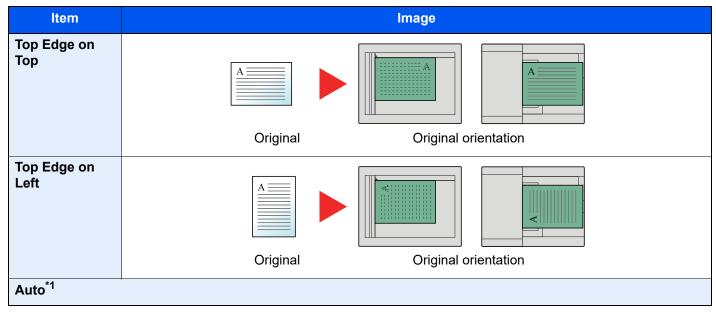
- Page #
- **Booklet**
- Stapling/Punch (optional feature)
- 2-sided/Book Original
- Text Stamp
- **Bates Stamp**



If [On] is selected in the setting for Original Orientation in System Menu, the selection screen for original orientation appears when you select any of the above functions.

Orientation Confirmation (page 8-21)

Select original orientation from [Top Edge on Top], [Top Edge on Left] or [Auto].



^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.



NOTE

The default setting for Original Orientation can be changed.

Original Orientation (Copy) (page 8-34)

Fold







Folds the finished documents. Select the fold method.

The following folding options and orientations are available.

	Origii	nal orientation	Orientation: Landscape	Orientation: Portrait	
Item	Item		A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	A W	
Bi-Fold	Si-Fold Saddle Stitch*1		A		
	Inside*1*2		A		
	Outside*1*2		A		
	Multi-shee	et Fold ^{*1}	Set whether or not multiple pages of the printed document are stacked and folded. This is set to [On] when saddle stitch stapling is set.		
Tri-Fold	*1*2	R to L/B to T	A	TA	
		L to R/T to B			
	*1*2	R to L/B to T	A	A	
		L to R/T to B			
		et Fold ^{*1}	Set whether or not multiple pages of the folded.	he printed document are stacked and	

	Original orientation	Orientation: Landscape	Orientation: Portrait
Item		A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	A Wallington
Z-Fold ^{*2}	R to L/B to T	A	A
	L to R/T to B		
	Multi-sheet Fold	Set whether or not multiple pages of the folded.	ne printed document are stacked and
Engineering Fold ^{*2} (Half Z-Fold)		A	

^{*1} Appears when the optional folding unit is installed.

NOTE

- Folding requires the optional 4,000-sheet Finisher or 100-sheet Staple Finisher, and the folding unit or Z-Fold Unit.
- For details on paper sizes and numbers of sheets that can be folded, refer to the following.
 - → Folding Unit (For 4,000-sheet Finisher) (page 11-32)
 - → Folding Unit (For 100-sheet Staple Finisher) (page 11-33)
 - → ZF-7100 "Z-Fold Unit" (Option for 6004i/7004i) (page 11-4)
- Multi-sheet Fold during copying is performed by the Folding Unit when the Folding Unit and Z-Fold Unit are installed.

^{*2} Appears when the optional Z-Fold Unit is installed.

Collate/Offset







Offsets the output by page or set.

Item	Image	Description
Off		
Collate On		Scans multiple originals and delivers complete sets of copies as required according to page number.
Offset Each Page		Printed copies are collated and output as individual pages separately. NOTE This function requires the optional Document Finisher: Inner Finisher (page 11-28) 1,000-sheet Finisher (page 11-29) 4,000-sheet Finisher (page 11-30) 100-sheet Staple Finisher (page 11-31) Inner Shift Tray (page 11-34)
Offset Each Set		Printed copies are collated and output as individual set separately. NOTE This function requires the optional Document Finisher: Inner Finisher (page 11-28) 1,000-sheet Finisher (page 11-29) 4,000-sheet Finisher (page 11-30) 100-sheet Staple Finisher (page 11-31) Inner Shift Tray (page 11-34)



The paper sizes supported in Offset are Legal, Ledger, Oficio II, Letter, A3, A4, B4, B5, 216 × 340 mm and 8K, 16K.

Staple/Punch







Staple

Staples the finished documents. The staple position can be selected.



This function requires the optional Document Finisher:

- ► Inner Finisher (page 11-28)
- **→** 1,000-sheet Finisher (page 11-29)
- → 4,000-sheet Finisher (page 11-30)
- <u>→ 100-sheet Staple Finisher (page 11-31)</u>

Item	Value	Description
Staple	Off	
	Top Left	Select the staple position, and then select [Next >].
	Top Right	For details on original orientation and staple position, refer to the following:
	2 staples Left	 Original Orientation and Punch Hole Position (page 6-32)
	2 staples Top	
	2 staples Right	
	Saddle Stitch	Select whether to fold the finished documents in two with staples in the center.
		When placing originals, be sure to place the cover page at the bottom. For details on saddle stitching, refer to the following:
		→ Booklet (page 6-47)
Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*1	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].

^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Original Orientation and Staple Position

1,000-sheet Finisher, 4,000-sheet Finisher, 100-sheet Staple Finisher

Original orientation	Paper orientation		Top Edg	e on Left
Paper orientation	A <u>=</u>	A	A	A IIII
Cassette paper load direction				
Cassette paper load direction				

Inner Finisher

Original orientation	Paper or	rientation	Top Edg	e on Left
Paper orientation	A <u>=</u>	A III	A	A IIII
Cassette paper load direction				
Cassette paper load direction				



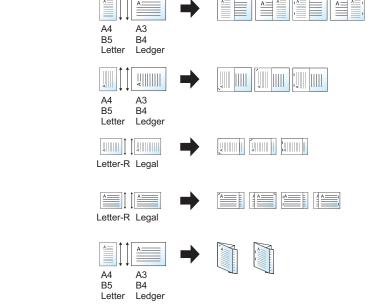
One position staple is not slanted for the following paper sizes.

B5-R, 16K-R

Mixed Size Stapling

Even with mixed paper sizes, if the sizes have the same width as shown in the combinations below, the output can be stapled.

- A3 and A4
- B4 and B5
- Ledger and Letter
- Ledger and Letter-R
- 8K and 16K



- A3 and A4 (A3 Z fold and A4)
- B4 and B5 (B4 Z fold and B5)
- Ledger and Letter (Ledger Z fold and Letter)
- 8K and 16K (8K Z fold and 16K)



NOTE

- Number of sheets that can be stapled: up to 30 sheets.
- · When performing Mixed Size Stapling, refer to the following:
 - → Mixed Size Originals (page 6-22)

Punch

Punches holes in sets of finished documents.



NOTE

- · This function requires the optional Document Finisher and Punch Unit.
- For details on paper sizes that can be punched, refer to the following:
 - ▶ Punch Unit (For Inner Finisher) (page 11-28)
 - → Punch Unit (For 1,000-sheet/4,000-sheet/100-sheet Staple Finisher) (page 11-31)
- The inch model provides two-hole and three-hole punching. The metric model provides two-hole and four-hole punching.

Item	Value	Description		
Punch	Off			
	2 holes Left	Select the position of punch holes. For details on original		
	2 holes Top	orientation and position of punch holes, refer to the following:		
	2 holes Right	 Original Orientation and Punch Hole Position (page) 		
	3 holes Left	6-32)		
	3 holes Top			
	3 holes Right			
	4 holes Left			
	4 holes Top			
	4 holes Right			
Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*1	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left]. Then select [OK].		

^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Original Orientation and Punch Hole Position

lm	age	Original o	orientation
Original	Print results	Glass platen	Document processor
A			A
V V	• Y		A
A			A
A III	A A		A P

NOTE

The inch model provides two-hole and three-hole punching. The metric model provides two-hole and four-hole punching.

Paper Output







Specify the output tray.

with optional Job Separator

Item	Description
Inner tray	Outputs to the Inner Tray of the machine.
Job Separator Tray	Delivery to the Inner Job Separator.

with optional 1,000-sheet Finisher

Item Description	
Job Separator Tray*1 Delivery to the Inner Job Separator.	
Finisher Tray	Delivery to the Finisher Tray of the optional Document Finisher.

^{*1} The paper sizes cannot be output to the Job Separator Tray: A3, Ledger.

with optional 4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Staple Finisher

Item	Description
Job Separator Tray*1	Delivery to the Inner Job Separator.
Tray A	Delivery to the Tray A of the optional Document Finisher.
Tray B	Delivery to the Tray B of the optional Document Finisher. When [Heavy 5] (257 g/m² - 300 g/m²) is set in Paper Weight and tray B is set for the output destination, the output destination is automatically changed to the tray A.

^{*1} The paper sizes cannot be output to the Job Separator Tray: A3, Ledger.

with optional Mailbox

Item	Description
Job Separator Tray*1	Delivery to the Inner Job Separator.
Tray A	Delivery to the Tray A of the optional Document Finisher.
Tray B	Delivery to the Tray B of the optional Document Finisher. When [Heavy 5] (257 g/m 2 - 300 g/m 2) is set in Paper Weight and tray B is set for the output destination, the output destination is automatically changed to the tray A.
Tray 1 to 7	Delivery to tray 1 to 7 (tray 1 is the uppermost tray) of the optional Mailbox. When [Heavy 3] to [Heavy 4] (164 g/m² - 256 g/m²) is set in Paper Weight and Mailbox is set for the output destination, the output destination is automatically changed to the tray B. When [Heavy 5] (257 g/m² - 300 g/m²) is set in Paper Weight and Mailbox is set for the output destination, the output destination is automatically changed to the tray A.

^{*1} The paper sizes cannot be output to the Job Separator Tray: A3, Ledger.

NOTE

- This can be set when the optional Job Separator or Document Finisher (1,000-sheet Finisher, 4,000-sheet Finisher, or 100-sheet Staple Finisher) is installed. This cannot be set when the optional Inner Finisher is installed.
- The default setting for Paper Output can be changed.
 - ▶ Paper Output (page 8-20)

ID Card Copy



Org./Paper /Finishing

Use this when you want to copy a driver's license or an insurance card. When you scan the front and back of the card, both sides will be combined and copied onto a single sheet.

(Value: [Off] / [On])



Org. Manual Feed (DP)



Org./Paper /Finishing



Org./Sending **Data Format**



Functions



Functions

Multi-sheet documents such as slips can be read on the document processor whilst still bound together. When placing a document on the document processor, place one copy at a time.

(Value: [Off] / [On])



NOTE

- Requires the optional Document Processor (Dual Scan with Skewed and Multifeed Detection).
- Documents can be placed if the total thickness of the multi-sheet document is 220 g/m² or less.

Density



Image Quality



Image Quality



- Functions
- Image Quality



Functions

Adjust density.

Adjust density selecting [-4] (Lighter) to [+4] (Darker).



Original Image









Select original image type for best results.

Copying

It	em	Value	Description
Text+Photo*1	Original Type	Printer Output	Best for mixed text and photo documents printed on this machine originally.
		Book/Magazine	Best for mixed text and photos printed in a magazine, etc.
	Highlighter Enhancement	Off, On (Normal), On (Bright)	Select [On (Normal)] to reproduce the color of the text and markings made with highlighter pen. If the colors are not bright enough, select [On (Bright)].
Photo	Original Type	Printer Output	Best for photos printed on this machine originally.
		Book/Magazine	Best for photos printed in a magazine, etc.
		Photo Paper	Best for photos taken with a camera.
Text	Light Text/Fine Line	Off	Best for documents that are mostly text and were originally printed on this machine.
		On	Sharply renders pencil text and fine lines.
	Highlighter Enhancement	Off, On (Normal), On (Bright)	Select [On (Normal)] to reproduce the color of the text and markings made with highlighter pen. If the colors are not bright enough, select [On (Bright)].
Graphic/Map	Original Type Printer Output Book/Magazine	Printer Output	Best for maps and diagrams printed on this machine originally.
		Book/Magazine	Best for maps and diagrams printed in a magazine.
	Highlighter Enhancement	Off, On (Normal), On (Bright)	Select [On (Normal)] to reproduce the color of the text and markings made with highlighter pen. If the colors are not bright enough, select [On (Bright)].

^{*1} If gray text is not printed completely using [**Text + Photo**], selecting [**Text**] may improve the result.

Sending/Printing/Storing

	Item	Value	Description	
Text+Photo			Best for mixed text and photo documents.	
	Highlighter Enhancement	Off, On (Normal), On (Bright)	Select [On (Normal)] to reproduce the color of the text and markings made with highlighter pen. If the colors are not bright enough, select [On (Bright)].	
Photo			Best for photos taken with a camera.	

	Item	Value	Description
Text Light Text/Fine Off Line		Off	Best for documents that are mostly text and were originally printed on this machine.
		On	Sharply renders pencil text and fine lines.
	Highlighter Enhancement	Off, On (Normal), On (Bright)	Select [On (Normal)] to reproduce the color of the text and markings made with highlighter pen. If the colors are not bright enough, select [On (Bright)].
Text (for OCR)			Scanning produces an image that is suitable for OCR. This function is only available when Color Selection is set to Black and White. Color Selection (page 6-36)

EcoPrint



Image Quality



Functions



Functions

EcoPrint saves toner when printing.

Use this function for test prints or any other occasion when high quality print is not required.







Item		Value	Description
Off			
On	Toner Save Level	[1] (Lower) to [5] (Higher)	Adjust the Toner Save Level.

Color Selection

Select the color setting.



Image Quality



- Functions
- Image Quality



Item	Description
Auto (Color/Grayscale)	Automatically recognizes whether the document is color or black and white, and scan color documents in Full Color and black and white documents in Grayscale.
Auto (Color/B & W)	Automatically recognizes whether the document is color or black and white, and scan color documents in Full Color and black and white documents in Black and White.
Full Color	Scans the document in full color.
Grayscale	Scans the document in grayscale. Produces a smooth, detailed image.
Black & White	Scans the document in black and white.

Sharpness



Image Quality



Image Quality



- Functions
- Image Quality

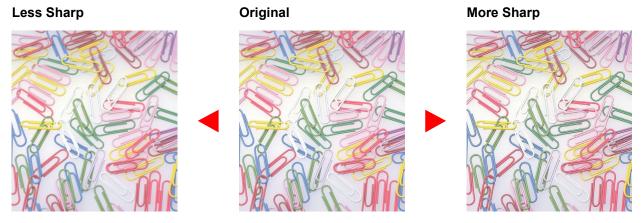


Adjusts the sharpness of image outlines.

When copying penciled originals with rough or broken lines, clear copies can be taken by adjusting sharpness toward "Sharpen". When copying images made up of patterned dots such as magazine photos, in which moire *1 patterns appear, edge softening and weakening of the moire effect can be obtained by setting the sharpness toward "Blur".

When [AII] is selected, select [-3] to [3] (Blur - Sharpen) to adjust the sharpness.

When [Text/Fine Line] is selected, select [0] to [3] (Normal - Sharpen) to adjust the sharpness.



Item	Value	Description
All	[+1] to [+3] Emphasizes the image outline. (Sharpen)	
[-1] to [-3] (Blur) Blurs the image outling		Blurs the image outline. Can weaken a Moire ^{*1} effect.
Text/Fine Line	[0] to [3] (Normal - Sharpen) Makes letters and lines appear sharper. Only text and fine lines are emphasized.	

^{*1} Patterns that are created by irregular distribution of halftone dots.

Background Density Adj. (Background Density Adjustment)



Image Quality



Image Quality



- Functions
- Image Quality



Functions

Removes dark background from originals, such as newspapers.

If the ground color is obtrusive, select [Auto]. If [Auto] does not remove the ground color, select [Manual] and adjust the density of the ground color.

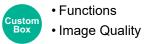
Item	Description
Off	Does not adjust the ground color.
Auto	Automatically adjusts the background density based on the original.
Manual	Select [1] to [5] (Lighter - Darker) to adjust the background density manually.

Prevent Bleed-thru



Image Quality

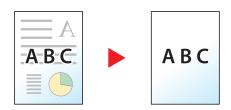






Hides background colors and image bleed-through when scanning thin original.

(Value: [Off] / [On])



Contrast



Image Quality



Image Quality



FunctionsImage Quality



Functions

You can adjust the contrast between light and dark areas of the image.



Item	Description	
[+1] to [+4] (Higher)	Increases the sharpness of colors.	
[-1] to [-4] (Lower)	Creates smoother colors.	

Erase Colors



Image Quality





- Functions
- Image Quality



Erases colors in the source document.

	Item	Value	Description
Off			
On		Yellow, Red, Cyan, Magenta, Green, Blue, Black	Select the colors to erase. You can select up to 6 colors.
	Color Range	1 (Narrower) to 5 (Wider)	Choose a range of colors to erase. For example, if you specify yellow and select [5 (Wider)] from the color range, greens and reds close to yellow will be erased.



If you select only [Black], you cannot set the Color Range.

Zoom



Layout/Edit



Advanced Setup



Functions



Functions

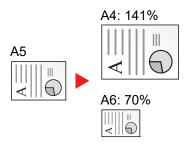
Adjust the zoom to reduce or enlarge the image.

Copying

The following zoom options are available.

Auto

Adjusts the image to match the paper size.



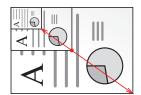
Standard Zoom

Reduces or enlarges at preset magnifications.

Model	Zoom Level (Original Copy)	Model	Zoom Level (Original Copy)
Metric	400% Max.	Inch Models	400% Max.
Models	200% A5 >> A3		200% Statement >>Ledger
	141% A4 >> A3 A5 >> A4		154% Statement>>Legal
	127% Folio>>A3		129% Letter>>Ledger
	106% 11"x15">>A3		121% Legal>>Ledger
	100%		100%
	90% Folio>>A4		78% Legal>>Letter
	75% 11"x15">>A4		77% Ledger>>Letter
	70% A3 >> A4 A4 >> A5		64% Ledger>>Letter
	50%		50% Ledger>>Statement
	25% Min.		25% Min.

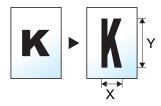
Zoom Entry

Manually reduces or enlarges the original image in 1% increments between 25% and 400%. Use the numeric keys or select [+] or [-] to enter the any magnification.



XY Zoom

Select vertical and horizontal magnifications individually. Magnifications can be set in 1% increments between 25% and 400%



Item		Value	Description	
XY Zoom		X: 25 to 400% (in 1% increments)	Select vertical and horizontal magnifications individually.	
		Y: 25 to 400% (in 1% increments)	Select [+] or [-] to change the displayed magnifications of "X" (horizontal) and "Y" (vertical).	
			Select [# Keys] to use the numeric keys for entry.	
Original O	rientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto ^{*1}	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.	
			Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left]. Then press [OK].	

^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Printing/Sending/Storing

Item	Description
100%	Reproduces the original size.
Auto	Reduces or enlarges original to sending/storing size.

NOTE

- To reduce or enlarge the image, select the paper size, sending size, or storing size.
 - ▶ Paper Selection (page 6-20)
 - → Sending Size (page 6-74)
 - → Storing Size (page 6-86)
- Some combinations of original size and paper size or sending size may cause the image to be positioned at the edge of the paper. To center the original vertically and horizontally on the page, use the Centering function.
 - → Margin/Centering, Margin, Centering (page 6-44)

Combine



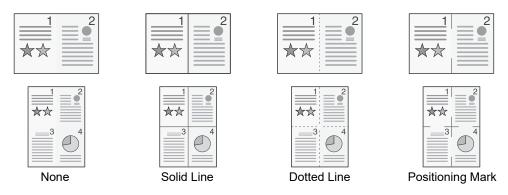
Layout/Edit



Combines 2 or 4 original sheets into 1 printed page.

You can select the page layout and the type of boundary lines around the pages.

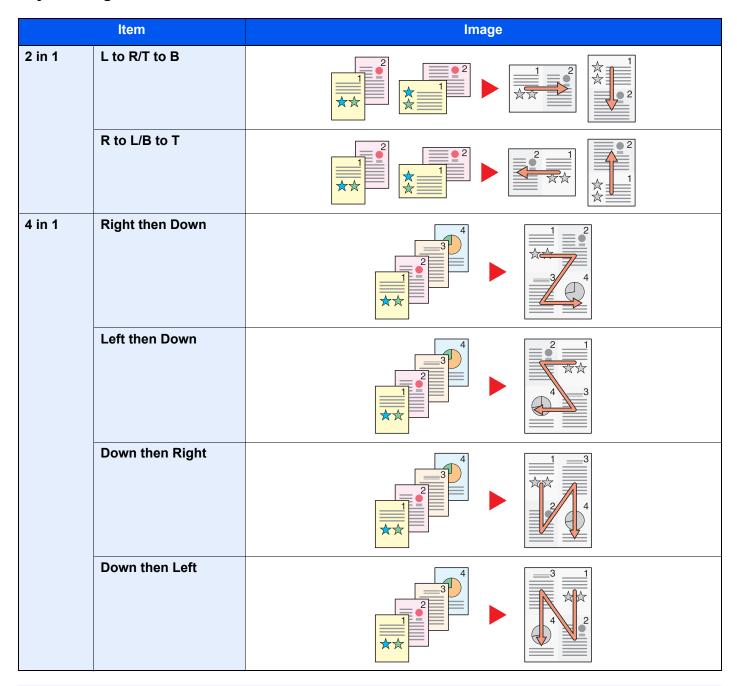
The following types of the boundary lines are available.



	Item	Value	Description
Off			
2 in 1	Layout	2 in 1 (Left to Right/Top to Bottom), 2 in 1 (Right to Left/Bottom to Top)	Select the page layout of scanned originals.
	Border Line	None, Solid Line, Dotted Line,	Select the boundary line type.
		Positioning Mark	Select [Border Line] to select the page boundary line.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto ^{*1}	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction.
			Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].
4 in 1	Layout	4 in 1 (Right then Down), 4 in 1 (Left then Down), 4 in 1 (Down then Right), 4 in 1 (Down then Left)	Select the page layout of scanned originals.
	Border Line	None, Solid Line, Dotted Line,	Select the boundary line type.
		Positioning Mark	Select [Border Line] to select the page boundary line.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto ^{*1}	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose
			orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].

^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Layout image



NOTE

- The paper sizes supported in Combine mode are A4, A5, B5, Folio, 216 × 340 mm, Letter, Legal, Statement, Oficio II, and 16K.
- When placing the original on the platen, be sure to copy the originals in page order.

Margin/Centering, Margin, Centering



Layout/Edit







Copying/Printing

Add margins (white space). In addition, you can set the margin width and the back page margin.

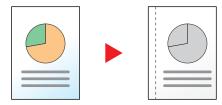
Centering: Centers the original image on the paper when copying onto paper different from the original size.



NOTE

The default setting for margin width can be changed.

→ Margin Default (page 8-35)



Item		Value	Description
Off			
Margin	Margin	Metric: -18 mm to +18 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch: -0.75 to +0.75" (in 0.01" increments)	Set the margin width.*1 Use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to enter the margins for "Left/Right" and "Top/Bottom".
	Back Page	Auto, Manual	For duplex copying, select [Back Page] and select [Auto] or [Manual]. When [Auto] is selected, an appropriate margin is applied automatically on the rear page depending on a margin specified for the front page and a binding
			orientation. When [Manual] is set, you can set a different margin than the front on the back. Set the margin in the screen that is displayed. The setting selections are the same as for the front.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto ^{*2}	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].
Orientation Top		Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*2	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].

^{*1} The input units can be changed in System Menu.

[→] Measurement (page 8-6)

^{*2} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

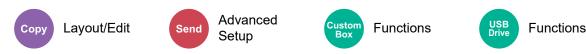
^{*3} Not displayed when printing from USB drive.

Sending/Storing

When you have sent/stored the original after specifying the original size and sending size, depending on these sizes, a margin is created at the bottom, left, or right side of paper. By using the Centering function, the image is placed with a margin equally created for all edges.

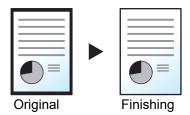
(Value: [Off] / [On])

Border Erase, Border Erase/Full Scan



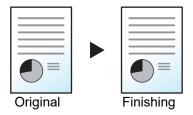
Erases the black border that forms around the image.

Standard



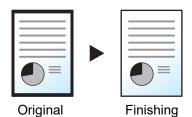
Erase the black frame created in the original. Erasing width is fixed.

Full Scan



Scan originals without white margins. No border erase.

Border Erase Sheet



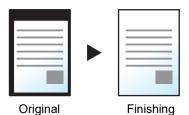
Erase the black frame created in the original. Erasing width can be adjusted.

Border Erase Book



Erases black borders around the edges and in the middle of the original such as a thick book. You can specify the widths individually to erase the borders around the edges and in the center of the book.

Individual Border Erase



You can specify border erase widths individually for all edges.



- [Full Scan] is not displayed when copying.
- The default setting for border erase width can be changed.
 - → Border Erase Default (page 8-33)
- The default width for back page can be changed.
 - → Border Erase to Back Page (page 8-33)

Ite	em	Value	Description	
Standard		Scan originals with Standard Mode.		
Full Scan ^{*1}		Scan originals without w	hite margins.	
Border Erase Sheet	Border	Metric: 0 mm to 50 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch: 0.00 to 2.00" (in 0.01" increments)	Set the border erase width.*2 Use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to set the value.	
	Back Page	Same as Front Page, Do Not Erase	For 2-sided originals, select [Back Page] and then select [Same as Front Page] or [Do Not Erase].	
Border Erase Book	Border	Metric: 0 mm to 50 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch: 0.00 to 2.00" (in 0.01" increments)	Set the border erase width around the edges and in the center of the book.*2 Use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to set the value.	
	Back Page	Same as Front Page, Do Not Erase	For 2-sided originals, select [Back Page] and then select [Same as Front Page] or [Do Not Erase].	
Individual Border Erase	Border	Metric: 0 mm to 50 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch: 0.00 to 2.00" (in 0.01" increments)	Set the border erase width individually for all edges.*2 Use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to set the value.	
	Back Page	Same as Front Page, Do Not Erase	For 2-sided originals, select [Back Page] and then select [Same as Front Page] or [Do Not Erase].	
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*3	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].	

^{*1} Not displayed when copying.

^{*2} The input units can be changed in System Menu.

[→] Measurement (page 8-6)

^{*3} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Erase Shadowed Areas



Layout/Edit





Functions



Functions

When scanning with the document processor open, erase the extra shaded area.

(Value: [Off] / [On])





NOTE

In case the Document processor or the original cover is not opened sufficiently, it might not be able to erase the shaded area.

Prevent Light Reflection (page 8-12)

Booklet



Layout/Edit



Functions

The Booklet option allows you to copy sheet originals and produce booklets such as small brochures or pamphlets. A booklet, such as a magazine, is made by folding at the center.

You can print the cover page onto colored paper or thick paper. Paper for the cover is supplied from the multipurpose tray. To feed the cover paper from the cassette or inserter, refer to the following:

Paper Source for Cover (page 8-19)



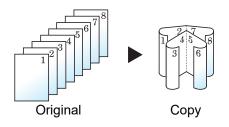
NOTE

Using the optional 4,000-sheet Finisher and the folding unit enables you to saddle stitch your copies (fold them in two with staples in the center). Supported paper sizes are A3, A4-R, B4, Ledger, Letter-R, Legal, Oficio II and 8K.

Type of original	Original size	Paper size
One-sided original, Two-sided original	All*1	A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B5, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Oficio II and 8K
Book Original	A3, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5-R, Ledger, Letter-R and 8K	

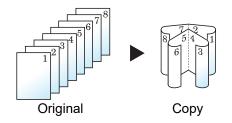
^{*1} Except for custom sized originals.

Binding on the left side



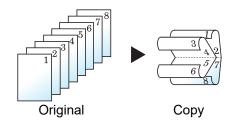
The folded copies can be read from left to right.

Binding on the right side



The folded copies can be read from right to left.

Top binding



The folded copies can be read from top to bottom.

Copying

	Item			Description
Off				
1-sided >>	Binding in Finishing		Left, Right, Top	Select the binding orientation of copies.
Booklet	Original Orientation		Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto ^{*1}	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left]. Then press [OK].
	Cover*2	Off		
		Cover: Front Cover Print Setting	Do Not Print, Front Only, Back Only, Duplex	Select whether to add the cover. Select the printing method for the cover to be inserted.
		Cover: Back Cover Print Setting	Do Not Print, Front Only, Back Only, Duplex	Select [Cover], and then [Cover], and specify the print setting for the cover to be inserted. Select from [Do Not Print], [Back Only], [Front Only], and [Duplex], and press [OK].
	Staple/Fold	d	Off, Fold Only, Saddle Stitch	To fold finished copies in half, select [Staple/Fold] and then select [Fold Only]. To use saddle stitching, select [Staple/Fold] and then select [Saddle Stitch].

	Item		Value	Description
2-sided >>	Binding in	Original	Left/Right, Top	Select the binding direction of originals.
Booklet	Binding in	Finishing	Left, Right, Top	Select the binding orientation of copies.
	Original Orientation		Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*1	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left]. Then press [OK].
	Cover*2	Off		
		Cover: Front Cover Print Setting	Do Not Print, Front Only, Back Only, Duplex	Select whether to add the cover. Select the printing method for the cover to be inserted.
		Cover: Back Cover Print Setting	Do Not Print, Front Only, Back Only, Duplex	Select [Cover], and then [Cover], and specify the print setting for the cover to be inserted. Select from [Do Not Print], [Back Only], [Front Only], and [Duplex], and press [OK].
	Staple/Fold		Off, Fold Only, Saddle Stitch	To fold finished copies in half, select [Staple/Fold] and then select [Fold Only]. To use saddle stitching, select [Staple/Fold] and then select [Saddle Stitch].
Book >>	Binding in	Original	Left, Right	Select the binding direction of originals.
Booklet*3	Binding in	Finishing	Left, Right	Select the binding orientation of copies.
	Cover		Off, On	Select whether to add the cover. Select [Cover] to select [Cover], and select [OK].
	Staple/Fold		Off, Fold Only, Saddle Stitch	To fold finished copies in half, select [Staple/Fold] and then select [Fold Only].
				To use saddle stitching, select [Staple/Fold] and then select [Saddle Stitch].

^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

^{*2} Printing is not possible when feeding from the inserter.

^{*3 [}Top Edge on Top] is set for "Original Orientation".

Printing

Item		Value	Description	
Off			'	
Booklet	Binding		Left, Right, Top	Select the binding orientation of copies.
	Cover*1	Off		
		Cover: Front Cover Print Setting	Do Not Print, Front Only, Back Only, Duplex	Select whether to add the cover. Select the printing method for the cover to be inserted.
		Cover: Back Cover Print Setting	Do Not Print, Front Only, Back Only, Duplex	Select [Cover], and then [Cover], and specify the print setting for the cover to be inserted. Select from [Not Print], [Back Only], [Front Only], and [Duplex], and press [OK].
	Staple/Fol	d	Off, Fold Only, Saddle Stitch	To fold finished copies in half, select [Staple/Fold] and then select [Fold Only]. To use saddle stitching, select [Staple/Fold] and then select [Saddle Stitch].

^{*1} Printing is not possible when feeding from the inserter.

NOTE

- The number of sheets that can be folded or Saddle Stitch stapled varies depending on paper weight. For details, refer to the following:
 - → Folding Unit (For 4,000-sheet Finisher) (page 11-32)
 - → Folding Unit (For 100-sheet Staple Finisher) (page 11-33)
- When placing the original on the platen, be sure to place the originals in page order.

Binding direction, and Orientation of cover and original

When feeding the cover from the inserter, the setting orientation of the cover and the original differs depending on the [**Binding in Finishing**] or [**Binding**] setting.

1: Front cover 2: Back cover

Item	Orien	tation	Image
	Inserter	Document Processor	
Left			1 3 5 7
Right			
Top*1			

^{*1} Set [Top Edge on Left] for Original Orientation.

Duplex



Layout/Edit

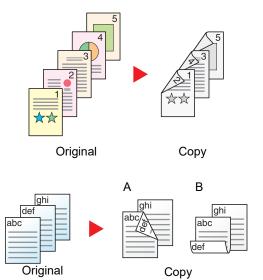




Produces two-sided copies. You can also create single-sided copies from two-sided originals.

The following modes are available.

One-sided to Two-sided

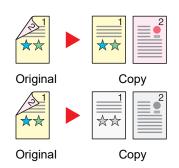


Produces two-sided copies from one-sided originals. In case of an odd number of originals, the back side of the last copy will be blank.

The following binding options are available.

- A Binding Left/Right: Images on the second sides are not rotated.
- B Binding Top: Images on the second sides are rotated 180 degrees. Copies can be bound on the top edge, facing the same orientation when turning the pages.

Two-sided to One-sided

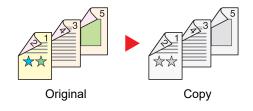


Copies each side of a two-sided original onto two individual sheets. Place originals in the document processor.

The following binding options are available.

- Binding Left/Right: Images on the second sides are not rotated.
- Binding Top: Images on the second sides are rotated 180 degrees.

Two-sided to Two-sided



Produces two-sided copies from two-sided originals. Place originals in the document processor.



NOTE

The paper sizes supported in Duplex mode: A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, A5, A6-R, B4, B5-R, B5, B6-R, 216×340 mm, SRA3, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Executive, 12×18", Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K, ISO B5, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard) and Custom 1 to 4.

Book to One-sided



Produces a 1-sided copy of a 2-sided or open book original.

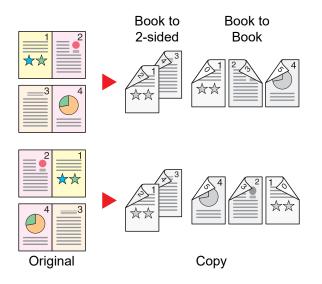
The following binding options are available.

Binding Left: Originals with facing pages are copied from left to right. Binding Right: Originals with facing pages are copied from right to left.

NOTE

- The original sizes supported in Book to One-sided mode: A3, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5-R, Ledger, Letter-R and 8K
- The paper sizes supported in Book to One-sided mode: A4-R, A4, A5, B5-R, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K-R and 16K

Book to Two-sided



Produces two-sided copies from an open book original with facing pages.

NOTE

- The original sizes supported in Book to Two-sided mode: A3, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5-R, Ledger, Letter-R and 8K
- The paper sizes supported in Book to Two-sided mode: A4-R, A4, A5, B5-R, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K-R and 16K

Copying

Prints 1-sided or open book originals to 2-sided, or 2-sided or open book originals to 1-sided. Select the binding orientation for original and finished documents.

Iten	n	Value	Description
1-sided>>1-sided	1-sided>>1-sided		Disables the function.
1-sided>>2-sided Finishing Original Orientation		Left/Right, Top	Select the binding orientation of copies.
		Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*1	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].
2-sided>>1-sided	Original	Left/Right, Top	Select the binding orientation of originals.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*1	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].
2-sided>>2-sided	Original	Left/Right, Top	Select the binding direction of originals.
	Finishing	Left/Right, Top	Select the binding orientation of copies.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*1	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].
Book >> 1-sided*2 Original		Left, Right	Select the binding direction of originals.
Book >> 2-sided*2	Original	Left, Right	Select the binding direction of originals.
	Finishing	Book>>2-sided, Book>>Book	Select the desired Duplex option.

^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

When placing the original on the platen, consecutively replace each original and press the [Start] key.

After scanning all originals, select [Finish Scan] to start copying.

Printing

Print a document to 1-sided or 2-sided sheets.

Ite	em	Value	Description
1-sided		_	Disables the function.
2-sided	Finishing	Left/Right	Prints a 2-sided document so that the sheets are aligned properly for binding on the left or right.
Тор		Тор	Prints a 2-sided document so that the sheets are aligned properly for binding on the top.

^{*2 [}Top Edge on Top] is set for "Original Orientation".

Cover



Layout/Edit



Adds a cover to the finished documents.

You can print the first page and/or the last page onto colored paper or thick paper fed from the different paper source than the regular one. The following two options are available. Paper for the cover is supplied from the multipurpose tray. To feed the cover paper from the cassette or inserter, refer to the following:

▶ Paper Source for Cover (page 8-19)

The printing method can be set for the covers. Specify a print setting for each cover.

	Item	Value	Description
Off			
Front Cover	Front Cover Print Setting*1	Do Not Print, Front Only, Back Only*2, Duplex*2	Different paper has to be inserted for the first page of the document. Select [Stop Printing], [Front Only], [Back Only], or [Duplex] for the print setting of the inserted paper.
Front and Back Covers	Front Cover Print Setting*1	Do Not Print, Front Only, Back Only ^{*2} , Duplex ^{*2}	Different paper has to be inserted for the first page and last page of the document. Select [Stop Printing], [Front Only], [Back
	Back Cover Print Setting*1	Do Not Print, Front Only, Back Only ^{*2} , Duplex ^{*2}	Only], or [Duplex] for the print setting of the inserted paper.

^{*1} Printing is not possible when feeding from the inserter.

^{*2 [}Back Only] and [Duplex] appears when finishing is set to 2-sided in "Duplex".

[→] Duplex (page 6-52)

Form Overlay



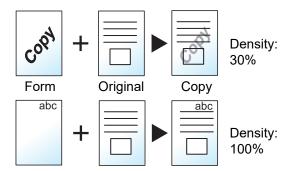
Layout/Edit



Prints the original document overlaid with a form or image.

Once you scan and register the form, the form is overlaid onto the original. You can also use a form that is already registered in the Document Box.

Place the original for the form on top of the other originals. When using the optional document processor, the first page of the originals should be placed on the top.



	Item	Value	Description
Off			
Select Stored Form	Select Stored Form	_	Form must be previously registered in Document Box. Form for Form Overlay (page 5-71) Select the form to be overlaid from Document Box. Select [Select Stored Form] to display the Document Box that store documents which can be used as a form. Select the desired form from the list and select [Select]. After you have selected the form, select [Next >].
	Density	10% to 100%	Specify the density of the form to be overlaid. Use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to set the value.
	Finishing	Transparent	The form is overlaid on the document.
	Image	Form on Original Image	The form is placed on top of the document.
		Original Image on Form	The form is placed under the document.

	Item	Value	Description
Scan New Form ^{*1}	Density	10% to 100%	Specify the density of the form to be overlaid. Use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to set the value.
	Finishing Image	Transparent	The form is overlaid on the document.
		Form on Original Image	The form is placed on top of the document.
		Original Image on Form	The form is placed under the document.

^{*1} Not displayed when printing from the custom box.

Page



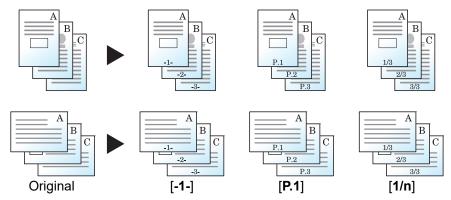
Layout/Edit



Functions

Adds page numbers to the finished documents.

The available formats for numbering are [-1-], [P.1] and [1/n]. The format [1/n] prints the total number of pages in the place of "n".



Select the numbering format from [-1-], [P.1] or [1/n].

Item		Value	Description		
Off					
-1-, P.1, 1/ n	P.1, 1/ Position		Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right	Select the print position of page number. Specify the detailed page number position using numeric values, and to set the page number position ([Same as Front Page], [Mirror Front Page]) when a page number is placed on the back side of the paper in duplex printing.	
1st Page		1 to 10	To start page numbering from a page other than the first page, use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to specify the starting page.		
	Start #		1 to 9999	To start the numbering with a number other than 1, use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to specify the starting number.	
Denominator#*1 Last Page		Auto, Manual (1 to 9999)	The total number of pages "n" in the format [1/n] can be changed manually. Select [Manual] and use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to enter the total number of pages.		
		ge	Auto, Manual (-10 to 0)	If you do not want page numbering through to the last page, select [Manual]. Use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to specify the final page to be numbered (a negative number of pages counting backwards from the last page). Specify the desired number up to -10.	
	Font	Font	Courier, Letter Gothic	Set the font of page number.	
		Size	Font sizes registered in "Font (Page #)" are displayed. Font Size (Page #) (page 8-33)	Set the font size of page number.	
		Color	Black, White	Set the color of page number.	
		Style	None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic	Set the font style of page number. Select a font style by checking the checkbox.	
		Display Pattern	Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite	Set the display method of page number.	
		Density	10 to 100% (in 10% increments)	Set the density of the color of page number. Use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to set the value.	
Original Orientation		Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto ^{*2}	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].		
Count Blank Page ^{*3}		Off, On	When a scanned document contains blank pages, select [On] if you require blank pages to be numbered. Select [Off] to skip blank pages.		

^{*1} This item appears when [1/n] is selected.*2 This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

^{*3} Not displayed when printing from the custom box.

Memo Page



Layout/Edit

Delivers copies with a space for adding notes.

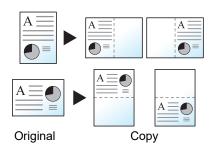
You can also print two originals onto the same sheet with a space or add lines to indicate page boundaries. Select [Layout A] or [Layout B] and select the page layout from "Layout".



NOTE

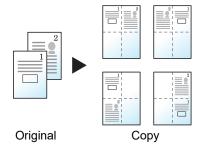
The paper sizes supported in Memo mode: A4, A5, B5, Legal, Oficio II, 216 × 340 mm, Letter, Statement, Folio and 16K.

Layout A



Reduces images of each original page for printing onto half of a page, leaving the other half blank for notes.

Layout B



Reduces images of two original pages for printing onto half of a page, leaving the other half blank for notes.

	Item	Value	Description
Off			
Layout A	Layout	Left/Top, Right/Bottom	Select how to lay out the pages of scanned original.
	Border Line	None, Solid Line, Dotted Line, Positioning Mark	Select the boundary line type. Select [Border Line] to select the page boundary line.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto ^{*1}	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].

	Item	Value	Description
Layout B	Layout	Top Left to Right, Top Right to Left, Top Left to Bottom, Top Right to Bottom	Select how to lay out the pages of scanned original.
	Border Line	None, Solid Line, Dotted Line, Positioning Mark	Select the boundary line type. Select [Border Line] to select the page boundary line.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto ^{*1}	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].

^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Insert Sheets/Chapters



Layout/Edit

Insert a separator sheet, or make the first page of the chapter the front page when performing duplex printing. The configured pages are displayed on the list.

		Item		Value	Description
Off					
On	Add	Separator	Separator Sheet	1 to 4999	Enter document page numbers where separators get inserted. Use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to enter the page number.
			Paper Source	Cassette 1 to 5, MP Tray, Inserter Tray 1*1*2, Inserter Tray 2*1*2	Select the source of the paper for the separator.
		Chapter	Chapter Page	2 to 4999	Enter the page numbers of the original document where you want to insert the chapters. Use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to enter the page number.
	Edit			_	Change the configuration of the chapter page and separator. The method of operation is the same as that of a new addition.
	Delete		_	Delete the page selected in the list.	
	Next >	Sheets Settin		Do Not Print, Front Only, Back Only*3, Duplex*3	Select [Do Not Print,], [Front Only], [Back Only], or [Duplex] for the print setting of the inserted paper.

^{*1} Displayed when the optional inserter is installed.

^{*2} Printing is not possible when feeding from the inserter.

^{*3 [}Back Only] and [Duplex] appear when finishing is set to 2-sided in "Duplex".

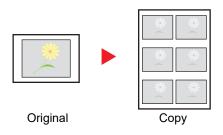
[→] Duplex (page 6-52)

Image Repeat



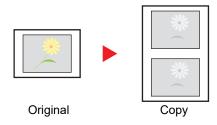
Tiles the 1 copied sheet with an original image. You can also specify the area of the original to repeat.

Zoom Priority



Repeat an image of specified zoom ratio.

Double Copy



Copy two image.

Item		Val	ue		Description
Off					
Zoom Priority	25 to 400% (in 1% increments)			magnification as desired.	keys to change the displayed ginal to be repeated, select [Next >].
	Specify	Off			
	Repeat Area	On		To set the area of the orig "Specify Repeat Area".	inal to be repeated, select [On] for
		Start	Metric*1 X1: 0 to 431 mm Y1: 0 to 296 mm Inch X1: 0.00 to 16.99" Y1: 0.00 to 11.68"	Use [+], [-] or the numeric to be repeated.	Y1: Length from top left of platen to top edge of repeat area X1: Length from top left of
			Area	Metric*1 X2: 1 to 432 mm Y2: 1 to 297 mm Inch X2: 0.01 to 17.00" Y2: 0.01 to 11.69"	Y2
Double Copy —		For example, you can dou	me original on a single sheet. uble-copy an A5 original onto an A4 in half to make 2 copies that are		

^{*1} The input units can be changed in System Menu.

[→] Measurement (page 8-6)

Text Stamp



Layout/Edit







You can add a text stamp on the documents.

Copying/Printing



This cannot be set when Text Stamp is set in the system settings.

→ Printing Jobs (page 8-77)

	Item	Value	Description
Off			
On	Text Stamp	Any text string (up to 32 characters), Template 1 to 8	Select the entry field and enter the text string to be printed, or select a text stamp from the displayed templates.
			After you have set the stamp, select [Next >].
			NOTE
			Templates that have been set will appear.
			→ Text (Text Stamp) (page 8-33)
	Stamp Method	Each Print Page, Each Original Page	Select the stamp method. Select [Stamp Method] and set the stamp method for text stamp.
	Position	Top Left, Top Middle, Top	Set the stamp position to be printed.
		Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left,	Select [Position] and select the text stamp position.
		Bottom Middle, Bottom Right	Specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp position and angle when a stamp is placed on the back side of the paper in duplex printing.

	Item		Value	Description
On	Font	Font	Courier, Letter Gothic	Set the font of text stamp.
		Size	Registered font sizes are	Set the font size of text stamp.
			displayed.	For details on registering font sizes, refer to the following:
				► Font Size (Text Stamp) (page 8-33)
		Character Border	Off, Circle, Rectangle, Underline	Set the character border and underline.
		Color	Black, White	Set the color of text stamp.
		Style	None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic	Set the font style of text stamp. Select a font style by checking the checkbox.
		Display Pattern	Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite	Set the display method of text stamp.
		Density	10 to 100% (in 10% increments)	Set the density of text stamp color. Set the value by using [+], [-] or the numeric keys.
	Original O	rientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*1	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].

^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Sending/Storing



- This cannot be set when Long Original is set.
 - ◆ Long Original (page 6-75)
- This cannot be set when Text Stamp is set in the system settings.
 - → Sending Jobs (page 8-79)
 - ◆ Storing Jobs (page 8-81)

	Item		Value	Description
Off				
On	Text Stamp		Any text string (up to 32 characters), Template 1 to 8	Select the entry field and enter the text string to be printed, or select a text stamp from the displayed templates. After you have set the stamp, select [Next >].
				NOTE Templates that have been set will appear. → Text (Text Stamp) (page 8-33)
	Stamp Met	hod	Each Print Page, Each Original Page	Select the stamp method. Select [Stamp Method] and set the stamp method for text stamp.
	Position		Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right	Set the stamp position to be printed. Select [Position] and select the text stamp position. Set the stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp angle.
	Font	Font	Courier, Letter Gothic	Set the font of text stamp.
		Size	Registered font sizes are displayed.	Set the font size of text stamp. For details on registering font sizes, refer to the following: Font Size (Text Stamp) (page 8-33)
		Character Border	Off, Circle, Rectangle, Underline	Set the character border and underline.
		Color	Black, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Red, Green, Blue, White	Set the color of text stamp.
		Style	None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic	Set the font style of text stamp. Select a font style by checking the checkbox.
		Display Pattern	Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite	Set the display method of text stamp.
	Density		10 to 100% (in 10% increments)	Set the density of text stamp color. Set the value by using [+], [-] or the numeric keys.
	Original Orientation		Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto ^{*1}	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].

^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Bates Stamp



Layout/Edit







You can add a bates stamp on the documents.

Copying/Printing



This cannot be set when Text Stamp is set in the system settings.

→ Printing Jobs (page 8-77)

	Item	Value	Description
Off			
On	Bates Stamp	Date, User Name, Serial Number, Numbering, Text 1, Text 2	Set the stamp to be printed. When [Text 1] or [Text 2] is selected, select the entry field and enter the text string. After you have set the stamp, select [Next >].
	Date Format	MM/DD/YYYY, DD/MM/YYYY, YYYY/MM/DD	Set the date format. This setting is available when "Date" is set in "Bates Stamp".
	Position	Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right	Set the stamp position to be printed. Select [Position] and select the bates stamp position. Specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp position when a stamp is placed on the back side of the paper in duplex printing.
	Numbering Default	1 to 9999999	Set the starting sequence number. If you select [Fixed Digit Number] > [On], you can set the number of digits of the serial number (1 to 7 digits). This setting is available when "Numbering" is set in "Bates Stamp".

	Item		Value	Description
On	Font	Font	Courier, Letter Gothic	Set the font of bates stamp.
		Size	Registered font sizes are	Set the font size of bates stamp.
			displayed.	For details on registering font sizes, refer to the following:
				→ Font Size (Bates Stamp) (page 8-33)
		Color	Black, White	Set the color of the bates stamp.
		Style	None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic	Set the font style of bates stamp. Select a font style by checking the checkbox.
		Display Pattern	Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite	Set the display method of the bates stamp.
	Density	Density	10 to 100% (in 10% increments)	Set the density of bates stamp color. Set the value by using [+], [-] or the numeric keys.
	Original O	rientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*1	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].

^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Sending/Storing



- This cannot be set when Long Original is set.
 - ◆ Long Original (page 6-75)
- This cannot be set when Bates Stamp is set in the system settings.
 - → Sending Jobs (page 8-79)
 - ◆ Storing Jobs (page 8-81)

	Item		Value	Description
Off				
On	Bates Stamp		Date, User Name, Serial Number, Numbering, Text 1, Text 2	Set the stamp to be printed. When [Text 1] or [Text 2] is selected, select the entry field and enter the text string. After you have set the stamp, select [Next >].
	Date Form	at	MM/DD/YYYY, DD/MM/YYYY, YYYY/MM/DD	Set the date format. This setting is available when "Date" is set in "Bates Stamp".
	Numbering Default		1 to 9999999	Set the starting sequence number. If you select [Fixed Digit Number] > [On], you can set the number of digits of the serial number (1 to 7 digits). This setting is available when "Numbering" is set in "Bates Stamp".
	Position		Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right	Set the stamp position to be printed. Select [Position] and select the bates stamp position. Specify the stamp position using numeric values.
	Font	Font	Courier, Letter Gothic	Set the font of bates stamp.
		Size	Registered font sizes are displayed.	Set the font size of bates stamp. For details on registering font sizes, refer to the following: Font Size (Bates Stamp) (page 8-33)
		Color	Black, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Red, Green, Blue, White	Set the color of bates stamp.
		Style	None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic	Set the font style of bates stamp. Select a font style by checking the checkbox.
		Display Pattern	Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite	Set the display method of bates stamp.
		Density	10 to 100% (in 10% increments)	Set the density of bates stamp color. Set the value by using [+], [-] or the numeric keys.
	Original Orientation		Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*1	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].

^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Handwriting Enhancement





Emphasize the handwriting texts and lines by changing their color to specified one.

Item	Value	Description
Off		
On	Yellow, Red, Cyan, Magenta, Green, Blue, Black, Mask with White	Set the color to change.

NOTE

Depending on the original used, hand writing letter might be wrongly detected.

Example for the hand writing that is difficult to detect:

- · Handwritten numbers / figures / lines that are over 1 cm square in size
- · Letters that is written by tick pen

Example of recognizing some writing that is not handwritten as handwriting:

· Rounded font

In case of using this function, it might take some time to send.

Continuous Scan



Advanced Setup



Advanced Setup



Functions



Functions

Scans a large number of originals in separate batches and then produce as one job.

Originals will be scanned continuously until you select [Finish Scan].

Select [On] to use continuous scanning. To use Job Build, select [Job Build]. You can set the functions that appear on the screen during scanning.

(Value: [Off] / [On] / [Job Build])



Job Build

When [Job Build] is selected when copying or printing, the binding orientation for finished documents can be selected from [Binding Left], [Binding Right] or [Binding Top].

The following functions can be selected during scanning.

Item	Description
Next Copy: On Back	In duplex copying, prints on the back side if the next page is to be printed on the front side. Select [On Back] to use this function.
Next Copy: On Front	In duplex copying, prints on the front side if the next page is to be printed on the back side. Select [On Front] to use this function.
Sheet Insertion	Inserts a blank paper in the next page. Select [Sheet Insertion] to use this function.

Auto Image Rotation



Automatically rotates the image 90 degrees when the sizes of the original and the loaded paper matches but the orientations are different.

(Value: [Off] / [On])



- You can select whether to rotate the image automatically in the default settings.
 - → Auto Image Rotation (Copy) (page 8-35)
- When you have enabled this function, you can select how the images are rotated.
 - → Auto Image Rotation Action (page 8-35)

Negative Image



Inverts black and white portions of the image for printing.

(Value: [Off] / [On])



This function is only available for black and white copy mode.

Mirror Image



Copies the mirrored image of the original.

(Value: [Off] / [On])

Job Finish Notice



Advanced Setup







Sends E-mail notice when a job is complete.

It is also available that send a notice when a job is interrupted.

Users can be notified of the completion of a job while working at a remote desk, saving the time spent waiting beside the machine to finish.

NOTE

- PC should be configured in advance so that E-mail can be used.
 - Command Center RX (page 2-67)
- E-mail can be sent to a single destination.
- It will be possible to download the scan data in PC from the stored URL described in the text of the notice E-mail of Job Finish Notice for "Send to Folder (SMB/FTP)" or "Storing Documents to a Custom Box". This is a useful function in case if it is not possible to send/receive a large amount of scan data due to the restriction of the mail attachment file size.

Item		Description	
Off	Off		
Addr	ess Book	Select the notification destination from the address book.	
	Address Book	Select the notification destination on the address book screen, then select [OK].	
	[] (information icon)	Information on the selected destination can be viewed.	
	Notify when interrupted	Select [On] if you require an e-mail notification when a job is interrupted.	
Address Entry		Enter E-mail address directly. Select the entry field, enter the address (up to 256 characters) and select [OK].	
	Notify when interrupted	Select [On] if you require an e-mail notification when a job is interrupted.	

File Name Entry



Advanced Setup



Advanced Setup



Functions



Functions

Adds a file name.

Additional information such as job number and date and time can also be set. You can check a job history or job status using the file name, date and time, or job number specified here.

Enter the file name (up to 32 characters).

To add date and time, select [Date and Time]. To add job number, select [Job No.]. To add both, select [Job No.] & [Date and Time] or [Date and Time] & [Job No.].

Priority Override







Suspends the current job and gives a new job top priority.

The suspended job resumes after the other job is finished.

(Value: [Off] / [On])



- This function is not available if current job was an override.
- Priority override may not be available depending on the status of the current print job and memory usage. In this
 case, try the interrupt copy.
 - → Interrupt Copy (page 5-22)

Repeat Copy



Enables additional copies in the desired quantity as necessary after a copy job is completed.

For confidential documents, you can set up a password for the use of Repeat Copy. In such a case, the correct password must be entered to perform Repeat Copy.

To register a password, enter a 4-digit password.

⊘ IMPORTANT

- A Repeat Copy job is cleared when the power switch is turned off.
- If you forget the password, Repeat Copy cannot be performed for that document. Make a note of the password beforehand if necessary.

(Value: [Off] / [On])

Repeat Copy is not available when the Data Security Function is active.

When the maximum number of Repeat Copy jobs to retain in the document box is set to 0 (zero), this function cannot be used.

▶ Repeat Copy Job Retention (page 8-50)

You can select Repeat Copy as the default setting.

→ Repeat Copy (page 8-35)

Giving a file name to a copy job will facilitate identification of the data when copying.

→ File Name Entry (page 6-70)

Repeat Copy

The Repeat Copy jobs are stored in the Job Box. Refer to Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs to print out the Repeat Copy jobs.

Outputting Repeat Copy Jobs (page 5-70)

DP Read Action



When the document processor is used, select the scanning operation for the document processor.

Item Description		
Speed Priority	Gives priority to scanning speed.	
Quality Priority	Gives priority to image quality at a slightly slower scan speed.	

Detect Multi-fed Originals



Advanced Setup



Advanced Setup



Functions



Functions

When reading a document from the document processor, if the multiple feeding of documents is detected, then the reading stops automatically.

Item	Description	
On	In case of detecting that multiple sheets of original are fed at the same time, the message is displayed and stop scanning the original.	
Off	It does not detect.	



NOTE

Requires the optional Document Processor (Dual Scan with Skewed and Multifeed Detection).

Detect Stapled Originals



Advanced Setup



Advanced Setup



Functions



Functions

When reading a document from the document processor, if a stapled document is detected, then the reading stops automatically.

Item	Description	
On	In case of detecting that the original is stapled or the original is fed skewed, the message is displayed and stop scanning the original.	
Off	It does not detect.	



NOTE

Requires the optional Document Processor (Dual Scan with Skewed and Multifeed Detection).

Skip Blank Page



Advanced Setup



Advanced Setup



Functions



Functions

When there are blank pages in a scanned document, this function skips the blank pages and prints only pages that are not blank.

Blank pages can be set as pages that include ruled lines and a small number of characters.

The machine detects blank pages, saving unnecessary printing without the need to check for blank pages in the document.

Select [On] > [Detect Item to Skip], and select [Blank Pages + Ruled Lines], [Blank Pages Only] or [Blank Pages + Some Text].



The originals with punched holes or originals printed on a colored substrate may not be recognized as blank pages.

2-sided/Book Original



Org./Sending **Data Format**



Functions



Functions

Select the type and orientation of the binding based on the original.

Item		Value	Description
1-sided		_	"2-sided/Book Original" is not set.
2-sided	Binding	Left/Right, Top	Select the binding orientation of originals.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*1	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].
Book*2	Binding	Left, Right	Select the binding orientation of originals.
	Original Orientation	Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*1	Select the orientation of the original document top edge to scan correct direction. Select [Original Orientation] to choose orientation of the originals, either [Top Edge on Top] or [Top Edge on Left].

^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

^{*2 [}Top Edge on Top] is set for "Original Orientation".

Sample image

	Value	Image
2-sided	Binding Left/Right	
	Binding Top	
Book	Binding Left	
	Binding Right	

Sending Size



Org./Sending Data Format



Functions

Select size of image to be sent.

Select [Same as Original Size], [Metric], [Inch], or [Others] to select the sending size.

Item	Value	Description
Same as Original Size	_	Automatically sends the same size as the original.
Metric	A3, A4, A5, A6, B4, B5, B6, Folio, 216 × 340 mm	Select from the Metric series standard sizes.
Inch	Ledger, Letter, Legal, Statement, 11" × 15", Oficio II	Select from the Inch series standard sizes.
Others	8K, 16K, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufukuhagaki (Return postcard)	Select from special standard sizes.

Relationship between Original Size, Sending Size, and Zoom

Original Size, Sending Size, and Zoom are related to each other. For details, see the table below.

Original size and sending size are	the same	different
Original Size (page 6-19)	Specify as necessary.	Specify as necessary.
Sending Size	Select [Same as Original Size].	Select the desired size.
Zoom (page 6-39)	Select [100%] (or [Auto]).	Select [Auto].



NOTE

When you specify the sending size that is different from the original size, and select the zoom of [100%], you can send the image as the actual size (No Zoom).

Long Original



Org./Sending Data Format



Reads long-sized original documents using a document processor.

(Value: [Off] / [On])



- · Long originals are sent in black and white.
- Only a single side of a long original can be scanned. Originals of up to 1,900 mm / 74.8" long can be scanned.
- A resolution of 300 × 300 dpi or smaller can be selected.
- This cannot be set when Bates Stamp is set.

File Format



Org./Sending Data Format



Functions



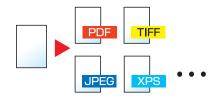
Functions

Specify the image file format. Image quality level can also be adjusted.

Select the file format from [PDF], [TIFF], [XPS], [JPEG], [OpenXPS], [High Comp. PDF], [Word], [Excel], and [PowerPoint].

When the color mode in scanning has been selected for Grayscale or Full Color, set the image quality.

If you selected [PDF] or [High Comp. PDF], you can specify encryption or PDF/A settings.



Item	Value	Color mode
PDF*1*2*3*4	1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black
TIFF	5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	and White), Full Color, Grayscale, Black and White
XPS		Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Full Color, Grayscale
JPEG		Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black
OpenXPS		and White), Full Color, Grayscale, Black and White
High Comp. PDF*1*2*3*4	Compression Ratio Priority,	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/
	Standard, Quality Priority	Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale
Word ^{*5}	1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Full Color,
Excel ^{*5}	5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	Grayscale
PowerPoint*5		

- *1 You can create Searchable PDF file by running OCR on the scanned document.
 - → OCR Text Recognition (Option) (page 6-76)
- *2 Set the PDF/A. (Value: [Off] / [PDF/A-1a] / [PDF/A-1b] / [PDF/A-2a] / [PDF/A-2b] / [PDF/A-2u]).
- *3 Set PDF encryption.
 - ▶ PDF Encryption Functions (page 6-77)
- *4 Set Digital Signature to File.
 - ▶ PDF Electronic Signature (page 6-80)
- *5 Word, Excel and PowerPoint will be saved in a Microsoft Office 2007 or later file format.
 - Scan to Office Function (page 6-79)

OCR Text Recognition (Option)

When [PDF], [High Comp. PDF], [Word], [Excel], or [PowerPoint] is selected for the file format, you can create Searchable file by running OCR on the scanned document. Select [OCR Text Recognition], and then [On], select the language of the document, and select [OK].

Item	Description	
Off	Do not create Searchable file.	
On	Create Searchable file. Select the language to extract from the languages that appear on the touch panel.	

NOTE

- This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.
 - Scan Extension Kit(A) "OCR Scan Activation Kit" (page 11-7)
- This function cannot be set when you send from the Custom Box.
- · If the proper language is not selected, file creation may take a long time or the creation may fail. The default language can be changed in System Menu.
 - ▶ Primary OCR Language^{*2} (page 8-37)
- If you do not set an original in the correct orientation, the text of the document may not be recognized as characters. In addition, it may take some time to create the file. Check the following:
 - The original orientation is correct.
- The accuracy of the text recognition depends on the original condition. The following condition may result in decreasing the recognition accuracy.
 - Repeatedly copied documents (as copied copy)
 - Received faxes (with low resolution)
 - Originals with the character space too narrow or wide
 - Originals with the lines on the text
 - Originals with the special fonts
 - Binding part of the book
 - A handwritten texts

PDF Encryption Functions

If you have selected PDF or High Comp. PDF for file format, you can restrict the access level for displaying, printing, and editing PDF's by assigning a secure password.

Select [PDF] or [High Comp. PDF] in [File Format], and select [Encryption].

Items that can be set vary depending on the setting selected in [Compatibility].

When [Acrobat 3.0 and later] is selected

	Item	Value	Description
	word to Open iment	Off, On	Enter the password to open the PDF file. Select [On], enter a password (up to 256 characters). Enter the password again for confirmation.
	word to Edit/Print ument	Off, On	Enter the password to edit the PDF file. Select [On], enter a password (up to 256 characters). Enter the password again for confirmation. When you have entered the password to edit/print document, you can specifically limit the operation.
	Printing Allowed	Not Allowed, Allowed	Restricts printing of the PDF file.
	Changes Allowed	Not Allowed	Disables the change to the PDF file.
		Commenting	Can only add commenting.
		Page Layout except extracting Pages	Can change the page layout except extracting the pages of the PDF file.
		Any except extracting Pages	Can conduct all operations except extracting the pages of the PDF file.
	Copying of Text/ Images/Others	Disable, Enable	Restricts the copying of text and objects on the PDF file.

When [Acrobat 5.0 and later] is selected

	Item	Value	Description
	word to Open iment	Off, On	Enter the password to open the PDF file. Select [On], enter a password (up to 256 characters). Enter the password again for confirmation.
	word to Edit/Print iment	Off, On	Enter the password to edit the PDF file. Select [On], enter a password (up to 256 characters). Enter the password again for confirmation. When you have entered the password to edit/print document, you can specifically limit the operation.
	Printing Allowed	Not Allowed	Disables the printing of PDF file.
		Allowed (Low Resolution only)	Can print the PDF file only in low resolution.
		Allowed	Can print the PDF file in original resolution.
	Changes Allowed	Not Allowed	Disables the change to the PDF file.
		Inserting/Deleting/Rotating Pages	Can only insert, delete, and rotate the pages of the PDF file.
		Commenting	Can only add commenting.
		Any except extracting Pages	Can conduct all operations except extracting the pages of the PDF file.
	Copying of Text/ Images/Others	Disable, Enable	Restricts the copying of text and objects on the PDF file.

Scan to Office Function

This machine provides the function which converts scanned documents including text, figures and pictures into searchable and editable Microsoft Office (Word, Excel and PowerPoint) 2007 or later data format, via OCR processing.



NOTE

- This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.
 - ➤ Scan Extension Kit(A) "OCR Scan Activation Kit" (page 11-7)
- The scanned result may not be realized perfectly according to condition of the documents.

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [Send] > [Org./Sending Data Format] > [File Format]

Configure the settings.

- 1 Select [Word], [Excel] or [PowerPoint] as a file format.
- 2 Select [OCR Text Recognition] > [On].



When you select [Off], the documents are converted into the Microsoft Office data (scanned image).

- 3 Select the language of the document which you wish to scan > [OK].
- 4 Select [OCR Output Format] and select an OCR output mode from the table below >

Item	Description
Text + Graphics	Converts the scanned documents into the editable and searchable Microsoft Office data format.
Text + Graphics with Scanned Image	Converts the scanned documents into two types of data: one is the editable and searchable Microsoft Office data format and the other one is the Microsoft Office data format with scanned image. You can edit text and layout of the editable data by referring the scanned image.
Scanned Image with Searchable Text	Converts the scanned documents into the searchable Microsoft Office data format (scanned image).

Press the [Start] key.

PDF Electronic Signature

If [PDF] or [High Comp. PDF] is selected as a file format, electronic signature can be added to the PDF to be sent. Electronic signature can certify a sender of document and prevent falsification. To use this function, it is required to register a signing certificate from Command Center RX or KYOCERA Net Viewer and enable digital signature to files from the system menu. In this manual, a procedure to register a signing certificate from Command Center RX is described as an example.

NOTE

- This function appears when [Specify Each Job] is selected for "Digital Signature to File" in the system menu.
 - → Digital Signature (page 8-39)
- This function can be configured when [OFF], [PDF/A-2a], [PDF/A-2b], or [PDF/A-2u] is selected in PDF/A.
- To register a signing certificate from KYOCERA Net Viewer, refer to the following.
 - KYOCERA Net Viewer User Guide

Access Command Center RX.

Accessing Command Center RX (page 2-68)

Register a signing certificate to be used in the electronic signature addition setting.

- 1 Click [Common/Job Default] in the [Function Settings] menu.
- 2 Click [Settings] from [File Default Settings] > [Signing Certificate] to create, import, or acquire a device certificate.
 - Command Center RX User Guide
- 3 Click [Restart/Reset] > [Restart Device] to restart the device.

3 Configure the digital signature settings.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Send/Store] > [Digital Signature to File]

NOTE

If user login administration is enabled, you can only change the settings by logging in with administrator privileges or as a user with privileges to configure this setting. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Configure the digital signature addition settings. Configurable items are as follows.

Item		Description
Digital Signature		ld a digital signature.
	Value:	
	Off:	Does not add a digital signature.
	Specify Each Job:	Whether to add a digital signature is selected each time of sending.
	On:	Always adds a digital signature when sending.
Digital Signature Format	· ·	used for encryption of digital signature. 256, SHA-384, SHA-512
	NOTE	
	This function is displ	layed when "Digital Signature" is set to or [On].
Password Confirmation on	Select whether to co	onfirm password when setting digital
Signature Permission	Value: On, Off	
	NOTE	
	This function is displ	layed when "Digital Signature" is set to
Password		uired for setting digital signature. Enter a ord 6 to 16 alphanumeric characters and
	NOTE	
	This function is displ	layed when "Password Confirmation on

Mavigate to display the screen.

[Home] key > [Send] > [Org./Sending Data Format] > [File Format]

5 Enable the function.

- 1 Select [PDF] or [High Comp. PDF] as a file format.
- 2 From "Digital Signature", select [On] > [OK] in order.

NOTE

If "Password Confirmation on Signature Permission" is set to [**On**], a password input screen appears. Enter a password set in the system menu.

Signature Permission" is set to [On].

▶ Password (page 8-39)

6 Press the [Start] key.

File Separation







Creates several files by dividing scanned original data page by specified number of pages, and sends the files.





NOTE

A three-digit serial number such as "abc_001.pdf, abc_002.pdf..." is attached to the end of the file name.

	Item	Value	Description
Off			
On			Set file separation. Use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to specify the number of pages, and then select [Next >].
	Attach File to E-mail	All Files in 1 E-mail, 1 file per E-mail	Select how to attach the files to the E-mail. Select [All files in 1 E-mail] to attach and send all files in a single E-mail. Select [1 file per E-mail] to attach and send 1 file per E-mail.

Scan Resolution





- Functions
- Color/Image Quality



Functions

Select fineness of scanning resolution.

(Value: [600 × 600dpi] / [400 × 400dpi Ultra fine] / [300 × 300dpi] / [200 × 400dpi Super fine] / [200 × 200dpi Fine] / [200 × 100dpi Normal])









NOTE

The larger the number, the better the image resolution. However, better resolution also means larger file sizes and longer send times.

Email Subject/Body

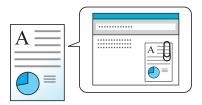


Advanced Setup



Adds subject and body when sending a document.

Select [Subject] / [Body] to enter the Email subject/body.





NOTE

- The subject can include up to 256 characters, and the body can include up to 500 characters.
- Select [Body 1], [Body 2], or [Body 3] to enter stored text for the body text. For details on registering templates, refer to the following:
 - → Email Subject/Body (page 8-37)

Send and Print



Advanced Setup

Prints a copy of the document being sent.

(Value: [Off] / [On])

Send and Store



Advanced Setup

Stores a copy of the document being sent in a Custom Box.

(Value: [Off] / [On])



NOTE

- When [On] is selected, select the Custom Box in which the copy is to be stored. If a password entry screen for the Custom Box appears, enter the password.
- You can view information on the selected Custom Box by selecting [___] (information icon).



FTP Encrypted TX



Advanced Setup



Encrypts images when sending via FTP.

Encryption secures the document transmission.

(Value: [Off] / [On])



NOTE

Click [Security Settings], and then [Network Security] in the Command Center RX. Be sure that "SSL" of Secure Protocol Settings is "On" and one or more effective encryption are selected in Client side settings.

Command Center RX User Guide

Email Encrypted TX



Advanced Setup



Functions

Sends encrypted E-mail using the electronic certificate.

Encryption secures the document transmission.

(Value: [Off] / [On])



NOTE

To use this function, configure the certificate, protocol and email function in the Command Center RX.

→ Configuring S/MIME settings in the Command Center RX (page 6-84)

Digital Signature Email



Advanced Setup



Functions

Add a digital signature to the email, using the electronic certificate.

By adding a digital signature to an email, you can confirm the identity of the destination and detect tampering during transmission.

(Value: [Off] / [On])



■ NOTE

To use this function, configure the certificate, protocol and email function in the Command Center RX.

Configuring S/MIME settings in the Command Center RX (page 6-84)

Configuring S/MIME settings in the Command Center RX

Access to the Command Center RX

Accessing Command Center RX (page 2-68)

Register the device certificate which is used for S/MIME.

- 1 From the [Security Settings] menu, click [Certificates].
- 2 Click [Settings] of [Device Certificate] (1 to 5) to create or import the device certificate.
 - Command Center RX User Guide
- 3 Click [Restart/Reset] and then [Restart Device] to restart the machine.

Configure the protocol settings

- 1 From the [Network Settings] menu, click [Protocol].
- 2 Set [SMTP (E-mail TX)] and [S/MIME] to [On] in Send Protocols.
- 3 Click [Submit].

Configure the E-mail function.

- 1 From the [Function Settings] menu, click [E-mail].
- 2 Configure the settings in "S/MIME" as necessary.
 - Command Center RX User Guide
- 3 Click [Submit].

5 Link the E-mail address with S/MIME certificates

- 1 From the [Address Book] menu, click [Machine Address Book].
- 2 Click the contact's [Number] or [Name] you want to edit.
- 3 Click [Settings] on "S/MIME Certificate".
- 4 Click [Import] on the required certificate to register it, and then click [Submit].
- 5 Click [OK].

File Size Confirmation



Advanced Setup



Functions

Checks the file size before sending the original.

To change the file size, change the settings of each function. When you select [**Recalculate**], the file size is recalculated.

(Value: [Off] / [On])

Delete after Printed



Functions

Automatically deletes a document from the box once printing is complete.

(Value: [Off] / [On])

Delete after Transmitted



Automatically deletes a document from the box once transmission is complete.

(Value: [Off] / [On])

Storing Size



Functions



Functions

Select size of image to be stored.

Select [Same as Original Size], [Metric], [Inch], or [Others] to select the storing size.

Item	Value	Description
Same as Original Size	_	Automatically sends the same size as the original.
Metric	A3, A4, A5, A6, B4, B5, B6, Folio, 216 × 340 mm	Select from the Metric series standard sizes.
Inch	Ledger, Letter, Legal, Statement, 11" × 15", Oficio II	Select from the Inch series standard sizes.
Others	8K, 16K, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufukuhagaki (Return postcard)	Select from special standard sizes.

Relationship between Original Size, Storing Size, and Zoom

Original Size, Storing Size, and Zoom are related to each other. For details, see the table below.

Original Size and the size you wish to store as are	the same	different
Original Size (page 6-19)	Specify as necessary.	Specify as necessary.
Storing Size	Select [Same as Original].	Select the desired size.
Zoom (page 6-39)	Select [100%] (or [Auto]).	Select [Auto].



NOTE

When you select Storing Size that is different from Original Size, and select the Zoom [100%], you can store the image as the actual size (No Zoom).

Encrypted PDF Password



Functions

Enter the preassigned password to print the PDF data.

Enter the Password, and select [OK].



For details on entering the password, refer to the following:

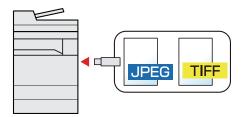
▶ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

JPEG/TIFF Print



Functions

Select the image size when printing JPEG or TIFF files.



Item	Description
Paper Size	Fits the image size to the selected paper size.
Image Resolution	Prints at resolution of the actual image.
Print Resolution Fits the image size to the print resolution.	

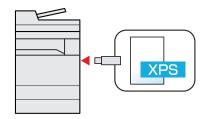
XPS Fit to Page



Functions

Reduces or enlarges the image size to fit to the selected paper size when printing XPS file.

(Value: [Off] / [On])



7 Status/Job Cancel

This chapter explains the following topics:

Checking Job Status	7-2
Details of the Status Screens	
Checking Detailed Information of Jobs	7-8
Checking Job History	7-9
Checking the Detailed Information of Histories	7-10
Sending the Log History	
Job Operation	
Pause and Resumption of Jobs	7-11
Canceling of Jobs	
Priority Override for Waiting Jobs	7-11
Reordering Print Jobs	7-12
Device Information	7-13
Checking the Remaining Amount of Toner and Paper (Supplies/Paper)	7-15

Checking Job Status

Check the status of jobs being processed or waiting to be printed.

Available Status Screens

The processing and waiting statuses of jobs are displayed as a list on the touch panel in four different screens - Printing Jobs, Sending Jobs, Storing Jobs, and Scheduled Jobs.

The following job statuses are available.

Status Display	Job status to be displayed
Print Job Status	• Copy
	Printer
	Printing from Document Box
	Fax reception
	iFax reception
	Email reception
	Printing data from USB Drive
	Application
	Job Report/List
Send Job Status	• Email
	Folder transmission
	Fax transmission
	iFax transmission
	Sending Job - Fax Server
	Application
	Multiple destination
Store Job Status	• Scan
	• Fax
	• iFax
	Printer
	Join Box Document
	Copy Box Document
Scheduled Job	Sending Job FAX using Delayed transmission

Displaying Status Screens

Display the screen.

Select the [Status/Job Cancel] key.

2 Select the job you want to check.

Select either of [Print Jobs], [Send Jobs], or [Store Jobs] to check the status.

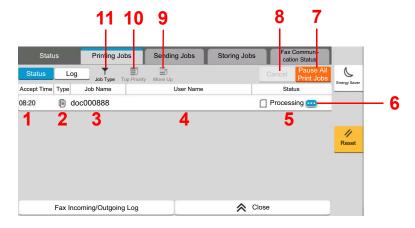
Select [Send Jobs] > [Scheduled Job] to check delayed transmission.

▶ Print Jobs Screen (page 7-3) Send Jobs screen (page 7-5) Store Jobs screen (page 7-6) Scheduled Job Screen (page 7-7)

Details of the Status Screens

- NOTE
- You can show the job statuses of all users, or only the statuses of your own jobs.
 - → Job Status/Job Logs Settings (page 8-51)
- This setting can also be changed from Command Center RX.
 - Command Center RX User Guide

Print Jobs Screen



No.	Item	Description
1	Accepted Time	Accepted Time of job
2	Туре	Icons that indicate the job type
		Copy job
		Printer job
		Job from Document Box
		■ Fax reception
		iFax reception
		Email reception
		Data from USB Drive
		Application
		Report/List
3	Job Name	Job Name or file name
4	User Name	User Name for the executed job
5	Status	Status of job
		InProcess: The status before starting to print.
		Printing: Printing
		Waiting: Print Waiting
		Pause: Pausing print job or error
		Canceling: Canceling the job

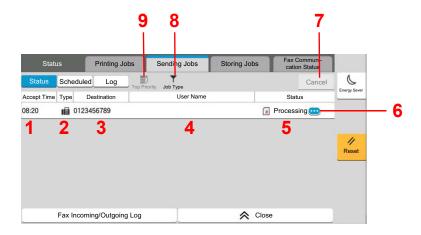
No.	Item	Description
6	[colling] (information icon)	Select the icon of the job whose detailed information you want to display.
		◆ Checking Detailed Information of Jobs (page 7-8)
		You can select [] (information icon) in "Copies" in the detailed information screen to change the number of copies that are printed.
7	[Pause All Print Jobs]	Pauses all the printing jobs. By pressing this key again, the printing jobs will be resumed.
8	[Cancel]	Select the job you want to cancel from the list, and select this key.
9	[Move Up]	In the list, select the job that you want to move up the job queue and select this key. Reordering Print Jobs (page 7-12)
10	[Top Priority]	Select the job to be overridden, and select this key.
		▶ Priority Override for Waiting Jobs (page 7-11)
11	[Job Type]	Only selected type of jobs is displayed.

NOTE

The job name and user name can be changed to other information if needed.

→ Status (page 8-51)

Send Jobs screen



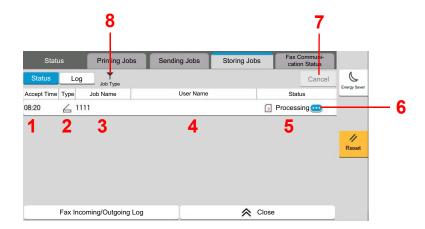
No.	Item	Description
1	Accepted Time	Accepted Time of job
2	Туре	Icons that indicate the job type
		Sending Job Email
		Sending Job Folder
		∎ Sending Job Fax
		Sending Job iFax
		Sending Job - Fax Server
		Sending Job Application
		Multi Sending
3	Destination	Destination (Either destination name, Fax number, Email address, or server name)
4	User Name	User Name for the executed job
5	Status	Status of job
		InProcess: The status before starting sending such as during scanning originals
		Sending: Sending
		Waiting: Waiting Sending
		Canceling: Canceling the job
		Pause: Pausing the job
6	[] (information icon)	Select the icon of the job whose detailed information you want to display.
		◆ Checking Detailed Information of Jobs (page 7-8)
7	[Cancel]	Select the job you want to cancel from the list, and select this key.
8	[Job Type]	Only selected type of jobs is displayed.
9	[TOP Priority]	Select the job to be overridden, and select this key. Only displayed when the optional fax kit is installed.



The address and user name can be changed to other information if needed.

Status (page 8-51)

Store Jobs screen



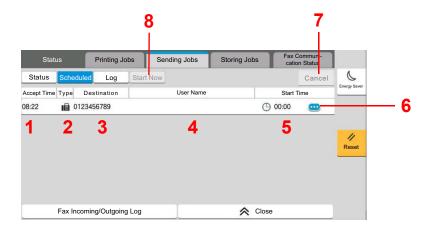
No.	Item	Description	
1	Accepted Time	Accepted Time of job	
2	Туре	Icons that indicate the job type	
		Storing Job Scan	
		■ Storing Job Fax	
		Storing Job iFax	
		Storing Job Printer	
		Join Box Document	
		Copy Box Document	
3	Job Name	Job name or file name is displayed.	
4	User Name	User Name for the executed job	
5	Status	Status of job	
		InProcess: The status before starting to save such as during scanning originals	
		Storing: Storing Data	
		Canceling: Canceling the job	
		Pause: Pausing the job	
6	[] (information icon)	Select the icon of the job whose detailed information you want to display.	
7	[Cancel]	Select the job you want to cancel from the list, and select this key.	
8	[Job Type]	Only selected type of jobs is displayed.	



The job name and user name can be changed to other information if needed.

→ Status (page 8-51)

Scheduled Job Screen



No.	Item	Description
1	Accepted Time	Accepted Time of job
2	Туре	Icons that indicate the job type
		Scheduling Job Fax
3	Destination	Destination (Either destination name, FAX number, or No. of broadcast items)
4	User Name	User Name for the executed job
5	Start Time	Time to start the scheduled job
6	[] (information icon)	Select the icon of the job whose detailed information you want to display. Checking Detailed Information of Jobs (page 7-8)
7	[Cancel]	Select the job you want to cancel from the list, and select this key.
8	[Start Now]	Select the job you want to send immediately from the list, and select this key.

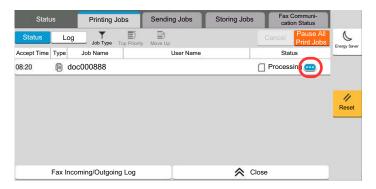
Checking Detailed Information of Jobs

Display the screen.

→ Details of the Status Screens (page 7-3)

Check the information.

1 Select [...] (information icon) for the job for which you wish to display detailed information.



Detailed information of the selected job is displayed.

In Sending Jobs, you can check the destination by selecting [...] (information icon) in "Result/ Destination". Select [...] (information icon) for the destination to display detailed information.

2 To exit from the detailed information, select [**Close**].

Checking Job History

NOTE

- Job history is also available by Command Center RX or KYOCERA Net Viewer from the computer.
 - Command Center RX User Guide
 - **▶** KYOCERA Net Viewer User Guide
- You can show the job log of all users, or only your own job log.
 - → Job Status/Job Logs Settings (page 8-51)
- This setting can also be changed from Command Center RX.
 - **→** Command Center RX User Guide

Available Job History Screens

The job histories are displayed separately in three screens - Printing Jobs, Sending Jobs, and Storing Jobs. The following job histories are available.

Screen	Job histories to be displayed
Print Job Log	• Copy
	Printer
	Printing from Document Box
	Fax reception
	iFax reception
	Email reception
	Printing data from USB Drive
	Application
	Job Report/List
Send Job Log	• Email
	• Folder
	• Fax
	• iFax
	Fax Server
	Application
	Multiple destination
Store Job Log	• Scan
	• Fax
	• iFax
	Printer
	Join Box Document
	Copy Box Document

Displaying Job History Screen

Display the screen.

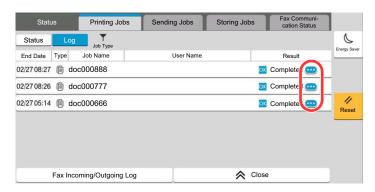
Select the [Status/Job Cancel] key.

Select the job to check details.

Select the [Log] tab, and select the job to check details from the list.

Checking the Detailed Information of Histories

- Display the screen.
 - → Displaying Job History Screen (page 7-10)
- Check the information.
 - 1 Select [...] (information icon) for the job you want to check.



Detailed information of the selected job is displayed.

2 To exit from the detailed information, select [Close].

Sending the Log History

You can send the log history by E-mail. You can either send it manually as needed or have it sent automatically whenever a set number of jobs is reached.

◆ Send Log History (page 8-28)

Job Operation

Pause and Resumption of Jobs

Pause/resume all printing jobs in printing/waiting.

Display the screen.

Select the [Status/Job Cancel] key.

Select [Pause All Print Jobs] on the printing jobs status screen.

Printing is paused.

When resuming the printing of jobs that have been paused, select [Resume All Print Jobs].

Canceling of Jobs

A job in printing/waiting status can be canceled.

Display the screen.

Select the [Status/Job Cancel] key.

- Select the job to be canceled from the list, and select [Cancel].
- 3 Select [Yes] in the confirmation screen.

Priority Override for Waiting Jobs

Priority Override function suspends the current job and prints the job in waiting first.

1 Display the screen.

Select the [Status/Job Cancel] key.

- Select the job to be given priority, and select [Top Priority].
- **3** Select [Print] in the confirmation screen.

The current job in printing is suspended, and the job for override.

Reordering Print Jobs

This function allows you to select a queued print job and raise its output priority.

Display the screen.

Select the [Status/Job Cancel] key.

- Select the job to be assigned a higher priority and select [Move Up].
- Select [Yes] in the confirmation screen.

The priority of the selected job is increased by 1.

To further raise the job's priority, select [Move Up] again. Each time you select [Move Up], the priority increases by 1.

Device Information

Configure the devices/lines installed or connected to this machine or check their status.

Display the screen.

- 1 Select the [Home] key.
- 2 Select [Device Information].

The screen to check the status or configure the devices is displayed.

Check the Information.

The items you can check are described below.

Identification/Wired Network

You can check ID information such as the model name, serial number, host name and location, and the IP address of the wired network.

Wi-Fi

You can check the status of Wi-Fi connection, such as the device name, network name and IP address.



Displayed when the optional Wireless Network Interface Kit is installed.

Supplies/Paper

You can check the remaining amount of toner, and paper.

Checking the Remaining Amount of Toner and Paper (Supplies/Paper) (page 7-15)

Fax

You can check the local fax number, local fax name, local fax ID and other fax information.

FAX Operation Guide



NOTE

Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

USB/NFC/Bluetooth

You can check the connection status of USB drive, NFC (Near Field Communication) and Bluetooth keyboard.

Select [Format] for "USB Drive" to format external media.



◯ IMPORTANT

When [Format] is selected, all data in the USB drive is erased.

- Select [Remove] for "USB Drive" to safely remove the external media.
- Select "Bluetooth" [Connect] to set the Bluetooth keyboard connection.

Option/Application

You can check information on the options and applications that are used.

Capability/Software Version

You can check the software version and performance.

Security

You can check the security information on the machine.

Report

You can print various reports and lists.

Remote Operation Status

You can check the situation of remote operation.

Checking the Remaining Amount of Toner and Paper (Supplies/Paper)

Check the remaining amount of toner, and paper on the touch panel.

Display the screen.

- 1 Select the [Home] key.
- 2 Select [Device Information].
- 3 Select [Supplies/Paper].

Check the Information.

The items you can check are described below.

Toner Information

The amount of toner remaining is shown in levels. And you can check the status of waste toner box.

Paper Status

You can check the size, orientation, type, and remaining amount of paper in each paper source. The amount of paper remaining is shown in levels.

Others

You can check the status of staples and punch waste box.

8 Setup and Registration (System Menu)

This chapter explains the following topics:

System Menu	8-2
Operation Method	
System Menu Settings	
Device Settings	
Notification/Report	
Function Settings	8-33
Network Settings	
Security Settings	
Job Accounting/Authentication	8-83
Add/Delete Application	8-83
Adjustment/Maintenance	

System Menu

Configure settings related to overall machine operation.

Operation Method

System Menu is operated as follows:

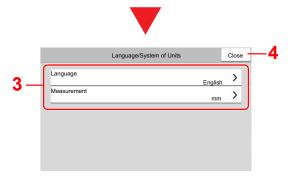
Display the screen.

Select the [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu].

Select a function.



- Displays the System Menu items. Items that are not displayed can be displayed by swiping the screen up and down.
- 2 Returns to the previous screen.
- 3 Displays setting items. Select the key of a function to display the setting screen.
- 4 Returns to the previous screen.



3 Configure the function.



- Returns to the previous screen without making any changes.
- 2 Enter a setting by selecting it and return to the previous screen.
- 3 Accepts the settings and exits.

NOTE

• If user login administration is enabled, you can only change the settings by logging in with administrator privileges or as a user with privileges to configure this setting. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

 If function default settings have been changed, the [Reset] key can be selected in each function screen to immediately change the settings.

Refer to System Menu Settings on the following page and configure as needed.

System Menu Settings

This section explains the functions that can be configured in System Menu. To configure the settings, select the item in System Menu and select the setting item. For details on each function, see the table below.

	Item	Description	Reference Page
Quic	k Setup Wizard	The Quick Setup Wizard configures Fax, Energy Saver, Network, E-mail and Security Setup.	2-48
Devi	ce Settings	Configure overall machine operation.	8-6
	Language/System of Units	Set the language to use for the touch panel display, and select inch or metric for the unit for paper dimensions.	8-6
	Keyboard	Change the layout of the touch panel keyboard used to enter characters.	8-6
	Numeric Keypad	Select whether or not to display the numeric keypad.	8-6
	Date/Time	Configures settings related to the date and time.	8-6
	Energy Saver/Timer	Configure the Energy Saver settings.	8-7
	Display Settings	Configure the touch panel display settings.	8-10
	Sound	Set options for buzzer sound during the machine operations.	8-11
	Original/Scan Settings	Configure settings for originals.	8-11
	Paper Feeding	Configure the paper and paper source settings.	8-13
	Paper Output	Configure settings for paper output.	8-20
	Function Key Assignment	Assign a function to each function key.	8-21
	Operation Assist	It is possible to configure the settings for the Orientation Selection screen display and the Preset Limit on the number of copies that can be made at one time.	8-21
	Error Handling	Select whether to cancel or continue the job when error has occurred.	8-22
	Toner Settings	Configure the toner settings.	8-24
Notif	ication/Report	Print reports to check the machine settings, status, and history. Settings for printing reports can also be configured.	8-25
	Printing Report/List	Print various reports and lists.	8-25
	Result Report Setting	Configure settings for notices for sending and receiving.	8-26
	Device Status Notification	Configure settings for toner notices.	8-27
	Message Board Settings	Configure settings for message board.	8-27
	Fax Communication Report	Configure settings for FAX notices.	8-28
	History Settings	Configure settings for printing the history of the machine use.	8-28

Function Settings	Configures settings for copying, sending and Document Box functions.	8-33
Function Defaults	Defaults are the values automatically set after the warm-up is completed or the [Reset] key is selected. Set the defaults for available settings such as copying and sending. Setting the frequently-used values as defaults makes	8-33
	subsequent jobs easier.	
Copy/Print	Configures settings for copying and printing functions.	8-38
Send/Store	Configures settings for sending and storing functions.	8-38
Email	Configure settings for email transmission and receipt.	8-40
Sending Job - Fold	er Configures settings for Sending Job Folder functions.	8-40
Fax/iFax	Configures settings for fax functions.	_
	→ FAX Operation Guide	
WSD	Configure settings for WSD Scan and WSD Print.	8-41
DSM Scan	Configure settings for DSM Scan.	8-41
Address Book	Configures Address Book settings.	8-41
One-Touch Key	Configures One Touch Key settings.	8-42
Send and Forward	Select whether to forward the original to another destination when sending images.	8-42
RX/Forward Rules/ Box	Configures settings for RX/Forward rules and Fax Box.	8-46
Printer	Printing from computers, settings are generally made on the application software screen. However, the following settings are available for configuring the defaults to customize the machine.	8-47
Document Box	Configure settings for Custom Box.	8-49
Job Box	Configure settings for Job Box.	8-50
Fax Memory RX Bo	Set whether to perform Print Immediately for the fax documents received or to save them in the Fax Memory RX Box.	_
	→ FAX Operation Guide	
Home	Configure settings for Home screen.	8-50
Status	Configure settings for Status.	8-51
Internet Browser	Configure settings related to the Internet.	8-51
Manual Staple	Select whether to use Manual Staple.	8-52
Remote Services	Configures remote services settings.	8-52
Network Settings	Configures network settings.	8-53

Item		Description	Reference Page
	Network Settings	Configure the wired network and Wi-Fi settings.	8-53
	Optional Network	Configure settings for the optional Network Interface Kit or Wireless Network Interface Kit.	8-66
	Connectivity	Configure the Connectivity settings of this machine to other devices.	8-69
	Others	Configure other network related settings.	8-70
Secu	rity Settings	Configures security settings.	8-70
	Security Quick Setup	The Security Level setting is primarily a menu option used by service personnel for maintenance work. There is no need for customers to use this menu.	8-70
	Interface Block Setting	This allows you to protect this machine by blocking the interface with external devices such as USB hosts or optional interfaces.	8-71
	Device Security Settings	Configures the device security settings.	8-72
	System Stamp	Configure settings for header, footer, and stamp.	8-77
	Authentication Security	Configure security settings for User Authentication.	8-82
	Unknown User Settings	This specifies the behavior for handling the jobs sent with unknown or unsent login user names or User ID.	8-83
	Network	Configure security settings on the network.	8-83
Job A	Accounting/Authentication	Configures settings related to machine management. User Login:	8-83
		◆ Overview of User Login Administration (page 9-2)	
		Job Accounting:	
		Overview of Job Accounting (page 9-32)	
Add/	Delete Application	Configure settings for Application.	8-83
	Application	Configure settings for applications that help you perform your daily more efficiently such as a scan feature and an authentication feature.	5-14
	Optional Function	You can use the optional applications installed on this machine.	11-8
Adju	stment/Maintenance	Adjust printing quality and conduct machine maintenance.	8-84
	Image Adjustment	Perform Image Adjustment.	8-84
	Behavior Adjustment	Perform Behavior Adjustment for the machine.	8-86
	Others	Adjust Others.	8-86

Device Settings

Configures overall machine operation.

Language/System of Units

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Language/System of Units]

Item	Description
Language	Set the language to use for the touch panel display.
Measurement	Select inch or metric for the unit for paper dimensions. Value: mm, inch

Keyboard

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Keyboard]

Item	Description
Keyboard Layout	Change the layout of the touch panel keyboard used to enter characters. Value: QWERTY, QWERTZ, AZERTY
Optional Keyboard Type	Select the type of optional keyboard that you want to use. Value: US-English, US-English with Euro, French, German, UK-English

Numeric Keypad

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Numeric Keypad]

	Item	Description
Default Display	Copy/Print from Box HyPAS Application	Select whether or not to display the numeric keypad. Value: Off, On
Layout (H	yPAS Application)	Select the HyPAS numeric keypad layout to display upon startup. Value: Floating, Horizontal, On the Right

Date/Time

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Date/Time]

Item	Description
Date and Time	Set the date and time for the location where you use the machine. If you perform Send as Email, the date and time set here will be displayed on the header.
	Value: Year (2000 to 2035), Month (1 to 12), Day (1 to 31), Hour (0 to 23), Minute (0 to 59), Second (0 to 59)
	NOTE If you change the date/time while using the trial version of an application, you will no longer be able to use the application.

Item	Description
Date Format	Select the display format of year, month, and date. The year is displayed in Western notation. Value: MM/DD/YYYY, DD/MM/YYYY, YYYY/MM/DD
Time Zone	Set the time difference from GMT. Choose the nearest listed location from the list. If you select a region that utilizes summer time, configure settings for summer time. Setting Date and Time (page 2-32)

Energy Saver/Timer

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Energy Saver/Timer]

Item	Description
Auto Panel Reset	If no jobs are run for a certain period of time, automatically reset settings and return to the default setting. Select to use Auto Panel Reset or not. Value: Off, On
	NOTE
	For setting the time until the panel is automatically reset, refer to the following:
	→ Panel Reset Timer (page 8-7)
Panel Reset Timer	If you select [On] for Auto Panel Reset, set the amount of time to wait before Auto Panel Reset.
	Value: 5 to 495 seconds (in 5 second increments)
	NOTE
	This function is displayed when [Auto Panel Reset] is set to [On].
Low Power Timer	Set amount of time before entering the Low Power mode.
	Value: 1 to 120 minutes (1 minute increments)
	► Low Power Mode (page 2-45)
Sleep Timer	Set amount of time before entering Sleep.
	Value: 1 to 120 minutes (10 minutes increments)
Sleep Rules (models for Europe)*1	Select whether to use the Sleep mode for the following functions individually: • ID Card Reader*2 • Application Value: Off, On
	NOTE If the sleep condition is not turned off, the ID card cannot be recognized.

Item		Description
Sleep for E	o Level (models except urope) ^{*1}	Select the sleep level. Set the Energy Saver mode to reduce power consumption even more than normal Sleep mode. Value: Quick Recovery, Energy Saver
	Sleep Rules	Select whether to use the Energy Saver mode for the following functions individually: • ID Card Reader*2 • Application Value: Off, On NOTE
		When the machine has entered sleep mode with Energy Saver setting, the ID card cannot be recognized.
Weel	kly Timer Settings	Configure settings for switching the machine into Sleep mode and waking it automatically at a specified time for each day of the week.
	Weekly Timer	Select whether to use Weekly Timer. Value: Off, On
	Schedule	Specify the time for each day of the week at which the machine enters Sleep mode and recovers.
	Retry	Set the number of retry to switch the machine into Sleep mode. Value: Limited Retries, Unlimited Retries NOTE If [Limited Retries] is selected, set the number of retry. The setting range is 0 to 10. If [Unlimited Retries] is selected, retry is performed until the machine enters Sleep mode.
	Retry Interval	Set the retry interval. Use [-] / [+] to enter a number. Value: 10 to 60 seconds (increments of 10 seconds)
	er Off Timer (models urope)	Select whether to turn off the power automatically after a period of inactivity. Value: 1 hour, 2 hours, 3 hours, 4 hours, 5 hours, 6 hours, 9 hours, 12 hours, 1 day, 2 days, 3 days, 4 days, 5 days, 6 days, 1 week

Item	Description	
Power Off Rule (models for Europe)	Select whether or not the machine enters Power Off mode for the following function. Select [On] to set the Power Off mode. Network Fax USB Cable USB Host Application NIC Remote Diagnostics Value: Off, On	
	 NOTE Even when any of the functions is set to [On], if either [Fax] or [NIC] is set to [Off], the machine does not enter Power Off Mode. Even when [Network] or [USB Cable] is set to [Off], if the machine does not communicate with the other devices, the machine will enter Power Off Mode. [Fax] is Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed. [NIC] is displayed when the optional Network Interface Kit or Wireless Network Interface Kit is installed. 	
Motion Sensor	Automatically wake up from low power mode or sleep mode when someone approaches the device. Value: Off, 1 (Low), 2, 3 (High)	
Energy Saver Recovery Level	Select the method of recovery from energy saver. Value: Full Recovery: This mode enables the use of all functions immediately. However, this mode saves less energy. Normal Recovery: In this mode, you can select the method from the following: enabling the use of all functions immediately or enabling the use of desired functions only. If you want to use all functions immediately, select the [Energy Saver] key to execute recovery.	
Interrupt Clear Timer	Set the period after which the machine reverts to Normal mode when it has been set to Interrupt Copy mode and then left unused. Value: 5 to 495 seconds (in 5 second increments)	
Ping Timeout	Set the time until timeout occurs when [Ping] is executed in "System/Network". Value: 1 to 30 seconds (in 1 second increments)	

^{*1} This function will not be displayed when the optional Network Interface Kit or Fiery controller is installed.
*2 Displayed when the optional Card Authentication Kit is activated.

Display Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Display Settings]

Item	Description
Display Brightness	Set the brightness of the touch panel.
	Value: 1 (Darker), 2, 3, 4, 5 (Lighter)
Default Screen	Select the screen appearing right after start-up (default screen).
	Value: Home, Copy, Send, Fax*1, Status, Custom Box, Job Box, USB Drive, Fax Box*1, Favorite, Home (Accessibility), Accessibility Copy, Accessibility Send, Accessibility Fax*1, Internet Browser, Application Name*2
Wallpaper	→ Editing the Home Screen (page 2-16)
Show Power Off Message	Set the mode whether display a confirmation message in power supply off. Value: Off, On
Quick Setup Registration (Copy)	Select the functions to be registered for Quick Setup. Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary.
	Six items in the following options are available.
	Value: Off, Paper Selection, Zoom, Staple/Punch*3, Density, Duplex, Combine, Collate/Offset,
	Original Image, Original Size, Original Orientation, Color Selection, Continuous Scan, Background Density Adj
Quick Setup Registration (Send)	Select the functions to be registered for Quick Setup. Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary.
	Six items in the following options are available.
	Value: Off, Original Size, 2-sided/Book Original, Sending Size, Original Orientation, File Format, Density, Original Image, Scan Resolution, Fax TX Resolution ^{*1} , Color Selection, Zoom, Continuous Scan, Background Density Adj
Quick Setup Registration (Fax)	→ FAX Operation Guide
Quick Setup Registration (Storing	Select the functions to be registered for Quick Setup. Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary.
in Box)	Six items in the following options are available.
	Value: Off, Color Selection, Storing Size, Density, 2-sided/Book Original, Scan Resolution, Zoom, Original Orientation, Original Size, Original Image, Continuous Scan, Background Density Adj
Quick Setup Registration (Box	Select the functions to be registered for Quick Setup. Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary.
Print)	Six items in the following options are available.
	Value: Off, Paper Selection, Collate/Offset, Staple/Punch*3, Duplex, Combine, Delete after Printed, Color Selection
Quick Setup Registration	Select the functions to be registered for Quick Setup. Six keys of the Quick Setup screen are allocated to typical functions but can be changed as necessary.
(Sending from Box)	Six items in the following options are available.
	Value: Off, Sending Size, Fax TX Resolution*1, File Format, Delete after Transmitted, Color Selection

^{*1} Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

^{*2} The running application will be displayed.

[→] Application (page 5-14)

^{*3} Displayed when the optional Document Finisher is installed. When a punching unit is not installed, this item name is "Staple".

Sound

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Sound]

	Item	Description
Buzz	er	Set options for buzzer sound during the machine operations.
	Tone	Set the tone of the buzzer.
		Value: Sound1, Beep
	Volume	Set the buzzer volume level.
		Value: 0 (Mute), 1 (Minimum), 2, 3 (Medium), 4, 5 (Maximum)
	Key Confirmation	Emit a sound when the operation panel and touch panel keys are selected.
		Value: Off, On
	Job Finish	Emit a sound when a print job is normally completed.
		Value: Off, On, FAX Reception Only*1
	Ready	Emit a sound when the warm-up is completed.
		Value: Off, On
	Warning	Emit a sound when errors occur.
		Value: Off, On
	Optional Keyboard	Emit a sound to confirm key presses with a sound.
		Value: Off, On
Fax S	Speaker Volume ^{*1}	→ FAX Operation Guide
Fax I	Monitor Volume ^{*1}	

^{*1} Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Original/Scan Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Original/Scan Settings]

	Item	Description
Auto	Detect Original Size	Select whether to automatically detect originals of special or non-standard size.
System of Units Select [Metric] when automatically detecting the originals in centiment [Inch] when detecting the originals in inch sizes. Value: Metric, Inch		
automatic detection. Value: A6, Hagaki NOTE		Value: A6, Hagaki
	Folio*1	Select whether to enable automatic detection of Folio. Value: Off, On
	11×15"*1	Select whether to enable automatic detection of 11×15" size. Value: Off, On
	Legal/Oficio II/ 216×340 mm ^{*2}	Set the original sizes for the device to detect automatically. Value: Legal, Oficio II, 216×340 mm

Item Description				
Custom Original Size	Set up frequently-used custom original size.			
	The custom size option is displayed on the screen to select original size.			
	Select [On] for "Custom 1 (to 4)" and enter the desired size.			
	Value			
	Metric			
	X: 50 to 432 mm (in 1 mm increments) Y: 50 to 297 mm (in 1 mm increments)			
	Inch			
	X: 2.00 to 17.00" (in 0.01" increments) Y: 2.00 to 11.69" (in 0.01" increments)			
	X=Length, Y=Width Vertical Horizontal			
	X			
Prevent Light Reflection Prevent light reflection when using the Erase Shadowed Areas feature. Value: Off, On				
Prevent Original Skewing When scanning the originals from the Document Processor, select [On] to				
Same Width Originals	them from skewing. Value: Off, On			
Different Width	NOTE			
Originals	Requires the optional Document Processor (Dual Scan with Skewed and Multifeed Detection).			

^{*1} This function is displayed when "System of Units" is set to [Metric].*2 This function is displayed when "System of Units" is set to [Inch].

Paper Feeding

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Paper Feeding]

Configure the paper and paper source settings.

Cassette 1 (to 5) Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Paper Feeding] > [Cassette 1 (to 5) Settings]



[Cassette 3] to [Cassette 5] are displayed when the following optional paper feeder is installed.

[Cassette 3]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) or large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2) is installed.

[Cassette 4]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) or large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2) is installed.

[Cassette 5]: When a side feeder (3,000-sheet) is installed.

Item	Select paper size. Paper size is automatically detected and selected when [Auto (Metric)] or [Auto (Inch)] is selected. Value: Auto (Metric), Auto (Inch), A3*2*3, A4*3, A4*R*3, A5*3, A5*R*3, A6*3, B4*2*3, B5*3, B5*3, Folio*3, 216*340mm, SRA3*2*3, Ledger, Letter, Letter-R, Legal, Statement, 12*18**, Executive, Oficio II, 8K*2, 16K, 16K-R, ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4*2, Hagaki*3, Oufukuhagaki, Kakugata 2*2, Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Nagagata 3, Size Entry If you selected [Size Entry], enter the paper size. Value Cassette1 Metric X: 148 to 356 mm (in 1 mm increments) Y: 98 to 297 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch X: 5.83 to 14.02** (in 0.01** increments) Y: 3.86 to 12.60** (in 0.01** increments) Inch X: 148 to 457 mm (in 1mm increments) Y: 98 to 320 mm (in 1mm increments) Y: 98 to 320 mm (in 1 mm increments) Y: 3.86 to 12.60** (in 0.01** increments) Y: 3.86 to 12.60** (in 0.01** increments) Y: 3.86 to 12.60** (in 0.01** increments) X: 5.83 to 18.00** (in 0.01** increments) Y: 3.86 to 12.60** (in 0.01** increments) Y: 3.86 to 12.60** (in 0.01** increments) X=Length, Y=Width	
Paper Size*1		
Media Type ^{*4}	Select the media type. Value: Plain (60 - 105 g/m²), Rough, Vellum (60 - 105 g/m²), Recycled, Preprinted*5, Hagaki (Cardstock)*6, Bond, Color, Prepunched*5, Letterhead*5, Envelope*6, Thick (60 - 220 g/m²), High Quality, Custom 1 - 8	

- *1 When the optional Large Capacity Feeder (1,500-sheet×2) or Side Feeder (3,000-sheet) is used, paper size does not appear.
- *2 Not displayed in Cassette 1.
- *3 Paper size automatically detected in the cassette.
- *4 To change to a media type other than "Plain".
 - Media Type Setting (page 8-17)

When a paper weight that cannot be loaded in the cassette is set for a media type, that media type does not appear.

- *5 To print on preprinted or prepunched paper or on letterhead.
 - ◆ Special Paper Action (page 8-19)
- *6 Not displayed in the optional Large Capacity Feeder (1,500-sheet×2) or Side Feeder (3,000-sheet).

MP Tray Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Paper Feeding] > [MP Tray Settings]

Item	Description		
Paper Size	Select paper size. Paper size is automatically detected and selected when [Auto (Metric)] or [Auto (Inch)] is selected.		
	Value: Auto (Metric), Auto (Inch), A3*1, A4*1, A4-R*1, A5*1, A5-R, A6*1, B4*1, B5*1, B5-R*1, B6*1, Folio*1, 216×340mm, SRA3*1, Ledger, Letter, Letter-R, Legal, Statement, 12×18", Executive, Oficio II, 8K, 16K, 16K-R, ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Hagaki*1, Oufukuhagaki, Kakugata 2, Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Younaga 3, Nagagata 3, Nagagata 4, Size Entry		
	If you selected [Size Entry], enter the paper size.		
	Value		
	Metric		
	X: 148 to 457 mm (in 1 mm increments) Y: 98 to 320 mm (in 1 mm increments)		
	Inch		
	X: 5.83 to 18.00" (in 0.01" increments) Y: 3.86 to 12.60" (in 0.01" increments)		
	X=Length, Y=Width		
	Vertical Horizontal		
	X		
Media Type ^{*2}	Select the media type.		
	Value: Plain, Transparency, Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted*3, Bond, Cardstock, Color, Prepunched*3, Letterhead*3, Envelope, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Index Tab Dividers, Custom 1 - 8		

- *1 Paper size automatically detected in the cassette.
- *2 To change to a media type other than "Plain".
 - → Media Type Setting (page 8-17)
- *3 To print on preprinted or prepunched paper or on letterhead.
 - Special Paper Action (page 8-19)



If the optional FAX Kit is installed, the available media types for printing received faxes are as shown below. Plain, Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Bond, Cardstock, Color, Envelope, Thick, Coated, High Quality and Custom1-8

Inserter Tray 1 (2)

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Paper Feeding] > [Inserter Tray 1 (2)]



NOTE

[Inserter Tray 1 (2)] is displayed when the optional inserter is installed.

Item	Description	
Paper Size	Select the paper size. When [Auto (A/B)] or [Auto (Inch)] is selected, the paper size is automatically detected and selected. Value: Auto (Metric), Auto (Inch), A3*1, A4*1, A4-R*1, A5-R*1, A6, B4*1, B5*1, B5-R*1, Folio*1, SRA3*1, Ledger, Letter, Letter-R, Legal, Statement, 12×18", Executive, Oficio II, 8K, 16K, 16K-R, ISO B5, Size Entry If you selected [Size Entry], enter the paper size. Value Metric X: 210 to 457 mm (in 1 mm increments) Y: 148 to 320 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch X: 8.27 to 18.00" (in 0.01" increments) Y: 5.83 to 12.60" (in 0.01" increments) X=Length, Y=Width Horizontal	
Media Type ^{*2}	Vertical Horizontal X Y Select the media type.	
	Value: Plain, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted*3, Bond, Color, Prepunched*3, Letterhead*3, Thick, High Quality, Custom 1 - 8	

^{*1} Paper size that can be automatically detected by the inserter tray.

^{*2} To change to a media type other than "Plain".

[→] Media Type Setting (page 8-17)

^{*3} To print on preprinted or prepunched paper or on letterhead.

[→] Special Paper Action (page 8-19)

Custom Paper Settings

 $[\textbf{Home}] \ \text{key} > [...] > [\textbf{System Menu}] > [\textbf{Device Settings}] > [\textbf{Paper Feeding}] > [\textbf{Custom Paper Settings}]$

Item		Description
Custom Paper Settings	Set up frequently-used custom paper size.	
	The custom size option is displayed on the screen to select paper size in the multipurpose tray.	
	To register a custom paper size, selecustom paper sizes can be added.	ect [On] and enter the desired size. Up to four
	Select [Next >] to set the media type	e for each custom paper.
	Value	
	Metric	
	X: 148 to 457 mm (in 1 mm increments) Y: 98 to 320 mm (in 1 mm increments)	
	Inch	
	X: 5.83 to 18.00" (in 0.01" increments) Y: 3.86 to 12.60" (in 0.01" increments)	
	X=Length, Y=Width	
	Vertical	Horizontal
	X	<u>X</u>
	Y	Y
		Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted, ned, Letterhead, Thick, Envelope, Coated, Custom 1-8

Media Type Setting

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Paper Feeding] > [Media Type Setting]

Select weight for each media type.

The following media type and paper weight combinations are available.

Paper Weight	Weight (g/m²)	Paper Weight	Weight (g/m²)
Light	52 g/m² to 59 g/m²	Heavy 2 ^{*1}	136 g/m² to 163 g/m²
Normal 1	60 g/m² to 74 g/m²	Heavy 3 ^{*1}	164 g/m² to 220 g/m²
Normal 2	75 g/m² to 90 g/m²	Heavy 4 ^{*1}	221 g/m² to 256 g/m²
Normal 3	91 g/m² to 105 g/m²	Heavy 5 ^{*1}	257 g/m² to 300 g/m²
Heavy 1 ^{*1}	106 g/m² to 135 g/m²	Extra Heavy ^{*1}	Transparencies

^{*1} The processing speed will be slower than normal.

Each media type's default weight is indicated.

Media Type	Default	Media Type	Default
Plain	Normal 2	Prepunched	Normal 2
Rough	Normal 3	Letterhead	Normal 2
Vellum	Heavy 1	Envelope	Heavy 3
Labels	Heavy 2	Thick	Heavy 3
Recycled	Normal 2	High Quality	Normal 2
Preprinted	Normal 2	Coated	Heavy 1
Bond	Normal 3	Index Tab Dividers	Heavy 4
Cardstock	Heavy 4	Custom 1 - 8	Normal 2
Color	Normal 3		

For Custom 1-8, settings for duplex printing and media type name can be changed.

Item		Description	
Duplex Print Permit		Duplex printing allowed.	
Prohibit Duplex printing not allowed.		Duplex printing not allowed.	
Name		Change names for Custom 1-8. Names should be not more than 16 characters. Selecting media type at multipurpose tray, the name after change will be displayed. Character Entry Method (page 11-10)	

Show Paper Setup Message

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Paper Feeding] > [Show Paper Setup Message]

Item		Description
Show Paper Setup Message		Set whether to display the confirmation screen for the paper setting when a new paper is set for each cassette.
	Cassette 1 to 5	Value: Off, On
	Multipurpose Tray	NOTE
	Inserter Tray 1 (2)	[Cassette 3] to [Cassette 5] and [Inserter Tray 1 (2)] are displayed when the following optional paper feeder is installed.
		[Cassette 3]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) or large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2) is installed.
		[Cassette 4]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) or large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2) is installed.
		[Cassette 5]: When a side feeder (3,000-sheet) is installed.
		[Inserter Tray 1]:Inserter
		[Inserter Tray 2]:Inserter

Paper Feed Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Paper Feeding] > [Paper Feed Settings]

Item		Description
Default Paper Source		Select the default paper source. Value: Cassette 1 (to 5), MP Tray
		NOTE [Cassette 3] to [Cassette 5] are displayed when the following optional paper feeder is installed. [Cassette 3]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) or large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2) is installed. [Cassette 4]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) or large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2) is installed. [Cassette 5]: When a side feeder (3,000-sheet) is installed.
	Auto Switch	When the optional large capacity feeder is selected, the cassette can be switched to another large capacity feeder depending on your usage. Value: Off, On
Papei	Selection	Set the default paper selection. Value: Auto, Default Paper Source
Auto Paper Selection		If [Auto] is selected for Paper Selection, set the paper size selection method when the zoom changes. Value Most Suitable Size: Selects paper size based on the current zoom and the size of the original. Same as Original Size: Selects paper that matches the size of the original,
Media for Auto (B & W)		regardless the zoom. Select a default media type for auto paper selection when [Auto] is selected of Paper Selection. If [Plain] is selected, the paper source with plain paper loaded in the specific size is selected. Select [All Media Types] for the paper source with any kind of paper loaded in the specific size. Value: All Media Types, Plain, Transparency, Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Envelope, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Index Tab Dividers, Custom 1 to 8

Item	Description	
Paper Source for Cover	Select the paper source in which the cover paper used for the Cover function is	
Paper Source for Front Cover	placed. Value: Cassette 1 (to 5), MP Tray, Inserter Tray 1 (2)	
Paper Source for	NOTE	
Back Cover	[Cassette 3] to [Cassette 5] and [Inserter Tray 1 (2)] are displayed when the following optional paper feeder is installed.	
	[Cassette 3]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) or large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2) is installed.	
	[Cassette 4]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) or large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2) is installed.	
	[Cassette 5]: When a side feeder (3,000-sheet) is installed.	
	[Inserter Tray 1]:Inserter	
	[Inserter Tray 2]:Inserter	
Separator Paper Source	Select the default paper source for separator sheets.	
	Value: Cassette 1 (to 5), MP Tray, Inserter Tray 1 (2)	
	NOTE	
	[Cassette 3] to [Cassette 5] and [Inserter Tray 1 (2)] are displayed when the following optional paper feeder is installed.	
	[Cassette 3]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) or large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2) is installed.	
	[Cassette 4]: When a paper feeder (500-sheet x 2) or large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2) is installed.	
	[Cassette 5]: When a side feeder (3,000-sheet) is installed.	
	[Inserter Tray 1]:Inserter	
	[Inserter Tray 2]:Inserter	
Special Paper Action	When printing on Prepunched, Preprint, and Letterhead, punch-holes might not be aligned or the print direction might be upside-down depending on how originals are set and the combination of copying functions. In such a case, select [Adjust Print Direction] to adjust the print direction. When paper orientation is not important, select [Speed Priority].	
	If [Adjust Print Direction] is selected, load paper according to the steps below.	
	Example: copying on Letterhead	
	ABC ABC	
	Original Paper Finished Cassette Multipurpose Tray	
	ABC ABC SEE	
	Original Paper Finished Cassette Multipurpose Tray	
	Value: Adjust Print Direction, Speed Priority	

Paper Output

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Paper Output]

ltem		Description
Paper Output*1	Copy/Box Printer	Select the output tray respectively for copy jobs, print jobs from Document Box, computers, and Fax RX data. Value:
	Fax Port 1*2	with optional job separator
	Fax Port 2*2	Inner Tray: Outputs to the Inner Tray of the machine
	rax Port 2	Job Separator Tray: Delivery to the Job Separator.
		with optional 1,000-Sheet Finisher
		Job Separator Tray: Delivery to the Job Separator.
		Finisher Tray: Delivery to the Finisher Tray of the optional Document Finisher.
		with optional 4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Staple Finisher
		Job Separator Tray: Delivery to the Job Separator.
		Tray A: Delivery to the Tray A of the optional Document Finisher
		Tray B: Delivery to the Tray B of the optional Document Finisher
		with optional Mailbox
		Job Separator Tray: Delivery to the Job Separator.
		 Tray A, Tray B, Tray 1 to 7: Delivery to tray A, tray B, and tray 1 to 7 (tray 1 is the uppermost tray) of the optional Mailbox
		NOTE
		Fax RX data output can be specified when the optional FAX Kit is installed.
Paper Output	Offset Documents by	Select whether to offset documents by Job.
Behavior	Job	Value: Off, On
		NOTE
		This function is displayed when an optional Document Finisher is
		installed.
	Offset One Page Documents	Set whether one-page documents are sorted.
		Value: Off, On
		NOTE
		This function is displayed when an optional Document Finisher is
		installed.

^{*1} This function will not be displayed when the optional Inner Finisher is installed.

^{*2} This is displayed when the option of two FAX Kits has been installed.

Function Key Assignment

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Function Key Assignment]

Item	Description	
Function Key 1	Assign a function to each function key.	
Function Key 2	Value: None, Copy, Send, Fax Server, Fax*1, Custom Box, Job Box, USB Drive, Fax Box*1, Polling Box*1, Fax Memory RX Box*1, Send to Me (Email), Send to Me from Box*1	
Function Key 3	(Email), Internet Browser, ID Card Copy, Favorites ^{*2} , Application ^{*3}	
	NOTE	
	Select [Filter] to narrow down for [All], [Application], [Favorites] and [Others].	

^{*1} Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Operation Assist

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Operation Assist]

Item	Description	
Orientation Confirmation	Select whether to display a screen for selecting the orientation of the originals to be placed on the platen when using the following functions. Original Orientation (page 6-25)	
	 Zoom (XY Zoom) Duplex Margin/Centering Border Erase Combine Memo Page Value: Off, On 	 Page # Staple/Punch (optional feature) 2-sided/Book Original Text Stamp Bates Stamp
Preset Limit	Restrict the number of copies that can be made at one time. Value: 1 to 9999 copies	
Clear Settings after Job Started	Set whether to reset function settings to their defaults after the job starts. Value: Clear, Do Not Clear	

^{*2} The registered favorite will be displayed.

^{*3} The running application will be displayed.

Error Handling

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Error Handling]

Item	Description
Duplexing Error	Set what to do when duplex printing is not possible for the selected paper sizes and media types. Value 1-sided: Printed in 1-sided Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed.
Finishing Error	Set alternative actions when finishing (Staple/Punch/Offset) is not available for the selected paper size or media type. Value Ignore: The setting is ignored and the job is printed. Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed.
No Staple Error	Set what to do when staples run out during printing. Value Ignore: Printing continues without stapling. Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed. NOTE Requires the optional Document Finisher.
Finished Pages Exceeded	Set what to do when finishing (stapling or offsetting) capacity is exceeded during printing. Value Ignore: Printing continues without finishing. Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed. NOTE Requires the optional Document Finisher.
Punch Waste Full Error	Set what to do when the punch waste box becomes full during printing. Value Ignore: Printing continues without punching. Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed. NOTE Requires the optional Document Finisher and Punch Unit.
Paper Mismatch Error	Set what to do when the selected paper size or type does not match paper size or type loaded in the specified paper source while printing from the computer by specifying the cassette or multipurpose tray. Value Ignore: The setting is ignored and the job is printed. Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed.
Wrong Size Paper Loaded	Set what to do when it is detected that the multipurpose tray paper size setting does not match the actual paper size that is fed. Value Ignore: The setting is ignored and the job is printed. Display Error: Message to cancel printing is displayed.

Item	Description
Paper Jam before Staple	The page from which printing is resumed when a paper jam occurs during a job with stapling can be selected. Value Resume at Top of Page: Resume printing from the first page of the document. Resume at Jammed Page: Resume printing from the page where the jam occurred. NOTE Requires the optional Document Finisher.
Error Job Skip	Set whether a job for which a "Add paper in cassette #" or "Add paper in Multipurpose Tray" error occurred when the job was started is automatically skipped after a set period of time elapses. Value: Off, On NOTE When a job is skipped, it is moved to the end of the job queue. If [On] is selected, set the time until the job is skipped. The setting range is 5 to 90 (5 second increments).
Auto Error Clear	If an error occurs during processing, processing stops to wait for the next step to be taken by the user. In the Auto Error Clear mode, automatically clear the error after a set amount of time elapses. Value: Off, On NOTE If you select [On] for Auto Error Clear, set the amount of time to wait before automatically clearing errors. The setting range is 5 to 495 seconds (in 5 second increments).
Continue or Cancel Error Job	Set which users can cancel or continue operations for jobs which were paused due to an error. Value: All Users, Job Owner Only NOTE Administrator can cancel all jobs regardless of this setting.
Image Preview at DP Jam	Set whether or not a preview of the scanned document appears when a paper jam occurs. Value: Off, On

Toner Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Device Settings] > [Toner Settings]

Item		Description
Low Toner Alert		Set the amount of remaining toner to notify the administrator when to order a toner when the toner is running low.
		This notification is used for event report, Status Monitor, SNMP Trap.
		Value: Off, On
		NOTE
		If [On] is selected, set the amount of remaining toner to alert. The setting range is 5 to 100% (in 1% increments).
Toner Waste Full Alert		Notifies the user or the administrator when the waste toner box is almost full. Set the notification timer based on the amount of toner in the waste toner box.
	Notify via Operation Panel	Notifies you via the Operation Panel when the waste toner box is almost full. Value: Off, On
		NOTE
		If [On] is selected, set the notification timer based on the amount of toner in the waste toner box. The setting range is 10 to 90% (in 10% increments).
	Notify Externally (for admin. use)	Notifies the administrator when the waste toner box is almost full. This notification is used for the Event Report, Status Monitor, SNMP Trap (Printer Management System etc.). Value: Off, On
		NOTE
		If [On] is selected, set the notification timer based on the amount of toner in the waste toner box. The setting range is 10 to 90% (in 10% increments).

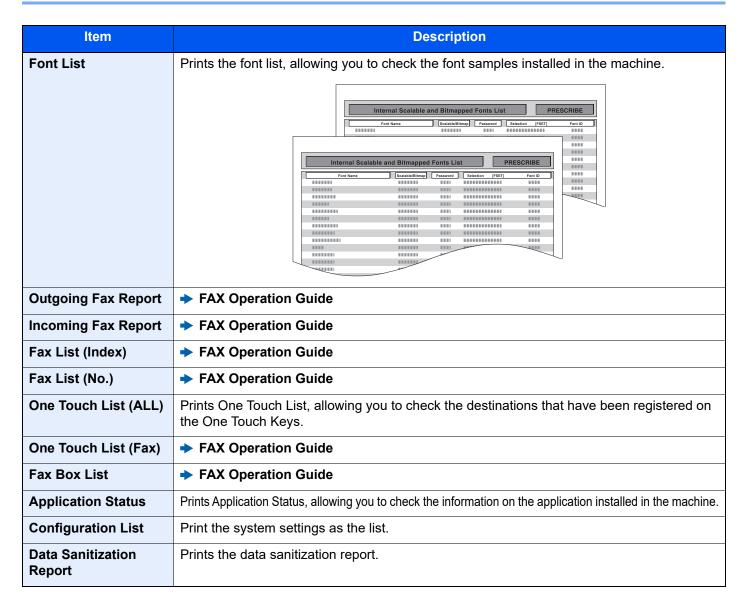
Notification/Report

Print reports to check the machine settings, status, and history. Settings for printing reports can also be configured.

Printing Report/List

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Notification/Report] > "Printing Report/List" [Printing Report/List]

Item	Description
Status Page	Prints the status page, allowing you to check the information including current settings, available memory space, and optional equipment installed. Status Page Finance Version
Service Status	Prints the service status. More detailed information is available than on the Status Page. Service personnel usually print the service status pages for maintenance purpose.
Network Status	Prints the network status, allowing you to check the information including network interface firmware version, network address and protocol. Network Status Page KYUDCERA
Optional Network Status	Prints the optional network status, allowing you to check the information including optional network interface firmware version, network address and protocol. NOTE This function is displayed when the optional Network Interface Kit or Wireless Network Interface Kit is installed.
Print Accounting Report	If job accounting is enabled, the total pages counted of all relevant accounts can be printed as an accounting report. ACCOUNT. REPORT



Result Report Setting

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Notification/Report] > "Result Report Setting"

	Item	Description
Send Result Report		Automatically print a report of transmission result when a transmission is complete.
Email/Folder Automatically print a report of transmission result when Email or SME transmission is complete. Value: Off, On, Error Only		·
Fax*1		→ FAX Operation Guide
Canceled before Sending*2 Print a send result report if the job is canceled before being Value: Off, On		Print a send result report if the job is canceled before being sent. Value: Off, On
	Recipient Format*2	Select the Recipient Format for the send result report. Value: Name or Destination, Name and Destination
RX Result*1 Job Finish Notice Setting*1		→ FAX Operation Guide

^{*1} Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

^{*2} When "Email/Folder" and "Fax" are set to [Off], this function will not be displayed.

Device Status Notification

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Notification/Report] > "Device Status Notification"

Item	Description	
Low Toner Alert	→ Low Toner Alert (page 8-24)	
Toner Waste Full Alert	→ Toner Waste Full Alert (page 8-24)	

Message Board Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Notification/Report] > "Message Board Settings"

Item			Description
Message Board			Select whether to use the Message Board. Value: Off, On
Message List		ist	Configure settings for the registered message board.
	Add		Add a new message board.
		Title/Body	Enter the title and body to display on the message board. The title can include up to 30 characters, and the body can include up to 300 characters.
		Device to Show	Select where to show the message. Value Hide: Displays no message. Operation Panel: Displays a message on the operation panel. Embedded Web Server: Displays a message in Command Center RX. Panel + Web Server: Displays a message in the operation panel and the Command Center RX.
		Place to Show	Select where to show the message in the touch panel. Value Login Screen: Login screen of user login administration Home Screen: Home Screen Login Screen+Home Screen: Login screen and Home screen of user login administration
		Message Type	Select the message type. Value: Normal, Alert, Prohibition
		Priority Show	Displays the message on the message board. Value: Off, On
	Raise Priority		Raise the priority of the message board selected on the list.
	Low Priority		Lower the priority of the message board selected on the list.
	Delete		Deletes the message board selected on the list.
[] (information icon)		•	Display information on the selected message board.

Fax Communication Report

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Notification/Report] > "Fax Communication Report"

Configure settings for Outgoing Fax report and Incoming Fax report.

FAX Operation Guide

History Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Notification/Report] > "History Settings"



For details on the Log History, refer to the following:

→ History Management (page 8-32)

Ite	em	Description
Sending Log History	Auto Sending	This function automatically sends the log history to the specified destinations whenever a set number of jobs has been logged. Value: Off, On
		NOTE
		If [On] is selected, specify the number of job histories. The setting range is 1 to 1,500.
	Destination	Set the destination to which log histories are sent. Only E-mail address can be set.
	Subject	Set the subject automatically entered when sending log histories by E-mail.
		Value: Up to 256 characters
	SSFC	Enter the subject of the printed job history with IC card authentication.
		Value: Up to 256 characters
	Personal Information	Select whether to include personal information in the job log.
		Value: Include, Exclude
	Send Log History	You can also send the log history to the specified destinations manually.

Item		Description
Login History Settings	Login History	Select whether to record the Login History. Value: Off, On
		NOTE If [On] is selected, set the number of histories to be recorded. The setting range is 1 to 1,000.
	Auto Sending	Select whether the login history is automatically sent to the set address when the number of entries reaches the number set in "Login History". Value: Off, On
		NOTE This function is displayed when "Login History" is set to [On].
	Destination	Set the destination to which login histories are sent. E-mail address only can be set as destination.
		NOTE This function is displayed when "Login History" is set to [On].
	Subject	Set the subject automatically entered when sending login histories by E-mail.
		Value: Up to 256 characters NOTE This function is displayed when "Login History" is set to [On].
	Log Reset	Resets the recorded login histories.

Item		Description
Device Log History Settings	Device Log History	Select whether to record the device log history. Value: Off, On
		NOTE If [On] is selected, set the number of histories to be stored. The setting range is 1 to 1,000.
	Auto Sending	Select whether the device log history is automatically sent to the set address when the number of entries reaches the number set in "Device Log History". Value: Off, On
		NOTE This function is displayed when "Device Log History" is set to [On].
	Destination	Set the destination to which device log histories are sent. E-mail address only can be set as destination.
		NOTE
		This function is displayed when "Device Log History" is set to [On].
	Subject	Set the subject automatically entered when sending device log histories by E-mail. Value: Up to 256 characters
		NOTE This function is displayed when "Device Log History" is set to [On].

Item		Description
Secure Comm. Error Log	Secure Comm. Error Log	Select whether to record the secure communication error log history. Value: Off, On
		NOTE If [On] is selected, set the number of histories to be stored. The setting range is 1 to 1,000.
	Auto Sending	Select whether the secure communication error log history is automatically sent to the set address when the number of entries reaches the number set in "Secure Comm. Error Log". Value: Off, On
		NOTE
		This function is displayed when "Secure Communication Error Log History" is set to [On].
	Destination	Set the destination to which secure communication error log histories are sent. E-mail address only can be set as destination.
		NOTE
		This function is displayed when "Secure Communication Error Log History" is set to [On].
	Subject	Set the subject automatically entered when sending secure communication error log histories by E-mail. Value: Up to 256 characters
		NOTE This function is displayed when "Secure Communication Error Log History" is set to [On].

History Management

It is possible to perform Log Management for the following logs on this machine.

Item	Log subject	Log information
Jobs Log	Copy/Fax/Scan/Send/Print job completion	Event occurrence date
	Checking job status/Changing of jobs/Canceling of jobs	and timeEvent type
Login History	Login/logout success and failure	Information on users
	User Account Lockout occurrence and cancellation	logged in (or users who attempted to log in)
Device Log History	Power on	Event results (Success/
	Power off	Failure)
	Changing user properties	
	User information login password registration and change failure	
	Changing date and time	
Changing security settings		
	Displaying and deletion of image data stored in Document Box	
Secure Communication Error Log	Communications failure in TLS and IPsec communications	

NOTE

If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Function Settings

Configures settings for copying, sending and Document Box functions.

Function Defaults

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Function Defaults]

Common

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Function Defaults] > [Common]

Item		Description
Clear Settings after Started	er Job	→ Clear Settings after Job Started (page 8-21)
File Name Entry		Set an automatically entered name (default) for jobs. Additional information such as Date and Time and Job No. can also be set. Value File Name: Up to 32 characters can be entered. Additional Info: None, Job No., Date and Time, Job No. & Date and Time, Date and Time & Job No.
Border Erase Defa	ault	Set the default width to be erased as a border. Value Metric: 0 to 50 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch: 0 to 2" (in 0.01" increments) NOTE To apposite border grass widths around original, set the value in "Parder". To apposite
		To specify border erase widths around original, set the value in "Border". To specify border erase widths in the middle of original, set the value in "Gutter".
Border Eras Page	se to Back	Select the Border Erase Method for Back Page of a sheet. Value: Same as Front Page, Do Not Erase
Zoom		Select the enlarged/reduced default when paper size/sending size changed after the originals set. Value: 100%, Auto
System Stamp (Baselings)	asic	Configure settings for stamps.
Text (Text S	tamp)	Edit the test string for a template. Up to 8 templates can be registered.
Font Size (F	Page #)	Set the font size for page numbers when printing them. Value Size 1 to 3: 6.0 to 64.0 pt
Font Size (E Stamp)	3ates	When a bates stamp is used, set the font sizes that can be set. Value Size 1 to 3: 6.0 to 64.0 pt
Font Size (T Stamp)	Text .	Set the font size for stamps when printing them. Value Size 1 to 3: 6.0 to 64.0 pt
DP Read Action		Set the operation when a document is scanned from the document processor. Value: Speed Priority, Quality Priority

Item	Description
Detect Multi-fed Originals	When reading a document from the document processor, if the multiple feeding of documents is detected, then the reading stops automatically.
	Value:
	On: In case of detecting that multiple sheets of original are fed at the same time, the message is displayed and stop scanning the original.
	Off: It does not detect.
Detect Stapled Originals	When reading a document from the document processor, if a stapled document is detected, then the reading stops automatically.
	Value:
	On: In case of detecting that the original is stapled or the original is fed skewed, the message is displayed and stop scanning the original.
	Off: It does not detect.

Copy/Print

 $[\textbf{Home}] \; \texttt{key} > [...] > [\textbf{System Menu}] > [\textbf{Function Settings}] > [\textbf{Function Defaults}] > [\textbf{Copy/Print}]$

Item	Description
Original Orientation (Copy)	Set the original orientation defaults. Value: Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*1
Original Image (Copy)	Set the default original document type for copying. Value: Text+Photo (Printer), Text+Photo (Magazine), Photo (Printer), Photo (Magazine), Photo (Photo Paper), Text, Text (Fine Line), Graphic/Map (Printer), Graphic/Map (Magazine)
Background Density Adj. (Copy)	Set the default Background Density (Copy). Value: Off, Auto, Manual (Darker 5)
Continuous Scan (Copy)	Select the default Continuous Scan (Copy) setting. Value: Off, On
Prevent Bleed- through (Copy)	Set the default value for preventing bleed-through (Copy). Value: Off, On
Skip Blank Page (Copy)	Select the default Skip Blank Page (Copy) settings. Value: Off, On
EcoPrint	Select the EcoPrint default. Value: Off, On
Toner Save Level (EcoPrint)	Select the default Toner Save Level (EcoPrint). Value: 1 (Lower) to 5 (Higher) NOTE Raising the level reduces toner consumption, but image quality falls.

Item	Description
Margin Default	Set the default margin. Value Metric Left/Right: -18 to 18 mm (in 1 mm increments) Top/Bottom: -18 to 18 mm (in 1 mm increments) Inch Left/Right: -0.75 to 0.75" (in 0.01" increments) Top/Bottom: -0.75 to 0.75" (in 0.01" increments)
Border Erase (Copy)	Set the defaults for Border Erase (Copy). Value: Standard, Border Erase Sheet, Border Erase Book, Individual Border Erase
Collate/Offset	Set the defaults for Collate/Offset. Value: Off, Collate On, Offset Each Page, Offset Each Set
Auto Image Rotation (Copy)	Select the default Auto Image Rotation setting. Value: Off, On
Repeat Copy	Select the Repeat Copy default. Value: Off, On NOTE This function will not be displayed when the Data Security Function is active. This function will not be displayed when Repeat Copy Job Retention is set to 0.
JPEG/TIFF Print	Select the image size (resolution) when printing JPEG or TIFF file. Value: Fit to Paper Size, Image Resolution, Fit to Print Resolution
XPS Fit to Page	Set the default value for the XPS fit to page function. Value: Off, On
Reserve Next Priority	Specify whether the default screen appears when a subsequent copy job is reserved while printing is in progress. To have the default screen appear, select [On]. Value: Off, On
Auto Image Rotation Action	Set whether the image is rotated when the orientation of the document to be printed is different from the orientation of the paper. Value Unrotated Manual Copy: If a paper source or zoom ratio is specified, the image is not rotated. Apply All: Rotates all images. Follow Image Size: The image is rotated if the rotated image fits on the paper.
Auto % Priority	When a paper source of different size from the original is selected, select whether automatic zoom (reduce/zoom) is performed. Value: Off, On
Paper Size for Small Original	Specify the paper size to be used for a case where the original is too small to be detected in the Auto Paper Selection mode. Value: Default Paper Source, A4-R, A4, A5-R, A6-R, B5-R, B5, B6-R, Letter-R, Letter, Statement-R

Item	Description
Original Size of Undetected Original	Specify the action when original size is not detected. Value: Default Paper Source, Show Confirmation
Erase Shadowed Areas (Copy)	Select the default Erase Shadowed Areas (Copy) setting. Value: Off, On

^{*1} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

Send/Store

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Function Defaults] > [Send/Store]

Item	Description
Original Orientation (Send/Store)	Set the original orientation defaults.
· ·	Value: Top Edge on Top, Top Edge on Left, Auto*2
Color Selection	Select the default color mode for scanning documents.
(Send/Store)	Value: Auto Color (Color/Gray), Auto Color (Color/B & W), Full Color, Grayscale, Black & White
Color Type	Set the color type when you send color documents.
	Value: RGB(Profile:XXXX), sRGB
Scan Resolution	Select the default scanning resolution.
	Value: 600×600dpi, 400×400dpi Ultrafine, 300×300dpi, 200×400dpi Superfine, 200×200dpi Fine, 200×100dpi Normal
Fax TX Resolution*1	→ FAX Operation Guide
Org. Image (Send/	Set the default original document type for sending/storing.
Store)	Value: Text+Photo, Photo, Text, Text (Fine Line), Text (for OCR)
Background Density	Set the default Background Density (Send/Store).
Adj. (Send/Store)	Value: Off, Auto, Manual (Darker 5)
Continuous Scan	Select the default Continuous Scan (Send/Store) setting.
(Send/Store)	Value: Off, On
Continuous Scan (Fax)*1	→ FAX Operation Guide
Prevent Bleed-	Set the default Prevent Bleed (Send/Store).
through (Send/Store)	Value: Off, On
Border Erase/Full	Set the defaults for Border Erase/Full Scan (Send/Store).
Scan (Send/Store)	Value: Standard, Full Scan, Border Erase Sheet, Border Erase Book, Individual Border Erase
Border Erase/Full Scan (Fax)	→ FAX Operation Guide
Skip Blank Page	Select the default Skip Blank Page (Send/Store) settings.
(Send/Store)	Value: Off, On
File Format	Set the default type of the files.
	Value: PDF, TIFF, JPEG, XPS, OpenXPS, High Comp. PDF, Word, Excel, PowerPoint

[→] Scan Extension Kit(A) "OCR Scan Activation Kit" (page 11-7)

Item	Description	
Image Quality (File Format)	Select the default PDF/TIFF/JPEG/XPS/OpenXPS/Word/Excel/PowerPoint file quality. Value: 1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to 5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	
High Comp. PDF Image	Select the default quality setting for high compressed PDF files. Value: Compression Ratio Priority, Standard, Quality Priority	
Color TIFF Compression	Select the compression method for sending the color documents in the TIFF format. Value: TIFF V6, TTN2	
PDF/A	Select the default PDF/A setting. Value: Off, PDF/A-1a, PDF/A-1b, PDF/A-2a, PDF/A-2b, PDF/A-2u	
	NOTE If [On] is selected in "Digital Signature", [PDF/A-1a] and [PDF/A-1b] cannot be selected. Digital Signature to File (page 8-39)	
OCR Text Recognition Action*2	Configure settings for OCR Text Recognition Action. Value: Speed Priority, Quality Priority	
OCR Text Recognition*2	Set the default OCR Text Recognition. Value: Off, On	
Primary OCR Language*2	Set the default language of the text to be extracted. ([English] is selected as a default.) Select the language to extract from the options displayed on the touch panel.	
OCR Output Format*2	Set the default OCR output format. Value: Text + Graphics, Text + Graphics with Scanned Image, Scanned Image with Searchable Text	
File Separation	Select the default file separation setting. Value: Off, On NOTE If you select [On], set the number of pages to be divided. The setting range is 1 to 2500 pages.	
Attach File to Email	Select how to attach the files to the E-mail. Value All Files in 1 Email: Attach and send all files in a single E-mail. 1 file per Email: Attach and send 1 file per E-mail.	
Email Subject/Body	Set the subject and body automatically entered (default subject and body) when sending the scanned originals by E-mail. Three body messages can be registered, and the initial template can be used to choose which body message is used. Value Subject: Up to 256 characters can be entered. Body 1 to 3: Up to 500 characters can be entered.	

Item	Description
iFax Subject/Body ^{*3}	Set the subject and body automatically entered (default subject and body) when sending the scanned originals by i-FAX. Value Subject: Up to 256 characters can be entered. Body: Up to 500 characters can be entered.
Erase Shadowed Areas (Send)	Select the default Erase Shadowed Areas (Send) setting. Value: Off, On
Erase Shadowed Areas (Store)	Select the default Erase Shadowed Areas (Store) setting. Value: Off, On

^{*1} Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Copy/Print

 $[\textbf{Home}] \; \text{key} > [...] > [\textbf{System Menu}] > [\textbf{Function Settings}] > [\textbf{Copy/Print}]$

Item	Description
Quick Setup Registration (Copy)	→ Quick Setup Registration (Copy) (page 8-10)

Send/Store

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Send/Store]

Item	Description
Default Screen	Set the default screen displayed when you select the [Send] key.
	Value: Destination, Address Book, One touch Key

^{*2} This function can only be used when the optional OCR Scan Activation Kit is installed.

[◆] Scan Extension Kit(A) "OCR Scan Activation Kit" (page 11-7)

^{*3} Displayed when the optional Internet FAX Kit is activated.

[→] Internet FAX Kit(A) "Internet FAX Kit" (page 11-6)

Ito	em	Description
Prevent Mis-sending Settings	Destination Check before Send	Select whether to display the confirmation screen of destinations after pressing the [Start] key when performing sending jobs. Value: Off, On
	Entry Check for New Dest.	When adding new destination, select whether to display the entry check screen to check the entered destination. Value: Off, On
	Destination Check on Selecting	Select whether to display the pop-up at the destination selection. Value: Off, On
	New Destination Entry	Select whether to permit direct entry of destination. Value: Prohibit, Permit
	Recall Destination	Select whether to permit usage of [Recall] on the Send screen. Value: Prohibit, Permit
	Broadcast	Set whether to enable broadcast. Value: Prohibit, Permit
	Destination History Usage	Allow to use the destination history. Value: Prohibit, Permit
	Delete Destination History	Delete the destination history.
Quick Setup Registrati	on (Send)	→ Quick Setup Registration (Send) (page 8-10)
Digital Signature to File	Digital Signature	Select whether to add a digital signature. Value: Off: Does not add a digital signature. Specify Each Job: Whether to add a digital signature is selected each time of sending. On: Always adds a digital signature when
		sending.
	Digital Signature Format	Select an algorithm used for encryption of digital signature. Value: SHA1, SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512
		NOTE This function is displayed when "Digital Signature" is set to [Specify Each Job] or [On].
	Password Confirmation on Signature Permission	Select whether to confirm password when setting digital signature. Value: On, Off NOTE
		This function is displayed when "Digital Signature" is set to [Specify Each Job].
	Password	Set a password required for setting digital signature. Enter a new security password 6 to 16 alphanumeric characters and symbols.
		NOTE
		This function is displayed when "Password Confirmation on Signature Permission" is set to [On].

Email
[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Email]

Item		Description
Email Settings	SMTP (Email TX)	Select whether to send E-mail using SMTP. Value: Off, On
	SMTP Server Name	Enter the host name or IP address of the SMTP server. NOTE Up to 256 characters can be entered.
	SMTP Port Number	Specify the port number to be used for SMTP. The default port number is 25. Value: 1 to 65535 (Port Number)
	Sender Address	Specify the sender address for when the machine sends E-mails, such as the machine administrator, so that a reply or non-delivery report will go to a person rather than to the machine. The sender address must be entered correctly for SMTP authentication. The maximum length of the sender address is 256 characters.
	SMTP Auth and Sender Address	When the user login is set to ON, login user name, password and E-mail address of login user are used for SMTP authentication and e-mail sender address. Value
		Use System Settings: Information set with [Sender Address] is used for SMTP authentication and E-mail sender address information.
		Use Login User Information : Login User information is used for SMTP authentication and E-mail sender address information.
		NOTE If there is no e-mail address set for the user who logged in, the Sender Address set with [Sender Address] is used for E-mail sender address information.
POP3	POP3	Select whether to receive E-mail using POP3. Value: Off, On
	Remote Printing	→ Remote Printing (page 8-49)

Sending Job - Folder

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Sending Job - Folder]

Item	Description
FTP Settings	Select whether to send documents using FTP. To use the FTP Client, set the protocol to [On] for "Protocol Settings". The default port number is 21. Value: Off, On, 1 to 65535 (Port Number)
SMB Settings	Select whether to send documents using SMB. To use the SMB Client, set the protocol to [On] for "Protocol Settings". The default port number is 445. Value: Off, On, 1 to 65535 (Port Number)

Fax/iFax

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Fax/iFax] Configure settings for FAX.

▶ FAX Operation Guide

WSD

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [WSD]

Item		Description
WSD Scan	Protocol Settings	Select whether to use WSD Scan.*1 Value: Off, On
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
WSD Print	Protocol Settings	Set whether to use our proprietary web services. WIA driver, TWAIN driver and Network FAX driver use this Enhanced WSD web service.*1 Value: Off, On
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable

^{*1} The setting will be changed after restarting the device or network.

DSM Scan

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [DSM Scan]

Item		Description
Basic	Using DSM	Select whether to use DSM scan.*1 Value: Off, On
LDAP		Select whether to use LDAP. Value: Off, On

^{*1} The setting will be changed after restarting the device or network.

Address Book

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Address Book]

Item	Description
Add/Edit Machine Address Book	Configure settings for address book.
	→ Adding a Destination (Address Book) (page 3-38)

Item		Description
Machine Address Book	Sort	Select the default sort setting of the address for the address book. Value: No., Name
	Narrow Down	This procedure can be used to filter (narrow down) the types of destination listed when the address book is displayed. Value: Off, Email, Folder, Fax*1, iFax*2, Group
	Edit Restriction	Restrict editing of the address book. If you selected [Administrator Only], you can only edit the Address Book by logging in with administrator privileges. Value: Off, Administrator Only
External Address Book		→ Command Center RX User Guide
Address Book Type ^{*3}		Select whether the machine's address book or the External Address Book appears when the address book is displayed. Value: Machine Address Book, Ext Address Book

^{*1} Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

One-Touch Key

 $[\textbf{Home}] \; \texttt{key} > [...] > [\textbf{System Menu}] > [\textbf{Function Settings}] > [\textbf{One-Touch Key}]$

Item	Description
Add/Edit One Touch Key	Configure settings for One Touch Key. → Adding a Destination on One Touch Key (page 3-45)
Edit Restriction	Restrict editing of the One Touch Key. If you selected [Administrator Only], you can only edit the One Touch Key by logging in with administrator privileges. Value: Off, Administrator Only

Send and Forward

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Send and Forward]

Item		Description
Forward Settings		Select whether to forward the original. Value: Off, On
		When selecting [On], select rules to forward from [Email], [Folder (SMB)], [Folder (FTP)], [Fax] ^{*1} , [iFax (Via server-On)] ^{*2} , and [iFax (Via server-Off)] ^{*2} .
Destination	Add	Set the destination to which the original is forwarded. One destination can be set. Follow the steps below to register the destination. • Addr. Book • Email • SMB • FTP Specifying Destination (page 5-48)

^{*2} This function is displayed when the optional Internet FAX Kit is activated.

^{*3} This display appears only if the external address book is available.

Item		Description
Job Settings	Color Setting	Configure the color settings for forwarded original. Value: Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/B & W), Full Color, Grayscale, Black & White
	Scan Resolution	Select resolution for stored original. Value: 600x600dpi, 400x400dpi Ultrafine, 300x300dpi, 200x400dpi Superfine, 200x200dpi Fine, 200x100dpi Normal
	File Format	Select the file format of forwarded original. File Format for Send and Forward (page 8-44)
	File Separation	Set whether originals are divided into multiple files before being forwarded. Value: Off, Each Page
	Email Subject	Enter a maximum of 256 characters for the subject of forwarded E-mail. Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
	FTP Encrypted TX	Set whether originals are encrypted before being forwarded. Value: Off, On NOTE This function is displayed when SSL is set to [On] in Security Settings. Security Settings (page 8-70)
	Email Encrypted TX	Sends encrypted E-mail using the electronic certificate. Encryption secures the document transmission. Value: Off, On NOTE This function is displayed when S/MIME is configured in Command Center RX. Configuring S/MIME settings in the Command Center RX (page 6-84)
	Digital Signature Email	Add a digital signature to the email, using the electronic certificate. By adding a digital signature to an email, you can confirm the identity of the destination and detect tampering during transmission. Value: Off, On NOTE This function is displayed when S/MIME is configured in Command Center RX. Configuring S/MIME settings in the Command Center RX (page 6-84)

^{*1} Displayed only when the optional fax kit is installed.*2 This function is displayed when the optional Internet FAX Kit is activated.

File Format for Send and Forward

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Send and Forward] > [Job Settings] > [File Format] Select the file format for forwarded original.

The table below lists the file formats and their details.

File format	Adjustable range of image quality	Color setting
PDF ^{*1}	1 Low Quality (High Comp.) to 5 High Quality (Low Comp.)	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale, Black and
TIFF	ornight Quanty (Low Gornp.)	White
JPEG		Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Full Color, Grayscale
XPS		Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale, Black and
OpenXPS		White
High Comp. PDF*1	Compression Ratio Priority, Standard, Quality Priority	Auto Color (Color/Grayscale), Auto Color (Color/Black and White), Full Color, Grayscale

^{*1} File format can be selected. (Value: [Off] / [PDF/A-1a] / [PDF/A-1b] / [PDF/A-2a] / [PDF/A-2b] / [PDF/A-2u])

PDF Encryption Functions

If you have selected PDF or High Comp. PDF for file format, you can restrict the access level for displaying, printing, and editing PDF's by assigning a secure password.

Items that can be set vary depending on the setting selected in "Compatibility".

When [Acrobat 3.0 and later] is selected

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Send and Forward] > [Job Settings] > [Encryption]

	ľ	tem	Value	Description
Password to Open Document		Open	Off, On	Enter the password to open the PDF file. Select [Password], enter a password (up to 256 characters) and then select [OK]. Select [Confirmation] to enter the password again for confirmation, and select [OK].
Password to Edit/Print Document		Edit/Print	Off, On	Enter the password to edit the PDF file. Select [Password], enter a password (up to 256 characters) and then select [OK]. Select [Confirmation] to enter the password again for confirmation, and select [OK]. When you have entered the password to edit/print document, you can specifically limit the operation.
		Printing Allowed	Not Allowed, Allowed	Restricts printing of the PDF file.
		Changes Allowed	Not Allowed	Disables the change to the PDF file.
			Commenting	Can only add commenting.
			Page Layout except extracting Pages	Can change the page layout except extracting the pages of the PDF file.
	Text		Any except extracting Pages	Can conduct all operations except extracting the pages of the PDF file.
		Copying of Text/Images/ Others	Disable, Enable	Restricts the copying of text and objects on the PDF file.

When [Acrobat 5.0 and later] is selected

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Send and Forward] > [Job Settings] > [Encryption]

	ŀ	tem	Value	Description
Password to Open Document		Open	Off, On	Enter the password to open the PDF file. Select [Password], enter a password (up to 256 characters) and then select [OK]. Select [Confirmation] to enter the password again for confirmation, and select [OK].
Password to Edit/Print Document		Edit/Print	Off, On	Enter the password to edit the PDF file. Select [Password], enter a password (up to 256 characters) and then select [OK]. Select [Confirmation] to enter the password again for confirmation, and select [OK]. When you have entered the password to edit/print document, you can specifically limit the operation.
	Detail	Printing	Not Allowed	Disables the printing of PDF file.
		Allowed	Allowed (Low Resolution only)	Can print the PDF file only in low resolution.
			Allowed	Can print the PDF file in original resolution.
		Changes	Not Allowed	Disables the change to the PDF file.
		Allowed	Inserting/Deleting/ Rotating Pages	Can only insert, delete, and rotate the pages of the PDF file.
			Commenting	Can only add commenting.
			Any except extracting Pages	Can conduct all operations except extracting the pages of the PDF file.
		Copying of Text/Images/ Others	Disable, Enable	Restricts the copying of text and objects on the PDF file.

RX/Forward Rules/Fax Box

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [RX/Forward Rules/Fax Box] Configures settings for RX/Forward rules and FAX Box.

▶ FAX Operation Guide

Printer

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Printer]

Item	Description
Emulation	Select the emulation for operating this machine by commands oriented to other types of printers. Value: PCL6, IBM Proprinter, Line Printer, EPSON LQ-850, KPDL, KPDL (Auto) NOTE When you have selected [KPDL (Auto)], set "Alt Emulation", too. When you have selected [KPDL] or [KPDL (Auto)], set "KPDL Error Report", too.
KPDL Error Report	When an error has occurred during printing in KPDL emulation mode, set whether or not the error report is output. Value: Off, On
Alt Emulation	When you have selected [KPDL (Auto)] as emulation mode, you can switch between KPDL and another emulation mode (alternative emulation) automatically according to the data to print. Value: PCL6
EcoPrint	EcoPrint conserves toner when printing. This is recommended for test copies where faded printing is not a problem. Value: Off, On
Toner Save Level (EcoPrint)	Select the default Toner Save Level (EcoPrint). Value: 1 (Lower) to 5 (Higher) NOTE Raising the level reduces toner consumption, but image quality falls.
Override A4/Letter	Select whether to treat A4 size and Letter, which are similar in size, as the same size when printing. Value Off: A4 and Letter are not regarded as the same in size. On: A4 and Letter are regarded as the same in size. The machine will use whichever size is in the paper source.
Duplex	Select binding orientation for duplex mode. Value: 1-sided, 2-sided (Bind Long Edge), 2-sided (Bind Short Edge)
Copies	Set the default number of copies, from 1 to 9999. Value: 1 to 9999 copies
Orientation	Set the default orientation, [Portrait] or [Landscape]. Value: Portrait, Landscape
Form Feed TimeOut	Receiving print data from the computer, the machine may sometimes wait if there is no information signaling that the last page does not have any more data to be printed. When the preset timeout passes, the machine automatically prints paper. The options are between 5 and 495 seconds. Value: 5 to 495 seconds (in 5 second increments)
LF Action	Set the line feed action when the machine receives the line feed code (character code 0AH). Value: LF Only, LF and CR, Ignore LF

Description
Set the character return action when the machine receives the character return code (character code 0DH). Value: CR Only, LF and CR, Ignore CR
Set whether the job name set in the printer driver is displayed. Value: Off, On
NOTE
When selecting [On], select the job name to be displayed from [Job Name], [Job No. & Job Name], or [Job Name & Job No.].
Set whether the user name set in the printer driver is displayed. Value: Off, On
While printing from the computer, select how to feed paper when the paper source and type are specified. Value
Auto: Search the paper source that matches the selected paper size and type. Fixed: Print on paper loaded in the specified paper source.
If paper is set in the MP Tray then it is possible for priority to be given to that MP tray in the paper feed. Value
Off: The printer driver settings are followed. Auto Feed: If Auto is selected in the printer driver and there is paper in the MP tray then the paper feed will be from the MP tray. Always: If there is paper in the MP tray then the paper feed will be from the MP tray regardless of what is set in the printer driver.
In this setting, select the operation for the following two actions: 1.Action to switch cassettes when the paper runs out during printing. 2.Action to print when the paper size to be printed is different from the preferred paper size for feeding. Value: Off, On
 NOTE If you select [Off], when the paper runs out in the cassette being fed, it will request adding paper to the priority paper feed source, stating "Add paper in Cassette X." (X represents the cassette number) or "Add paper in the MP tray.", and then stop printing. Also, if the paper size to be printed is different from paper size in the priority paper feed source, it will also request adding paper to the priority paper feed source and stop printing.
When adding paper in the cassette indicated in the message, printing will resume.
 If you want to print from a different cassette, use [Paper Selection] to change the paper source.
 If you select this mode [On], even if the paper runs out in the cassette, printing will automatically continue if there is another cassette with a matching size and type of paper.
Set whether the confirmation screen appears before each sheet is printed when printing multiple banner sheets.
Value: Off, On
Turn this to on to increase the maximum number of characters that can be printed in a line for an A4 page (78 characters at 10 pitch) and Letter size page (80 characters at 10 pitch). This setting is only effective in PCL6 emulation. Value: Off, On

Item	Description	
Resolution	Set the resolution used for printing. Value: 600 dpi, 1200 dpi	
	NOTE	
	Settings that are received from the printer driver have priority over the operation panel settings.	
KIR	Select the default KIR (smoothing) setting.	
	Value: Off, On	
Printing Job Terminator	You can select the condition which regarded as a job termination if the print job could not be processed until the end due to your environment and the other reason.	
	Value: EOJ (End of Job): The command recognized as a termination of the job data is	
	regarded as one job until it is detected.	
	End of Network Session : The data included in a network session at network connection is regarded as one job.	
	UEL (Universal Exit Language) : The UEL included in the termination of the job data is regarded as one job until it is detected.	
Remote Printing	Select whether to prohibit printing that is performed without operating the machine. When [Prohibit] is selected, a document that has been stored in the document box from the printer driver can be printed from the machine. This prevents another person from seeing that document.	
	Value: Prohibit, Permit	
	NOTE	
	If [Prohibit] is selected, printing and storing using Quick Copy and Proof and Hold functions are disabled. Printing a received FAX (optional) is not prohibited.	
Direct Printing from Web	Set whether to allow Direct Printing from Command Center RX.	
	Value: Not Allowed, Allowed	
	→ Command Center RX	

Document Box

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Document Box]

Item	Description
Custom Box - Add/Edit	→ Creating a New Custom Box (page 5-60)
Auto File Deletion Time	Set the time to automatically delete stored documents.
Quick Setup Registration (Storing in Box)	→ Quick Setup Registration (Storing in Box) (page 8-10)
Quick Setup Registration (Box Print)	→ Quick Setup Registration (Box Print) (page 8-10)
Quick Setup Registration (Sending from Box)	→ Quick Setup Registration (Sending from Box) (page 8-10)

Job Box

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Job Box]

Item	Description
Quick Copy Job Retention	To maintain free space on the hard disk, you can set the maximum number of stored jobs. Value: number between 0 and 300
	NOTE
	When 0 is set, Quick Copy cannot be used.
Repeat Copy Job Retention	To maintain free space on the hard disk, you can set the maximum number of stored jobs. Value: number between 0 and 50
	NOTE
	 This function will not be displayed when the Data Security Function is activated. When 0 is set, Repeat Copy cannot be used.
Deletion of Job Retention	This setting specifies that documents, such as Private Printing, Quick Copying, or Proof and Hold Printing, saved temporarily in the job box are automatically deleted after they have been saved for a set time.
	Value: Off, 1 hour, 4 hours, 1 day, 1 week
	NOTE
	This function is valid for documents saved after the function is set. Regardless of this function setting, temporary documents are deleted when the power switch is turned off.

Fax Memory RX Box

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Fax Memory RX Box]

Set whether to perform print immediately for the FAX documents received or to save them in the Fax Memory RX Box.

→ FAX Operation Guide

Home

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Home]

Configure settings for Home screen.

▶ Editing the Home Screen (page 2-16)

Status

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Status]

	Item	Description
Disp	ay Settings	Set the items that appear in the status screens for printing jobs, sending jobs, and storing jobs.
	Printing Jobs Column 1	Value: Job Name, User Name, Print Pages x Copies, Total Printed Pages, Color/Black & White
	Printing Jobs Column 2	Value: Job Name, User Name, Print Pages x Copies, Total Printed Pages, Color/Black & White
	Sending Jobs Column 1	Value: Job Name, User Name, Destination, Original Pages, Color/Black & White
	Sending Jobs Column 2	Value: Job Name, User Name, Destination, Original Pages, Color/Black & White
	Storing Jobs Column 1	Value: Job Name, User Name, Original Pages, Color/Black & White
	Storing Jobs Column 2	Value: Job Name, User Name, Original Pages, Color/Black & White
Job S Setti	Status/Job Logs ngs	Set the display method of the Status/Log.
	Display Jobs Detail Status	Value: Show All, My Jobs Only, Hide All
	Display Jobs Log	Value: Show All, My Jobs Only, Hide All
	Display Fax Log ^{*1}	Value: Show All, Hide All
	Pause/Resume of All Print Jobs	Value: Prohibit, Permit

^{*1} Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Internet Browser

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Internet Browser]

Item	Description
Internet Browser	Select whether to use the Internet browser. Value: Off, On
Browser Environment	This specifies Internet browser preferences such as your home page setting and how pages are displayed. Value:
	Home page: (Enter the address for Home page.) Text Size: Large, Medium, Small Display Mode: Normal, Just-Fit Rendering, Smart-Fit Rendering Cookie: Accept All, Reject All, Prompt before Accepting
	NOTE This setting is not displayed if you selected [Off] for "Internet Browser".
Proxy	▶ Proxy (page 8-53)

Manual Staple

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Manual Staple]



NOTE

Only displayed when the optional 4,000-sheet Finisher or 100-sheet Staple Finisher is installed.

Item	Description
Manual Staple	Select whether to use Manual Staple. Value: Off, On
	NOTE If you selected [On], set the time until manual stapling mode is automatically cancelled. The setting range is 5 to 60 seconds (in 5-second increments).
Staple Position	Set the default Staple Position. Value: A4, Letter

Remote Services

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Function Settings] > [Remote Services]

When the trouble occurs on this product, it is possible to explain the operational procedure and the troubleshooting method through the internet from our sales office by accessing the operation panel screen of this product while operating the screen.



NOTE

When using the remote service settings, it is necessary to make a contract with our company.

Please contact our sales office or our authorized dealer (purchase source) for the details.

Network Settings

Configures network settings.

Host Name

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Host Name]

Item	Description	
Host Name	Check the host name of the machine. Host name can be changed from Command Center RX.	
	→ Changing Device Information (page 2-70)	

Proxy

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Proxy]

	Item	Description
Proxy	Proxy	Set the proxy for connection to the Internet from an application. Value: Off, Use Different Proxy Server, Use the Same Proxy Server for All Protocols
	Proxy Server (HTTP)	Set a proxy server (HTTP). Value: (Enter the proxy address and port number.)
	Proxy Server (HTTPS)	Set a proxy server (HTTPS). This setup is available when "Proxy" is set to [Use Different Proxy Server]. Value: (Enter the proxy address and port number.)
	Do Not Use Proxy for Following Domains	Set domains for which no proxy is used. Value: (Enter the domain name.)

Wi-Fi Direct Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Wi-Fi Direct Settings] Set Wi-Fi Direct.

Item	Description
Wi-Fi Direct	Select whether to use Wi-Fi Direct.
	Value: Off, On
Device Name	Specify the device name.
	NOTE
	Up to 32 characters can be entered.
	This function is displayed when [Wi-Fi Direct] is set to [On].
IP Address	Check the IP address of the machine.
	→ TCP/IP Setting (page 8-58)
	NOTE
	This function is displayed when [Wi-Fi Direct] is set to [On].

Item	Description
Auto Disconnect	Automatically disconnect devices connected through Wi-Fi Direct. Value: Off, On NOTE If you select [ON], set the waiting time for automatic disconnection. This function is displayed when [Wi-Fi Direct] is set to [On].
Persistent Group	Set whether Wi-Fi Direct connection as Persistent Group (information for the connection is kept even if the power is turned off). Value: Off, On NOTE This function is displayed when [Wi-Fi Direct] is set to [On].
Password	Select whether the Wi-Fi Direct password is automatically generated or created manually. When [Off] is selected, the Persistent Group setting changes to [On]. Value: Off, On NOTE If you selected [On], set a password (8 or more characters).
Frequency band	Set the frequency band to be used. Value: 2.4GHz, 5Ghz

Wi-Fi Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Wi-Fi Settings] Set Wi-Fi.

Wi-Fi

Item	Description	
Wi-Fi	Select whether to use Wi-Fi.	
	Value: Off, On	

Setup

Item	Description	
Available Network	Displays access points to which the machine can connect.	
Index Select the key index of the access point. Value: 0 to 3		
Push Button Method	If the access point supports the push button method, wireless settings can be configured using the push button. This setting executes push button, and the connection is started by pressing the push button on the access point.	
	NOTE The push button method supports only the WPS.	
PIN Code Method (Device) Starts connection using the machine's PIN code. Enter the PIN code into the The PIN code of the machine is automatically generated.		

	Item	Description		
Cust	om Setup	The detailed settings for wireless LAN can be changed.		
Network Name (SSID) Set the SSID (Service Set Identifier) of the wireless LAN to whi			set Identifier) of the wireless LAN to which the machine connects.	
	(3312)	NOTE		
		Up to 32 characters can be entered.		
	Network	Select network authenti	cation type.	
	Authentication	Value: Open, WPA2/W	PA-PSK, WPA2-PSK, WPA2/WPA-EAP, WPA2-EAP	
	Encryption	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	d. The setting values vary depending on the Network Authentication	
		setting.		
		Network Authentication	Value	
		Open	Value: Disable, WEP	
			NOTE	
			If you selected [WEP], set the WEP key (up to 26 characters) and WEP Key Index (0 to 3).	
		WPA2/WPA-PSK	Value: AES, Auto, Preshared Key (Up to 64 characters)	
		WPA2-PSK	Value: Preshared Key (Up to 64 characters)	
		WPA2/WPA-EAP	Value: AES, Auto	
		WPA2-EAP	_	
		L		

TCP/IP Setting

Item		Description
TCP/IP		Select whether to use TCP/IP Protocol. Value: Off, On
IPv4 Settings		Set up TCP/IP (IPv4) to connect to the network. This setting is available when [TCP/IP] is set to [On].
		Select whether to use the DHCP (IPv4) server. Value: Off, On
	Auto-IP	Select whether to use Auto-IP. Value: Off, On
	IP Address	Set the IP address. Value: ###.###.###
		NOTE When DHCP is set to [On], the value cannot be entered.
	Subnet Mask	Set the IP subnet mask. Value: ###.###.###
		NOTE When DHCP is set to [On], the value cannot be entered.
	Default Gateway	Set the IP gateway address. Value: ###.###.###
		NOTE When DHCP is set to [On], the value cannot be entered.
	DNS Server Address	Set the IP address of DNS (Domain Name System) server. Value: Use DNS Server from DHCP, Use following DNS Server
		NOTE When [Use following DNS Server] is selected, you can enter static DNS server information in the Primary and Secondary fields provided.
	DNS over TLS	Set whether to connect to a DNS server during communication protected by TLS. Value: Off, On, Auto

⊘ IMPORTANT

- When setting the Auto-IP, enter "0.0.0.0" in [IP Address].
- After changing the setting, restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON.

Item	Description
IPv6 Settings	Set up TCP/IP (IPv6) to connect to the network. This setting is available when [TCP / IP] is [On].
IPv6	Select whether to use IPv6. Value: Off, On NOTE
	Selecting [On] displays IP address in [IP Addr. (Link Local)] after restarting the network.
Manual Setting	Manually specify the IP address, prefix length, and gateway address of TCP/IP (IPv6). Value
	IP Address (Manual): 128-bits address is expressed in eight groups consisting of four-digit hexadecimal digits. The groups are separated by colon (:). Prefix Length: 0 to 128
	Default Gateway : 128-bits address is expressed in eight groups consisting of four-digit hexadecimal digits. The groups are separated by colon (:).
	NOTE This function is displayed when [IPv6] is set to [On].
	To enter "Default Gateway", set [RA (Stateless)] to [Off].
RA (Stateless)	Select whether to use RA (Stateless). Value: Off, On
	NOTE This function is displayed when [IDv6] is set to [On]
	This function is displayed when [IPv6] is set to [On]. Selecting [On] displays IP address in [IP Address (Stateless)] after restarting the network.
DHCP	Select whether to use the DHCP (IPv6) server. Value: Off, On
	NOTE
	This function is displayed when [IPv6] is set to [On]. Selecting [On] displays IP address in [IP Address (Stateful)] after restarting the
	network.
DNS Server Address	Set the IP address of DNS (Domain Name System) server.
	Value: Use DNS Server from DHCP, Use following DNS Server
	When [Use following DNS Server] is selected, you can enter static DNS server information in the Primary and Secondary fields provided.
DNS over TLS	Set whether to connect to a DNS server during communication protected by TLS. Value: Off, On, Auto

⊘ IMPORTANT

After changing the setting, restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON.

Wired Network Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Wired Network Settings] Configure wired network settings.

TCP/IP Setting

Item		Description
TCP	/IP	Select whether to use TCP/IP Protocol.
		Value: Off, On
IPv4	Settings	Set up TCP/IP (IPv4) to connect to the network. This setting is available when [TCP / IP] is set to [On].
	DHCP	Select whether to use the DHCP (IPv4) server.
		Value: Off, On
	Auto-IP	Select whether to use Auto-IP.
		Value: Off, On
	IP Address	Set the IP address.
		Value: ###.###.###
		NOTE
		When DHCP is set to [On], the value cannot be entered.
	Subnet Mask	Set the IP subnet mask.
		Value: ###.###.###
		NOTE
		When DHCP is set to [On], the value cannot be entered.
	Default Gateway	Set the IP gateway address.
		Value: ###.###.###
		NOTE
		When DHCP is set to [On], the value cannot be entered.
	Domain Name	Enter the domain name.
		NOTE
		When DHCP is set to [On], the value cannot be entered.
	DNS Server Address	Set the IP address of DNS (Domain Name System) server.
		Value: Use DNS Server from DHCP, Use following DNS Server
		NOTE
		When [Use following DNS Server] is selected, you can enter static DNS server information in the Primary and Secondary fields provided.
	DNS over TLS	Set whether to connect to a DNS server during communication protected by TLS. Value: Off, On, Auto

⊘ IMPORTANT

- When setting the Auto-IP, enter "0.0.0.0" in [IP Address].
- After changing the setting, restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON.

Item	Description
IPv6 Settings	Set up TCP/IP (IPv6) to connect to the network. This setting is available when [TCP / IP] is [On].
IPv6	Select whether to use IPv6. Value: Off, On
	NOTE Selecting [On] displays IP address in [IP Addr. (Link Local)] after restarting the network.
Manual Setting	Manually specify the IP address, prefix length, and gateway address of TCP/IP (IPv6). Value
	IP Address (Manual): 128-bits address is expressed in eight groups consisting of four-digit hexadecimal digits. The groups are separated by colon (:). Prefix Length: 0 to 128
	Default Gateway : 128-bits address is expressed in eight groups consisting of four-digit hexadecimal digits. The groups are separated by colon (:).
	NOTE This function is displayed when [IPv6] is set to [On]. To enter "Default Gateway", set [RA (Stateless)] to [Off].
RA (Stateless)	Select whether to use RA (Stateless). Value: Off, On
	NOTE This function is displayed when [IPv6] is set to [On]. Selecting [On] displays IP address in [IP Address 1 to 5 (Stateless)] after restarting the network.
DHCP	Select whether to use the DHCP (IPv6) server. Value: Off, On
	NOTE This function is displayed when [IPv6] is set to [On]. Selecting [On] displays IP address in [IP Address (Stateful)] after restarting the network.
Domain Name	Enter the domain name.
	NOTE When DHCP is set to [On], the value cannot be entered.
DNS Server Address	Set the IP address of DNS (Domain Name System) server. Value: Use DNS Server from DHCP, Use following DNS Server
	NOTE
	When [Use following DNS Server] is selected, you can enter static DNS server information in the Primary and Secondary fields provided.
DNS over TLS	Set whether to connect to a DNS server during communication protected by TLS. Value: Off, On, Auto

⊘ IMPORTANT

After changing the setting, restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON.

Others

Item	Description
LAN Interface	Specify the settings for the LAN interface to be used. Value: Auto, 10BASE-T Half, 10BASE-T Full, 100BASE-TX Half, 100BASE-TX Full, 1000BASE-T



⊘ IMPORTANT

After changing the setting, restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON.

Protocol Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Protocol Settings] Configure protocol settings.

Item		Description
SMTP (Email TX)		→ Email Settings (page 8-40)
POP3 (Email RX)		→ POP3 (page 8-40)
FTP Client (Transmission)		→ FTP Settings (page 8-40)
FTP Server Protocol (Reception) Settings		Select whether to receive documents using FTP.*1 Value: Off, On
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
SMB Client (Tran	smission)	→ SMB Settings (page 8-40)
NetBEUI	Protocol Settings	Selects whether to receive documents using NetBEUI.*1 Value: Off, On
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
WSD Scan	I	→ WSD Scan (page 8-41)
WSD Print		→ WSD Print (page 8-41)
iFax		Select whether to use i-FAX. Value: Off, On NOTE
		This function is displayed when the optional Internet FAX Kit is activated.
DSM Scan		→ DSM Scan (page 8-41)

Item		Description
ThinPrint	Protocol Settings	Select whether to use ThinPrint. To use the Thin Print protocol, set the protocol to [On]. The default port number is 4000.*1*2 Value: Off, On
		NOTE This function is displayed only when the optional ThinPrint Option is activated.
	Thin Print over SSL	To use the Thin Print over SSL protocol, set [Thin Print Over SSL] and [SSL] to [On].
		Value: Off, On
		When selecting [On], it also requires a certificate for SSL. The default certificate is the self-certificate of the machine.
		→ Command Center RX User Guide
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
LPD	Protocol Settings	Selects whether to receive documents using LPD.*1 Value: Off, On
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
Raw	Protocol Settings	Select whether to receive documents using Raw Port.*1 Value: Off, On
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
IPP	Protocol Settings	Selects whether to receive documents using IPP. To use the IPP protocol, set [IPP] to [On], and set [SSL] to [Off]. In addition, select [Not Secure (IPP&IPPS)] on IPP Security under Security Settings from the Command Center RX. The default port number is 631.*1 Value: Off, On, 1 to 32767 (Port Number)
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
IPP over SSL	Protocol Settings	To use the IPP protocol, set [IPP] and [SSL] to [On]. The default port number is 443.*1*2 Value: Off, On, 1 to 32767 (Port Number)
		NOTE When selecting [On], it also requires a certificate for SSL. the default certificate is the self-certificate of the machine. → Command Center RX User Guide
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable

Item		Description
НТТР	Protocol Settings	Select whether to communicate using HTTP.*1 Value: Off, On
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
HTTPS	Protocol Settings	Select whether to communicate using HTTPS.*1*2 Value: Off, On
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
LDAP		Select whether to use LDAP. Value: Off, On
SNMPv1/v2c	Protocol Settings	Select whether to communicate using SNMP.*1 Value: Off, On
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
SNMPv3	Protocol Settings	Select whether to communicate using SNMPv3.*1 Value: Off, On
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
Enhanced WSD	Protocol Settings	Set whether to use our proprietary web services.*1 Value: Off, On NOTE Selecting [Off] will disable the functionality of WIA, TWAIN, and Network FAX driver.
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
Enhanced WSD over SSL	Protocol Settings	Set whether to use our proprietary web services over SSL.*1*2 Value: Off, On
		NOTE Selecting [Off] will disable the functionality of WIA, TWAIN and Network FAX drivers.
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
eSCL	Protocol Settings	Selects whether to receive scanned documents using eSCL.*1 Value: Off, On
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
		Talas. Disable, Bliable

Item		Description
eSCL over SSL	Protocol Settings	Selects whether to receive scanned documents using eSCL over SSL.*1*2 Value: Off, On
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
\(\(\alpha\)		·
VNC (RFB)	Protocol Settings	This is set when starting up a VNC Viewer (E.g. RealVNC) to use the Remote Operation.*1 The default port number is 9062. Value: Off, On, 1 to 32767 (Port Number)
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
VNC (RFB) over SSL	Protocol Settings	This is set when starting up a VNC Viewer (E.g. RealVNC) to use Remote Operation protected by SSL.*1*2
		The default port number is 9063.
		Value: Off, On, 1 to 32767 (Port Number)
		NOTE
		When selecting [On], it also requires a certificate for SSL. The default certificate is the self-certificate of the machine.
		→ Command Center RX User Guide
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired.
		Value: Disable, Enable
Enhanced VNC over SSL	Protocol Settings	This is set when starting up Command Center RX to use Remote Operation protected by SSL.*1*2
		The default port number is 9061.
		Value: Off, On, 1 to 32767 (Port Number)
		NOTE
		The default setting is [On].
		When selecting [On], it also requires a certificate for SSL. The default certificate is the self-certificate of the machine.
		→ Command Center RX User Guide
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired.
		Value: Disable, Enable
REST	Protocol Settings	Select whether to communicate using REST.*1 Value: Off, On, 1 to 32767 (Port Number)
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired.
		Value: Disable, Enable

Item		Description
REST over SSL	Protocol Settings	Select whether to communicate using REST over SSL.*1*2 Value: Off, On, 1 to 32767 (Port Number)
		NOTE When selecting [On], it also requires a certificate for SSL. the default certificate is the self-certificate of the machine. Command Center RX User Guide
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable
RESTful API Settings		Select whether to communicate using RESTful API. To use the RESTful API, set [Protocol Setting] on [REST] or [REST over SSL] to [On]. Value: API for Remote Services, API for Enhanced Services

^{*1} The setting will be changed after restarting the device or network.

[→] SSL (page 8-83)



IMPORTANT

Depending on the protocol, there are models where you need to restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON after changing the setting.

Ping

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Ping]

Item	Description
Ping	Checks if communication with the destination by entering the host name or IP address of the destination is possible.
	NOTE If [Primary Network (Client)] is set to [Others], this item is not displayed. → Primary Network (Client) (page 8-70)
Ping Timeout	→ Ping Timeout (page 8-9)

Bonjour

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Bonjour]

Item		Description
Bonjour	Protocol Settings	Select whether to use Bonjour. Value: Off, On
	Available Network	Set whether to enable this function for each network of Wi-Fi Direct, Wi-Fi and wired. Value: Disable, Enable

^{*2} Set "SSL" to [On] in Security Settings.

IP Filter (IPv4)

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [IP Filter (IPv4)]

Item	Description
IP Filter (IPv4)	Configure IP filters. IP filters restrict access to the machine based on the IP addresses and protocols.
	Specify the IP addresses or network addresses of the hosts to which access is granted from Command Center RX. If nothing is specified on this page, access from all hosts is allowed.
	Value: Off, On
	→ Command Center RX User Guide

IP Filter (IPv6)

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [IP Filter (IPv6)]

Item	Description
IP Filter (IPv6)	Configure IP filters. IP filters restrict access to the machine based on the IP addresses and protocols.
	Specify the IP addresses or network addresses of the hosts to which access is granted from Command Center RX. If nothing is specified on this page, access from all hosts is allowed. Value: Off, On Command Center RX User Guide

IPSec

 $[\textbf{Home}] \; \texttt{key} > [...] > [\textbf{System Menu}] > [\textbf{Network Settings}] > "\texttt{Network Settings}" \; [\textbf{IPSec}]$

Item	Description	
IPSec	Select whether to use IPSec.	
	Value: Off, On	

Restart Network

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Restart Network]

Item	Description
Restart Network	Restarts the network.

Optional Network

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Optional Network"

Configure settings for the optional Network Interface Kit.



NOTE

This menu is displayed when the optional Network Interface Kit or Wireless Network Interface Kit is installed.

Host Name

Item	Description	
Host Name	Check the host name of the machine. Host name can be changed from Command Center RX.	
	→ Changing Device Information (page 2-70)	

Wireless Network

Configure settings for the optional Wireless Network Interface Kit.



This function is displayed when the Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB-51) is installed.

Item		Description
Connection Status		You can check the wireless LAN status.
Setup	Available Network	Select access points to which the machine can be connected, enter the Preshared Key and start a connection.
	Push Button Method	If the access point supports the push button method, wireless settings can be configured using the push button. This setting executes push button, and the connection is started by pressing the push button on the access point.
		NOTE
		The push button method supports only the WPS.
	PIN Code Method (Device)	Starts connection using the machine's PIN code. Enter the PIN code into the access point. The PIN code of the machine is automatically generated.
	PIN Code Method (Terminal)	Starts connection using the PIN code of the access point. Enter the PIN code of the access point.

ltem			Description
Setup	Cust	om Setup	The detailed settings for wireless LAN can be changed.
		Network Name (SSID)	Set the SSID (Service Set Identifier) of the wireless LAN to which the machine connects.
			NOTE
			Up to 32 characters can be entered.
		Connection	Set the connection mode.
		Mode	Value: Ad Hoc, Infrastructure
			NOTE
			 Ad Hoc: Directly communicates with the device without going through an access point. This method cannot be used to connect to two or more devices.
			Infrastructure: Performs communication through an access point.
		Channel	Set channel. Use [-] / [+] or the numeric keys to enter a number.
			Value: 1 to 11
		Network Authentication	Select network authentication type. To select other options, open the device home page from a computer.
		Addiction	Value: Open, Shared, WPA-PSK*1, WPA2-PSK*1
		Encryption	Select encryption method. If the option other than [Disable] is selected, enter the WEP key or the Preshared key. The setting values vary depending on the Network Authentication setting. Select [Data Encryption]. When Network Authentication is set to [Open] or [Shared]:
			Value: Disable, WEP
			When Network Authentication is set to [WPA-PSK] or [WPA2-PSK]: Value: TKIP*2, AES, Auto*2, Preshared Key
			NOTE
			If [WEP] is selected, enter the WEP key. Up to 26 characters can be entered.
			If [TKIP], [AES] or [Auto] is selected, enter the Preshared key. Enter the value in 8 to 64 characters.
TCP/IP Setting	TCP/IP Setting		For details on setting value.
			<u>TCP/IP Setting (page 8-58)</u><u>Bonjour (page 8-64)</u>
			→ IPSec (page 8-65)
Others			For details on setting value.
			NetWare (page 8-68)
			 → AppleTalk (page 8-68) → MAC Address Filter (page 8-68)

^{*1} Not displayed if you selected [Ad Hoc] for "Connection Mode".
*2 Not displayed if you selected [WPA2-PSK] for "Network Authentication".

Wired Network Settings



This menu is displayed when the optional Network Interface Kit (IB-50) is installed.

l l	tem	Description
TCP/IP Setting		For details on setting value. → TCP/IP Setting (page 8-58) → Bonjour (page 8-64) → IPSec (page 8-65)
Others NetWare		Use NetWare to receive documents. → Operation Guide for the optional Network Interface Kit Value: Off, On
	AppleTalk	Selects whether to receive documents using AppleTalk.*1 Value: Off, On
	LAN Interface	Select the LAN Interface type.*1 Value: Auto, 10Base-Half, 10Base-Full, 100Base-Half, 100Base-Full, 1000BASE-T NOTE This function is displayed when the optional Network Interface Kit is installed.
	MAC Address Filter	Select whether to use MAC Address Filter. Departion Guide for the optional Network Interface Kit Value: Off, On

^{*1} The setting will be changed after restarting the device or network.

Restart Network

Item	Description	
Restart Network	Restarts the network.	

Connectivity

 $[\textbf{Home}] \; \texttt{key} > [...] > [\textbf{System Menu}] > [\textbf{Network Settings}] > "Connectivity"$

Item		Description
Bluetooth Settings	Bluetooth Keyboard	Use Bluetooth keyboard. Value: Off, On
	Device	Select a keyboard.
Fax Server	Fax Server	Select whether to use FAX Server. Value: On, Off
	Address Settings	This specifies a prefix, suffix, and domain name to be attached to a destination. NOTE For information about the fax server, contact the fax server administrator.
	File Format	Set the default type of the files. Value: PDF, TIFF, XPS
	Address Book Type	This specifies the External Address Book to be used. NOTE This setting is available when [FAX Server] is set to [On]. This is not displayed if the External Address Book setting is not configured. Command Center RX User Guide
NFC		Use NFC (Near Field Communication). Value: Off, On
Remote Operation		Configure settings for remote operation. Value: Off, On When you set it to [On], set the Use Restriction. Value: Off, Use Password, Administrator Only When selecting [Off], users without administrator privileges can also execute remote operation. When selecting [Use Password], enter the password, then re-enter it to confirm. When selecting [Administrator Only], only administrator can execute remote operation. NOTE When selecting [Administrator Only], the remote operation using VNC software is unavailable.

Others

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Others"

Item	Description
Primary Network (Client)	Select the network interface to be used for the send function that this machine functions as a client, the network authentication and connecting to external address book.
	Value: Wi-Fi, Wired Network, Optional Network
	 [Optional Network] is displayed when the optional Network Interface Kit (IB-50) or Wireless Network Interface Kit (IB-51) is installed.
	 You can set and use "[Wired Network] or [Wi-Fi]", and "[Optional Network] (IB-50 or IB-51)" individually for the e-mail send connection.
Restart Entire Device	Restart the machine without turning the power switch off. Use this to deal with any unstable operation by the machine. (Same as the computer restart.)

Security Settings

Configures security settings.

Security Quick Setup

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Security Settings] > [Security Quick Setup]

Item	Description
Security Quick Setup	Select a security level close to the your operating environment, and customize the security functions as necessary.
	Value
	Level 1: This is the factory default.
	Level 2: The security functions of network are changed.
	Level 3: All functions that protect the machine are enabled, and functions that are not protected are disabled.
	NOTE
	This function is available when you have logged in as administrator.
	→ Adding a User (Local User List) (page 9-6)
	The settings will be enabled when the device or network is restarted after selecting the level.
	Restart Entire Device (page 8-87)
	Restart Network (page 8-68)
	 If you change any security settings after selecting the security level, "Custom" is displayed on Security Quick Setup.

The configuration methods are as follows:

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Security Settings] > [Security Quick Setup]

NOTE

If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Select a security level according to your operating environment.

Configure the security function as necessary.

NOTE

Refer to the following for the settings of each security level.

→ Functions List of Security Quick Setup (page 11-38)

Restart the device or network.

- Restart Entire Device (page 8-87)
- → Restart Network (page 8-68)

Interface Block Setting

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Security Settings] > "Interface Block Setting"

This allows you to protect this machine by blocking the interface with external devices such as USB hosts or optional interfaces.

Item	Description	
USB Host	This locks and protects the USB port (USB host). Value: Unblock, Block	
USB Device	This locks and protects the USB interface connector (USB Device). Value: Unblock, Block	
USB Drive	This locks and protects the USB memory slot. Value: Unblock, Block NOTE This function is available when USB Host is set to [Unblock].	
Optional Interface 1 Optional Interface 2	This locks and protects the optional interface slots. Value: Unblock, Block NOTE You can set this feature for each slot.	
Restart Entire Device	Restart the machine without turning the power switch off. IMPORTANT After changing "Interface Block Setting", restart the network or turn the machine OFF and then ON.	

Device Security Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Security Settings] > "Device Security Settings"

Item	Description		
Unusable Time ^{*1}	Set a time period during which the machine will not print received faxes.		
	→ FAX Operation Guide		
Job Status/Job Logs Settings	→ Job Status/Job Logs Settings (page 8-51)		
Security Level	Specify the security level. Value Low: This mode is used during maintenance. Do not use normally. High: This is the security setting we recommend. Use this setting normally. Very High: In addition to [High] setting, this setting disables the machine settings to be changed from external command. NOTE This function is available when you have logged in as machine administrator. Adding a User (Local User List) (page 9-6)		
Remote Printing	→ Remote Printing (page 8-49)		
Software Verification	Verify the installed software. Select [Start Verification] to start verification. If an error occurs during software verification, contact your dealer or service representative.		
Administrator Authentication on Firm Update	Request administrator to approve when updating firmware. Value: Off, On		
Allowlisting	In case if the unauthorized program or the program that has tampered are installed, the stored data or the contents of the communication in this program might be stolen. Once this function is activated, execution of the unauthorized software or the tampering of the software can be prevented, and possible to maintain the reliability of the system. Value: Off, On NOTE After setting to [On], it is necessary to turn the power off and on. Once this function is activated, the start up of this product will be slowered. When detecting the malicious program, there are two types of method "Event report" and "Event log" to grasp the contents. The Event report can be enable by Command Center RX > "Management Settings: Notification/Report" [Recipient1 (to 3) E-mail Address] > specify the mail address, and [Notify when Malicious Program is Detected] > [On]. The Event log can be enable by Command Center RX > "Management Settings: History settings" [Device Log History] > [On] or, from the machine's control panel, [Home] key > [] > [System Menu] > [Notification/Report] > "History settings" [Device Log History] in the [Management Settings: History Settings] will be set to [On].		

^{*1} Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Data Security

 $[\textbf{Home}] \ \text{key} > [...] > [\textbf{System Menu}] > [\textbf{Security Settings}] > "Device Security Settings" [\textbf{Data Security}]$

Configure settings for data stored in the SSD, hard disk, and machine's memory.

Item	Description
Hard Disk/SSD Initialization	Change security functions.
	NOTE
	This function is displayed when the Data Security Function is active.
	Enter the security password to change security functions. The default setting is "000000".
Data Overwrite	The method used to overwrite data can be changed.
Method	Refer to the following for details.
	→ Data Encryption/Overwrite Operation Guide
	Value
	1-time Overwrite Method: The 1-time overwrite method overwrites unneeded data areas (in the case of overwriting) or all the data areas (in the case of system initialization) with specific numbers to prevent data restoration.
	3-time Overwrite Method (A): The 3-time overwrite method complies with DoD 5220.22-M, and overwrites unneeded data areas (in the case of overwriting) or all the data areas (in the case of system initialization) with specific numbers, their complements, and random numbers to prevent data restoration. Data restoration is not possible even through a sophisticated restoration technique.
	NOTE The 3-time Overwrite Method (A) may take more time than the 1-time Overwrite Method.
Security Password	Customize the security password so that only the administrator can use the Data Encryption/Overwrite.
	Enter a new security password 6 to 16 alphanumeric characters and symbols. Enter the password again for confirmation.
	Avoid any easy-to-guess numbers for the security password (e.g. 11111111 or 12345678).
System Initialization	Overwrite all the data stored in the hard disk/SSD when disposing of the machine.
	If you accidentally turn the power switch off during initialization, the hard disk/SSD might possibly crash or initialization might fail.
	NOTE
	If you accidentally turn the power switch off during initialization, turn the power switch on again. Initialization automatically restarts.

Item	Description
Data Sanitization	Return the following information registered in the machine to the factory defaults. Address Book Favorites System settings Fax transmission and reception / forwarding data Transmission histories Local FAX Name Local FAX Number Data saved in Custom Box Optional applications
	 NOTE Print the data sanitization report and then confirm that security data is deleted. ▶ Data Sanitization Report (page 8-26) Once in progress, the processing cannot canceled. Before performing this function, disconnect modular, network, and other cables. Before performing this function, set all interface block settings to [Unblock]. ▶ Interface Block Setting (page 8-71) Do not turn the power off while sanitizing the data. If the power is turned off during data erasing, erasing will be executed automatically when the power is restored, however, complete erasure cannot be guaranteed.

Item	Description
Run Immediately	Data Sanitization will be performed.
Reserve a Sanitization Time	Completely erase address and image data saved in the device at the scheduled time. Value: Off, On If [On] is selected, set the date and time that sanitization is to be performed. The setting range is Year (2000 to 2035), Month (1 to 12), Day (1 to 31), Hour (0 to 23).
Device Use After Sanitization	The device use restriction after the data sanitization is completed. The device cannot be used if [Prohibit] is selected. Value: Permit, Prohibit
Data Overwrite Method	Data Overwrite Method The method used to overwrite data can be changed. Refer to the following for details. ▶ Data Encryption/Overwrite Operation Guide Value: 3-time Overwrite Method (A): The 3-time overwrite method complies with DoD 5220.22-M, and overwrites unneeded data areas (in the case of overwriting) or all the data areas (in the case of system initialization) with specific numbers, their complements, and random numbers to prevent data restoration. Data restoration is not possible even through a sophisticated restoration technique. 7-time Overwrite Method (A): The 7-time overwrite method complies with DoD 5220.22-M, and overwrites unneeded data areas (in the case of overwriting) with specific numbers, their complements, and random numbers to prevent data restoration. Data restoration is not possible even through a sophisticated restoration technique. 7-time Overwrite Method (B): The 7-time overwrite method complies with BSI/ VSITR, and overwrites unneeded data areas (in the case of overwriting) with specific numbers, their complements, and random numbers to prevent data restoration. Data restoration is not possible even through a sophisticated restoration bechnique. NOTE The 7-time Overwrite Method (A) or 7-time Overwrite Method (B) may take more time than the 3-time Overwrite Method (A).
Data Sanitization Report	Print the data sanitization report.

Information erased

Category	Data erased
Devices/jobs	Job settings configured by users
	Network settings
	Image data saved in Document Box, etc.
	Data registered in One Touch keys
	Job histories
	User information (user list, address book, Document Box registered by the user, etc.)
	Account information of job accounting
	Network certificates
	Initial screen on machine changed by service representative
FAX (Option)	Fax settings configured by users
	Communication restriction settings
	Encryption key settings
	Transmission histories
	Scheduled jobs
	Conditional reception/forwarding settings
Application/favorite	Application/favorite added by a user or service representative
	Trial functions

System Stamp

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Security Settings] > "System Stamp"

Printing Jobs

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Security Settings] > "System Stamp" [Printing Jobs]

Configure settings for stamps when a document is printed.

After configuring the setting, return to the Copying Functions or Custom Box (Printing a Document) screen from System Menu, and select the [Reset] key.

Item		Description
Text Stamp	Text Stamp	Select whether to print a text stamp on all printing jobs. Value: Off, On
		NOTE When [On] is selected, the Text Stamp settings cannot be changed when printing.
	Edit Text	Select a text string to be stamped from templates, or enter a maximum of 32 characters for the text string.
		NOTE
		Templates that have been set will appear. For details on registering templates, refer to the following:
		→ Text (Text Stamp) (page 8-33)
	Stamp Method	Select the stamp method for the text stamp.
		Value: Each Print Page, Each Original Page
	Position	Set the text stamp position.
		Value: Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right
		NOTE
		Specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp position and angle when a stamp is placed on the back side of the paper in duplex printing.
	Font	Set the font of the text stamp. Value
		Font: Courier, Letter Gothic
		Size: Font sizes registered in Font (Text Stamp) are displayed.
		→ Font Size (Text Stamp) (page 8-33)
		Color: Black, White
		Style: None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic
		Display Pattern: Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite Density: 10 to 100% (in 10% increments)
		Density. To to 100 /6 (III 10 /6 Interientelits)

Item		Description
Bates Stamp	Bates Stamp	Select whether to print a bates stamp on all printing jobs. Value: Off, On
		NOTE When [On] is selected, the Bates Stamp settings cannot be changed when printing.
	Edit Text	Set the default Bates Stamp. (Max.: 6) Value: Date, User Name, Serial Number, Numbering, Text 1, Text 2
		NOTE To set [Text 1] or [Text 2], enter a maximum of 32 characters for the text string.
	Date Format	Set the date display format. Value: MM/DD/YYYY (Month/Day/Year), DD/MM/YYYY (Day/Month/Year), YYYY/MM/DD (Year/Month/Day)
	Numbering Default	Set the starting sequence number. If you select [Fixed Digit Number] > [On], you can set the number of digits of the serial number (1 to 7 digits). Value Start #: 1 to 9999999 Fixed Digit Number: Off, On
	Position	Set the stamp position to be printed. Value: Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right
		NOTE Specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp position when a stamp is placed on the back side of the paper in duplex printing.
	Font	Set the font of the text stamp. Value Font: Courier, Letter Gothic Size: Font sizes registered in Font (Text Stamp) are displayed. ▶ Font Size (Bates Stamp) (page 8-33) Character Border: Off, Circle, Rectangle, Underline Color: Black, White Style: None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic Display Pattern: Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite Density: 10 to 100% (in 10% increments)

Sending Jobs

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Security Settings] > "System Stamp" [Sending Jobs]

Configure stamp settings for sending documents.

After configuring the setting, return to the Sending Functions or Custom Box (Sending Documents) screen from System Menu, and select the [Reset] key.

Item		Description
Text Stamp	Text Stamp	Select whether to print a text stamp on all sending jobs. Value: Off, On
		NOTE
		When [On] is selected, the Text Stamp settings cannot be changed when sending.
	Edit Text	Select a text string to be stamped from templates, or enter a maximum of 32 characters for the text string.
		NOTE
		Templates that have been set will appear. For details on registering templates, refer to the following:
		→ Text (Text Stamp) (page 8-33)
	Position	Set the text stamp position.
		Value: Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right
		NOTE
		Specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp angle.
	Font	Set the font of the text stamp.
		Value
		Font: Courier, Letter Gothic
		Size: Font sizes registered in Font (Text Stamp) are displayed.
		→ Font Size (Text Stamp) (page 8-33)
		Character Border: Off, Circle, Rectangle, Underline
		Color: Black, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Red, Green, Blue, White
		Style: None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic Display Pattern: Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite
		Density: 10 to 100% (in 10% increments)
		Density. To to 100/0 (iii 10/0 inicienients)

Item		Description
Bates Stamp	Bates Stamp	Select whether to print a bates stamp on all sending jobs. Value: Off, On NOTE
		When [On] is selected, the Bates Stamp settings cannot be changed when printing.
	Edit Text	Set the default Bates Stamp. (Max.: 6) Value: Date, User Name, Serial Number, Numbering, Text 1, Text 2
		NOTE To set [Text 1] or [Text 2], enter a maximum of 32 characters for the text string.
	Date Format	Set the date display format. Value: MM/DD/YYYY (Month/Day/Year), DD/MM/YYYY (Day/Month/Year), YYYY/MM/DD (Year/Month/Day)
	Numbering Default	Set the starting sequence number. If you select [Fixed Digit Number] > [On], you can set the number of digits of the serial number (1 to 7 digits). Value Start #: 1 to 9999999 Fixed Digit Number: Off, On
	Position	Set the stamp position to be printed. Value: Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right NOTE Specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values.
	Font	Set the font of the text stamp. Value Font: Courier, Letter Gothic Size: Font sizes registered in Font (Text Stamp) are displayed. → Font Size (Bates Stamp) (page 8-33) Color: Black, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Red, Green, Blue, White Style: None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic Display Pattern: Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite Density: 10 to 100% (in 10% increments)

Storing Jobs

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Security Settings] > "System Stamp" [Storing Jobs]

Configure stamp settings for storing documents in USB drive.

After configuring the setting, return to the Custom Box (Storing Documents) screen from System Menu, and select the [Reset] key.

Item		Description
Text Stamp	Text Stamp	Select whether to print a text stamp on all storing jobs. Value: Off, On
		NOTE When [On] is selected, the Text Stamp settings cannot be changed when storing.
	Edit Text	Select a text string to be stamped from templates, or enter a maximum of 32 characters for the text string.
		NOTE
		Templates that have been set will appear. For details on registering templates, refer to the following:
		→ Text (Text Stamp) (page 8-33)
	Position	Set the text stamp position.
		Value: Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right
		NOTE
		Specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values.
	Font	Set the font of the text stamp.
		Value
		Font: Courier, Letter Gothic
		Size: Font sizes registered in Font (Text Stamp) are displayed.
		→ Font Size (Text Stamp) (page 8-33)
		Color: Black, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Red, Green, Blue, White
		Style: None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic
		Display Pattern: Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite Density: 10 to 100% (in 10% increments)
		Density. To to 100/0 (iii 10/0 iniciententa)

Item		Description
Bates Stamp	Bates Stamp	Select whether to print a bates stamp on all storing jobs. Value: Off, On NOTE When [On] is selected, the Bates Stamp settings cannot be changed when
	Edit Text	Set the default Bates Stamp. (Max.: 6) Value: Date, User Name, Serial Number, Numbering, Text 1, Text 2 NOTE To set [Text 1] or [Text 2], enter a maximum of 32 characters for the text string.
	Date Format	Set the date display format. Value: MM/DD/YYYY (Month/Day/Year), DD/MM/YYYY (Day/Month/Year), YYYY/MM/DD (Year/Month/Day)
	Numbering Default	Set the starting sequence number. If you select [Fixed Digit Number] > [On], you can set the number of digits of the serial number (1 to 7 digits). Value Start #: 1 to 9999999 Fixed Digit Number: Off, On
	Position	Set the stamp position to be printed. Value: Top Left, Top Middle, Top Right, Middle Left, Center, Middle Right, Bottom Left, Bottom Middle, Bottom Right NOTE Specify the detailed stamp position using numeric values, and to set the stamp angle.
	Font	Set the font of the text stamp. Value Font: Courier, Letter Gothic Size: Font sizes registered in Font (Text Stamp) are displayed. → Font Size (Bates Stamp) (page 8-33) Character Border: Off, Circle, Rectangle, Underline Color: Black, Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, Red, Green, Blue, White Style: None, Bold, Italic, Bold/Italic Display Pattern: Transparent, Clipping, Overwrite Density: 10 to 100% (in 10% increments)

Authentication Security

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Security Settings] > "Authentication Security" If user authentication is enabled, configure the user authentication settings.

→ Authentication Security (page 9-4)

Unknown User Settings

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Security Settings] > "Unknown User Settings"

This specifies the behavior for handling the jobs sent with unknown or unsent login user names or User ID.



NOTE

This function is displayed in case if User login administration or Job accounting is enabled.

Unknown ID Job (page 9-51)

Network

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Security Settings] > "Network"

Item	Description	
SSL	Select whether to use SSL for communication.	
	Value: Off, On	
Network Access	Select whether to communicate using SNMP and IPSec.	
	→ SNMPv1/v2c (page 8-62)	
	→ SNMPv3 (page 8-62)	
	▶ IPSec (page 8-65)	

Job Accounting/Authentication

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

Configure settings related to machine management.

- Overview of User Login Administration (page 9-2)
- Overview of Job Accounting (page 9-32)
- Unknown User Settings (page 9-51)

Add/Delete Application

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Add/Delete Application]

Configure settings for Application.

- ◆ Application (page 5-14)
- Applications (page 11-8)

Adjustment/Maintenance

Adjust printing quality and conduct machine maintenance.

Image Adjustment

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Adjustment/Maintenance] > "Image Adjustment"

Item			Description
Density			Adjust density.
Cop	Сору		Adjust copy density. Adjustment can be made in 7 levels.
			Value: -3 (Lighter), -2, -1, 0 (Normal), +1, +2, +3 (Darker)
Sen	Send/Box		Adjust scan density when sending or storing the data in Document Box. Adjustment can be made in 7 levels.
	*4		Value: -3 (Lighter), -2, -1, 0 (Normal), +1, +2, +3 (Darker)
Fax	x '		→ FAX Operation Guide
Backgrou	und Dens	sity Adj.	Darkens or lightens overall background density adjustment.
Cor	py (Auto)	Darkens or lightens overall background density adjustment during copying. Adjustment can be made in 7 levels.
			Value: -3 (Lighter), -2, -1, 0 (Normal), +1, +2, +3 (Darker)
Sen	Send/Box (Auto)		Darkens or lightens overall background density when sending images or storing them in the Document Box. Adjustment can be made in 7 levels.
			Value: -3 (Lighter), -2, -1, 0 (Normal), +1, +2, +3 (Darker)
Sharpnes	ss Adjus	tment	Adjust the sharpness of the image outline.
Cor	ру	All	Sharpen or blur overall image outlines during copying. Adjustment can be made in 7 levels.
			Value: -3 (Blur), -2, -1, 0, +1, +2, +3 (Sharpen)
		Text/Fine Line	Sharpen text/fine line during copying. Adjustment can be made in 4 levels. Value: 0 (Normal), 1, 2, 3 (Sharpen)
Sen	nd/Box	All	Sharpen or blur overall image outlines when sending or storing them in the Document Box. Adjustment can be made in 7 levels.
			Value: -3 (Blur), -2, -1, 0, +1, +2, +3 (Sharpen)
		Text/Fine Line	Adjust sharpness of the text/fine line when during sending or storing them in the Document Box. Adjustment can be made in 4 levels. Value: 0 (Normal), 1, 2, 3 (Sharpen)
Contrast			You can increase or decrease the overall contrast.
Cor	Сору		Increases or decreases the overall contrast of copies. Value: -3 (Lower), -2, -1, 0 (Normal), +1, +2, +3 (Higher)
Son	Send/Box		Increases or decreases the overall contrast when documents are sent or saved in a
Sen			document box. Value: -3 (Lower), -2, -1, 0 (Normal), +1, +2, +3 (Higher)
Auto Outon Ou		-4:	
Auto Color Correction		ction	whether the original is color or black and white in Auto Color Selection Mode. Setting a lower value will result in more originals being identified as color, while a larger value will tend to increase the number of originals being identified as black and white. Value: 1 (Color), 2, 3, 4, 5 (B & W)
Auto Colo	or Corre	ction	a lower value will result in more originals being identified as color, while a lawill tend to increase the number of originals being identified as black and values.

Item	Description
Correcting Black Lines	Correct fine lines (streaks caused by contamination), which may appear on the image, when the document processor is used. Value Off: No correction performed. On (Low): Correction performed. The reproduction of fine lines on the original may become lighter than when using [Off]. On (High): Select this item if a streak remains after using [On (Low)]. The reproduction of fine lines on the original may become lighter than when using [On (Low)].
Calibration Cycle	Set the calibration cycle. Value: Auto: Automatically sets the cycle for calibration. Short: Priority is given to image quality. Standard: Balances image quality and print speed. Long: Priority is given to print speed. NOTE When [Custom] is displayed as setting item, the setting cannot be changed.
Calibration	Calibrate the device to ensure correct toner overlapping and consistency with the original tone. Calibration (page 10-58) NOTE Perform Color Registration when correct toner overlapping is not ensured even after performing Calibration, and perform Tone Curve Adjustment if consistency with the original tone is not ensured.
Tone Curve Adjustment	After prolonged use, or from the effects of surrounding temperature or humidity, the printed output tone may differ from the original. Perform this function to ensure consistency with the original tone. Tone Curve Adjustment (page 10-56)
Developer Refresh	Adjust the printed image that is too light or incomplete, even though there is enough toner. Developer Refresh (page 10-58) NOTE Waiting time may be longer when the toner is refilled during developer refresh.
Auto Drum Refresh	This specifies the Auto Drum Refresh execution time. Value: Off: Auto Drum Refresh not performed. Short: Short Auto Drum Refresh execution time. Standard: Standard Auto Drum Refresh execution time. Long: Long Auto Drum Refresh execution time.

Item	Description
Drum Refresh	Remove image blur and white dots from the printout. It takes about 1 minute and 20 seconds. The time required may vary depending on the operating environment.
	→ <u>Drum Refresh (page 10-57)</u>
	NOTE Drum Refresh cannot be performed while printing. Execute Drum Refresh after the printing is done.
Laser Scanner Cleaning	Remove vertical white lines from the printout.
	→ Developer Refresh (page 10-58)

^{*1} Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Behavior Adjustment

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Adjustment/Maintenance] > "Behavior Adjustment"

Item	Description
Silent Mode	Set the Silent Mode. Select this mode when the running noise is uncomfortable. Value: Off, On NOTE When [On] is selected, it may take time for the next print job to start.
Drum Heater	Set the drum heater. Value: Off, On NOTE This setting does not appear in some regions.

Others

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Adjustment/Maintenance] > "Others"

Item		Description
Diagnostics	Memory Diagnostics	Perform this function to check the machine memory.
	Software Verification	→ Software Verification (page 8-72)

Item		Description
Restart/ Initialization	Restart Network	▶ Restart Network (page 8-65)
	Restart Network (Optional Network)	→ Restart Network (page 8-68)
	Restart Entire Device	→ Restart Entire Device (page 8-70)
	Format SSD	Format the SSD.
	Format SD Card	Format the SD card. To use an SD card, it is necessary to format the SD card on this machine first. When the formatting is complete, data can be written to the SD card.
	System Initialization	→ System Initialization (page 8-73)

9 User Authentication and Accounting (User Login, Job Accounting)

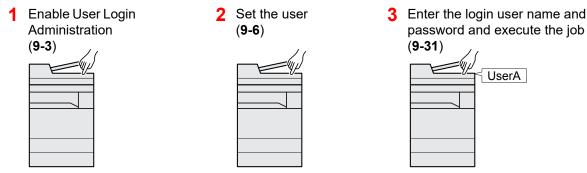
This chapter explains the following topics:

Overview of User Login Administration	9-2
Managing the Job Account from PC .	9-2
Managing the Users to Use TWAIN	
for Scanning	9-2
Managing the Users to Use WIA for	
Scanning	9-2
Managing the Users to Send Faxes	
from a PC	
Enabling User Login Administration	9-3
Setting User Login Administration	9-4
Authentication Security	9-4
Adding a User (Local User List)	
Changing User Properties	
User Login Administration for Printing	
Managing the Users to Scan Using	
TWAIN	9-13
Managing the Users to Scan Using	
WIA	9-14
Managing the Users that Send Faxes	
from a PC	9-15
Local Authorization	9-16
Server Settings	9-17
Group Authorization Settings	
Guest Authorization Settings	9-20
Obtain NW User Property	
Simple Login Settings	
ID Card Settings	9-28
PIN Login	
Using User Login Administration	
Login/Logout	
Overview of Job Accounting	
To Manage the Number of Sheets	0 0-
Used on Jobs Printed from a PC	9-32
Managing the Scan Job Account by	
Using TWAIN	9-32
Managing the Scan Job Account by	
Using WIA	9-32
Managing the FAX Job Transmitted	
from a PČ	9-32
Enabling Job Accounting	9-33

Job Accounting (Local)	9-34
Adding an Account	
Restricting the Use of the Machine	
Editing an Account	9-36
Deleting an Account	
Job Accounting for Printing	9-38
Job Accounting for Scan Using	
TWAIN	9-39
Job Accounting for Scan Using WIA	9-40
Job Accounting for the FAX	
Transmitted from a Computer	
Configuring Job Accounting	9-42
Default Counter Limit	9-42
Count by Paper Size	9-44
Counting the Number of Pages	
Printed	9-45
Print Accounting Report	9-47
Using Job Accounting	9-48
Login/Logout	9-48
Apply Limit	9-49
Copier/Printer Count	9-50
Unknown User Settings	9-51
Unknown ID Job	
Registering Information for a User	
whose ID is Unknown	9-52

Overview of User Login Administration

User login administration specifies how the user access is administered on this machine. Enter a correct login user name and password for user authentication to login.



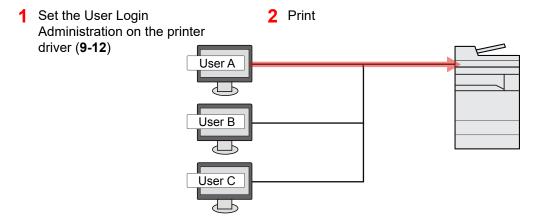
Access are in three levels - "User", "Administrator", and "Machine Administrator". The security levels can be modified only by the "Machine Administrator".

Managing the Job Account from PC

In addition to the above settings, the following are necessary to manage the job account from PC.

To Manage the Users to Print from PCs

Printer driver settings are necessary to manage the users that print on the machine from PCs.



Managing the Users to Use TWAIN for Scanning

TWAIN driver settings on the PC are necessary to manage the users that use TWAIN for scanning.

→ Managing the Users to Scan Using TWAIN (page 9-13)

Managing the Users to Use WIA for Scanning

WIA driver settings on the PC are necessary to manage the users that use WIA for scanning.

→ Managing the Users to Scan Using WIA (page 9-14)

Managing the Users to Send Faxes from a PC

FAX driver settings on the PC are necessary to manage the users that send faxes from a PC.

→ Managing the Users that Send Faxes from a PC (page 9-15)

The optional FAX Kit is required in order to make use of fax functionality.

Enabling User Login Administration

This enables user login administration. Select one of the following authentication methods:

Item	Descriptions
Local Authentication	User authentication based on user properties on the local user list stored in the machine.
Network Authentication	User authentication based on Authentication Server. Use a user property stored in Authentication Server to access the network authentication login page.

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "User Login Setting" [User Login].

Configure the settings.

Select [Local Authentication] or [Network Authentication].

Select [Off] to disable user login administration.

If you select [Local Authentication], set [Local Authorization].

▶ Local Authorization (page 9-16)

If you select [Network Authentication], set [Server Settings].

Server Settings (page 9-17)



NOTE

If you cannot login because of the setting of the machine, login with any administrator registered in the local user list and correct the settings.

Setting User Login Administration

This registers, alters and deletes users and configures the settings for User Login Administration.

Authentication Security

If user authentication is enabled, configure the user authentication settings.

User Account Lockout Setting

You can prohibit the use of a user account if an incorrect password is entered repeatedly to login with that account.

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication] > "Authentication Security" [User Account Lockout Settings]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Configure the settings.

The following settings can be selected.

Item	Descriptions
Lockout	Select whether or not account lockout policy is enabled. Value: Off, On
Lockout Policy	Specify the conditions and the extent to which the account lockout is applied. Value
	Number of Retries until Locked: Specify how many login retries are allowed until the account is locked out. (1 to 10 times)
	Lockout Duration:Specify how long the account is to be locked out until it is unlocked. (1 to 60 minutes)
	Lockout Target: Specify the extent to which the account lockout is applied. You can select from [All] or [Remote Login Only]. Remote Login Only locks out all operations from outside the operation panel.
Locked out Users List	Displays a list of locked out users. You can unlock a user by selecting the user in the list, and selecting [Unlock].
	NOTE
	This function is displayed when account lockout policy is enabled.

Password Policy Settings

You can prohibit the setting and use of passwords that do not comply with the password policy.

Setting the Password Policy makes it more difficult to break the password.

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication] > "Authentication Security" [Password Policy Settings]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Configure the settings.

The following settings can be selected.

Item	Descriptions
Password Policy	Select whether or not password policy is enabled. Value: Off, On
Minimum Password Length	Set the minimum password length of characters for password. Value: Off, On (1 to 64 characters)
Password Complexity	Set the password complexity. Value No more than two consecutive identical char: Off, On At least one uppercase letter (A-Z): Off, On At least one lowercase letter (a-z): Off, On At least one number (0-9): Off, On At least one symbol: Off, On
Maximum Password Age	Set the maximum password age. Value: Off, On (1 to 180 days)
Policy Violated User List	List of users do not meet password policy requirements.

Adding a User (Local User List)

You can add up to 1000 users (including the default login user name).

NOTE

By default, one of each default user with machine administrator rights and administrator privileges is already stored. Each user's properties are:

Machine Administrator

User Name: DeviceAdmin

4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 **Login User Name:** 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password:

Access Level: Machine Administrator

Administrator

Admin User Name: Login User Name: Admin

Login Password: xxxxxxxxx (Serial Number)

Access Level: Administrator

- → Checking the Equipment's Serial Number (page i)
- * Upper case and lower case letters are distinguished (case sensitive).

It is recommended to periodically change the user name, login user name and login password regularly for your security.

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "User Login Setting" [Add/Edit Local User].

Enter the user information.

[Add] > Enter the user information

Item	Descriptions
User Name ^{*1}	Enter the name displayed on the user list (up to 32 characters).
Login User Name*1	Enter the login user name to login (up to 64 characters). The same login user name cannot be registered.
Login Password*1	Enter the password to login (up to 64 characters). Reenter the same password for confirmation.

Item		Descriptions
Access Level Settings*1		Select "Administrator" or "User" for user access privileges.
	Access Level	Select [Administrator] or [User] for user access privileges.
	System Admin Permission	If the user privileges set in the [Access Level] are [User], select the privileges that can be set from the following. Original/Paper Settings Address Book User/Job Account Information Basic Network Settings Basic Device Settings Advanced Device/Network Settings
Account Name		Add an account where the user belongs. The user, who registered his/her account name, can login without entering the account ID. Overview of Job Accounting (page 9-32) NOTE Search by account ID or account name. Select either [Search (No.)] or [Search (Name)] to switch between [Search (No.)] and [Search (Name)]. Select [Account Name] or [Account ID] to sort the account list.
Email Address		The user can register his/her E-mail address. The registered address will be automatically selected for subsequent operations that need any E-mail function.
ID Ca	ard Info	Register ID card information. Place the ID card on the ID card reader. NOTE This function is displayed when the optional ID Card Authentication Kit is activated. Applications (page 11-8)

	Item	Descriptions
Local Authorization ^{*2}		Set usage authority for each user.
	Print Restriction	Select whether or not use of the print function of the printer is prohibited. Applicable print functions are as follows: • Print from Box • Print from USB Drive • Print Report • Print from PC
	Copy Restriction	Select whether or not use of the copy print function is prohibited.
	Duplex Restriction	Select whether only duplex printing is allowed.
	Combine Restriction	Specify whether only Combine is allowed.
	EcoPrint Restriction	Specify whether only EcoPrint is allowed.
	Send Restriction	Select whether or not use of the send function is prohibited.
	Fax TX Restriction*3	Select whether or not use of the fax send function is prohibited.
	Storing Restriction in Box	Select whether or not use of the box store function is prohibited.
	Storing Restr. in USB	Select whether or not use of the USB Drive store function is prohibited.
My Panel		You can register the language selection, initial screen, and shortcut settings for each user. Settings registered here can be applied simply by logging in.

- *1 Be sure to enter the items.
- *2 Displayed when Local Authorization is enabled.
 - → Local Authorization (page 9-16)
- *3 Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

NOTE

- · For details on entering characters, refer to the following:
 - → Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
- If you selected [Send] or [Fax] in the Default Screen for "My Panel", select the screen to display from [Destination], [Machine Address Book], or [Ext Address Book].

Select [Save].

A new user is added on the local user list.



If simple login is enabled, a confirmation screen appears when new registration is finished asking if you will configure simple login settings. To configure simple login settings, select [Yes]. If you select [No], you will return to the user list screen.

For the procedure for configuring simple login settings, refer to the following:

→ Simple Login Settings (page 9-25)

Changing User Properties

Types of user properties that could be changed may be different depending on user access privilege.

NOTE

To change the user information of the machine administrator, you must log in with machine administrator authority. You can only view user information if you log in as a regular user.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "User Login Setting" [Add/Edit Local User].

Change the user properties.

Changing user properties

1 Select [...] (information icon) for the user whose properties you wish to change.

NOTE

- · Select [User Name] or [Login User ID] to sort the user list.
- Search by name or login user name. Select either [Search (Login)] or [Search (Name)] to switch between [Search (Login)] and [Search (Name)].

2 Enter the user information.

ltem
User Name
Login User Name ^{*1}
Login Password
Access Level Settings*1
Account Name*1
Email Address
ID Card Information*1
Local Authorization*1*2
My Panel

^{*1} You can change only when you log in with machine administrator authority.

For details on each items, refer to step 3 of "Adding a User (Local User List)" to change a user property.

- → Adding a User (Local User List) (page 9-6)
- 3 Select [Save].

The user information is changed.

Deleting a user

- 1 Select the user to delete.
- 2 [Delete] > [Delete]

The selected user will be deleted.



The default user with machine administrator rights cannot be deleted.

^{*2} Displayed when Local Authorization is enabled.

[▶] Local Authorization (page 9-16)

User Login Administration for Printing

It is possible to manage the users that print on this machine from a PC.

Setting Printer Driver

To manage the users that print on this machine from a PC, the following settings are necessary in the printer driver. Instructions are based on interface elements as they appear in Windows 10.

Display the screen.

1 Click [Start] button on the Windows, and then select [Windows System], [Control Panel], and [View devices and printers].

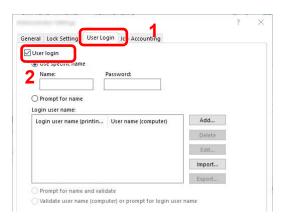
NOTE

In Windows 8.1, select [**Settings**] in charms on Desktop, and select [**Control Panel**], and then [**Devices and Printers**].

- 2 Right-click the printer driver icon of the machine, and click the [Printer properties] menu of the printer driver.
- 3 Click [Administrator] on the [Device Settings] tab.

Configure the settings.

1 Select [User Login] on the [User Login] tab.



2 Set the User Login Administration.

[**Use specific name**]: This option can be used to specify a user name and password to use the same User login for every print job. If this option is selected, the user does not have to type the name and password for each print job.

[**Prompt for name**]: A screen for entering the user name and password will be displayed when attempting a printing. The user name and password must be entered each time a printing is attempted.

[**Prompt for name and validate**]: A screen for entering the user name and password will be displayed when attempting a printing. The user name and password stored in the Login user name list needs to be entered. The user name and password must be entered each time a printing is attempted.

[Validate user name (computer) or prompt for login user name]: When printing, the Windows user name is searched in the "Login user names" and printing is possible if the name is registered. If the name is not registered, the printing will be canceled for users with only user authority. If the user has administrator privileges, the screen to enter the user name and password will appear.

3 Click [OK].

NOTE

For other settings of job accounting, refer to the following:

Printer Driver User Guide

Managing the Users to Scan Using TWAIN

It is possible to manage the users that scan using TWAIN.

Setting TWAIN Driver

To manage the users that scan using TWAIN, the following settings are necessary in the TWAIN driver. Instructions are based on interface elements as they appear in Windows 10.

Display the screen.

1 Click the search box in the taskbar, and type "TWAIN Driver Setting" in there. Select [TWAIN Driver Setting] in the search list. TWAIN Driver screen is displayed.



NOTE

In Windows 8.1, select [Search] in charms, and enter "TWAIN Driver Setting" in the search box. Click [TWAIN Driver Setting] in the search list then the TWAIN Driver Setting screen appears.

Select the machine, and click [Edit].



Configure the settings.

- 1 Click [User Authentication Settings].
- 2 Select the checkbox beside [Authentication], and enter Login User Name and Password.



3 Click [OK].

Managing the Users to Scan Using WIA

It is possible to manage the users that scan using WIA.

Setting WIA Driver

To manage the users that scan using WIA, the following settings are necessary in the WIA driver. Instructions are based on interface elements as they appear in Windows 10.

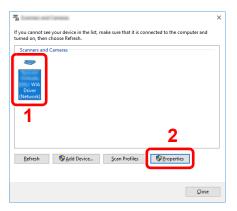
Display the screen.

1 Click [Start] button on the Windows, and then select [Windows System], [Control Panel]. Click the search box in the Control Panel, and type "Scanner" in there. Select [View scanners and cameras] in the search list. The Scanners and Cameras screen is displayed.

NOTE

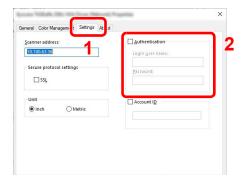
In Windows 8.1, click [**Search**] in charms, and enter "Scanner" in the search box. Click [**View scanners and cameras**] in the search list then the Scanners and Cameras screen appears.

2 Select the same name as this machine from WIA Drivers, and press [Properties].



Configure the settings.

Select the checkbox beside [Authentication] on the [Settings] tab, and enter Login User Name and Password.



Managing the Users that Send Faxes from a PC

It is possible to manage the users that send faxes from a PC.

Setting Fax Driver

To manage the users that send faxes from a PC, the following settings are necessary in the FAX driver. Instructions are based on interface elements as they appear in Windows 10.

Display the screen.

1 Click [Start] button on the Windows, and then select [Windows System], [Control Panel], and [View devices and printers].

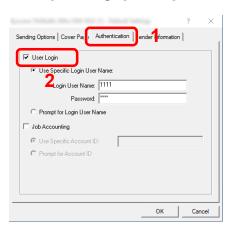
NOTE

In Windows 8.1, select [Settings] in charms on Desktop, and select [Control Panel], and then [Devices and Printers].

- 2 Right-click the printer driver icon of the machine, and click the [**Printing preferences**] menu of the printer driver.
- 3 Click [FAX TX Setting] on the [Printing Preferences] window.

Configure the settings.

1 Select [User Login] on the [Authentication] tab.



2 Set the User Login Administration.

[Use Specific Login User Name]: This option can be used to specify a user name and password to use the same User login for every FAX job. If this option is selected, the user does not have to type the name and password for each FAX job.

[**Prompt for Login User Name**]: A screen for entering the user name and password will be displayed when attempting a transmission. The user name and password must be entered each time a transmission is attempted.

Local Authorization

Select whether or not to use Local Authorization.

NOTE

When using Local Authorization, the user authentication type must be set to [Local Authentication].

▶ Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "User Login Setting" [Local Authorization].

Configure the settings.

Select [Off] or [On].

Server Settings

Set the server type when network authentication is enabled.

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "User Login Setting" [User Login] > [Network Authentication]

Configure the settings.

1 Select [NTLM], [Kerberos] or [Ext.] as the server type and enter the host name (256 characters or less) for the Authentication Server.
When selecting [Ext.] as the server type, enter the port number.

NOTE

- Selecting [Add/Edit/Delete Domain] displays the domain registration list. In the domain registration list screen, select [Add/Edit], and enter the domain name. Up to 10 domain names can be registered.
- If two or more domains are registered, select [**Default Domain**] and select the default domain.
- 2 Select [OK].

NOTE

If the login user name and password are rejected, check the following settings.

- · Network Authentication setting of the machine
- User property of the Authentication Server
- · Date and time setting of the machine and the Authentication Server

Group Authorization Settings

Set restrictions of the machine usage by each individual group registered in the authentication server.

NOTE

To use the group authorization settings, [**Network Authentication**] must be selected for the authentication method in "Enabling User Login Administration". Select [**On**] for "LDAP" in "Protocol Settings".

- **▶** Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)
- → Protocol Settings (page 8-60)

Group Authorization

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "User Login Setting" [Group Authorization].

Configure the settings.

Select [On] or [Off].

Group List (Up to 20)

Register the groups that are restricted the machine usage. Other users and groups belong to "Others".

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

҈ NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "User Login Setting" [Group List].

2 Configure the settings.

[Add] > Add information on each item

Item	Descriptions
Group Name	Enter the name displayed on the group list (up to 32 characters).
Group ID*1	Enter the ID displayed on the group list (between 1 and 4294967295).
Access Level	Select [Administrator] or [User] for group access privileges.
Print Restriction	Select whether or not to reject usage of print functions for the printer. Applicable print functions are as follows: Print from Box Print from USB Drive Print Report Print from PC
Copy Restriction	Select whether or not to reject usage of copy functions.
Duplex Restriction	Select whether only duplex printing is allowed.
Combine Restriction	Specify whether only Combine is allowed.
EcoPrint Restriction	Specify whether only EcoPrint is allowed.
Send Restriction	Select whether or not to reject usage of the send functions.
Fax TX Restriction*2	Select whether or not to reject usage of the FAX transmissions.
Storing Restriction in Box	Select whether or not to reject usage of storing in the document boxes.
Storing Restr. in USB	Select whether or not to reject usage of storing in the USB drive.

^{*1} For "Group ID", specify PrimaryGroupID assigned by Active Directory of Windows.

NOTE

For details on entering characters, refer to the following:

→ Character Entry Method (page 11-10)

3 Register the group.

Select [Save].

A new group is added on the group list.

^{*2} Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Guest Authorization Settings

When User Login Administration is enabled, set the functions that guest users who cannot log in to the machine are allowed to use.



NOTE

To use Guest Authorization Set., User Login Administration must be enabled in "Enabling User Login Administration".

Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)

Enabling Guest Authorization

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]



NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "User Login Setting" [Guest Authorization Set.].

Configure the settings.

Select [On] or [Off].



NOTE

- · If the guest authorization setting is enabled, the [Logout] key must be selected when logging in.
- · In the guest user default settings, only monochrome copying can be used. If you wish to use a different function, log in as a user who can use that function, or change the settings in the guest properties.

Configuring Guest Property

Register guest user information and functions that are restricted.

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "User Login Setting" [Guest Property].

Configure the settings.

Check the settings and change or add information as needed.

Item	Descriptions
User Name	Enter the name displayed on the user list (up to 32 characters). The default setting is "GuestUser".
Access Level	The authority of the user appears. This cannot be changed.
Account Name	Add an account where the user belongs. If the user does not belong to any account, select [Other Account].

Item	Descriptions
Authorization Rules	Set usage authority for each user. The items you can restrict the access level with are as follows.
	Print Restriction:
	Select whether or not use of the print function of the printer is prohibited.
	Applicable print functions are as follows: • Print from Box • Print from USB Drive
	Copy Restriction:
	Select whether or not use of the copy print function is prohibited.
	Duplex Restriction:
	Select whether only duplex printing is allowed.
	Combine Restrict.:
	Specify whether only Combine is allowed.
	EcoPrint Restriction:
	Specify whether only EcoPrint is allowed.
	Send Restriction:
	Select whether or not use of the send function is prohibited.
	Fax TX Restriction:*1
	Select whether or not use of the fax send function is prohibited.
	Storing Restriction in Box:
	Select whether or not use of the box store function is prohibited.
	Storing Restr. in USB:
	Select whether or not use of the USB Drive store function is prohibited.

^{*1} Displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

3 Register the guest user information.

Select [OK].

Obtain NW User Property

Set the required information to obtain the network user property from the LDAP server. The user name and E-mail address obtained with this setting is shown in the user information, the status confirmation screen, and the header of E-mail.

NOTE

To obtain the network user property from the LDAP server, [Network Authentication] must be selected for the authentication method in "Enabling User Login Administration". Select [On] for "LDAP" in "Protocol Settings".

▶ Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3) Protocol Settings (page 8-60)

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

◯ NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "User Login Setting" [Obtain NW User Property].

Configure the settings.

Select [On] for "Obtain NW User Property" and add information on each item

	Item	Descriptions	
LDAI	LDAP Server Information		
	Server Name*1	Enter the LDAP server name or the IP address (up to 64 characters). If a server name is not entered, user information will be acquired from the server set for Network Authentication.	
	Port	Port number for LDAP server. The default port number is 389.	
Acqu	Acquisition of User Information		
	Name 1 ^{*2}	Enter the LDAP Attribute to obtain the user name to be displayed from the LDAP server (up to 32 characters).	
	Name 2 ^{*3}	Enter the LDAP Attribute to obtain the user name to be displayed from the LDAP server (up to 32 characters).	
	Email Address*4	Enter the LDAP Attribute to obtain the E-mail address from the LDAP server (up to 256 characters).	
Auth	entic at Type ^{*5}	Set the authentication method. Select [Simple] or [SASL]. After changing the setting, restart the system or turn the power off and then on.	

Item	Descriptions
Search Timeout	Set the amount of time to wait before time-out in seconds (from 5 to 255 seconds).
LDAP Security	Select the type of encryption according to the type of security employed by the LDAP server. The value is [Off], [SSL/TLS] or [STARTTLS].

^{*1} If using Active Directory of Windows, the server name may be the same as the server name entered in the network authentication.

- *2 If using Active Directory of Windows, display Name of Attribute may be used as "Name 1".
- *3 "Name 2" can be left out. When you assign display Name in "Name 1" and department in "Name 2", and if the value of displayName is "Mike Smith" and the value of department is "Sales" in Active Directory of Windows, the user name appears as "Mike Smith Sales".
- *4 If using Active Directory of Windows, mail of Attribute may be used as E-mail Address.
- *5 Appears when the server type is set to "Kerberos" in "Network Authentication".

3 Select [OK].

Simple Login Settings

The simple login function allows users to log in simply by selecting a user name. Users must be registered in advance to use this functionality.

NOTE

- · For user registration, refer to the following:
 - → Adding a User (Local User List) (page 9-6)
- To use Simple Login, User Login Administration must be enabled in "Enabling User Login Administration".
 - ► Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)
- When the guest authorization setting is enabled, the Simple Login screen is not displayed.

Enabling Simple Login

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "User Login Setting" [Simple Login].

Configure the settings.

Select [On] or [Off].

Simple Login Key

Register users to use simple login. You can add up to 20 users.

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "User Login Setting" [Simple Login Key].

Enter the user information.

- Select the key to which you want to register a user.
- 2 Enter the user name to be displayed.

NOTE

For details on entering characters, refer to the following:

- Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
- 3 Select [Select user].
- 4 To specify the user from local users, select [Local User]. To specify from network users, select [Network User].

The procedure differs depending on the transmission method selected.

Specifying the user from local users

Select the user to be set for simple login.

NOTE

- Search by login user name or name. Select either [Search (Login)] or [Search (Name)] to switch between [Search (Login)] and [Search (Name)].
- Select [User Name] or [Login User Name] to sort the user list.

Specifying the user from network users



Select the entry field for "Login User Name" and "Login Password", enter the information of the user to be registered, and select [OK].

If you are specifying a user for whom a domain is set in network authentication, select the "Domain" and select the domain where the user is registered.



For details on entering characters, refer to the following:

- Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
- 5 Select [On] or [Off] for "Password".
- 6 Select the user icon to be displayed.

Register the user.

Select [Save].

ID Card Settings

If ID card authentication is enabled, select the authentication type.

NOTE

This functions appears when the Card Authentication kit is activated.

→ Applications (page 11-8)

Keyboard Login

When ID card authentication is enabled, select whether or not login by keyboard is allowed.

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "ID Card Settings" [Keyboard Login].

Configure the settings.

Select [Permit] or [Prohibit].

Additional Authentication

Select whether or not to require password entry after authenticating by ID card.



■ NOTE

This function does not appear when the server type is set to [NTLM] or [Kerberos] in "Network Authentication".

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]



■ NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "ID Card Settings" [Additional Authentication].

Configure the settings.

Select [Off], [Use Password] or [Use PIN Code].



[Use PIN Code] is displayed only when using PIN Code Authorization.

→ PIN Login (page 9-30)

PIN Login



NOTE

When using PIN Code Authorization, the network authentication must be enabled and [Ext.] must be selected for server type.

- **▶** Enabling User Login Administration (page 9-3)
- Server Settings (page 9-17)

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]



NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "User Login Setting" [PIN Login].

Configure the settings.

Select [On] or [Off].

Using User Login Administration

This section explains procedures while setting job accounting.

Login/Logout

If user login administration is enabled, the login user name and login password entry screen appears each time you use this machine.

Use the procedure below to login and logout.

Login

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, log in by referring to the following:

▶ Login (page 2-30)

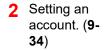
Logout

When the operations are complete, select the [**Logout**] key to return to the login user name and login password entry screen.

Overview of Job Accounting

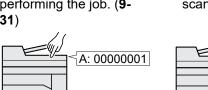
Job accounting manages the copy/print/scan/FAX count accumulated by individual accounts by assigning an ID to each account.

1 Enable job accounting. (9-33)

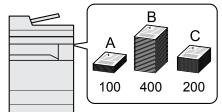




3 Enter the assigned account ID when performing the job. (9-31)

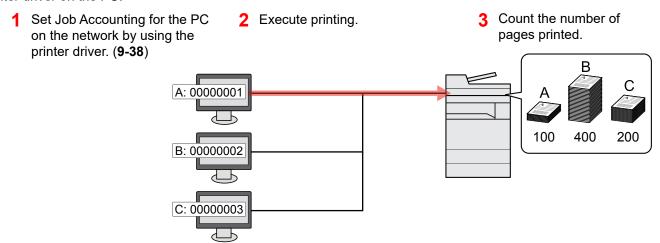


4 Count the number of pages copied, printed, scanned and faxed.



To Manage the Number of Sheets Used on Jobs Printed from a PC

To manage the number of jobs to be printed from the PC on the network, you need to configure settings by using the printer driver on the PC.



Managing the Scan Job Account by Using TWAIN

To manage the scan job account by using TWAIN, you need to configure the TWAIN driver settings on the computer connected to the machine.

→ Job Accounting for Scan Using TWAIN (page 9-39)

Managing the Scan Job Account by Using WIA

To manage the scan job account by using WIA, you need to configure the WIA driver settings on the computer connected to the machine.

→ Job Accounting for Scan Using WIA (page 9-40)

Managing the FAX Job Transmitted from a PC

To manage the number of FAX jobs transmitted from the PC, you need to configure the settings by using the FAX Driver on the PC.

→ Job Accounting for the FAX Transmitted from a Computer (page 9-41)

The optional FAX Kit is required in order to make use of fax functionality.

Enabling Job Accounting

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "Job Accounting Setting" [Job Accounting].

Configure the settings.

Select [Local] or [Network].

Select [Off] to disable job accounting.

NOTE

When the display returns to System Menu default screen, logout is automatically executed and the screen to enter the Account ID appears. To continue the operation, enter the Account ID.

Job Accounting (Local)

You can add, change and delete an account and set the restriction for each account.

Adding an Account

Up to 1000 individual accounts can be added.

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "Job Accounting Setting" [Add/Edit Job Accounting].

Enter the account information.

1 [Add] > Add information on each item

Item	Descriptions
Account Name	Enter the account name (up to 32 characters).
Account ID	Enter the account ID as many as eight digits (between 0 and 9999999).
Restriction	This prohibits printing/scanning or restricts the number of sheets to load.
	Restricting the Use of the Machine (page 9-35)

NOTE

- · For details on entering characters, refer to the following:
 - → Character Entry Method (page 11-10)
- Any "Account ID" that has already registered cannot be used. Enter any other account ID.
- 2 Select [Redister].

A new account is added on the Account List.

Restricting the Use of the Machine

This section explains how to restrict the use of the machine by account or the number of sheets available.

The items that can be restricted differ depending on whether "Individual" or "Total" is selected for "Copy/Print Count".

▶ Copier/Printer Count (page 9-50)

Restriction Items

[Individual] selected for "Copy/Printer Count"

Item	Descriptions
Copy Restriction (Total)	Limits the number of sheets used for copying.
Print Restriction (Total)	Limits the number of sheets used for printing. Applicable print functions are as follows: Print from Box Print from USB Drive Print Report Print from PC
Scan Restriction (Others)	Limits the number of sheets scanned (excludes copying).
Fax TX Restriction*1	Limits the number of sheets sent by fax.
Fax Port Restriction	Restricts the ports used for faxing. This is displayed when two optional FAX Kits are installed.

^{*1} This is displayed when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

[Total] selected for Copy/Printer Count

Item	Descriptions
Print Restriction (Total)	Limits the total number of sheets used for copying and printing.
Scan Restriction (Others)	Limits the number of sheets scanned (excludes copying).
Fax TX Restriction*1	Limits the number of sheets sent by fax.
Fax Port Restriction	Restricts the ports used for faxing. This is displayed when two optional FAX Kits are installed.

^{*1} This is displayed when the optional FAX Kit is installed.



Select [Off], [Use Port 1 Only] or [Use Port 2 Only] as the "Fax Port Restriction" setting.

Applying Restriction

Restriction can be applied in the following modes:

Item	Descriptions
Off	No restriction is applied.
Counter Limit	Restricts the print counter in one-page increments up to 9,999,999 copies.
Reject Usage	Restriction is applied.

Editing an Account

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "Job Accounting Setting" [Add/Edit Job Accounting].

Edit an account.

1 Select [...] (information icon) for the account name you wish to edit.

NOTE

- Search by account ID or account name. Select either [Search (ID)] or [Search (Name)] to switch between [Search (ID)] and [Search (Name)].
- Select [Account Name] or [Account ID] to sort the account list.
- 2 Change the account information.
- 3 Select [Save].

The account information is changed.

Deleting an Account

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "Job Accounting Setting" [Add/Edit Job Accounting].

Delete an account.

1 Select the account name you wish to delete.

NOTE

- Search by account ID or account name. Select either [Search (ID)] or [Search (Name)] to switch between [Search (ID)] and [Search (Name)].
- Select [Account Name] or [Account ID] to sort the account list.
- 2 [Delete] > [Delete]

The account is deleted.

Job Accounting for Printing

The number of jobs to be printed from the computer can be managed by Job Accounting.

Setting Printer Driver

To manage the number of jobs to be printed from the PC on the network, you need configure the following settings by using the printer driver on the PC. Instructions are based on interface elements as they appear in Windows 10.

Display the screen.

1 Click [Start] button on the Windows, and then select [Windows System], [Control Panel], and [View devices and printers].

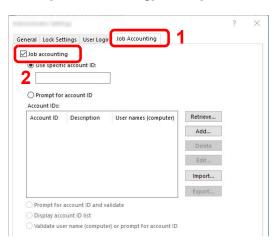
NOTE

In Windows 8.1, select [**Settings**] in charms on Desktop, and select [**Control Panel**], and then [**Devices and Printers**].

- 2 Right-click the printer driver icon of the machine, and click the [**Printer properties**] menu of the printer driver.
- 3 Click [Administrator] on the [Device Settings] tab.

Configure the settings.

Select [Job accounting] on the [Job Accounting] tab.



2 Set the Account ID.

[Use specific account ID]: Enter the Account ID. Printing will be performed using the entered Account ID. If this option is selected, the user does not have to enter the Account ID for each print job.

[Prompt for account ID]: A screen for entering the Account ID will be displayed when attempting a printing. The Account ID must be entered each time a printing is attempted.

[Prompt for account ID and validate]: A screen for entering the Account ID will be displayed when attempting a printing. The Account ID stored in the Account ID list needs to be entered. The Account ID must be entered each time a printing is attempted.

[Display account ID list]: The Account ID list is displayed when printing. The Account ID to be used needs to be selected from the list.

[Validate user name (computer) or prompt for account ID]: When printing, the Windows user name is searched in the "Account IDs" and printing is possible if the name is registered. If the Account ID is not registered, the screen for entering the Account ID will appear.

3 Click [OK].



NOTE

For other settings of job accounting, refer to the following:

Printer Driver User Guide

Job Accounting for Scan Using TWAIN

The number of jobs scanned by using TWAIN can be managed by Job Accounting.

Setting TWAIN Driver

To manage the number of jobs scanned by using TWAIN, you need to configure the following settings by using the TWAIN Driver on the computer. Instructions are based on interface elements as they appear in Windows 10.

Display the screen.

1 Click the search box in the taskbar, and type "TWAIN Driver Setting" in there. Select [TWAIN Driver Setting] in the search list. TWAIN Driver screen is displayed.



NOTE

In Windows 8.1, select [Search] in charms, and enter "TWAIN Driver Setting" in the search box. Click [TWAIN Driver Setting] in the search list then the TWAIN Driver Setting screen appears.

Select the machine, click [Edit].



Configure the settings.

- 1 Click [User Authentication Settings].
- 2 Select the checkbox beside [Account], and enter the account ID.



Job Accounting for Scan Using WIA

The number of jobs scanned by using WIA can be managed by Job Accounting.

Setting WIA Driver

To manage the number of jobs scanned by using WIA, you need to configure the following settings by using the WIA Driver on the computer. Instructions are based on interface elements as they appear in Windows 10.

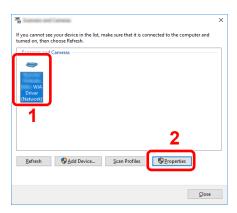
Display the screen.

1 Click [Start] button on the Windows, and then select [Windows System], [Control Panel]. Click the search box in the Control Panel, and type "Scanner" in there. Select [View scanners and cameras] in the search list. The Scanners and Cameras screen is displayed.

NOTE

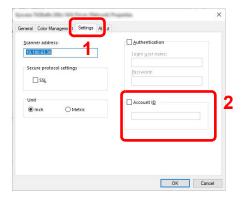
In Windows 8.1, click [Search] in charms, and enter "Scanner" in the search box. Click [View scanners and cameras] in the search list then the Scanners and Cameras screen appears.

2 Select the same name as this machine from WIA Drivers, and press [Properties].



Configure WIA Driver. 2

1 Select the checkbox beside [Account ID] on the [Settings] tab, and enter the Account ID.



Job Accounting for the FAX Transmitted from a Computer

The number of FAX jobs transmitted from the computer can be managed by Job Accounting.



■ NOTE

FAX functions are available only on products with the fax function installed.

Setting FAX Driver

To manage the number of FAX jobs transmitted from the computer, you need to configure the following settings by using the FAX Driver on the computer. Instructions are based on interface elements as they appear in Windows 10.

Display the screen.

1 Click [Start] button on the Windows, and then select [Windows System], [Control Panel], and [View devices and printers].



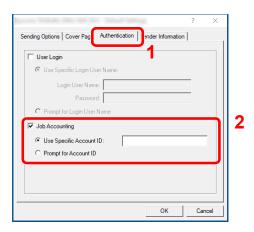
■ NOTE

In Windows 8.1, select [Settings] in charms on Desktop, and select [Control Panel], and then [Devices and Printers].

- 2 Right click the name of the machine to be used as the FAX Driver and select [Printing preferences] from the resulting pull-down menu.
- 3 Click [FAX TX Setting] in the [Printing Preferences] window.

Configure the settings. 2

1 Select [Job Accounting] on the [Authentication] tab.



2 Set the Job Accounting.

[Use Specific Account ID]: This option can be used to specify an account ID to use the same Account ID for every FAX job. If this option is selected, the user does not have to enter the Account ID for each FAX job.

[Prompt for Account ID]: A screen for entering the Account ID will be displayed when attempting a transmission. The Account ID must be entered each time a transmission is attempted.

Configuring Job Accounting

Default Counter Limit

When you add a new account, you can change the default restrictions on the number of sheets used. You can set any number from 1 to 9,999,999.

The items that can be set differ depending on whether [Individual] or [Total] is selected for "Copy/Print Count".

Copier/Printer Count (page 9-50)

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "Job Accounting Setting" [Job Accounting Setting].

Configure the settings.

Select the item for "Default Counter Limit" > use [+], [-] or the numeric keys to enter the default restriction on the number of sheets > [**OK**]

[Individual] selected for "Copy/Printer Count"

Item	Description
Copy Restriction (Total)	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for copying.
Print Restriction (Total)	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for printing. Applicable print functions are as follows: Print from Box Print from USB Drive Print Report Print from PC
Scan Restriction (Others)	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for scanning (excludes copying).
Fax TX Restriction*1	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for sending faxes.

^{*1} This function is displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

[Total] selected for "Copy/Printer Count"

Item	Description
Print Restriction (Total)	Sets the default restriction on the total number of sheets used for copying and printing.
Scan Restriction (Others)	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for scanning (excludes copying).
Fax TX Restriction*1	Sets the default restriction on the number of sheets used for sending faxes.

^{*1} This function is displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.

Count by Paper Size

This counts the number of pages by paper size (e.g. Letter).

■ NOTE

Paper size is available in five types, 1 to 5. These types are specified in accounting reports.

Print Accounting Report (page 9-47)

In addition to paper size, media type can also be specified (e.g. count the letter-size color paper used). If you do not specify the media type, the number of used sheets will be counted for the specified sheet size, regardless of the media

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "Job Accounting Setting" [Job Accounting Setting].

Configure the settings.

- 1 "Count by Paper Size" [Paper Size 1 (to 5)] > [On]
- 2 Select [Paper Size].
- 3 Select the paper size.
- Select [Media Type] to specify media type.
- 5 Select the media type.
- 6 Select [OK].

Counting the Number of Pages Printed

This counts the number of pages printed. Counts are classified into Total Job Accounting and Each Job Accounting. A new count can also be started after resetting the count data which was stored for a certain period of time.

The table below lists the item you can view.

	Item	Descriptions
Print	ed Pages	Displays the number of pages used in printing for each of the following item.
	Count by Function	Displays the number of pages used to copy, print, FAX and their total.
	Count by Paper Size	Displays the number of pages used in the selected paper size as well as the number of pages used in other paper sizes.
		→ Count by Paper Size (page 9-44)
	Count by Duplex	Displays the number of pages used in Duplex (1-sided) mode, Duplex (2-sided) mode and the total for both.
	Count by Combine	Displays the number of pages used in Combine (None) mode, Combine (2 in 1) mode, Combine (4 in 1) mode and the total for all three.
Scan	ned Pages	Displays the number of pages scanned for copying, faxing, printing and other functions, as well as the total number of pages scanned.
Fax	Transmission Pages	Displays the number of pages faxed. This function is displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.
Fax	Transmission Time	Displays the total duration of FAX transmissions. This function is displayed only when the optional FAX Kit is installed.
Cour	nter Reset	Resets the counter. Select [Reset] in the confirmation screen.

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]



NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "Job Accounting Setting" [Job Accounting Counter].

Check the number of pages.

Total Accounting

This counts the number of pages for all accounts and resets the counts for those accounts together at the same time.

- Select [Total] to check the count.
 Select [Counter Reset] to reset the counter.
- 2 Confirm the count and select [Close].

Each Job Account

This counts the number of pages for each account and resets the counts by account. When checking Each Job Accounting, select the account for which you want to check the count.

Select the account.

NOTE

- Search by account ID or account name. Select either [Search (ID)] or [Search (Name)] to switch between [Search (ID)] and [Search (Name)].
- Select [Account Name] or [Account ID] to sort the account list.
- To display an account other than your own account, select [Other Account].
- 2 Check the count.

Select [Counter Reset] to reset the counter.

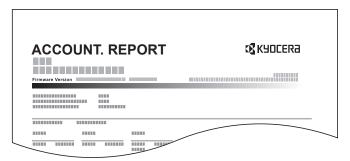
3 Confirm the count and select [Close].

Print Accounting Report

The total pages counted of all relevant accounts can be printed as an accounting report.

Reports have different formats depending on how the count of copiers and printers is administered.

When "Individual" is selected for Managing the Copy/Printer Count.



If count by paper size is being performed, then the report will be printed per size.

Use the procedure below to print a job accounting report.

Prepare paper.

Check that A4 or Letter paper is loaded in the cassette.

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]



If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Print the report.

"Job Accounting Setting" [Print Accounting Report] > [Print] Accounting report is printed.

Using Job Accounting

This section explains procedures while setting job accounting.

Login/Logout

If job accounting is enabled, an account ID entry screen appears each time you use this machine.

Login

Enter the account ID using the numeric keys > [Login]



- If you entered a wrong character, select [C] (Clear) and enter the account ID again.
- If the entered account ID does not match the registered ID, a warning beep will sound and login will fail. Enter the correct account ID.
- By selecting [Check Counter], you can refer to the number of pages printed and the number of pages scanned.

When the screen to enter the login user name and password appears

If user login administration is enabled, the screen to enter the login user name and password appears. Enter a login user name and password to login. If the user has already registered the account information, the account ID entry would be skipped.

→ Adding a User (Local User List) (page 9-6)

Proceed to complete the rest of the steps.

Logout

When the operations are complete, select the [Logout] key to return to the account ID entry screen.

Apply Limit

This specifies how the machine behaves when the counter has reached the limit of restriction. The table below describes the action taken.

Item	Descriptions
Immediately*1	Job stops when the counter reaches its limit.
Subsequently	Printing/scanning of the job continues but the subsequent job will be rejected.
Alert Only	Job continues while displaying an alert message.

^{*1} The next job will be prohibited in sending or in storing in the box.

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 "Job Accounting Setting" [Job Accounting Setting] > "Default Setting" [Apply Limit]

Configure the settings.

Select [Immediately], [Subsequently], or [Alert Only].

Copier/Printer Count

You can select how the copying and printing page counts are shown - either the total of both or each of copying and printing individually. The selection may influence restriction on the count and count method. For details, refer to the following:

- Restricting the Use of the Machine (page 9-35)
- Counting the Number of Pages Printed (page 9-45)
- Print Accounting Report (page 9-47)

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 "Job Accounting Setting" [Job Accounting Setting] > "Default Setting" [Copy/Printer Count]

Configure the settings.

Select [Total] or [Individual].

Unknown User Settings

Unknown ID Job

This specifies the behavior for handling the jobs sent with unknown or unsent login user names or User ID. If the User Login is set to invalid and Job Accounting is set to valid, follow the procedure when the Account ID is unknown.

The setting items are as follows.

Item	Descriptions	
Permit	The job is permitted to be printed.	
Reject	The job is rejected (not printed).	

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "Unknown User Settings" [Unknown ID Job].

Configure the settings.

Select [Permit] or [Reject].

Registering Information for a User whose ID is Unknown

If you register user information for a user whose ID is unknown, you can check information on the Job Status or Job History screens. In addition, you can restrict available functions.

NOTE

This function is displayed when [Unknown ID Job] is set to [Permit].

<u> Unknown ID Job (page 9-51)</u>

Display the screen.

1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Job Accounting/Authentication]

■ NOTE

If the login user name entry screen appears during operations, enter a login user name and password, and select [**Login**]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

2 Select "Unknown User Settings" [User Property].

Enter the user information.

Enter the user information > [OK]

Item	Descriptions		
User Name	Enter the name displayed on the user list (up to 32 characters).		
Account Name	Register an account for a user whose ID is unknown.		
	Overview of Job Accounting (page 9-32)		
	NOTE		
	Search by account ID or account name. Select either [Search (ID)] or [Search (Name)] to switch between [Search (ID)] and [Search (Name)].		
	 Select [Account Name] or [Account ID] to sort the account list. 		
Authorization Rules	Set usage authority.		
	The following restriction items are available:		
	Print Restriction: Select whether or not use of the print function of the printer is prohibited. Applicable print functions are as follows: • Print from PC		

10 Troubleshooting

This chapter explains the following topics:

Regular Maintenance	
Cleaning	10-2
Cleaning Glass Platen	10-2
Cleaning inside of the Document	
Processor	10-2
Cleaning Slit Glass	
Toner Container Replacement	
Replace the Waste Toner Box	-
Loading Paper	
Replacing Staples (Inner Finisher)	
Replacing Staples (1,000-Sheet	. 10-3
Finisher)	10-11
Replacing Staples	
	10-12
Replacing Staples	
(100-sheet Staple Finisher)	10-14
Replacing Staples (Folding Unit)	10-15
Disposing of the Staple Waste	10-17
Disposing of the Punch Waste	10-19
Troubleshooting	10-25
Solving Malfunctions	10-25
Machine Operation Trouble	10-25
Printed Image Trouble	10-23
Remote Operation	10-31
	10-35
Responding to Messages	
Adjustment/Maintenance	10-55
Overview of Adjustment/	10-55
	10-55
Tone Curve Adjustment	
Drum Refresh	10-57
Calibration	10-58
Laser Scanner Cleaning	10-58
Developer Refresh	10-58
Clearing Paper Jams	10-59
Jam Location Indicators	10-59
Remove any jammed paper in	
	10-62
Remove any jammed paper in	
	10-65
Remove any jammed paper in	
Cassette 3 and 4 (500-sheet×2)	10-68
Remove any jammed paper in	40.70
Cassette 3 (1,500-sheet×2)	10-70
Remove any jammed paper in	10.70
,	10-72
Remove any jammed paper in	10 75
,	10-75
Remove any jammed paper in the	10-77
Multipurpose TrayRemove any jammed paper in Right	10-11
Cover 1	10-78
Remove any jammed paper in Right	.0 70
	10-83
,	

	Remove any jammed paper in Right Cover 2 (1,500-sheet×2)	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Bridge Unit	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Mailbox	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Inner Finisher	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Document Processor (Reverse	
	Automatic) Remove any jammed paper in the	. 10-89
	Document Processor (Dual Scan) Remove any jammed paper in the	. 10-91
	InserterRemove any jammed paper in the	. 10-93
	Z-fold unit	. 10-98
		10-120
	Remove any jammed paper in the 4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Staple Finisher (Inner)	10-123
	Remove any jammed paper in the 4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Sta	
	Finisher (Tray A)Remove any jammed paper in the	
	4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Stap Finisher (Tray B)	
	Remove any jammed paper in the Folding Unit (4,000-sheet	10-120
	Finisher)Remove any jammed paper in	10-131
	the Folding Tray (4,000-sheet Finisher)	10-136
	Remove any jammed paper in the Folding Unit (100-sheet	
	Staple Finisher)Remove any jammed paper in	10-140
	the Folding Tray (100-sheet	10-146
Cleari	ng a Staple Jam Clearing a staple jam of the Inner	10-150
	Finisher	10-150
	Clearing a staple jam of the 1,000-Sheet Finisher	10-152
	Clearing a staple jam of the 4,000-sheet Finisher	10-155
	Clearing a Staple Jam of the 100-sheet Staple Finisher	
	Clearing a Staple Jam of the Folding Unit (4,000-sheet Finisher)	10-160
	Clearing a Staple Jam of the Folding Unit (100-sheet Staple Finisher)	

Regular Maintenance

Cleaning

Clean the machine regularly to ensure optimum printing quality.



For safety, always unplug the power cord before cleaning the machine.

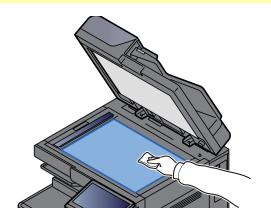
Cleaning Glass Platen

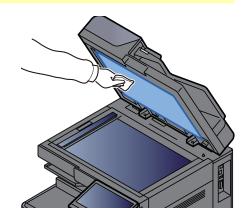
Wipe the backside of the original cover, the inside of the document processor and the glass platen with a soft cloth dampened with alcohol or mild detergent.



◯ IMPORTANT

Do not use thinner or other organic solvents.





Cleaning inside of the Document Processor

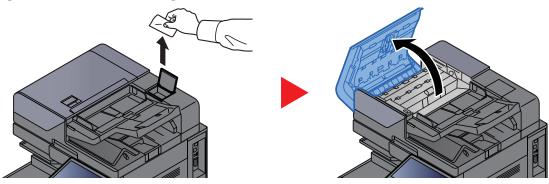
When using the document processor that features dual scanning, clean the dual scanning unit with the supplied cleaning cloth.



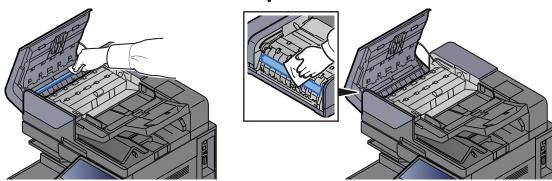
IMPORTANT

Do not use thinner or other organic solvents.

Remove the cloth from the cleaning cloth compartment and open the document processor cover.



Clean inside of the document processor.



Cleaning Slit Glass

When using the document processor, clean the slit glass surface and the reading guide with the supplied cleaning cloth.

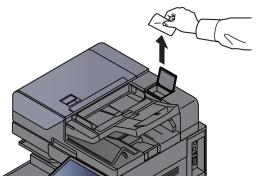


Clean the slit glass surface with the supplied cleaning cloth.

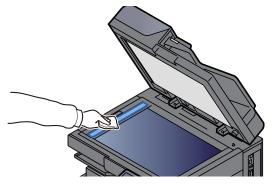
NOTE

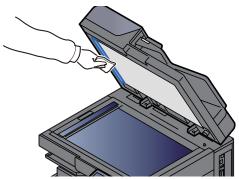
Dirt on the slit glass or the reading guide may cause black streaks to appear in the output.

Remove the cloth from the cleaning cloth compartment.



Clean the slit glass surface and the reading guide.





Toner Container Replacement

When toner is empty, the following message will be displayed. Replace the toner container.

"Toner is empty."

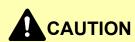
When toner runs low, the following message will be displayed. Make sure you have a new toner container available for replacement.

"Toner is low. (Replace when empty.)"



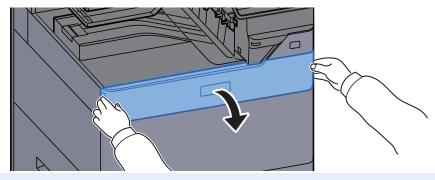
NOTE

- · For the toner container, always use a genuine toner container. Using a toner container that is not genuine may cause image defects and product failure.
- The memory chip in the toner container of this product stores information necessary for improving customer convenience, operation of the recycling system for used toner containers, and planning and development of new products. The stored information does not include information that makes it possible to identify individuals, and is only used anonymously for the above purposes.



Do not attempt to incinerate parts which contain toner. Dangerous sparks may cause burns.

Open the front cover.





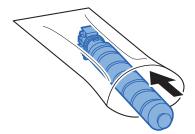
NOTE

If you close the toner container cover before replacing the container, select [Open Toner Container Cover].

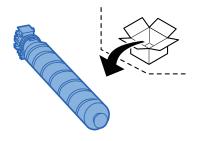
Remove the toner container.



Put used toner container into the plastic waste bag.

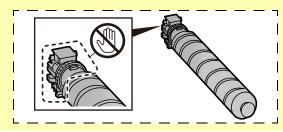


Remove the new toner container from the box.

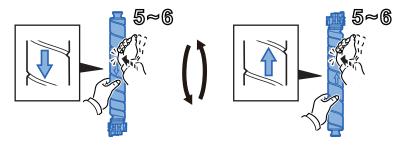


◯ IMPORTANT

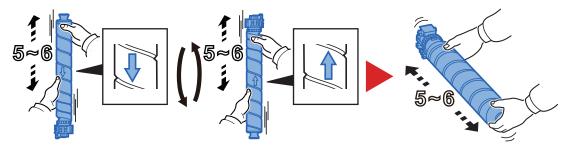
Do not touch the points shown below.



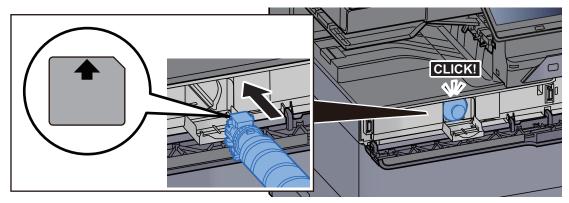
5 Tap the toner container.



6 Shake the toner container.



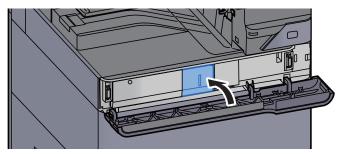
7 Install the toner container.



◯ IMPORTANT

Insert the toner container all the way.

Q Close the toner container cover.



Close the front cover.



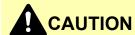
NOTE

- If the toner container cover or front cover does not close, check that the new toner container is installed correctly.
- Return the exhausted toner container to your dealer or service representative. The collected toner container will be recycled or disposed in accordance with the relevant regulations.

Replace the Waste Toner Box

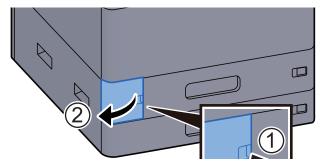
When the waste toner box is full, the following message will be displayed. Immediately replace the waste toner box.

"Replace the waste toner box."



Do not attempt to incinerate parts which contain toner. Dangerous sparks may cause burns.

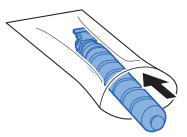
Open the waste toner box cover.



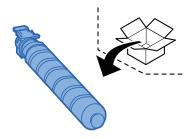
Remove the Waste Toner Box.



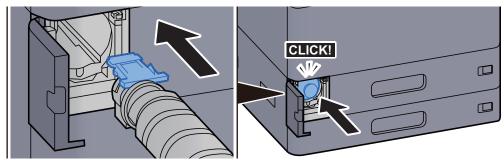
3 Put used Waste Toner Box into the plastic waste bag.



Remove the new Waste Toner Box.



Install the Waste Toner Box.



6 Close the waste toner box cover.



NOTE

Return the exhausted waste toner box to your dealer or service representative. The collected waste toner box will be recycled or disposed in accordance with the relevant regulations.

Loading Paper

When Cassette # runs out of paper, the following messages will be displayed.

"Add paper in cassette #"

"Add paper in Multipurpose tray"

- ▶ Loading in Cassette 1 (page 3-4)
- Loading in Cassette 2 (page 3-7)
- Loading in the Large Capacity Feeder (page 3-14)
- <u>▶ Loading in the Side Feeder (page 3-16)</u>
- ▶ Loading Paper in the Multipurpose Tray (page 5-6)

NOTE

If [Show Paper Setup Message] is set to [On], the confirmation screen for the paper setting will be displayed when a new paper is set. If a paper is changed, change the settings of the paper.

- → Cassette 1 (to 5) Settings (page 8-13)
- → MP Tray Settings (page 8-14)

Replacing Staples (Inner Finisher)

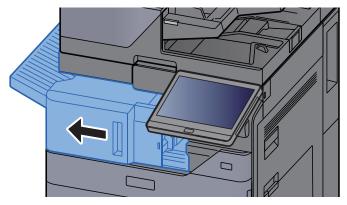
When the Staple Unit runs out of staples, the following messages will be displayed. The staple cartridge holder need to be replenished with staples.

"Staple is empty."

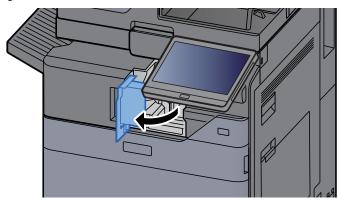


If the Staple Unit runs out of staples, contact your dealer or service representative.

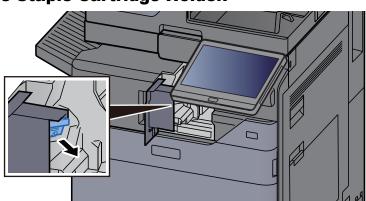
Open the inner finisher unit.



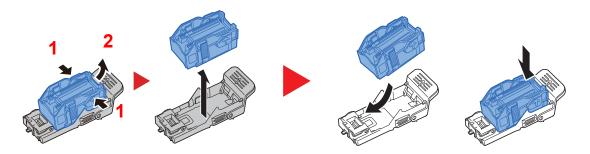
Open the staple cover.



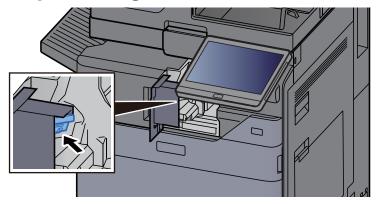
Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder.



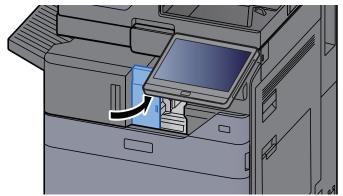
Replace the staples.



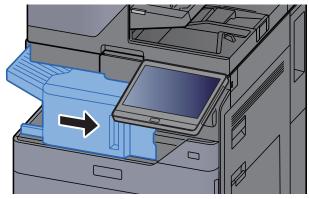
5 Install the Staple Cartridge Holder.



6 Return the staple cover to the original position.



7 Return the unit to the original position.



Replacing Staples (1,000-Sheet Finisher)

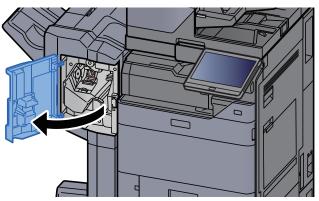
When the Staple Unit runs out of staples, the following messages will be displayed. The staple cartridge holder need to be replenished with staples.

"Staple is empty"

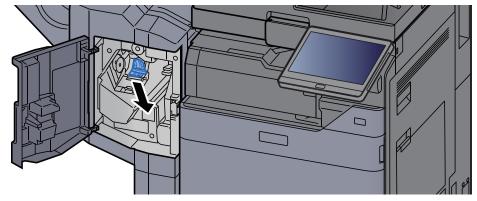


If the Staple Unit runs out of staples, contact your dealer or service representative.

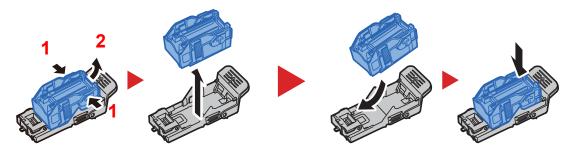
Open the finisher front cover.



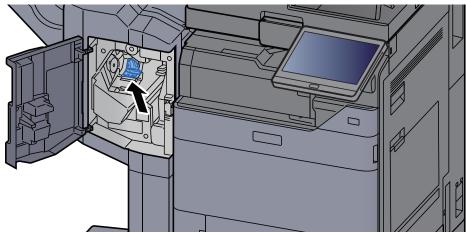
Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder.



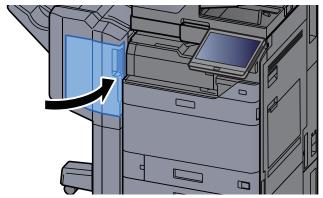
Replace the staples.



Install the Staple Cartridge Holder.



Close the cover.



Replacing Staples (4,000-Sheet Finisher)

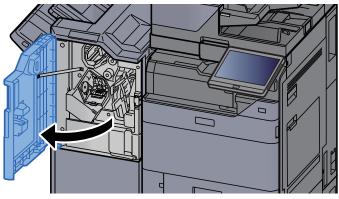
When the Staple Unit runs out of staples, the following messages will be displayed. The staple cartridge holder need to be replenished with staples.

"Staple is empty."

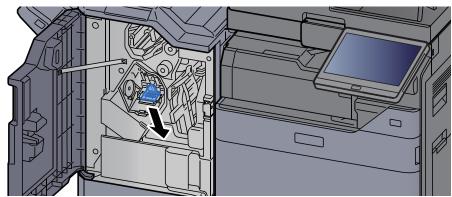


If the Staple Unit runs out of staples, contact your dealer or service representative.

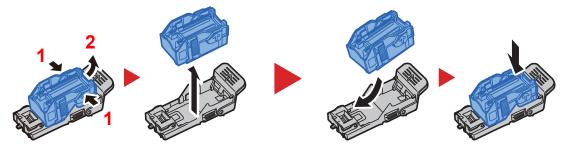
Open the finisher front cover 1.



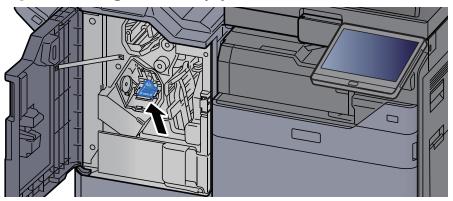
Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder (A).



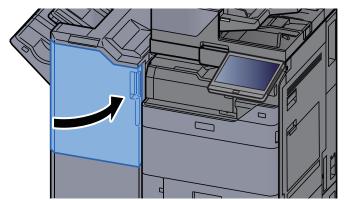
Replace the staples.



Install the Staple Cartridge Holder (A).



Close the cover.



Replacing Staples (100-sheet Staple Finisher)

When the Staple Unit runs out of staples, the following messages will be displayed. The staple cartridge holder need to be replenished with staples.

"Staple is empty."

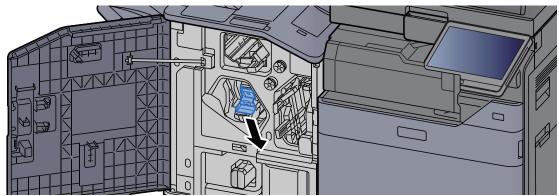


If the Staple Unit runs out of staples, contact your dealer or service representative.

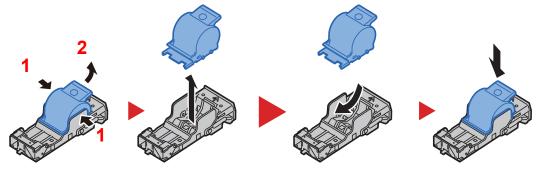
Open the finisher front cover 1.



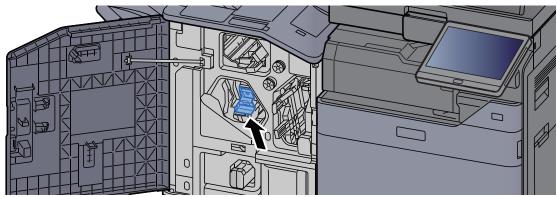
Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder (A).



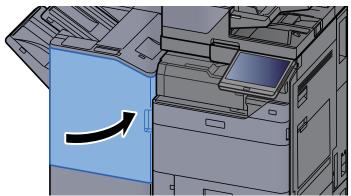
Replace the staples.



Install the Staple Cartridge Holder (A).



5 Close the cover.



Replacing Staples (Folding Unit)

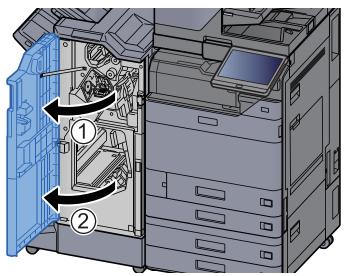
When the Staple Unit runs out of staples, the following messages will be displayed. The staple cartridge holder need to be replenished with staples.

"Staple is empty."

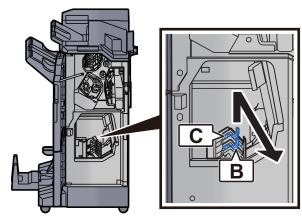


If the Staple Unit runs out of staples, contact your dealer or service representative.

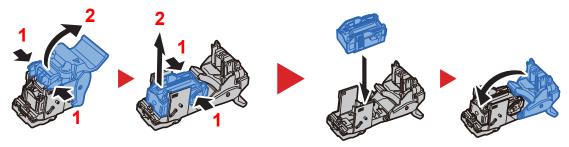
Open the finisher front cover 1 and 2.



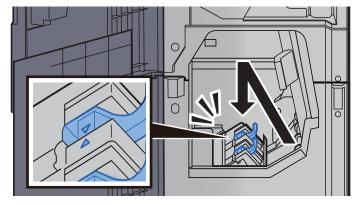
Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder (B) or (C).



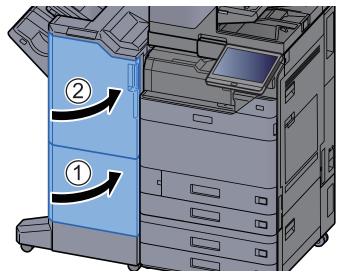
Replace the staples.



Install the Staple Cartridge Holder (B) or (C).



5 Close the covers.



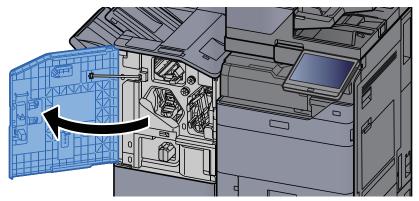
Disposing of the Staple Waste

When the staple waste box is full, the following messages will be displayed. Empty the staple waste box.

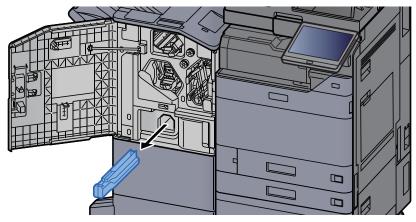
"Check the staple waste box."

Leave the power switch on the machine switched ON while performing this procedure.

Open the finisher front cover 1.



Remove the Staple Waste Box.



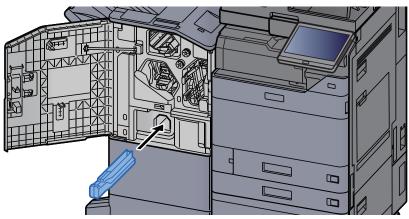
NOTE

Take care not to spill the staple waste when removing the box.

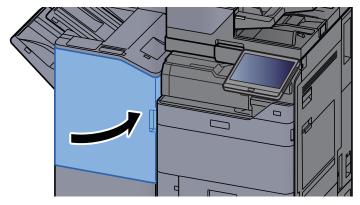
3 Empty the Staple Waste Box.



Install the Staple Waste Box.



Close the cover.



Disposing of the Punch Waste

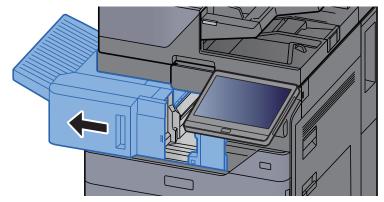
When the waste punch box is full, the following messages will be displayed. Empty the punch waste box.

"Empty the punch waste box"

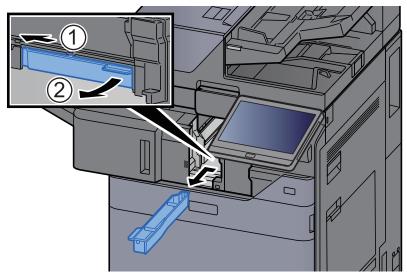
Leave the power switch on the machine switched ON while performing this procedure.

Inner Finisher

Open the inner finisher unit.



Remove the Punch Waste Box.



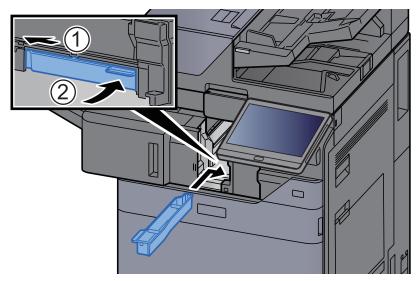
NOTE

Take care not to spill the waste hole punch scraps when removing the box.

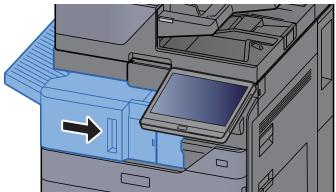
3 Empty the Punch Waste Box.



Install the Punch Waste Box.

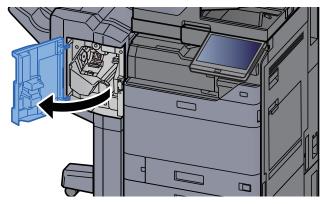


5 Return the unit to the original position.

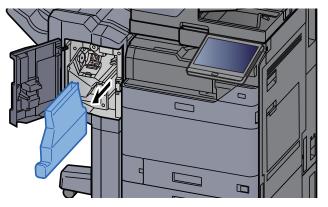


1,000-sheet Finisher

Open the finisher front cover.



Remove the Punch Waste Box.



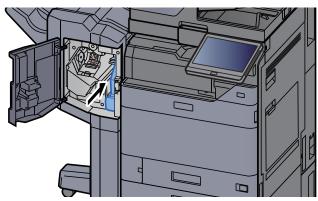
NOTE

Take care not to spill the waste hole punch scraps when removing the box.

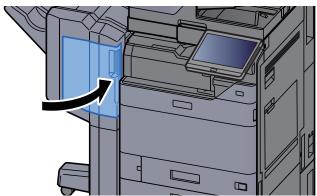
3 Empty the Punch Waste Box.



Install the Punch Waste Box.

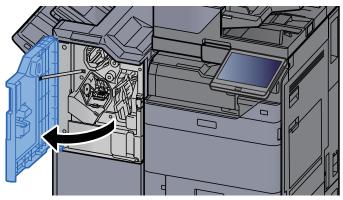


5 Close the cover.

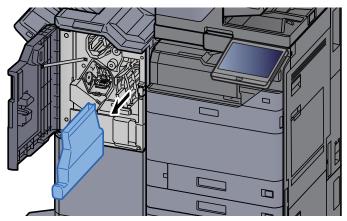


4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Staple Finisher

Open the finisher front cover 1.



Remove the Punch Waste Box.



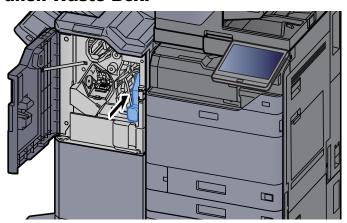
NOTE

Take care not to spill the waste hole punch scraps when removing the box.

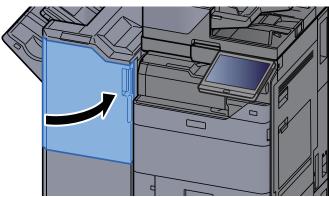
3 Empty the Punch Waste Box.



Install the Punch Waste Box.



5 Close the cover.



Troubleshooting

Solving Malfunctions

The table below provides general guidelines for problem solving.

If a problem occurs with your machine, look into the checkpoints and perform procedures indicated on the following pages. If the problem persists, contact your Service Representative.



NOTE

When contacting us, the serial number will be necessary. To check the serial number, refer to the following:

→ Display for Device Information (page 2-22)

Machine Operation Trouble

When the following machine operation troubles occur, implement appropriate procedures.

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
An application does not start.	Is the Auto Panel Reset time short?	Set the Auto Panel Reset time to 30 seconds or more.	8-7
The screen does not respond when the power switch is turned on.	Is the machine plugged in?	Plug the power cord into an AC outlet.	_
The touch panel is not responsive or malfunctions.	Is the touch panel operated with wet hands?	Dry your hands to operate the touch panel.	_
manunctions.	Are you operating with gloves on?	Use your bare hands or a stylus pen to operate the touch panel.	
	Is the machine installed near a device that generates electrical noise (generator, air conditioner, etc.)?	Install the machine away from devices that generate electrical noise.	
Pressing the [Start] key does not produce copies.	Is there a message on the screen?	Determine the appropriate response to the message and respond accordingly.	10-35
	Is the machine in Sleep mode?	Select any key on the operation panel to recover the machine from Sleep mode.	2-46
Blank sheets are ejected.	Are the originals loaded correctly?	When placing originals on the platen, place them face-down and align them with the original size indicator plates.	5-2
		When placing originals in the document processor, place them face-up.	5-3
	_	Check that the settings of the application software.	_

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Paper often jams.	Is the paper loaded correctly?	Load the paper correctly.	3-4
	_	Turn the orientation 180 degrees around in which the paper is positioned.	3-4
	Is the paper of the supported type? Is it in good condition?	Remove the paper, turn it over, and reload it.	3-4
	Is the paper curled, folded or wrinkled?	Replace the paper with new paper.	3-4
	Are there any loose scraps or jammed paper in the machine?	Remove any jammed paper.	10-59
2 or more sheets are overlaps when ejected. (multi feed) ABC 123		Load the paper correctly.	3-2
Printouts are wrinkled.	Is the paper loaded correctly?	Load the paper correctly.	3-4
ABC 123	_	Turn the orientation 180 degrees around in which the paper is positioned.	3-4
	Is the paper damp?	Replace the paper with new paper.	3-4
Printouts are curled.	_	Turn the orientation 180 degrees around in which the paper is positioned.	3-4
123	Is the paper damp?	Replace the paper with new paper.	3-4

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Printer driver cannot be installed.	Is the driver installed with the host name while Wi-Fi or Wi-Fi Direct function is available?	Specify the IP address instead of the host name.	2-51
	Is Level 3 selected in Security Quick Setup?	Follow the steps below. 1. Obtain the root certificate for SSL communication from the Trusted Root Certification Authorities and register it to Root Certificate 1 (to 5) on the Security Settings: Certificate page of Command Center RX. 2. Reboot PC after Certificate installed. 3. Set SNMPv3 to On of Other Protocols on Network Settings: Protocol page of Command Center RX. 4. Configure the SNMPv3 settings on Management Settings: SNMP page of Command Center RX. 5. Access to Control Panel and click Devices and Printers, Add Printer, then "The printer that I want isn't listed". 6. Check "Select a shared printer by name" and enter the Printer address. Example: https://hostname:443/printers/lp1	Command Center RX User Guide
		7. Select the desired printer and specify the printer driver.	

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Cannot print.	Is the machine plugged in?	Plug the power cord into an AC outlet.	_
	Is the machine powered on?	Turn on the power switch.	2-10
	Are the USB cable and network cable connected?	Connect the correct USB cable and network cable securely.	2-8
	Is the print job paused?	Resume printing.	7-11
	When the wired or Wi-Fi network is configured using the name resolution, does the IP address (private address) of the other network which can not access coexists?	The number of host name and domain name which can be used with the machine is one respectively. Configure the network under this restriction.	_
		Change the settings of name resolution such as NetBEUI and DNS, or network environment settings.	Command Center RX User Guide
		Select Wi-Fi, Wired Network or Optional Network as an unlimited-use network on Primary Network (Client).	8-70
		Set to [Wired Network] or [Wi-Fi] either one of [On], and set the other setting to [Off].	8-60
Cannot print with USB drive.	Is the USB host blocked?	Select [Unblock] in the USB host settings.	8-71
USB drive not recognized.	_	Check that the USB drive is securely plugged into the machine.	_
While "Auto-IP" is already set to [On], the IP address is not assigned automatically.	Is a value other than "0.0.0.0" entered for the link local address of TCP/IP(v4)?	Enter "0.0.0.0" for the IP address of TCP/IP(v4).	2-33

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Cannot send via SMB.	Is the network cable connected?	Connect the correct network cable securely.	2-8
	Have the network settings for the equipment been configured properly?	Configure the TCP/IP settings properly.	8-58
	Have the folder sharing settings been configured properly?	Check sharing settings and access privileges under the folder properties.	3-25
	Is the selected interface selected as the Primary Network?	Specify the host name or IP address of the interface selected as the Primary Network, or set the interface to be used again.	8-70
	Has the SMB protocol been set to [On]?	Set the SMB protocol setting to [On].	8-60
	Has [Host Name] been entered properly? *1	Check the name of the computer to which data is being sent.	5-26
	Has [Path] been entered properly?	Check the share name for the shared folder.	5-26
	Has [Login User Name] been entered properly? *1 *2	Check the domain name and login user name.	5-26
	Has the same domain name been used for [Host Name] and [Login User Name]?	Delete the domain name and backslash ("/") from [Login User Name].	5-26
	Has [Login Password] been entered properly?	Check the login password.	5-26
	Have exceptions for Windows Firewall been configured properly?	Configure exceptions for Windows Firewall properly.	3-29
	Do the time settings for the equipment, domain server, and data destination computer differ?	Set the equipment, domain server, and data destination computer to the same time.	_
	Is the screen displaying Send error?	Refer to Responding to Send Error.	10-49
Cannot send via the e-mail.	Is the E-mail send size limit set in the SMTP server registered on the machine?	Check the limit value is entered to "E-mail Size Limit" of [E-mail] setting in Command Center RX and change the value as necessary.	2-71
The machine is emitting steam in the area around the paper ejection slot.	Check the room temperature to see if it is low, or if damp paper was used.	Depending on the printing environment and the paper's condition, the heat generated during printing will cause the moisture in the paper to evaporate, and the steam emitted may look like smoke. This is not a problem, and you can continue printing. If the steam concerns you, raise the room temperature, or replace the paper with a newer, dryer paper.	

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Cannot create Searchable PDF file.	Is the proper language selected?	Check the language to extract.	6-76
	Can the texts on the original not be recognized as texts, or is the PDF creation time taken?	 Check the following: The original orientation is correct. When setting the originals with the mixed orientation at once, [On] is selected for [Auto Image Rotation]. 	6-76
Cannot search a text that you want to search on the PDF file.	Have you set [OCR Text Recognition] in [File Format]?	Set [OCR Text Recognition] in [File Format].	6-76
	Are the texts of the scanned original fainted or too light?	Set [Density] to darker level.	6-34
	Is the background of the scanned original too dark and the texts are difficult to recognize?	Set [Background Density Adj.] to [Auto] or [Manual] and manually adjust the density lighter. Otherwise, set [Density] to darker level.	6-34 6-37
	Is the text or image on the back of the original visible on the front?	Set [Prevent Bleed-through] to [On].	6-38
Cannot find the machine with WSD.	Did you search by specifying the machine's IP address or host name?	For security reasons, [HTTP] protocol is set to [Off], and therefore you cannot search by IP address or host name.	_

^{*1} You can also enter a full computer name as the host name (for example, pc001.abcdnet.com).

^{*2} You can also enter login user names in the following formats:

Domain_name/user_name (for example, abcdnet/james.smith)

User_name@domain_name (for example, james.smith@abcdnet)

Printed Image Trouble

When the following printed image trouble occurs, implement appropriate procedures.

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Printouts are totally too light.	Is the paper damp?	Replace the paper with new paper.	3-2
ABC ABC	Have you changed the density?	Select appropriate density level.	6-34 8-84
123 123	Is there a message on the screen about adding the toner?	Replace the toner container.	10-4
	Is EcoPrint mode enabled?	Disable [EcoPrint] mode.	8-34
	_	Run [Developer Refresh].	10-58
	_	Run [Laser Scanner Cleaning].	10-58
	_	Make sure the paper type setting is correct for the paper being used.	8-17
White background parts of the image appear to have a slight overall	Have you changed the density?	Select appropriate density level.	6-34 8-84
coloration.	_	Run [Calibration].	10-58
ABC 123	_	Perform the drum refresh, and then set [Drum Heater] to [On].	8-86
Copies have a moire pattern (dots grouped together in patterns and not aligned uniformly).	Is the original a printed photograph?	When making copies Set the original image to [Printer Output] or [Book/ Magazine] in [Photo].	6-35
Texts are not clearly printed. ABC 123	Did you choose appropriate image quality for the original?	Select appropriate image quality.	6-35
Black or color dots appear on the white background. ABC 123	Is the original holder or the glass platen dirty? —	Clean the original holder or the glass platen. Run [Developer Refresh].	10-2

Symptom	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Printed images are fuzzy. Printed images are cut off.	Is the device used in an environment with high humidity or where the temperature or humidity changes suddenly?	Use in an environment that has suitable humidity.	_
ABC 123	_	Run [Drum Refresh].	10-57
Printed images are skewed.	Are the originals placed correctly?	When placing originals on the platen, align them with the original size indicator plates.	5-2
ABC		When placing originals in the document processor, align the original width guides securely before placing the originals.	5-3
	Is the paper loaded correctly?	Check the position of the paper width guides.	3-4
Printed images have	Is the slit glass dirty?	Clean the slit glass.	10-3
vertical lines. ABC 123	_	Run [Laser Scanner Cleaning].	10-58
Dirt on the top edge or back of the paper. ABC 123	Is the interior of the machine dirty?	Open the right cover. If the machine interior is dirty with toner, clean it using soft, dry, lint-free cloth.	10-2
Part of the image is	_	Open and then close the right cover.	_
periodically faint or shows white lines.	_	Run [Drum Refresh].	10-57
	_	Run [Developer Refresh].	10-58
Print on the back of the sheet is visible on the front. ABC 123	_	Set [Prevent Bleed-through] to [On].	6-38 8-34

Remote Operation

This function enables the system administrator to explain how to operate the panel and troubleshoot to user, by accessing operation panel of the machine at remote using browser and VNC software.

Executing Remote Operation from Browser

The supported Browser is as follows. We recommend the latest version of browser to use Remote Operation.

- Google Chrome (Version 21.0 or later)
- Internet Explorer (Version 9.0 or later)
- · Microsoft Edge
- Mozilla Firefox (Version 14.0 or later)
- Safari (Version 5.0 or later)

This procedure explains how to execute Remote Operation from Command Center RX using Google Chrome.



To execute Remote Operation using other browsers, refer to the following:

Command Center RX User Guide

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Protocol Settings]

2 Set "Enhanced VNC over SSL" to [On].

→ Protocol Settings (page 8-60)



You can configure the protocol settings using Command Center RX.

Command Center RX User Guide

Configure settings for remote operation.

- 1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Connectivity" [Remote Operation] > [On]
- Select [Off], [Use Password], or [Administrator Only].

When you select [**Use Password**], enter the password in "Password" and "Confirm Password", then select [**OK**].

→ Remote Operation (page 8-69)

NOTE

You can configure settings for remote operation using Command Center RX

Command Center RX User Guide

Restart the machine.

→ Restart Entire Device (page 8-70)

Start up the browser.

Enter "https://" and host name of the machine to access the Command Center RX

→ Accessing Command Center RX (page 2-68).

Select [Device Information/Remote Operation] > [Remote Operation].

Click [Start] button.

NOTE

- If the user is logged in to the device, the permission confirmation screen will be displayed on the operation panel. Select [Yes].
- If pop-up blocking of the browser occurs during connection of the Remote Operation, select Always allow pop-ups from https:// [host name], and click Done. Perform Remote Operation after waiting 1 minute or more.

When the Remote Operation is started up, the operation panel screen will be displayed on the system administrator's or user's PC screen.

Executing Remote Operation from VNC Software

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Protocol Settings]

Set "Enhanced VNC (RFB)" to [On].

Protocol Settings (page 8-60)

NOTE

- When setting "VNC (RFB) over SSL" to [On], the communication is encrypted.
- You can configure the protocol settings using Command Center RX.
 - Command Center RX User Guide

3 Startup the remote operation.

- Start up the VNC software.
- Enter the following format separated by a colon to start up the remote operation.

"IP address: port number"

NOTE

When setting "VNC (RFB)" to [**On**] in step 2, the default port number is 9062. When setting "VNC (RFB) over SSL " to [**On**], the default port number is 9063.

Protocol Settings (page 8-60)

Responding to Messages

If the touch panel or the computer displays any of these messages, follow the corresponding procedure.



When contacting us, the serial number will be necessary. To check the serial number, refer to the following:

→ Display for Device Information (page 2-22)

Α

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Abnormalities were detected.	_	The error was detected. The execution of the program is stopped. Please contact to the service representatives.	_
Acceptable staple count exceeded.*1	Is the acceptable number of sheets exceeded?	Select [Continue] to print without using Staple. Select [Cancel] to cancel the job.	_
Access point was not detected.	_	Check if the access point has been set correctly.	_
Add paper in cassette #.	Is the indicated cassette out of paper?	Load paper. Select the available paper. Select [Continue] to print.	3-2
	Are five or less envelopes loaded in the cassette?	Pull the cassette and loosen the paper length and width guides slightly.	_
Add paper in Multipurpose tray.	Is the paper of the selected size loaded in the multipurpose tray?	Load paper. Select the available paper. Select [Continue] to print.	5-6
Adjusting Scanner.		The machine is under the adjustment to maintain its quality. Please wait.	_

^{*1} When Auto Error Clear is set to **[On]**, processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:

[→] Auto Error Clear (page 8-23)

В

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Box is not found.	_	The specified box cannot be found. Job is canceled. Select [End].	_
Box limit exceeded.*1	Is [End] displayed on the screen?	The specified box is full, and no further storage is available. Job is canceled. Select [End]. Try to perform the job again after printing or deleting data from the box.	_
		Repeat Copy box is full, and no further repeat copy is available. Select [Continue] to print scanned pages. Select [Cancel] to cancel the job.	_
Broadcast error	_	An error has occurred during broadcast transmission. The job is canceled. Select [End].	_

^{*1} When Auto Error Clear is set to [On], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:

Auto Error Clear (page 8-23)

C

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Calibrating	_	The machine is under the adjustment to maintain its quality. Please wait.	_
Cannot Banner Print.	_	System stamp is set up. Banner print cannot be carried out. Job is canceled. Select [End].	_
Cannot connect to Authentication	_	Set machine time to match the server's time.	2-32
Server.*1	_	Check the domain name.	9-2
	_	Check the host name.	9-2
	_	Check the connection status with the server.	_
Cannot connect to Server.	_	Check the connection status with the server.	_
Cannot connect.	_	This appears when the Wi-Fi or Wi-Fi Direct connection did not complete. Check the settings, and check the signal conditions.	8-53 8-54

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Cannot duplex print on this paper.*1 Cannot duplex print on this paper size.*1	Did you select a paper size/type that cannot be duplex printed?	If the selected paper is not changed and [Continue] is selected, duplex is released. Select the available paper.	intinue] is is released. ole paper.
Cannot duplex print on this paper type.*1		Select [Continue] to print.	
Cannot fold this paper.	Did you select a paper size/type that cannot be folded?	If the selected paper is not changed and [Continue] is	6-26
Cannot fold this paper size.		selected, fold is released. Select the available paper. Select [Continue] to print.	
Cannot fold this paper type.			
Cannot offset this paper.*1	Did you select a paper size/type that cannot be offset?	If the selected paper is not changed and [Continue] is selected, offset is released.	6-28
Cannot offset this paper size.*1		Select the available paper. Select [Continue] to print.	
Cannot offset this paper type.*1			
Cannot output this paper to the tray.	Is the cassette you selected correct?	Select the available paper. Select [Continue] to print.	_
Cannot perform remote printing.	_	Remote printing is prohibited. The job is canceled. Select [End].	8-49
Cannot print the specified number of copies.*1	_	Only one copy is available. Select [Continue] to continue printing. Select [Cancel] to cancel the job.	_
Cannot process this job.*1	_	Restricted by Authorization settings. The job is canceled. Select [End].	_
	_	Restricted by Job Accounting. The job is canceled. Select [End].	9-33
Cannot punch at the specified position.	Have you selected a position that cannot be punched?	If the selected paper is not changed and [Continue] is selected, punch is released. Select the available paper.	6-31
Cannot punch this	Did you select a paper size/type	Select [Continue] to print. If the selected paper is not	6-31
paper. Cannot punch this	that cannot be punched?	changed and [Continue] is selected, punch is released.	
paper size.		Select the available paper. Select [Continue] to print.	
Cannot punch this paper type.			

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Cannot read data in this ID card.	_	In registration process, the ID card information was not read correctly. Hold again the ID card over the ID card reading part. If the same message still appears, the ID card may not be compatible with this product. Change it to another ID card.	_
Cannot recognize.	_	Make sure your ID card has been registered.	_
Cannot staple at the specified position.	Have you selected a position that cannot be stapled?	If the selected paper is not changed and [Continue] is selected, staple is released. Select the available paper. Select [Continue] to print.	6-29
Cannot staple this paper.*1	Did you select a paper size/type that cannot be stapled?	If the selected paper is not changed and [Continue] is selected, staple is released.	6-29
Cannot staple this paper size.*1		Select the available paper. Select [Continue] to print.	
Cannot staple this paper type.*1			
Cannot use ##### due to a failure.	_	Call service representative.	_
Cannot use following functions due to scanner failure. >> Copy, Send, Fax, Storing in Box	_	Scanner of this machine has failed. Contact your service representative. You can use the print function.	_
Cannot use this function due to a hard disk failure.	_	Call service representative.	_
Check the document processor.	Is the top cover of the document processor open?	Close the document processor cover.	_
	Is the document processor open?	Close the document processor.	_
Check the paper in the multipurpose tray.	_	The paper size is different. Set selected size paper and select [Continue].	5-6
Check the side feeder.	_	The side feeder is not installed correctly. Attach the side feeder.	_
Check the staple waste box.	Is the staple waste box full?	Follow the instructions on the screen, and empty the staple waste box.	10-17
	_	The staple waste box is not installed correctly. Set it correctly.	10-17

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Check the toner container.	_	Open the main unit front cover and remove the toner container. Shake carefully and replace.	_
		If you select [Open Toner Container Cover], you can open the Toner Container Cover that you closed accidentally.	
Confidential document was detected.	_	The machine detects the document guard pattern. Job is canceled. Select [End].	_

^{*1} When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:

→ Auto Error Clear (page 8-23)

Ε

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Empty the punch waste box.	Is the punch waste box full?	Follow the instructions on the screen. and empty the punch waste box.	10-19
Encrypted PDF Password error.	Is the password you input correct?	Password is not entered or is incorrect.	
Error occurred at cassette #.	_	Open the cassette. Check inside the machine and remove the paper.	

F

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Failed to activate.	_	Failed to activate the application. Contact administrator.	_
	_	Expansion Authentication is disabled. Turn the power switch off and on. If the error exists, contact administrator.	_

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Failed to send via SMB.	Is the machine and the PC to which the scanned image is to be sent connected to the network? Is the account information (user ID, password) used to access the shared folder to which the scanned image is to be sent incorrect?	Check the network and SMB settings. The network cable is connected. The hub is not operating properly. The server is not operating properly. Host name and IP address Port number Check the following settings of the PC to which the scanned image is to be sent. Host name Path Login user name NOTE If the sender is a domain user, specify the domain name. [Login User ID]@[Domain Name] Example: sa720XXXX@km Login password Folder share permissions of the recipient	2-7
Failed to specify Job Accounting.*1	_	Failed to specify Job Accounting when processing the job externally. The job is canceled. Select [End].	_
Failed to store job retention data.	_	The job is canceled. Select [End].	_
FAX box limit exceeded.		Follow the instructions on the screen and delete documents from the FAX box to make room for FAX reception. To check the canceled job, select the [Status/Job Cancel] key and then [Printing Jobs] to check receipt result.	FAX Operation Guide
Finisher tray is full of paper.	Is the acceptable storage capacity exceeded?	Remove the paper. Printing then resumes.	_
Folding tray is full of paper.	Is the acceptable storage capacity exceeded?	Remove the paper. Printing then resumes.	_
Folding Unit is detached.		Close the folding unit.	_

^{*1} When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:

[→] Auto Error Clear (page 8-23)

Н

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Hard Disk error.	_	An error has occurred on the hard disk. Job is canceled. Select [End].	_
		The error cords are as follows.	
		01: The amount of data that can be saved at once has been exceeded. Restart the system or turn the power OFF/ON. If the error still occurs, divide the file into smaller files.	
		If the error occurs after the file is divided, the hard disk is damaged. Execute [System Initialization].	
		04: Insufficient space on the hard disk to complete this operation. Move data or delete unneeded data.	

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Incorrect account ID.*1	_	The account ID was incorrect when processing the job externally. The job is canceled. Select [End].	_
Incorrect box password.	_	The box password was incorrect when processing the job externally. The job is canceled. Select [End].	_
Incorrect Login User Name or Password.*1		The login user name or password was incorrect when processing the job externally. The job is canceled. Select [End].	_
Install the punch waste box.		Follow the instructions on the screen. and install the punch waste box.	10-19
Install the waste toner box.	_	The waste toner box is not installed correctly. Set it correctly.	10-7

^{*1} When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:

<u>▶ Auto Error Clear (page 8-23)</u>

J

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Job Accounting restriction exceeded.*1	Is the acceptable printing count restricted by Job Accounting exceeded?	The printing count exceeded the acceptable count restricted by Job Accounting. Cannot print any more. The job is canceled. Select [End].	
Job separator tray is full of paper.	Is the acceptable storage capacity exceeded?	Remove the paper and select [Continue]. Printing then resumes.	_

^{*1} When Auto Error Clear is set to [On], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:

→ Auto Error Clear (page 8-23)

K

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
KPDL error. *1	_	PostScript error has occurred. The job is canceled. Select [End].	_

^{*1} When Auto Error Clear is set to [On], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:

Auto Error Clear (page 8-23)

M

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Machine failure.	_	Internal error has occurred. Make a note of the error code displayed on the screen. Call service representative.	_
Mailbox tray # is full of paper.	Is the acceptable storage capacity exceeded?	Remove the paper. Printing then resumes.	_
Main unit inner tray is full of paper.	Is the acceptable storage capacity exceeded?	Remove the paper. Printing then resumes.	_
Malicious program was detected.		There might be the unauthorized program. The execution is stopped. Please contact to the administrator.	_
Maximum number of scanned pages.	Is the acceptable scanning count exceeded?	Cannot scan pages any more. Follow the instructions on the screen.	_

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Memory is full.*1	_	The memory is full and the job cannot be continued. Select [Continue] to print the scanned pages. The print job cannot be processed completely. Select [Cancel] to cancel the job.	
		The process cannot be performed due to insufficient memory. If only [End] is available, select [End]. The job will be canceled.	_
		When insufficient memory occurred frequently, contact your dealer or service representative.	

^{*1} When Auto Error Clear is set to [On], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:

Auto Error Clear (page 8-23)

Ρ

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Paper jam.	_	If a paper jam occurs, the machine will stop and the location of the jam will be indicated on the screen. Leave the machine on and follow the instructions to remove the jammed paper.	10-59
Paper left.		Remove paper from the finisher tray.	_
	_	Remove the paper from the folding tray of the finisher.	_
	_	Remove paper from the document finisher.	_
Perform Tone Curve Adjustment in the System Menu.	Over long periods of use, the effects of the ambient temperature and humidity can cause output hues to vary slightly.	Run [Tone Curve Adjustment].	10-56
Performing Drum Refresh		The machine is under the adjustment to maintain its quality. Please wait.	_
Preparing to print.	_	The machine is under the adjustment to maintain its quality. Please wait.	_

R

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Regulating the temperature		The machine is under the adjustment to maintain its quality. Please wait.	_
Remove originals in the document processor.	Are there any originals left in the document processor?	Remove originals from the document processor.	_
Replace all originals and press [Continue].	_	Remove originals from the document processor, put them back in their original order, and place them again. Select [Continue] to resume printing. Select [Cancel] to cancel the job.	_
Running security function	_	Running security function. Please wait.	_

S

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Scanner memory is full.*1		Scanning cannot be performed due to insufficient memory of the scanner. Follow the instructions on the screen.	_
Scheduled sending jobs exceeded.		The number of jobs has exceeded the limit set for delayed transmission. Select [End]. The job is canceled. Wait until the delayed transmission is executed, or cancel the delayed transmission and then perform the job again.	_
Select another cassette.	Is the cassette you selected correct?	The specified cassette is a fax special stage. Select another valid cassette. Select [Continue] to print.	_
Send Error.*1	_	An error has occurred during transmission. The job is canceled. Select [End]. Refer to Responding to Send Error for the error code and corrective actions.	10-49
Skewed originals or multi originals fed at once.	_	See the caution attached on the document processor and check the originals. If the originals are jammed, follow the instructions on the screen to remove the originals.	_

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
SSD error.		An error has occurred on the SSD. Job is canceled. Select [End]. The error cords are as follows. 01: The amount of data that can be saved at once has been exceeded. Restart the system or turn the power OFF/ON. If the error still occurs, divide the file into smaller files. If the error occurs after the file is divided, the SSD is damaged. Execute [System Initialization]. 04: Insufficient space on the SSD to complete this operation. Move data or delete unneeded data. NOTE Please be aware that when you carry out initialization of the system, the data saved in SSD will be erased.	
Staple is empty. *1	Has the staple cartridge holder run out of staples?	If the staples are depleted, the machine will stop and the location of staple depletion will be indicated on the screen. Leave the machine on and follow the instructions to replace the staple case. Select [Continue] to print without stapling. Select [Cancel] to cancel the job.	10-9 10-11 10-12 10-14 10-15
Staple is empty. (Manual Staple)	Has staple cartridge holder A run out of staples?	Add staples to staple cartridge holder A.	10-12
Staple jam.		If a staple jam occurs, the machine will stop and the location of the jam will be indicated on the screen. Leave the machine on and follow the instructions to remove the jammed staple.	10-150
System error.	_	System error has occurred. Follow the instructions on the screen.	

^{*1} When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:

[→] Auto Error Clear (page 8-23)

T

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
The cover is open.	Is there any cover which is open?	Close the cover indicated on the screen.	_
The device cannot be connected because allowed connections would be exceeded.	Are ten handheld devices connected simultaneously?	Cancel a connection to a portable device that is not being used, or set the machine's auto disconnect time to break portable device connections.	8-54
The password does not meet password policy.	Is the password expired?	Change the login password. The job is canceled. Select [End].	9-5 9-6
	Is the password policy requirement (such as password length or required characters) changed?	Confirm the password policy requirements and change the login password. The job is canceled. Select [End].	9-5 9-6
The phone receiver is off the hook.	_	Put down the receiver.	_
The slit glass requires cleaning.	_	Clean the slit glass using the cleaning cloth supplied with the document processor.	10-3
The toner container is improperly installed.		The toner container is improperly installed or not installed. Open the front cover and set the toner container correctly.	_
This ID card is already registered to another user.	_	Your ID card has already been registered. Change it to another ID card.	_
This user account is locked out.	_	Contact administrator. The job is canceled. Select [End].	_
Time for maintenance soon. #####	_	Call service representative.	_
Toner is empty.	_	Replace the toner container to our specified toner container.	10-4
Toner is low. (Replace when empty.)	_	It is almost time to replace the toner container. Obtain a new toner container.	_
Toner type mismatch.	Does the type of toner you have match the model?	Please install correct toner.	_
Tray # is full of paper.	Is the acceptable storage capacity exceeded?	Remove the paper. Printing then resumes.	_

U

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
USB Drive error.*1	Is writing to a USB drive prohibited?	An error occurred in the USB drive. The job stopped. Select [End]. The error cord is as follows. 01: Connect a USB drive that can be written to.	_
	_	An error occurred in the USB drive. The job stopped. Select [End].	5-72
		The error cord is as follows. 01: The amount of data that can be saved at once has been exceeded. Restart the system or turn the power OFF/ON. If the error still occurs, the USB drive is not compatible with the machine. Use the USB drive formatted by this machine. If the USB drive cannot be formatted, it is damaged. Connect a compatible USB drive.	
USB Drive is full.*1	_	The job is canceled. Select [End]. Insufficient free space in the USB drive. Delete unneeded files.	_
USB Drive is not formatted.	Is the USB drive formatted by this machine?	Perform [Format] on this machine.	_

^{*1} When Auto Error Clear is set to [**On**], processing resumes automatically after a set amount of time elapses. For details on Auto Error Clear, refer to the following:

<u>▶ Auto Error Clear (page 8-23)</u>

W

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Warning for high temperature. Adjust the room temperature.	_	Print quality may be deteriorated. Adjust the temperature and the humidity of your room.	_
Warning for low temperature. Adjust the room temperature.	_	Print quality may be deteriorated. Adjust the temperature and the humidity of your room.	_
Warning low memory.	_	Cannot start the job. Try again later.	_

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
Waste toner box almost full.	_	It is almost time to replace the waste toner box. Obtain a new waste toner box.	_
Waste toner box is full.	Is the waste toner box full?	Replace the waste toner box.	10-7

Υ

Message	Checkpoints	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
You cannot use this box.		You cannot use the specified box. Job is canceled. Select [End].	_

Responding to Send Error

Error Code	Message	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
1101	Failed to send the e-mail. Failed to send i-FAX.	Check the host name of the SMTP server on the Command Center RX.	2-71
	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the host name of FTP.	5-29
	Failed to send via SMB.	Check the host name of SMB.	5-26
1102	Failed to send via SMB.	Check the SMB settings. Login user name and login password NOTE If the sender is a domain user, specify the domain name. Host name Path	5-26
	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the following on the Command Center RX. SMTP login user name and login password POP3 login user name and login password E-mail size limit	2-71
	Failed to send i-FAX.	Check the following on the Command Center RX. • SMTP login user name and login password • POP3 login user name and login password	Refer to FAX Operation Guide
	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the FTP settings. Login user name and login password NOTE If the sender is a domain user, specify the domain name. Path Folder share permissions of the recipient	5-29
1103	Failed to send via SMB.	Check the SMB settings. Login user name and login password NOTE If the sender is a domain user, specify the domain name. Path Folder share permissions of the recipient	5-26
	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the FTP settings. Path Folder share permissions of the recipient	5-29

Error Code	Message	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
1104	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the e-mail address.	5-24
		NOTE	
		If the address is rejected by the domain, you cannot send the email.	
	Failed to send i-FAX.	Check the i-FAX address.	Refer to
		NOTE	FAX Operation
		If the address is rejected by the domain, you cannot send the email.	Guide
1105	Failed to send via SMB.	Check the following settings.	8-58
		[Home] key > [] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Protocol Detail] >	
		[SMB Client (Transmission)]	
	Failed to send the e-mail.	Select [On] of the SMTP settings on the Command Center RX.	2-71
	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the following settings.	8-58
		[Home] key > [] > [System Menu] > [Network Settings] > "Network Settings" [Protocol Detail] >	
		[FTP Client (Transmission)]	
	Failed to send i-FAX.	Select [On] of the i-FAX settings on the Command Center RX.	Refer to FAX Operation Guide
1106	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the sender address of SMTP on the	2-71
	Failed to send i-FAX.	Command Center RX.	
1131	Failed to send via FTP.	Enable the SSL.	8-83
		[Home] key > [] > [System Menu] > [Security Settings] > "Network" [SSL]	
1132	Failed to send the e-mail.	Check the following of the SMTP server.	Refer to the Command
		Is SMTP over SSL available?Is the encryption available?	Center RX
		is the charyphon available:	User Guide.
	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the following of the FTP server.	_
		Is FTPS available? Is the array within available? In the array within available?	
4422	leb is consoled Dress [First]	Is the encryption available? Server certificate has expired.	
1133	Job is canceled. Press [End].	Server certificate has expired. Check the network and FTP settings.	_
		Check time/date setting of the machine.	
		Make sure server is using a valid certificate.	
1134	Job is canceled. Press [End].	Check the network and Command Center RX.	_
		Network Settings : Protocol, FTP Client(Transimssion):Hash	

Error Code	Message	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
2101	Failed to send via SMB.	 Check the network and SMB settings. The network cable is connected. The hub is not operating properly. The server is not operating properly. Host name and IP address Port number 	_
	Failed to send via FTP.	Check the network and FTP settings. The network cable is connected. The hub is not operating properly. The server is not operating properly. Host name and IP address Port number	_
	Failed to send the e-mail. Failed to send i-FAX.	 Check the network and Command Center RX. The network cable is connected. The hub is not operating properly. The server is not operating properly. POP3 server name of the POP3 user SMTP server name 	2-71
2102 2103	Failed to send via FTP.	 Check the network. The network cable is connected. The hub is not operating properly. The server is not operating properly. Check the following of the FTP server. Is FTP available? 	_
	Failed to send the e-mail. Failed to send i-FAX.	 The server is not operating properly. Check the network. The network cable is connected. The hub is not operating properly. The server is not operating properly. 	_
2201 2202 2203 2231	Failed to send the e-mail. Failed to send via FTP. Failed to send via SMB. Failed to send i-FAX.	 Check the network. The network cable is connected. The hub is not operating properly. The server is not operating properly. 	_
2204	Failed to send the e-mail. Failed to send i-FAX.	Check the e-mail size limit of the SMTP settings on the Command Center RX.	2-71
3101	Failed to send the e-mail. Failed to send i-FAX. Failed to send via FTP.	Check the authentication methods of both the sender and the recipient. Check the network.	_
		The network cable is connected.The hub is not operating properly.The server is not operating properly.	
3201	Failed to send the e-mail. Failed to send i-FAX.	Check the SMTP user authentication method of the recipient.	

Error Code	Message	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
4801	Job is canceled. Press [End].	Turn the power switch off and back on. If this error occurs several times, make a note of the displayed error code and contact your service representative.	_
4802	Failed to send the email. Check the encryption certificate of each destination by the Command Center RX. Job is canceled. Press [End].	Turn the power switch off and back on. If this error occurs several times, make a note of the displayed error code and contact your service representative.	_
4803	Job is canceled. Press [End].	Server certificate has expired. Check the network and SMTP settings. Check time/date setting of the machine. Make sure server is using a valid certificate.	_
4804	Job is canceled. Press [End].	When communicating with a mail server using SMTP over TLS, communication cannot be started because the signature algorithm of the server certificate does not match the signature algorithm configured on this machine. Access to the Command Center RX and go to [Security Settings] > [Network Security]. Then, compare the [Hash] in "Serverside Settings" with the [Hash] in "Clientside Settings" and adjust them to the server-side settings. After configuring, restart the machine.	Refer to the Command Center RX User Guide.
4901	_	An error occurred while validating the server certificate. Check SMTP Server certificate.	_
4902	_	Certificate is expired. Check SMTP Server certificate.	_
4903	_	An error occurred while validating the X509 certificate. Check X509 certificate.	_
4904	_	Certificate has been revoked. Check SMTP Server certificate.	_
4905	_	An error occurred while setting the encrypt/ signature certificate. Check the setting related to certificate and imported certificate.	Refer to the Command Center RX User Guide.
4906		Timeout occurred while waiting to validate certificate. • Check the environment of verification, such as OCSP/CRL. • Change the timeout setting. • Change the certificate verification level.	Refer to the Command Center RX User Guide.

Error Code	Message	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
4a02	_	The initialization of S/MINE is failed.	_
		Turn the power switch off and back on. If this error occurs several times, make a note of the displayed error code and contact your service representative.	
4a03	_	The S/MIME encryption setting is failed.	_
		Turn the power switch off and back on. If this error occurs several times, make a note of the displayed error code and contact your service representative.	
4a04	_	The reading and loading of S/MIME encrypt certificate is failed.	Refer to the Command
		Check the settings related to S/MIME certificate.	Center RX User Guide.
		 Turn the power switch off and back on. If this error occurs several times, make a note of the displayed error code and contact your service representative. 	Guide.
4a06	_	The signature setting of S/MIME is failed.	_
		Turn the power switch off and back on. If this error occurs several times, make a note of the displayed error code and contact your service representative.	
4a07	_	The reading and loading of S/MIME signature certificate is failed.	Refer to the Command
		 Check the settings related to S/MIME signature certificate. 	Center RX User
		 Turn the power switch off and back on. If this error occurs several times, make a note of the displayed error code and contact your service representative. 	Guide.
4a08	_	The sender's email address and the email address on the signature certificate do not match.	_
		Check the sender's email address and the email address on the signature certificate, and modify it to the correct email address.	

Error Code	Message	Corrective Actions	Reference Page
0007 4201 4701 5101 5102 5103 5104 7101 7102 7103 720f		Turn the power switch off and back on. If this error occurs several times, make a note of the displayed error code and contact your service representative.	2-10
9181	_	The scanned original exceeds the acceptable number of pages of 999. Send the excess pages separately.	_

Adjustment/Maintenance

Overview of Adjustment/Maintenance

If there is an image problem and the message to run adjustment or maintenance menu appears, run Adjustment/ Maintenance in the system menu.

The table below lists the item you can carry out.

Item	Description	Reference Page
Tone Curve Adjustment	The printed output tone may differ from the original. Perform this function to ensure consistency with the original tone.	10-56
Drum Refresh	Remove image blur and white dots from the printout.	10-57
Calibration	Calibrate the device to ensure correct toner overlapping and consistency with the original tone.	10-58
Laser Scanner Cleaning	Remove vertical white lines from the printout.	10-58
Developer Refresh	Adjust the printed image that is too light or incomplete, even though there is enough toner.	10-58

Tone Curve Adjustment

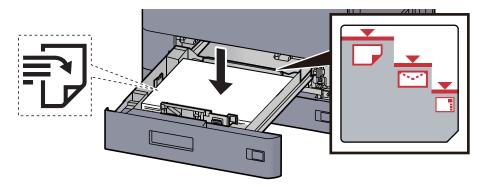
After prolonged use, or from the effects of surrounding temperature or humidity, the printed output tone may differ from the original. Perform this function to ensure consistency with the original tone. Before executing Tone Curve Adjustment, execute calibration.

If calibration does not improve the tones, perform Tone Curve Adjustment.

→ Calibration (page 10-58)

A total of 3 pattern pages (No. 1 to 3) are printed during adjustment. The printed patterns are read sequentially during the adjustment.

Load paper.



⋈ IMPORTANT

- · Load the paper with the print side facing up.
- After removing new paper from its packaging, fan the paper before loading it in the cassettes.
 - **▶** Loading in Cassette 1 (page 3-4)
- Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded. Paper that is curled or folded may cause paper jams.
- Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicator (see illustration above).
- If paper is loaded without adjusting the paper length guide and paper width guide, the paper may skew or become jammed.

Display the screen.

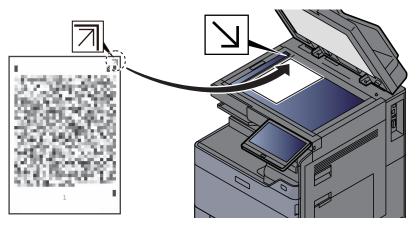
- 1 [Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Adjustment/Maintenance] > "Image Adjustment" [Tone Curve Adjustment]
- Select [Copy/Print (600dpi)] or [Print (1200dpi)].



Select [**Print (1200dpi)**] if you want to adjust the printed output tone in printer resolution 1200 dpi.

Adjust the tone curve.

- 1 Select [Start]. A pattern is printed.
 Check that the number "1" is printed at the bottom of the pattern.
- 2 As shown in the illustration, place the printed side down on the platen with the edge with the arrows toward the back.



- 3 Select [Start]. The pattern is read and adjustment begins. The second pattern is output.
- 4 Check that the number "2" (to "3") is printed at the bottom of the pattern and repeat steps 2 to 3 twice to read patterns 2 and 3 in sequence.
- 5 Select [**OK**] in the adjustment end confirmation screen.

Drum Refresh

Remove image blur and white dots from the printout.



Drum Refresh cannot be performed while printing. Execute Drum Refresh after the printing is done.

1 Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Adjustment/Maintenance] > "Image Adjustment" [Drum Refresh]

Perform the drum refresh.

Select [Start]. "Drum Refresh" begins.

Calibration

Calibrate the device to ensure correct toner overlapping and consistency with the original tone.

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Adjustment/Maintenance] > "Image Adjustment" [Calibration]

Perform the calibration.

Select [Start]. "Calibration" begins.

NOTE

When consistency with the original tone is not ensured even after performing calibration, refer to the following:

→ Tone Curve Adjustment (page 10-56)

Laser Scanner Cleaning

Remove vertical white lines from the printout.

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Adjustment/Maintenance] > "Image Adjustment" [Laser Scanner Cleaning]

Perform the laser scanner cleaning.

Select [Start]. "Laser Scanner Cleaning" begins.

Developer Refresh

Adjust the printed image that is too light or incomplete, even though there is enough toner.

1 Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Adjustment/Maintenance] > "Image Adjustment" [Developer Refresh]

Perform the Developer Refresh.

Select [Start]. "Developer Refresh" begins.

NOTE

Waiting time may be longer when the toner is refilled during developer refresh.

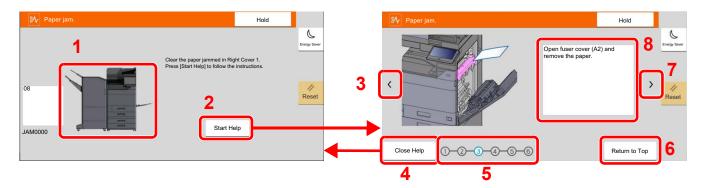
Clearing Paper Jams

If a paper jam occurs, printing stops and the location at which the paper jam has occurred and the following message appear on the touch panel.

"Paper Jam."

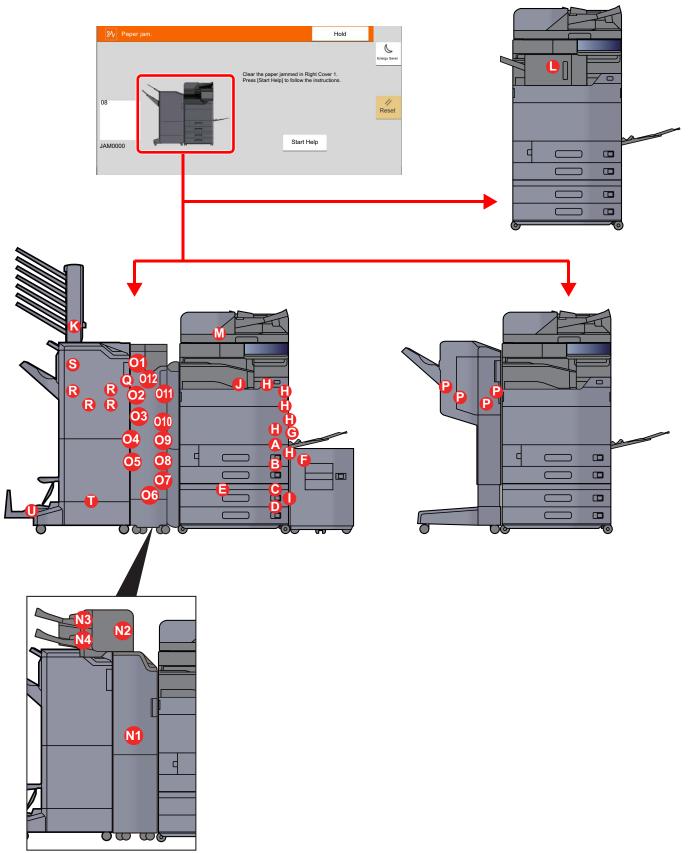
Refer to these procedures to remove the jammed paper.

Jam Location Indicators



- 1 Shows the location of a paper jam.
- 2 Shows the Help screen. The Help screen shows the procedure to clear the jam.
- 3 Returns to the previous step.
- 4 Closes the Help screen and returns to the original screen.
- 5 Shows the selected step.
- 6 Returns to step 1.
- 7 Advances to the next step.
- 8 Shows the removal procedure.

If a paper jam occurs, the location of the jam will be displayed on the touch panel as well as the clearing instructions.



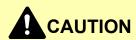
Paper Jam Location Indicator	Paper Jam Location	Reference Page
Α	Cassette 1	10-62
В	Cassette 2	10-65
С	Cassette 3 (500-sheet×2)	10-68
	Cassette 3 (1,500-sheet×1)	10-70
D	Cassette 4 (500-sheet×2)	10-68
Е	Cassette 4 (1,500-sheet×2)	10-72
F	Cassette 5 (Side Feeder)	10-75
G	Multipurpose Tray	10-77
Н	Right Cover 1	10-78
I	Right Cover 2	10-83
J	Bridge Unit	10-86
К	Mailbox	10-87
L	Inner Finisher	10-88
M	Document Processor	10-89
		10-91
N1	Inserter	10-93
N2		10-94
N3		10-96
N4		10-97
01	Z fold unit	10-98
02		10-100
O3		10-101
04		10-103
O5		10-105
O6		10-107
07		10-109
O8		10-111
O9		10-113
O10		10-114
011		10-116
012		10-118
Р	1,000-sheet Finisher	10-120
Q	4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Staple Finisher (Inner)	10-123
R	4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Staple Finisher (Tray A)	10-124

Paper Jam Location Indicator	Paper Jam Location	Reference Page
S	4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Staple Finisher (Tray B)	10-128
Т	Folding Unit	10-131 10-140
U	Folding Tray	10-136 10-146

After you remove the jam, the machine will warm up again and the error message will be cleared. The machine resumes with the page that was printing when the jam occurred.

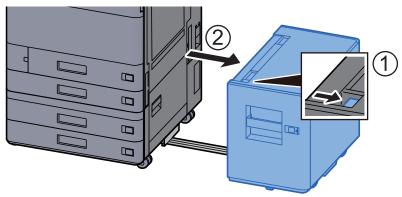
Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 1

Here, we'll explain the procedures for cassette 1, as an example.

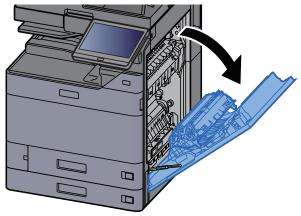


- Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.

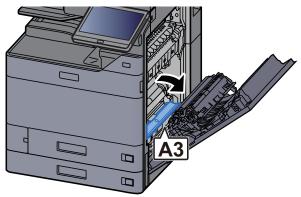
If the optional side feeder is installed, detach the side feeder.



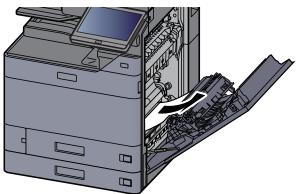
Open Right Cover 1.



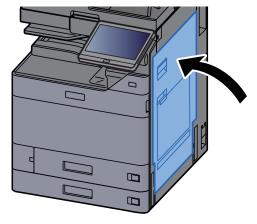
Open the cover (A3).



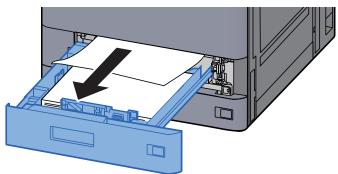
Remove any jammed paper.



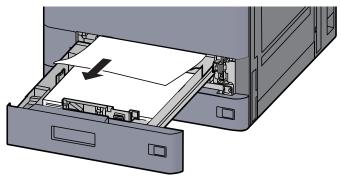
5 Return the cover to the original position.

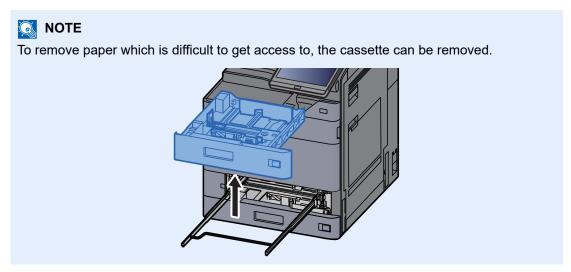


6 Pull Cassette 1 out toward you until it stops.

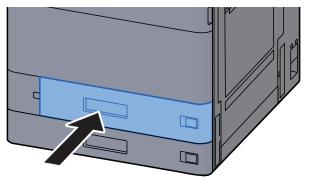


7 Remove any jammed paper.

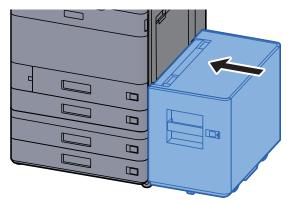




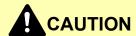
Push Cassette 1 back in.



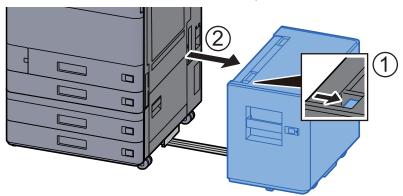
If the optional side feeder is installed, return the side feeder to the original position.



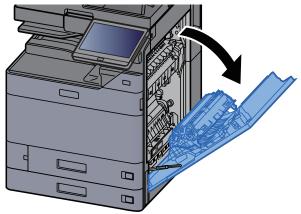
Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 2



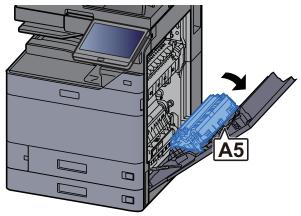
- Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - 1 If the optional side feeder is installed, detach the side feeder.



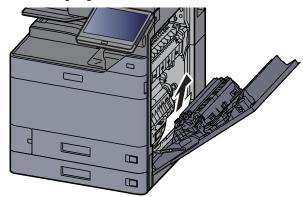
Open Right Cover 1.



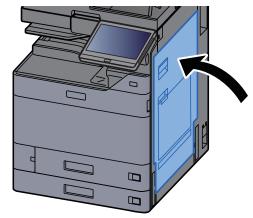
Close the duplex unit (A5).



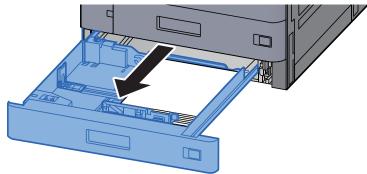
Remove any jammed paper.



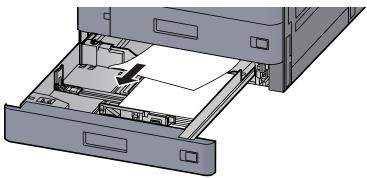
Return the cover to the original position.

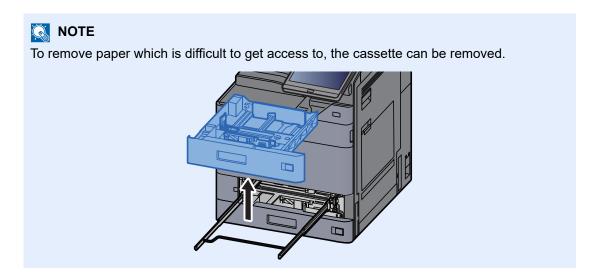


6 Pull Cassette 2 out toward you until it stops.

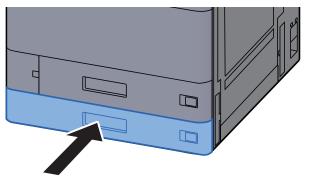


7 Remove any jammed paper.

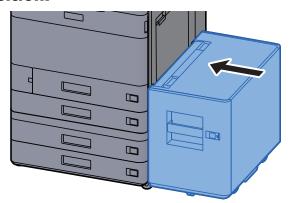




Push Cassette 2 back in.

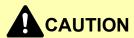


If the optional side feeder is installed, return the side feeder to the original position.

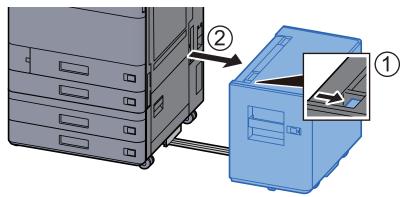


Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 3 and 4 (500-sheet×2)

See the explanation for Cassette 3 below.



- Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - 4 If the optional side feeder is installed, detach the side feeder.



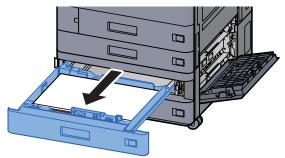
Open Right Cover 2.



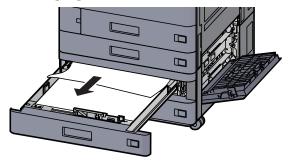
Remove any jammed paper.

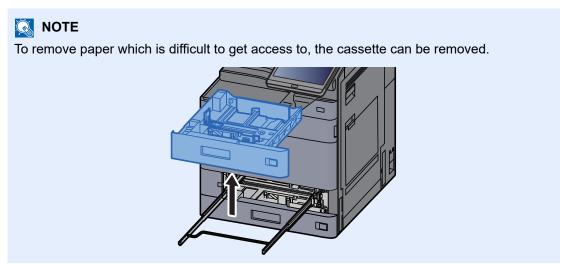


Pull Cassette 3 out toward you until it stops.

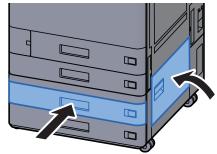


Remove any jammed paper.

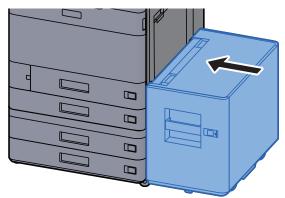




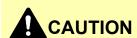
6 Push Right Cover 2 and Cassette 3 back in.



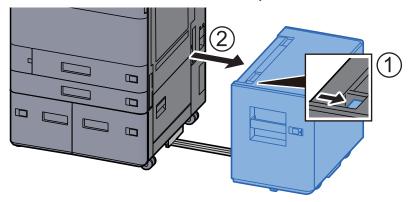
7 If the optional side feeder is installed, return the side feeder to the original position.



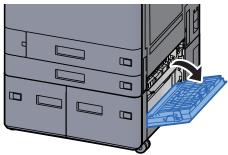
Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 3 (1,500-sheet×2)



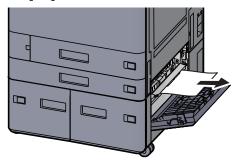
- · Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - If the optional side feeder is installed, detach the side feeder.



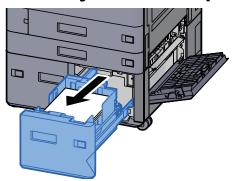
Open Right Cover 2.



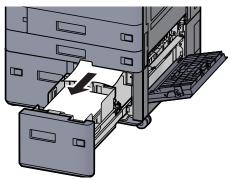
Remove any jammed paper.



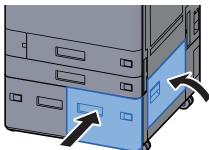
4 Pull Cassette 3 out toward you until it stops.



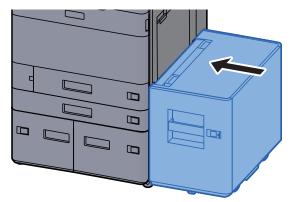
5 Remove any jammed paper.



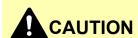
6 Push Right Cover 2 and Cassette 3 back in.



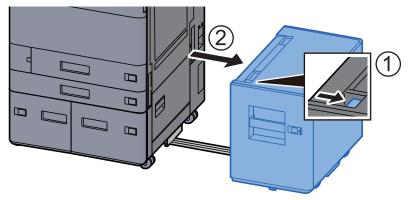
7 If the optional side feeder is installed, return the side feeder to the original position.



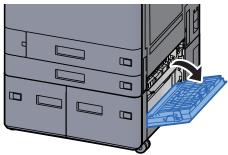
Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 4 (1,500-sheet×2)



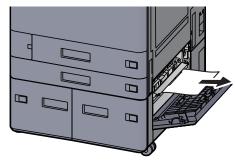
- · Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - If the optional side feeder is installed, detach the side feeder.



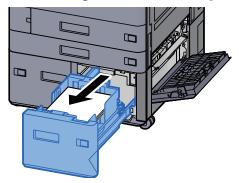
Open Right Cover 2.



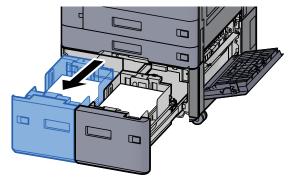
Remove any jammed paper.



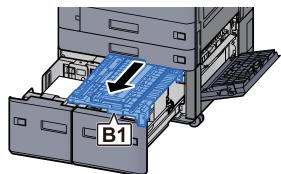
4 Pull Cassette 3 out toward you until it stops.



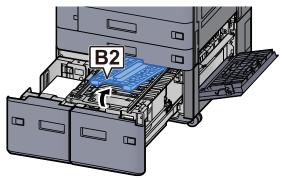
5 Pull Cassette 4 out toward you until it stops.



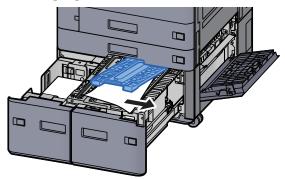
6 Pull out paper feed unit (B1).



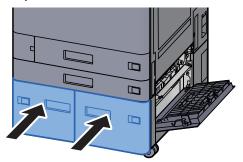
Open cover (B2).



Remove any jammed paper.



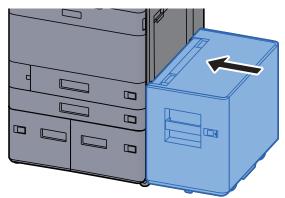
O Push paper feed unit, Cassette 3 and Cassette 4 back in.



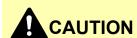
1 Return the cover to the original position.



11 If the optional side feeder is installed, return the side feeder to the original position.

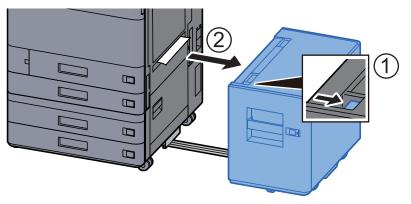


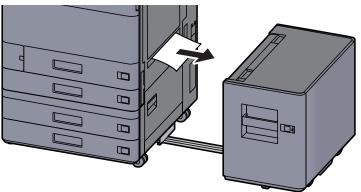
Remove any jammed paper in Cassette 5 (Side Feeder)



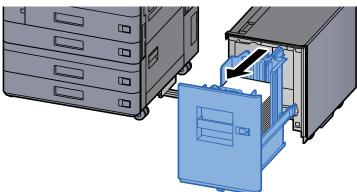
- · Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.

Detach the side feeder.

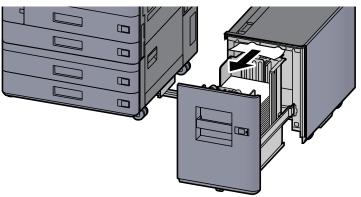




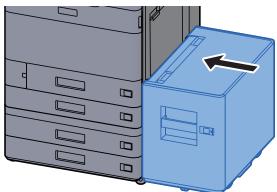
Pull Cassette 5 out toward you until it stops.



Remove any jammed paper.



5 Return the Cassette 5 and side feeder to the original position.



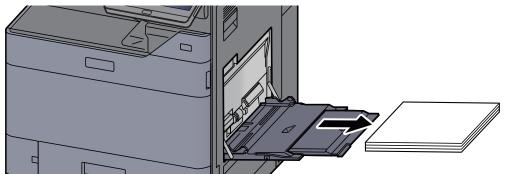
Remove any jammed paper in the Multipurpose Tray

ACAUTION

- Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - Remove any jammed paper.



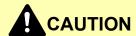
Remove all the paper.



Reload the paper.

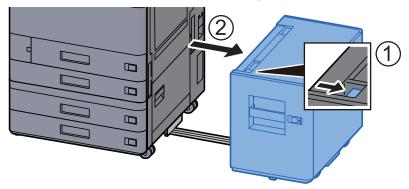


Remove any jammed paper in Right Cover 1

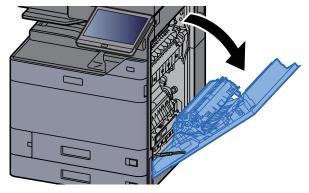


The fixing unit is extremely hot. Take sufficient care when working in this area, as there is a danger of getting burned.

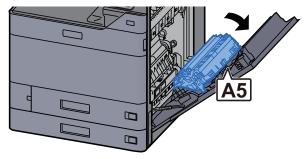
1 If the optional side feeder is installed, detach the side feeder.

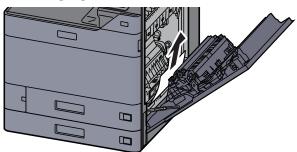


Open Right Cover 1.

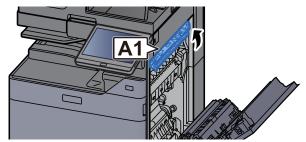


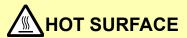
Close the duplex unit (A5).





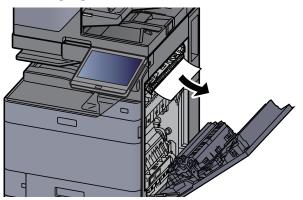
Open the paper feed unit cover (A1).



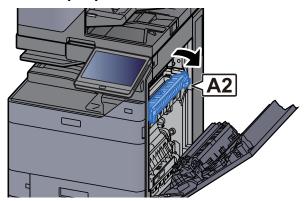


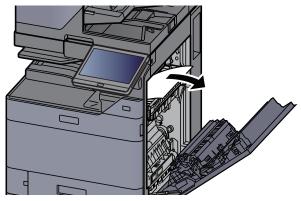
(A1) should not be touched until one minutes passes after open the right cover.

6 Remove any jammed paper.

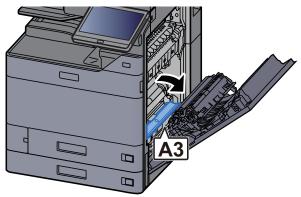


7 Open the fuser cover (A2).

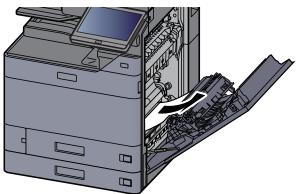




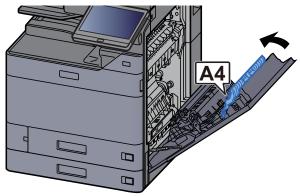
Open the cover (A3).

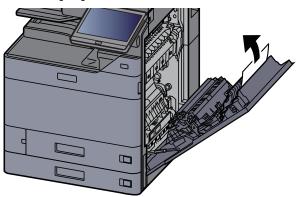


10 Remove any jammed paper.

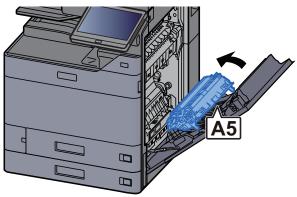


11 Lift the cover (A4).

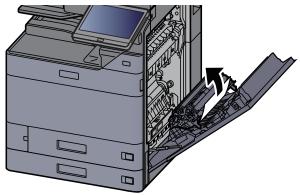




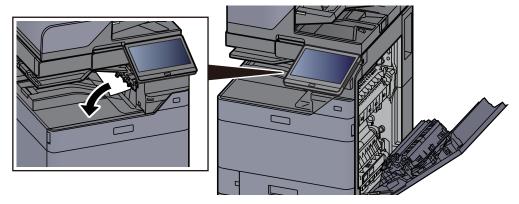
13 Lift the duplex unit (A5).



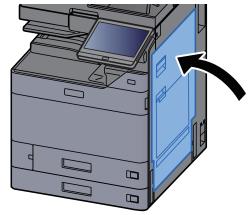
14 Remove any jammed paper.



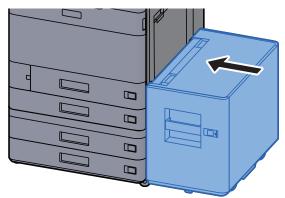
15 Remove the paper from the paper ejector.



16 Return the cover to the original position.



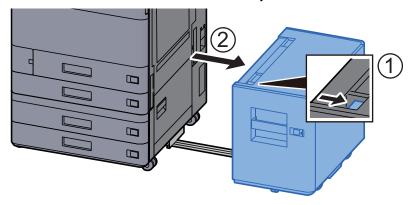
17 If the optional side feeder is installed, return the side feeder to the original position.



Remove any jammed paper in Right Cover 2 (500-sheet×2)

ACAUTION

- Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - If the optional side feeder is installed, detach the side feeder.



Open Right Cover 2.



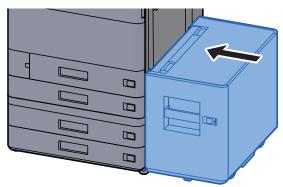
Remove any jammed paper.



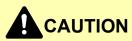
Return the cover to the original position.



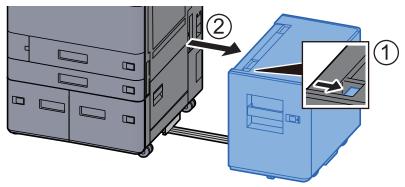
If the optional side feeder is installed, return the side feeder to the original position.



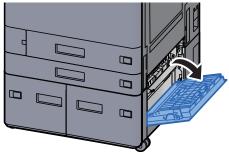
Remove any jammed paper in Right Cover 2 (1,500-sheet×2)



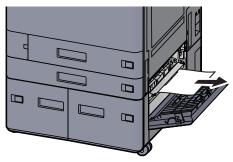
- Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - If the optional side feeder is installed, detach the side feeder.



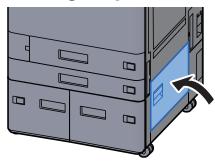
Open Right Cover 2.



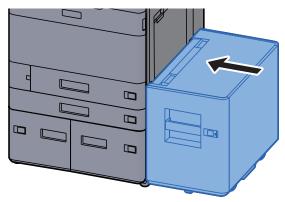
Remove any jammed paper.



Return the cover to the original position.



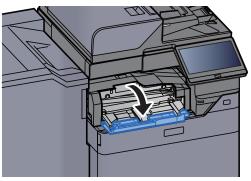
If the optional side feeder is installed, return the side feeder to the original position.



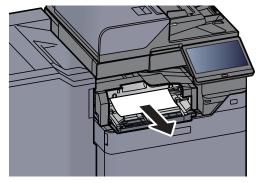
Remove any jammed paper in the Bridge Unit

ACAUTION

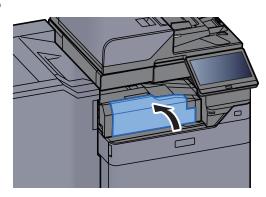
- Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - Open the bridge unit cover.



Remove any jammed paper.



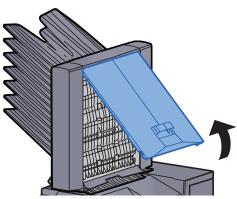
Close the cover.



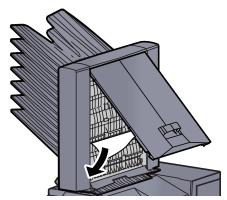
Remove any jammed paper in the Mailbox

ACAUTION

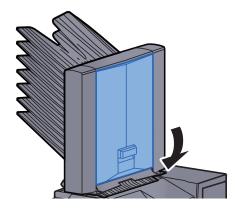
- Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - Open the mailbox cover.



Remove any jammed paper.



3 Close the cover.

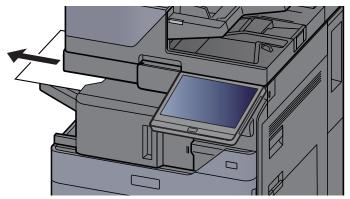


Remove any jammed paper in the Inner Finisher

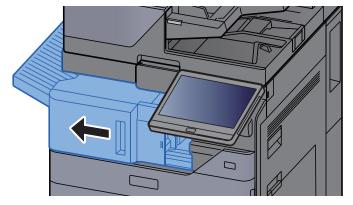
ACAUTION

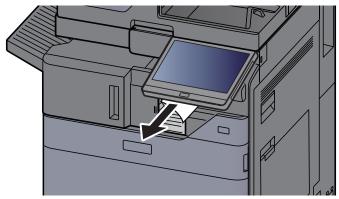
- Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.

Remove any jammed paper.

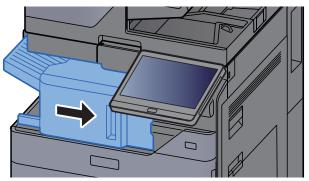


Open the inner finisher unit.





Return the unit to the original position.

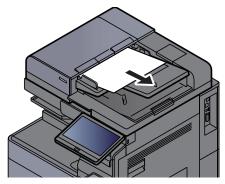


Remove any jammed paper in the Document Processor (Reverse Automatic)

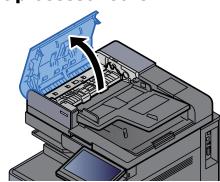


If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.

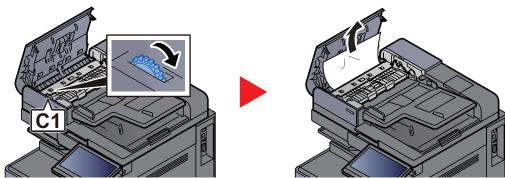
Remove the originals from the Original Table.



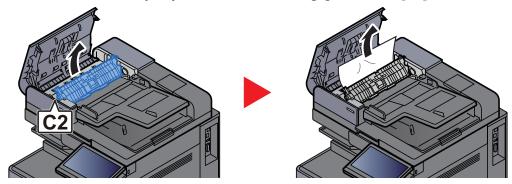
Open the document processor cover.



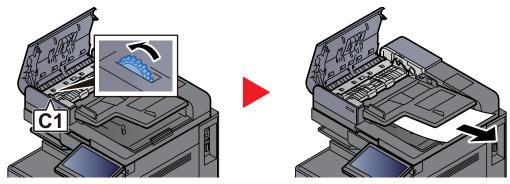
Turn dial (C1) to remove any jammed paper.



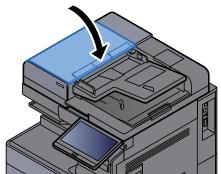
Open reverse unit (C2) and remove any jammed paper.



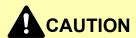
5 Turn dial (C1) to remove any jammed paper.



6 Return the cover to the original position.

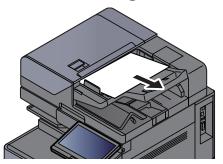


Remove any jammed paper in the Document Processor (Dual Scan)

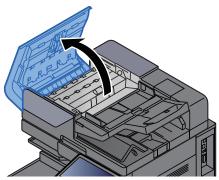


If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.

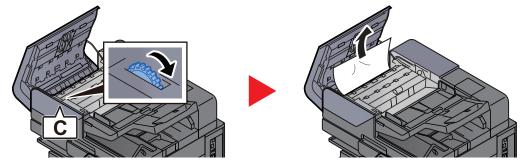
Remove the originals from the Original Table.



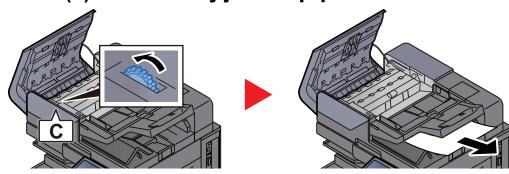
Open the document processor cover.



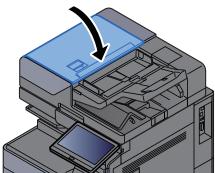
Turn dial (C) to remove any jammed paper.



Turn dial (C) to remove any jammed paper.



5 Return the cover to the original position.



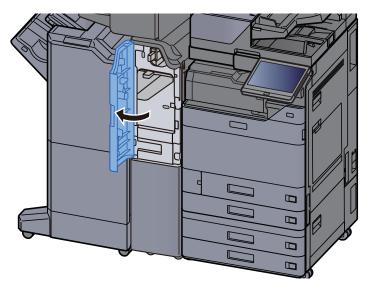
Remove any jammed paper in the Inserter

ACAUTION

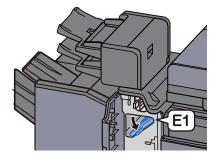
- Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.

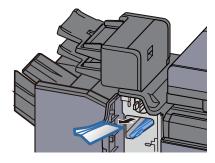
Straight pass

Open the front cover.

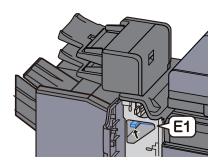


Open the transport guide (E1).

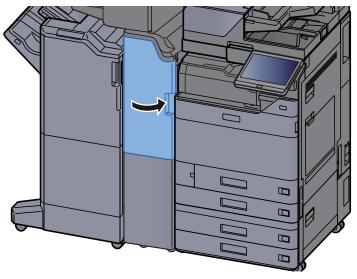




A Return the transport guide (E1) to the original position.

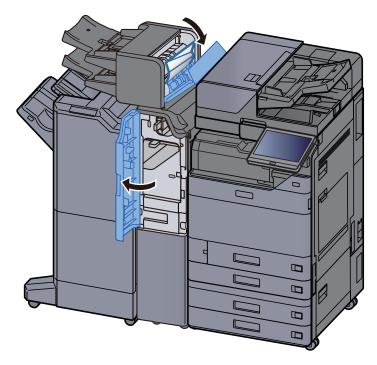


5 Return the cover to the original position.

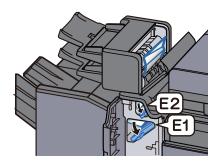


Vertical transport section

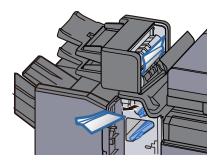
Open the front cover and right cover.

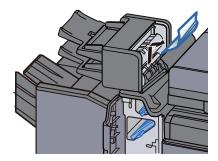


Open the transport guides (E1) and (E2).

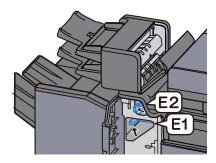


3 Remove any jammed paper.

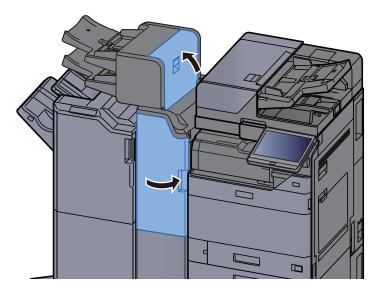




4 Return the transport guides (E1) and (E2) to the original position.

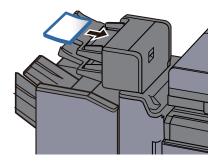


Return the cover to the original position.

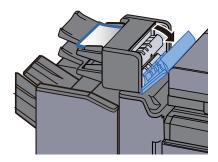


Tray 1 lift error

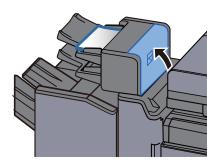
1 Load paper in tray 1.



2 Open the right cover.

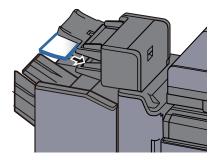


Close the right cover.

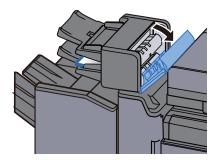


Tray 2 lift error

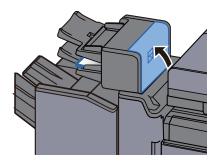
Load paper in tray 2.



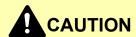
2 Open the right cover.



3 Close the right cover.



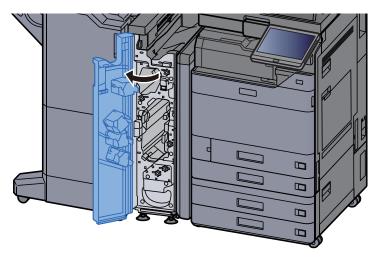
Remove any jammed paper in the Z-fold unit



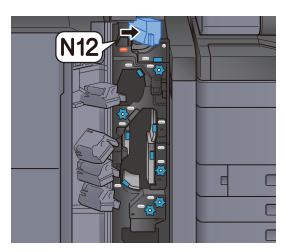
- Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.

Folding machine tray output

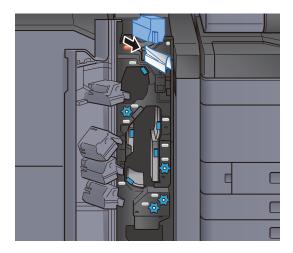
Open the front cover.



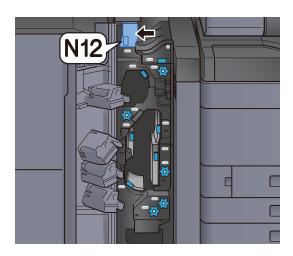
Open the transport guide (N12).



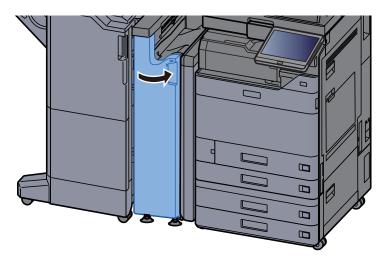
Remove any jammed paper.



4 Return the transport guide (N12) to the original position.

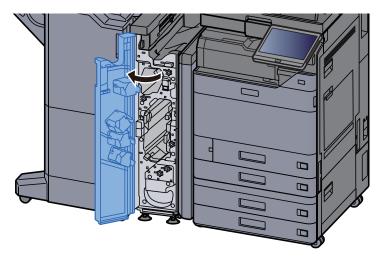


Close the front cover.

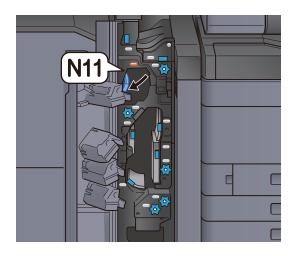


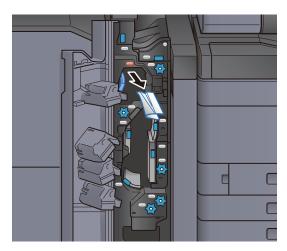
Relay transport guide plate

Open the front cover.

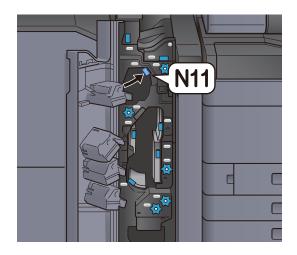


Open the transport guide (N11).

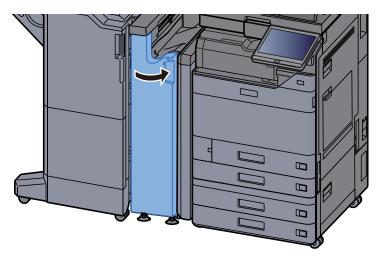




A Return the transport guide (N11) to the original position.

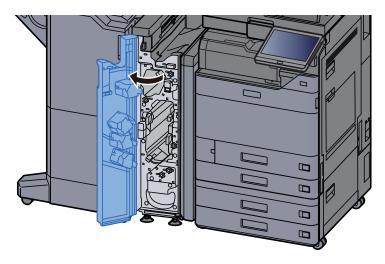


Close the front cover.

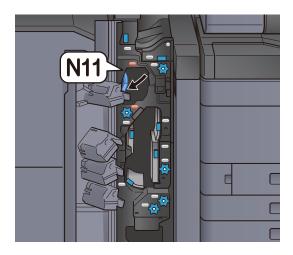


Paper transport roller knob

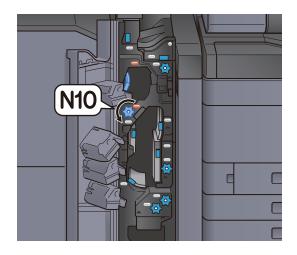
Open the front cover.



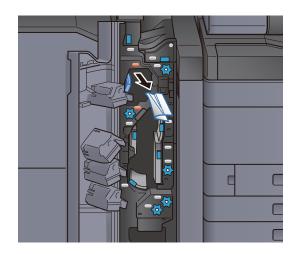
Open the transport guide (N11).



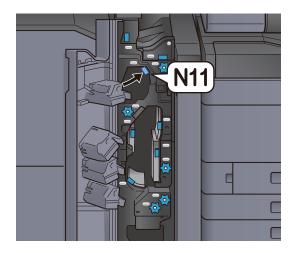
3 Turn knob (N10).



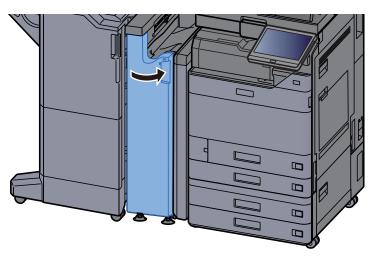
4 Take out the jammed paper.



Return the transport guide (N11) to the original position.

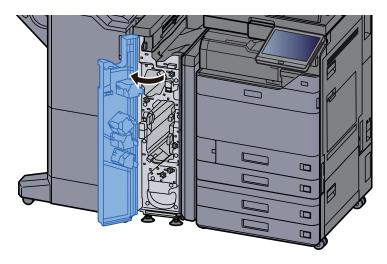


6 Close the front cover.

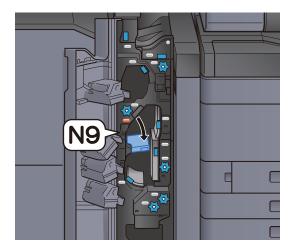


Additional folding guide plate

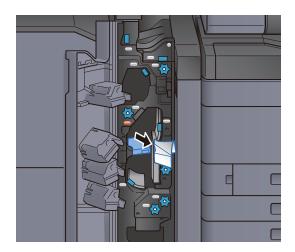
Open the front cover.



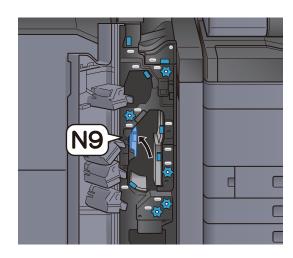
Open the transport guide (N9).



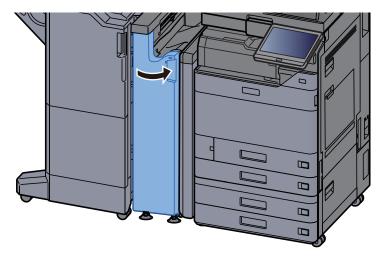
3 Remove any jammed paper.



4 Return the transport guide (N9) to the original position.

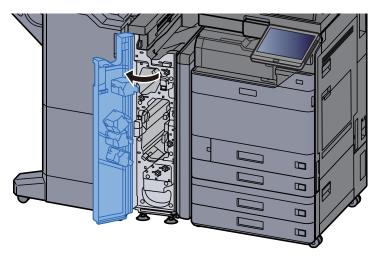


Close the front cover.

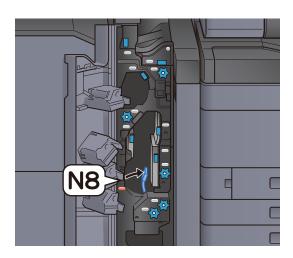


Post-folding transport guide plate

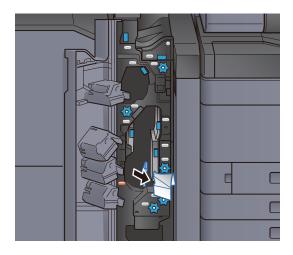
Open the front cover.



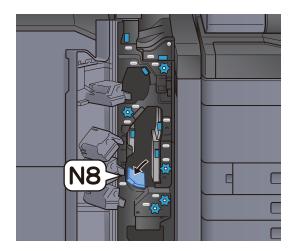
Open the transport guide (N8).



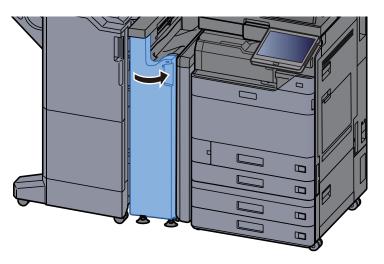
Remove any jammed paper.



4 Return the transport guide (N8) to the original position.

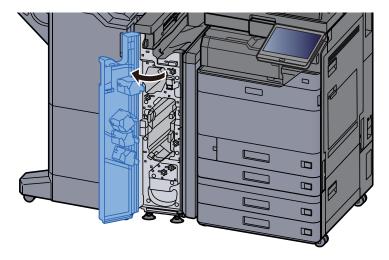


Close the front cover.

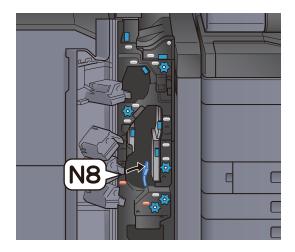


Folding roller knob

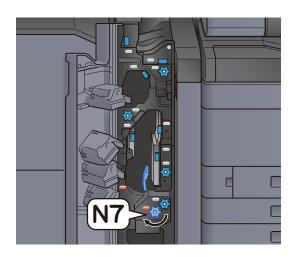
Open the front cover.



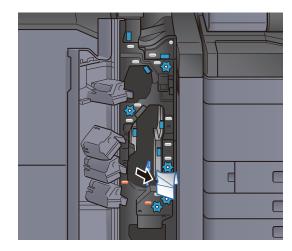
Open the transport guides (N8).



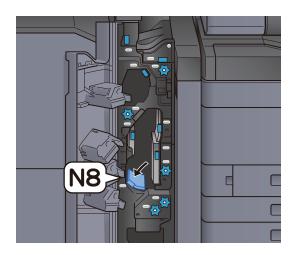
3 Turn knob (N7).



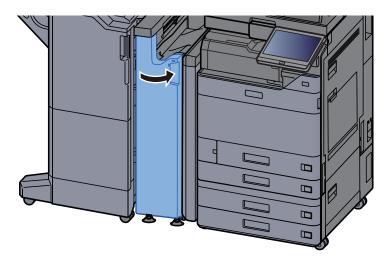
Take out the jammed paper.



5 Return the transport guide (N8) to the original position.

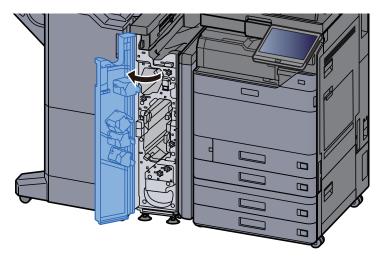


Close the front cover.

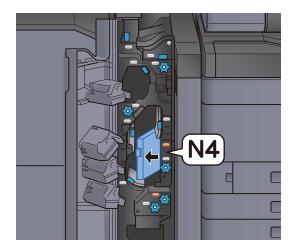


Registration roller knob

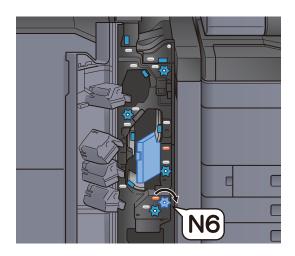
Open the front cover.



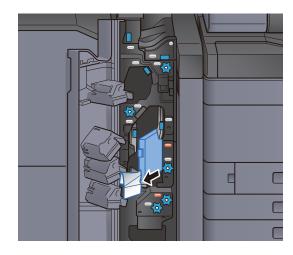
Open the transport guides (N4).



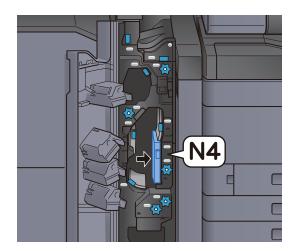
3 Turn knob (N6).



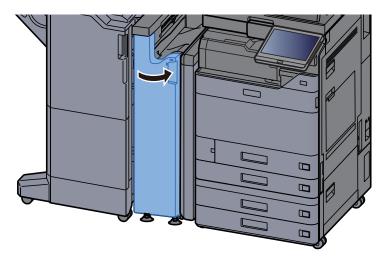
Remove any jammed paper.



5 Return the transport guide (N4) to the original position.

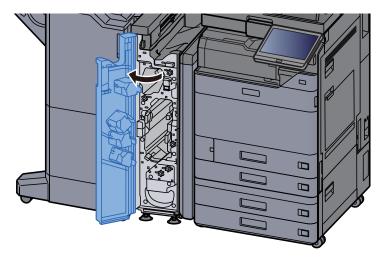


6 Close the front cover.

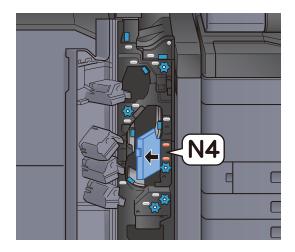


Paper stack roller knob

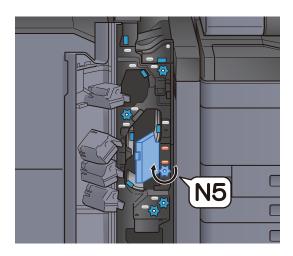
Open the front cover.



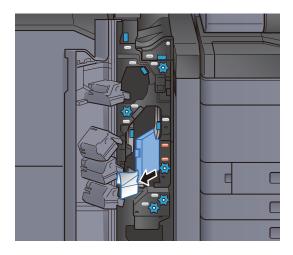
Open the transport guides (N4).



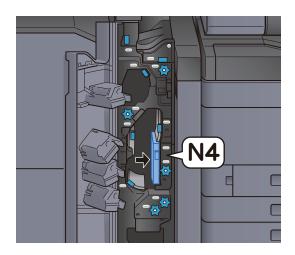
3 Turn knob (N5).



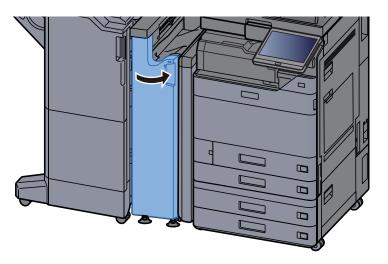
Remove any jammed paper.



5 Return the transport guide (N4) to the original position.

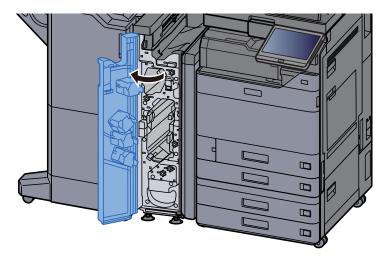


Close the front cover.

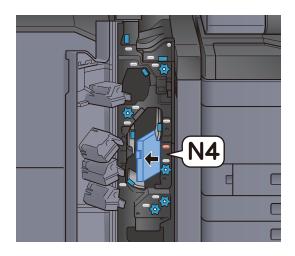


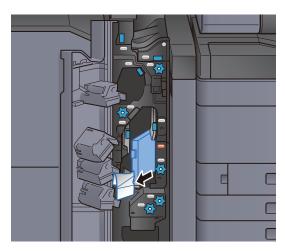
Resist transfer guide plate

Open the front cover.

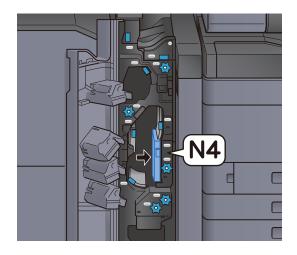


Open the transport guides (N4).

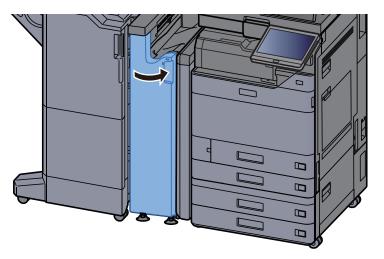




1 Return the transport guide (N4) to the original position.

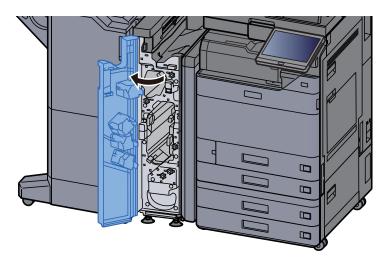


Close the front cover.

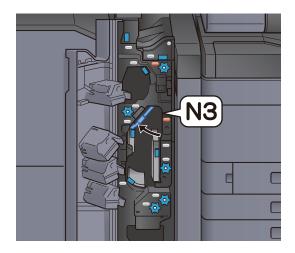


Pre-registration transport guide plate

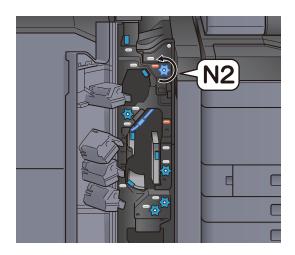
Open the front cover.

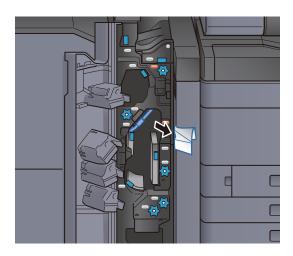


Open the transport guides (N3).

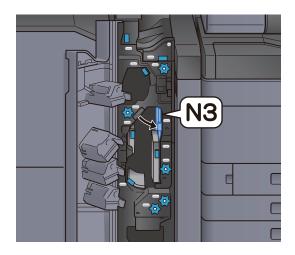


3 Turn knob (N2).

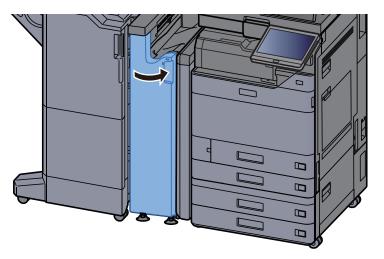




5 Return the transport guide (N3) to the original position.

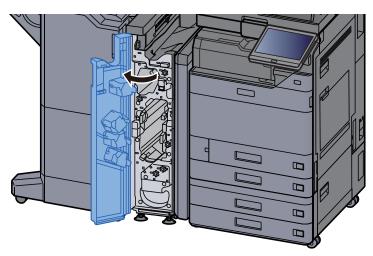


6 Close the front cover.

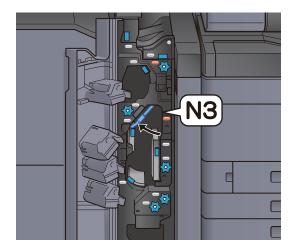


Z-fold unit Clear paper jam

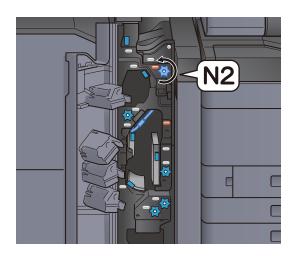
Open the front cover.

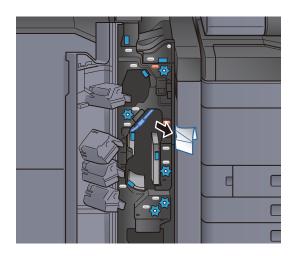


Open the transport guides (N3).

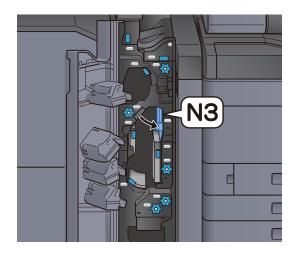


3 Turn knob (N2).

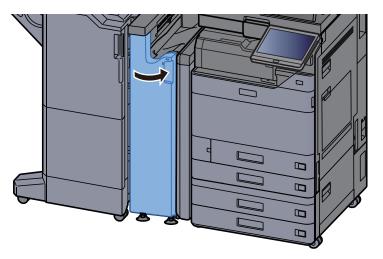




5 Return the transport guide (N3) to the original position.

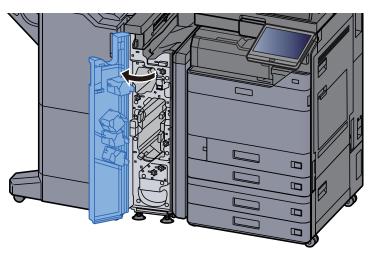


6 Close the front cover.

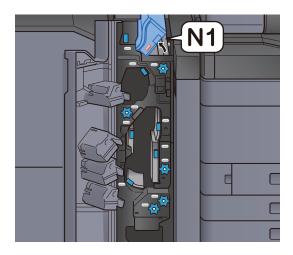


Entrance guide plate

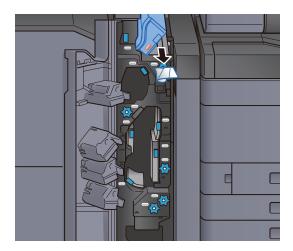
Open the front cover.



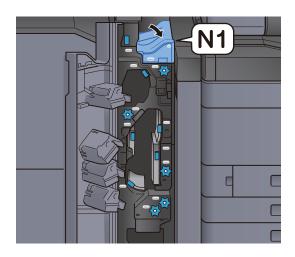
Open the transport guides (N1).



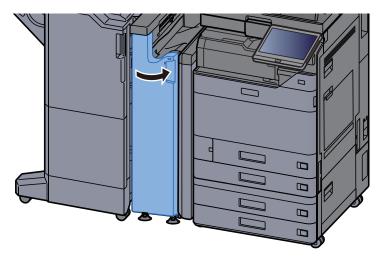
3 Remove any jammed paper.



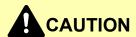
4 Return the transport guide (N1) to the original position.



Close the front cover.

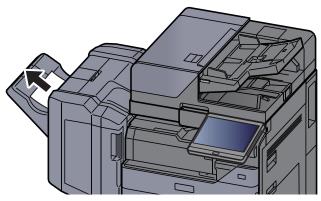


Remove any jammed paper in the 1,000-Sheet Finisher

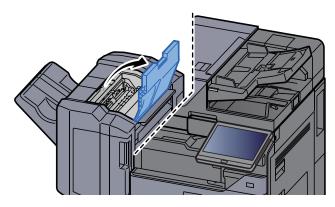


- Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.

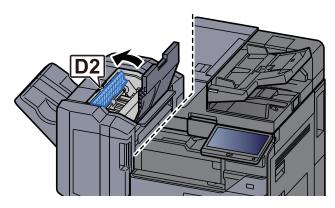
1 Remove any jammed paper.



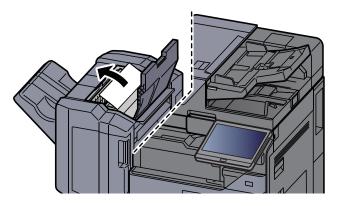
Open the finisher top cover.



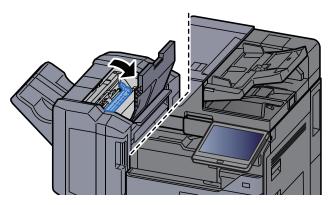
Open the conveyor guide (D2).



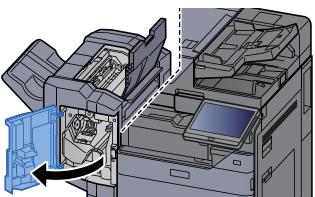
Remove any jammed paper.



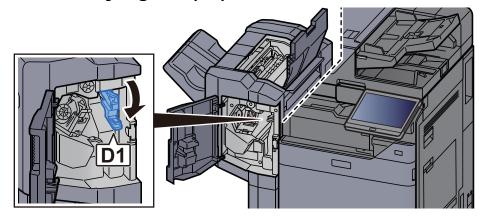
5 Return the conveyor guide (D2) to the original position.



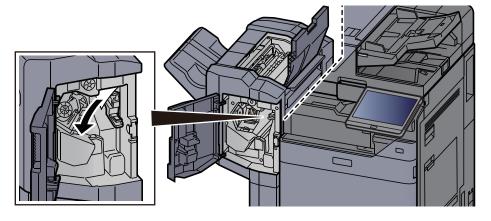
6 Open the finisher front cover.



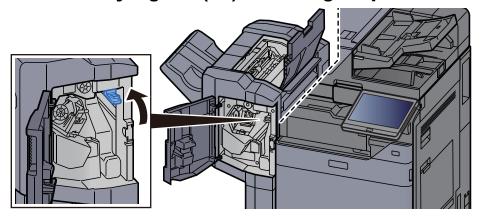
Open the conveyor guide (D1).



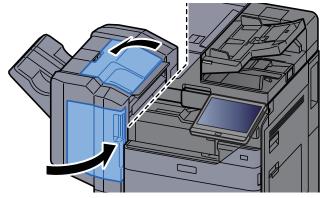
8 Remove any jammed paper.



Q Return the conveyor guide (D1) to the original position.



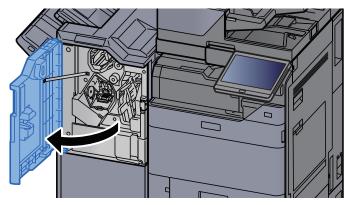
10 Return the covers to the original position.



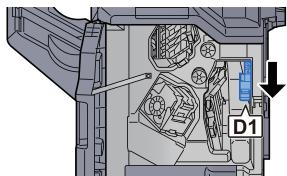
Remove any jammed paper in the 4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Staple Finisher (Inner)

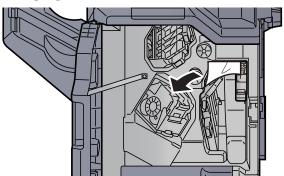
ACAUTION

- · Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - Open the finisher front cover 1.

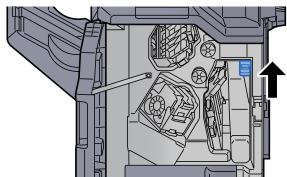


Open the conveyor guide (D1).

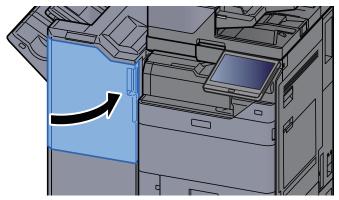




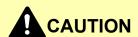
4 Return the conveyor guide (D1) to the original position.



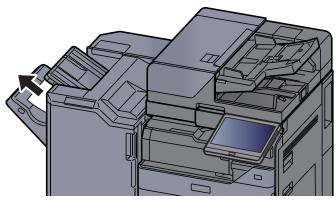
Return the cover to the original position.



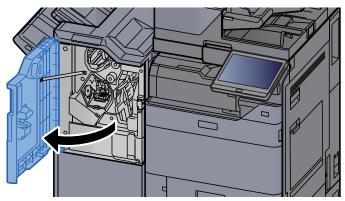
Remove any jammed paper in the 4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Staple Finisher (Tray A)



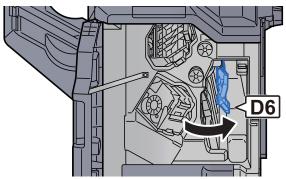
- · Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - Remove any jammed paper.



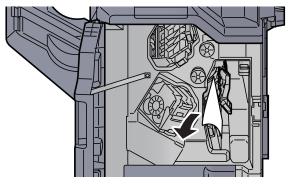
Open the finisher front cover 1.



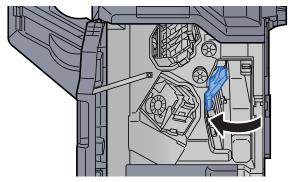
Open the conveyor guide (D6).



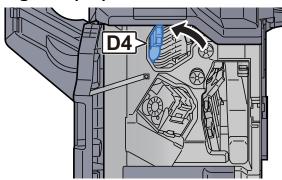
Remove any jammed paper.



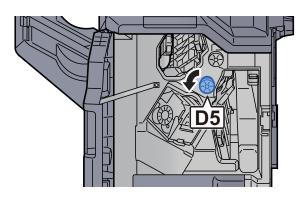
5 Return the conveyor guide (D6) to the original position.



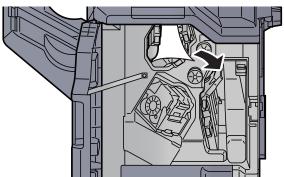
G Open the conveyor guide (D4).



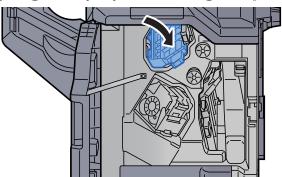
7 Turn knob (D5).



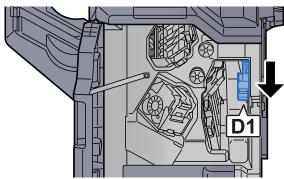
8 Remove any jammed paper.



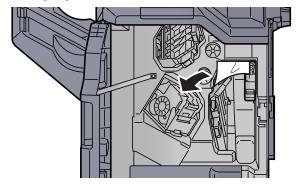
Q Return the conveyor guide (D4) to the original position.



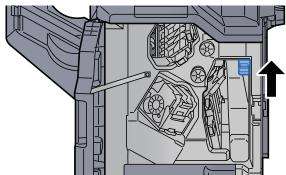
10 Open the conveyor guide (D1).



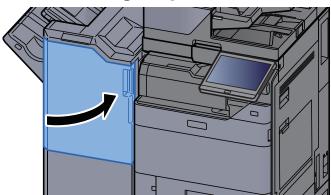
11 Remove any jammed paper.



12 Return the conveyor guide (D1) to the original position.



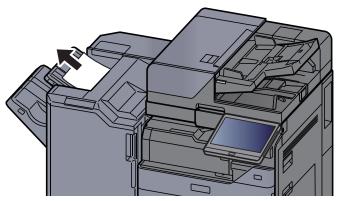
13 Return the cover to the original position.



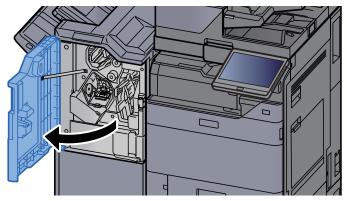
Remove any jammed paper in the 4,000-sheet Finisher/100-sheet Staple Finisher (Tray B)

ACAUTION

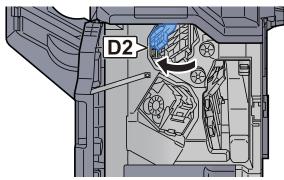
- · Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - **1** Remove any jammed paper.



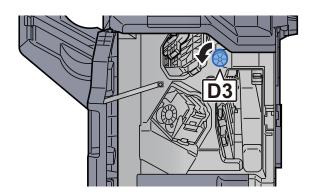
Open the finisher front cover 1.



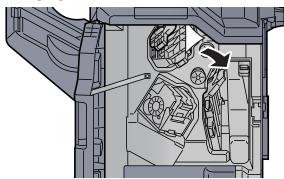
3 Open the conveyor guide (D2).



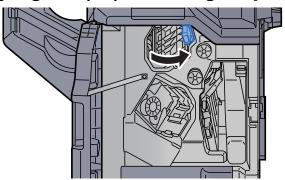
Turn knob (D3).



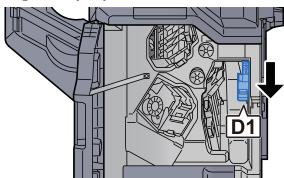
5 Remove any jammed paper.



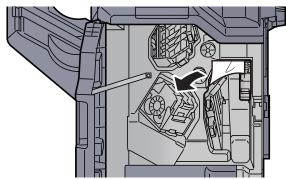
6 Return the conveyor guide (D2) to the original position.



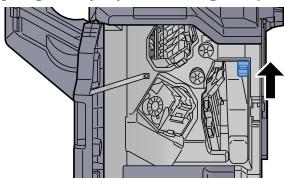
7 Open the conveyor guide (D1).



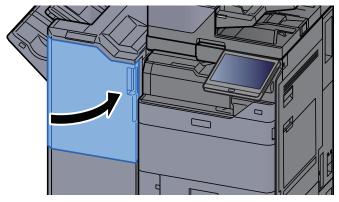
Remove any jammed paper.



Q Return the conveyor guide (D1) to the original position.



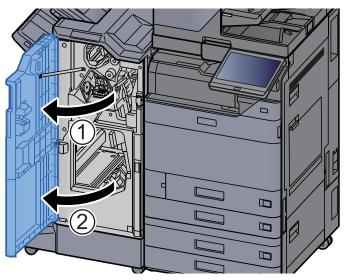
10 Return the cover to the original position.



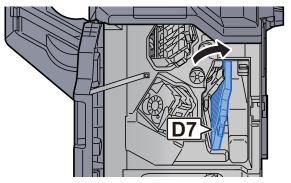
Remove any jammed paper in the Folding Unit (4,000-sheet Finisher)

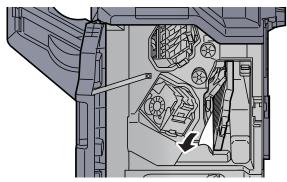
ACAUTION

- · Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - Open the finisher front cover 1 and 2.

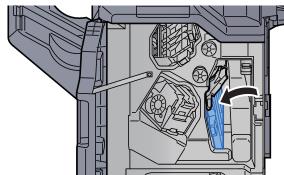


Open the conveyor guide (D7).

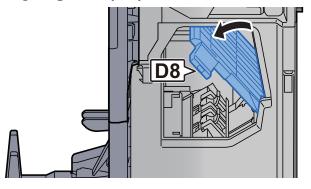




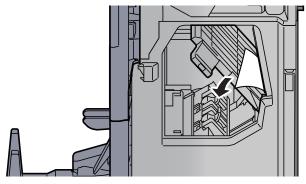
Return the conveyor guide (D7) to the original position.



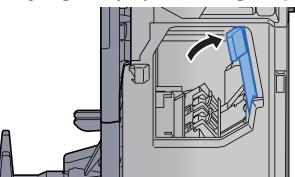
5 Open the conveyor guide (D8).



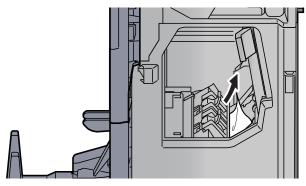
6 Remove any jammed paper.



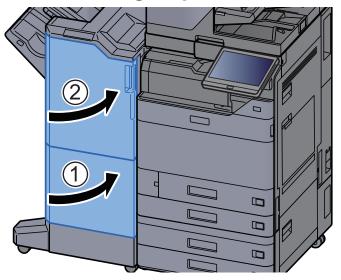
7 Return the conveyor guide (D8) to the original position.



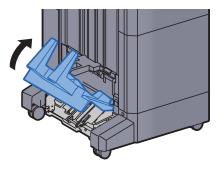
Remove paper from inside the finisher.

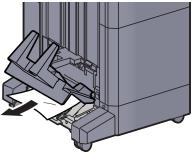


Q Return the covers to the original position.

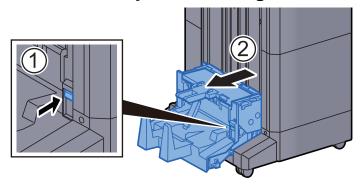


10 Lift the folding tray.

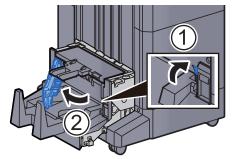




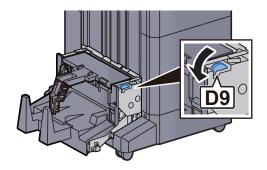
12 Press the release lever to pull the folding unit out.

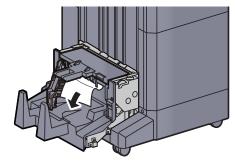


13 Open the folding unit left cover.

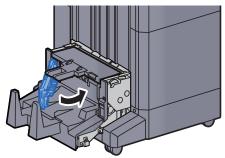


14 Turn dial (D9).

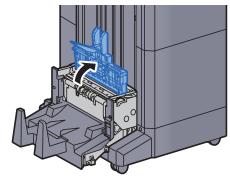




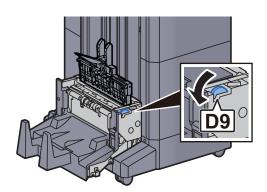
16 Return the folding unit left cover to the original position.

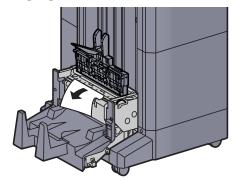


17 Open the folding unit top cover.

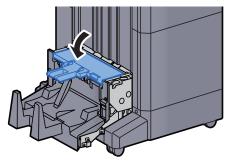


18 Turn dial (D9).

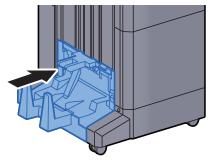




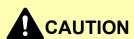
? Return the folding unit top cover to the original position.



21 Return the folding unit to the original position.

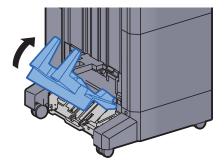


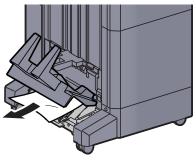
Remove any jammed paper in the Folding Tray (4,000-sheet Finisher)



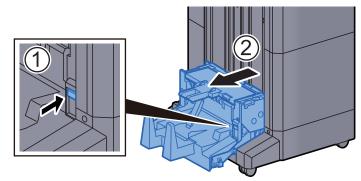
- Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.

Lift the folding tray.

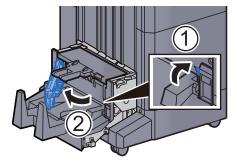




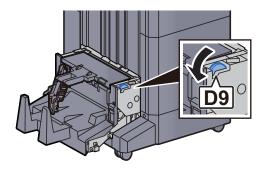
Press the release lever to pull the folding unit out.

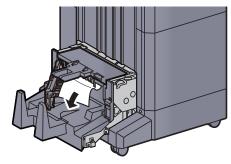


Open the folding unit left cover.

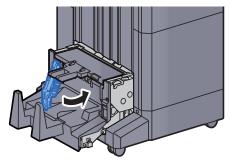


5 Turn dial (D9).

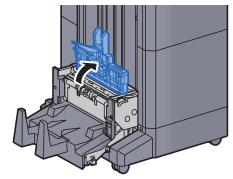




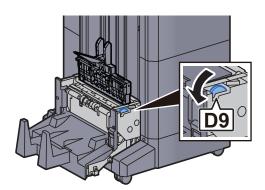
7 Return the folding unit left cover to the original position.

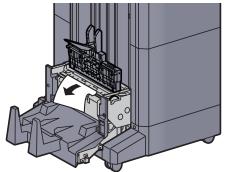


Open the folding unit top cover.

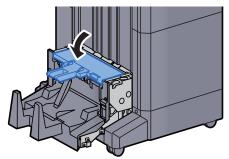


9 Turn dial (D9).

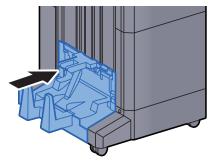




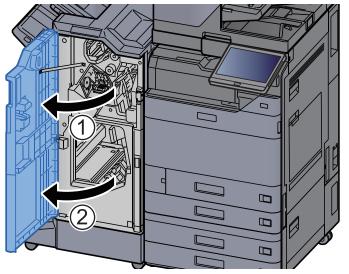
11 Return the folding unit top cover to the original position.



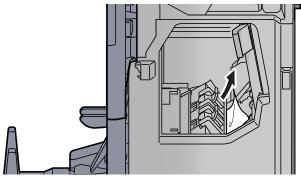
12 Return the folding unit to the original position.



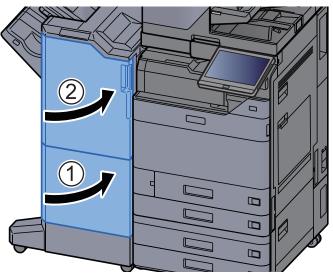
13 Open the finisher front cover 1 and 2.



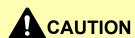
14 Remove paper from inside the finisher.



15 Return the covers to the original position.

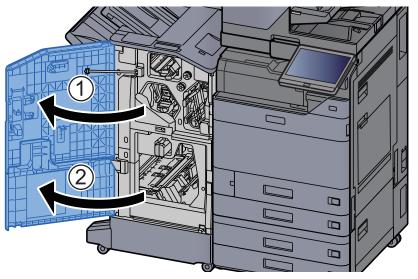


Remove any jammed paper in the Folding Unit (100-sheet Staple Finisher)

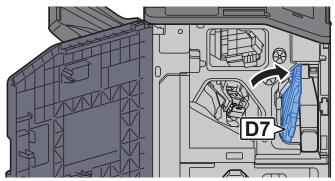


- · Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.

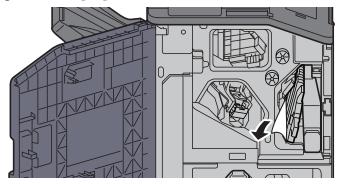
Open the finisher front cover 1 and 2.



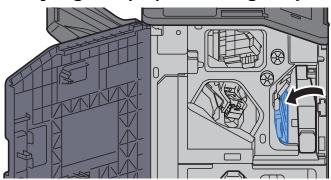
Open the conveyor guide (D7).



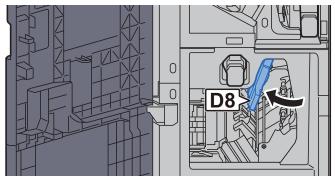
? Remove any jammed paper.

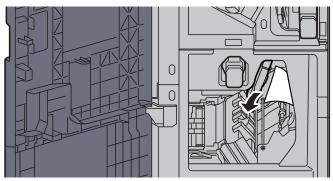


Return the conveyor guide (D7) to the original position.

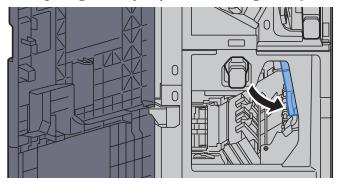


5 Open the conveyor guide (D8).

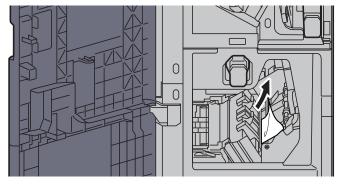




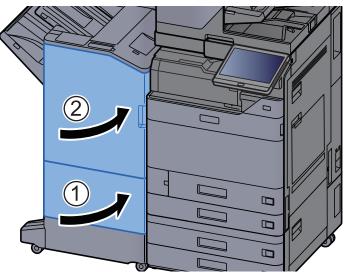
7 Return the conveyor guide (D8) to the original position.



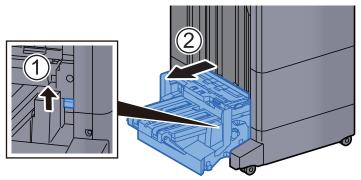
8 Remove paper from inside the finisher.



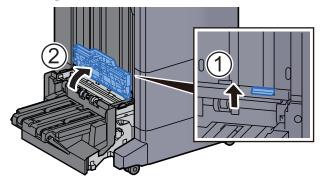
Return the covers to the original position.



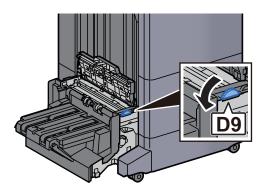
10 Lift the release lever to pull the folding unit out.



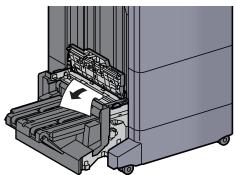
11 Open the folding unit top cover.



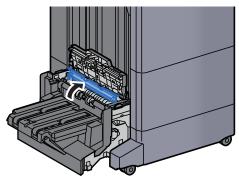
12 Turn dial (D9).



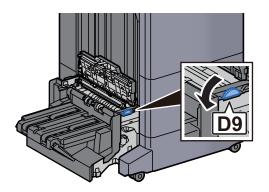
13 Remove any jammed paper.



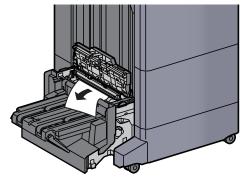
14 Open the folding unit conveyor guide.



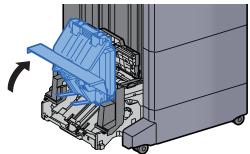
15 Turn dial (D9).

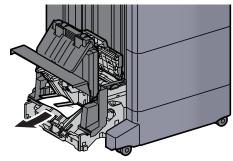


16 Remove any jammed paper.

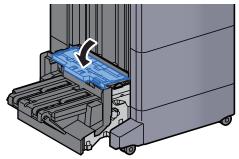


17 Lift the folding tray.

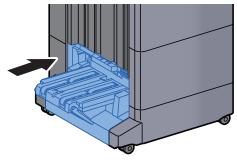




19 Return the covers to the original position.



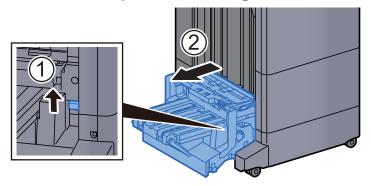
20 Return the folding unit to the original position.



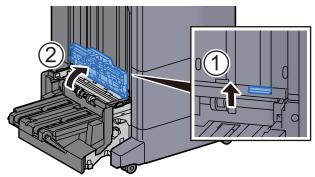
Remove any jammed paper in the Folding Tray (100-sheet Staple Finisher)

ACAUTION

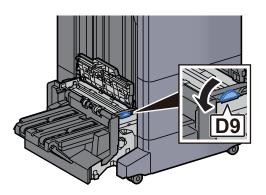
- · Do not reuse jammed papers.
- If the paper tears during removal, be sure to remove any loose scraps of paper from inside the machine. Scraps of paper left in the machine could cause subsequent jamming.
 - Lift the release lever to pull the folding unit out.

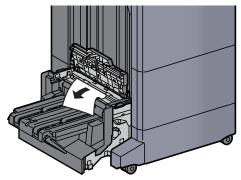


Open the folding unit top cover.

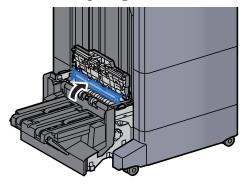


3 Turn dial (D9).

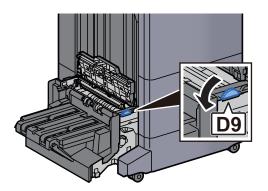




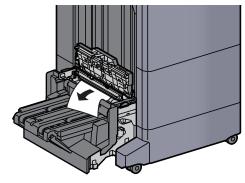
Open the folding unit conveyor guide.



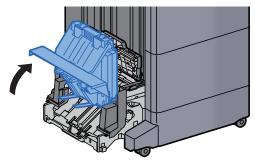
6 Turn dial (D9).



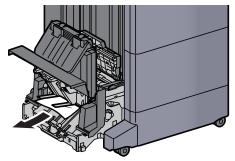
7 Remove any jammed paper.



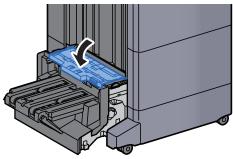
Calculate Property Street



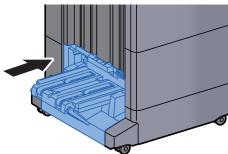
Semove any jammed paper.



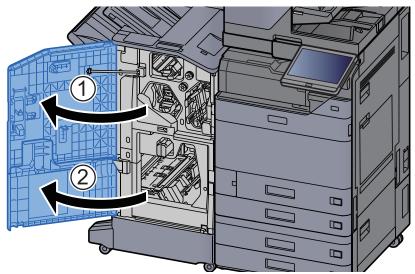
1 Return the covers to the original position.



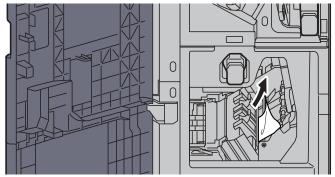
11 Return the folding unit to the original position.



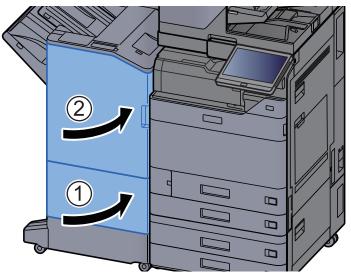
12 Open the finisher front cover 1 and 2.



13 Remove paper from inside the finisher.



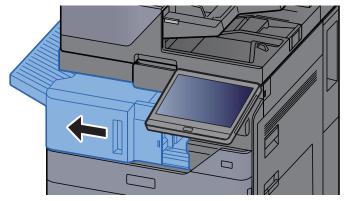
14 Return the covers to the original position.



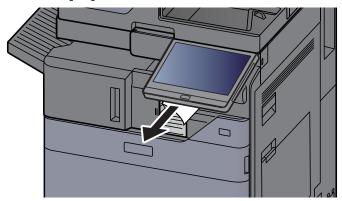
Clearing a Staple Jam

Clearing a staple jam of the Inner Finisher

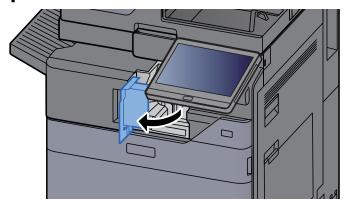
Open the inner finisher unit.



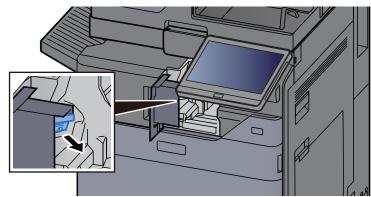
Remove any jammed paper.



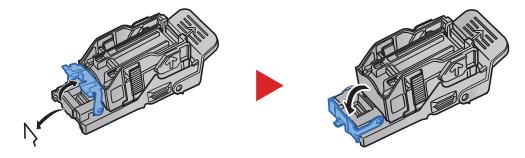
Open the staple cover.



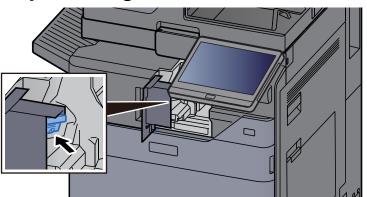
Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder.



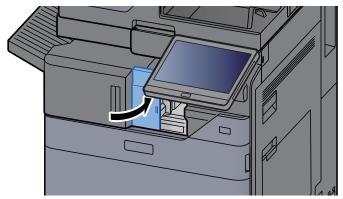
Remove the jammed staple.



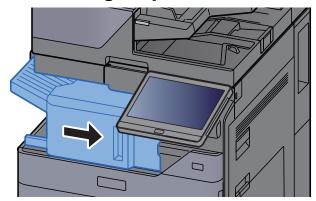
6 Install the Staple Cartridge Holder.



7 Return the staple cover to the original position.

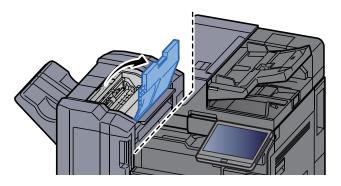


Return the unit to the original position.

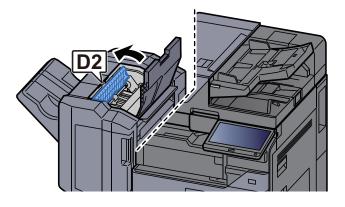


Clearing a staple jam of the 1,000-Sheet Finisher

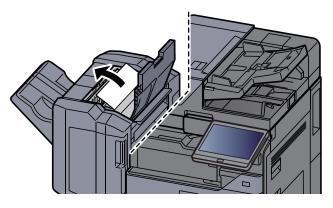
Open the finisher top cover.



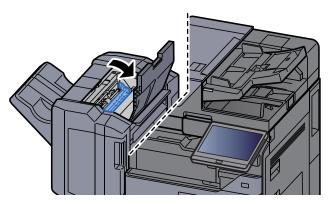
Open the conveyor guide (D2).



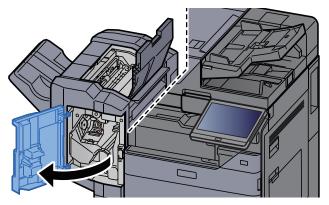
3 Remove any jammed paper.



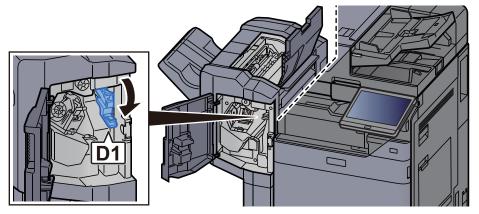
A Return the conveyor guide (D2) to the original position.



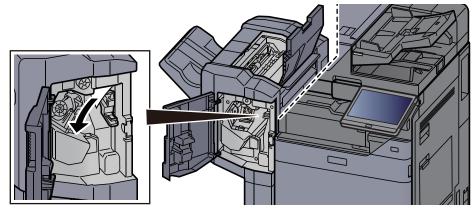
Open the finisher front cover.



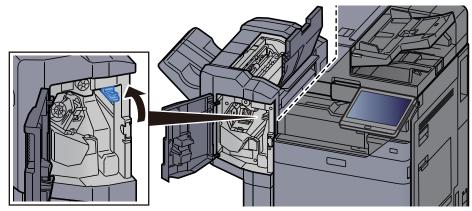
6 Open the conveyor guide (D1).



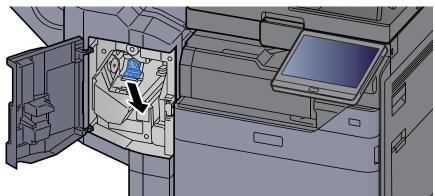
7 Remove any jammed paper.



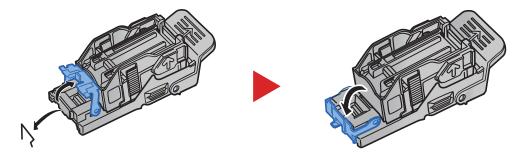
Return the conveyor guide (D1) to the original position.



Q Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder.



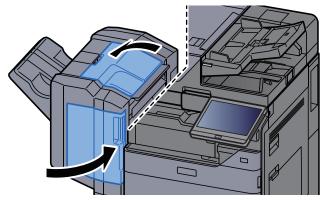
1 Remove the jammed staple.



11 Install the Staple Cartridge Holder.

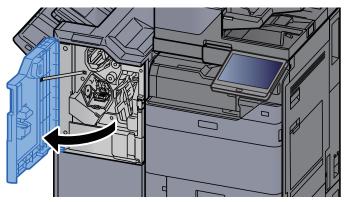


12 Return the covers to the original position.

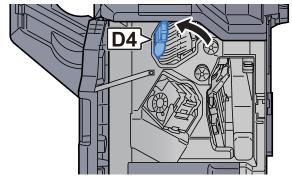


Clearing a staple jam of the 4,000-sheet Finisher

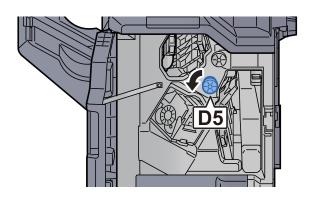
Open the finisher front cover 1.

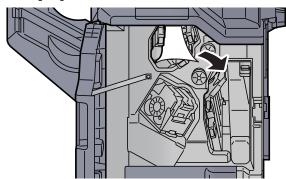


2 Open the conveyor guide (D4).

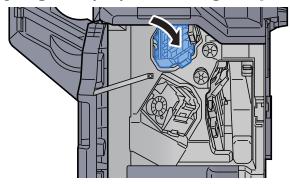


3 Turn knob (D5).

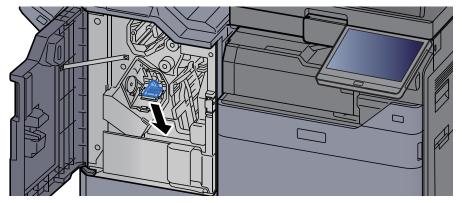




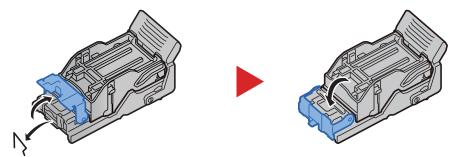
Return the conveyor guide (D4) to the original position.



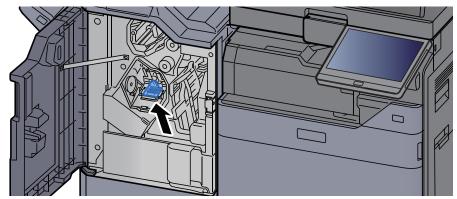
6 Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder (A).



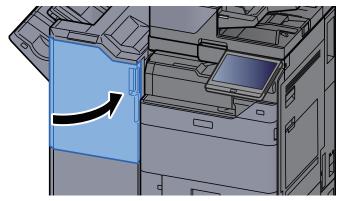
7 Remove the jammed staple.



Install the Staple Cartridge Holder (A).

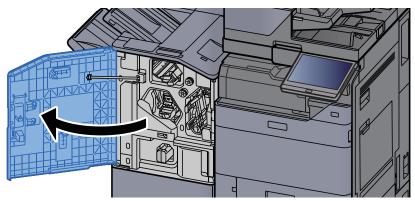


Q Return the cover to the original position.

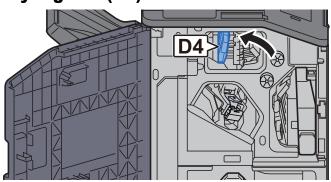


Clearing a Staple Jam of the 100-sheet Staple Finisher

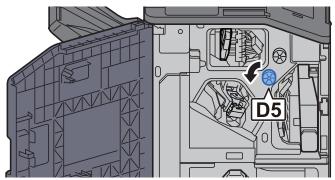
4 Open the finisher front cover 1.



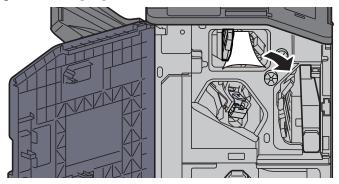
2 Open the conveyor guide (D4).



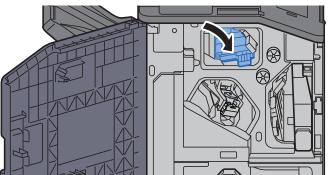
Turn knob (D5).



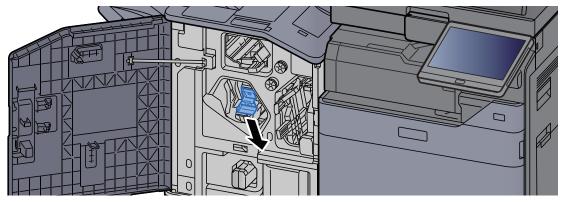
Remove any jammed paper.



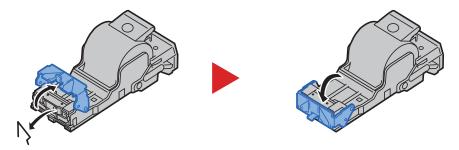
5 Return the conveyor guide (D4) to the original position.



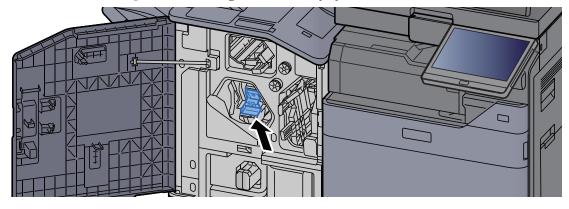
6 Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder (A).



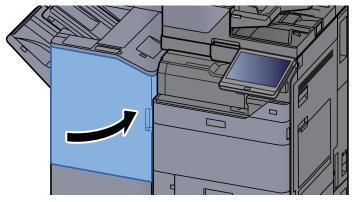
7 Remove the jammed staple.



8 Install the Staple Cartridge Holder (A).

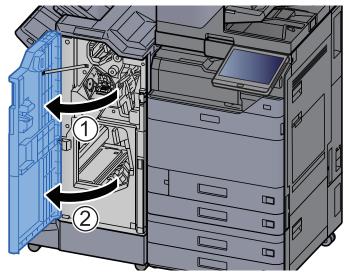


Q Return the cover to the original position.

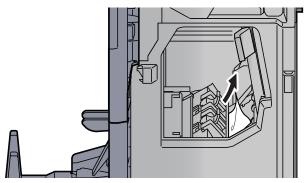


Clearing a Staple Jam of the Folding Unit (4,000-sheet Finisher)

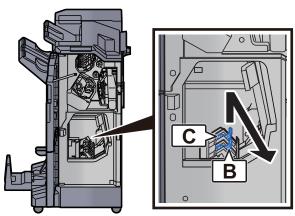
Open the finisher front cover 1 and 2.



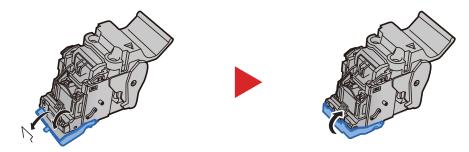
? Remove paper from inside the finisher.



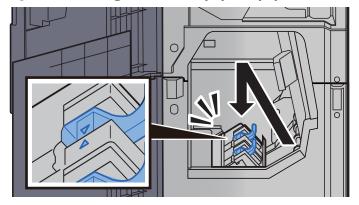
Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder (B) or (C).



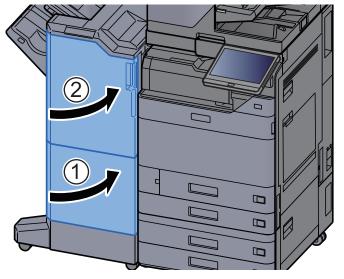
Remove the jammed staple.



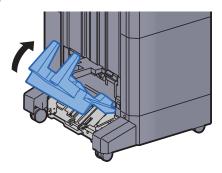
5 Install the Staple Cartridge Holder (B) or (C).

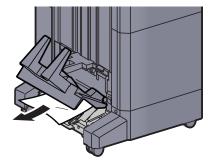


6 Return the covers to the original position.

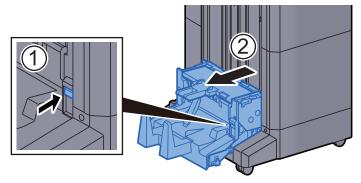


7 Lift the folding tray.

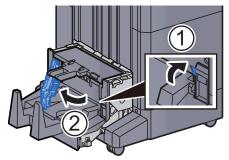




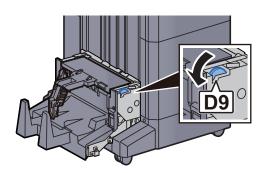
Press the release lever to pull the folding unit out.

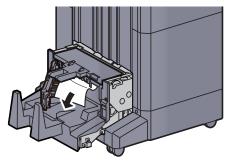


10 Open the folding unit left cover.

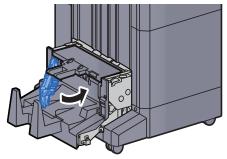


11 Turn dial (D9).

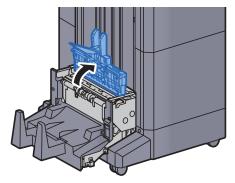




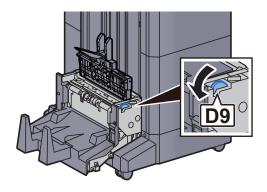
13 Return the folding unit left cover to the original position.

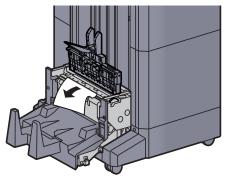


14 Open the folding unit top cover.

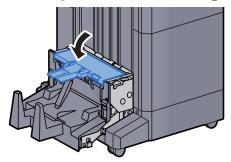


15 Turn dial (D9).

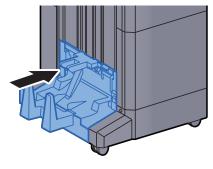




17 Return the folding unit top cover to the original position.

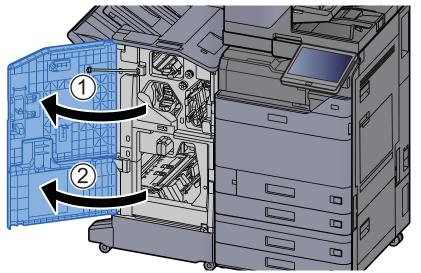


18 Return the folding unit to the original position.

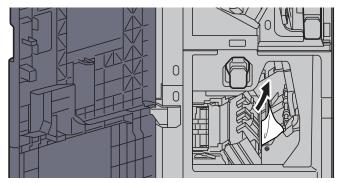


Clearing a Staple Jam of the Folding Unit (100-sheet Staple Finisher)

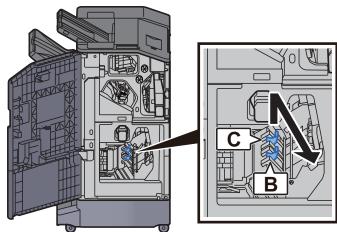
Open the finisher front cover 1 and 2.



Remove paper from inside the finisher.



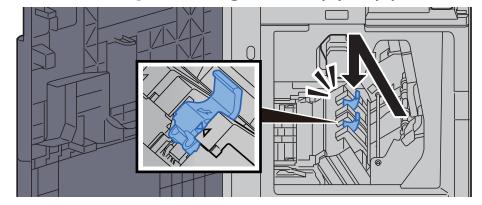
Remove the Staple Cartridge Holder (B) or (C).



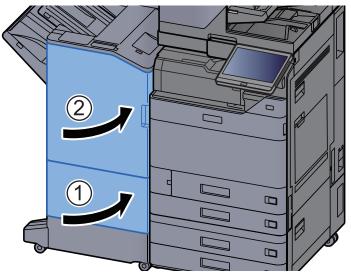
Remove the jammed staple.



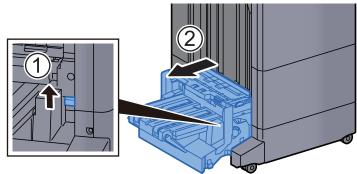
5 Install the Staple Cartridge Holder (B) or (C).



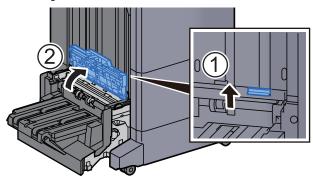
6 Return the covers to the original position.



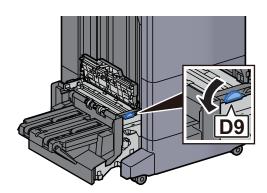
7 Lift the release lever to pull the folding unit out.



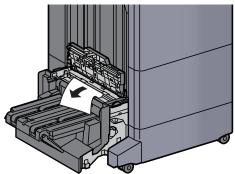
Open the folding unit top cover.



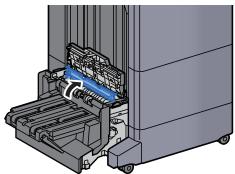
9 Turn dial (D9).



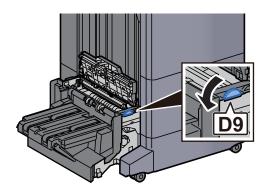
10 Remove any jammed paper.



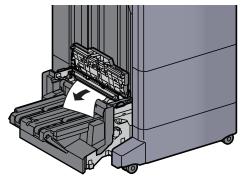
11 Open the folding unit conveyor guide.



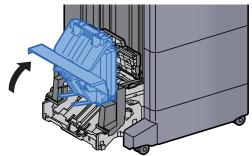
12 Turn dial (D9).



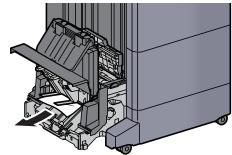
13 Remove any jammed paper.



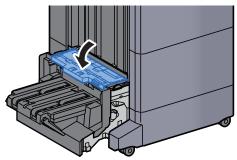
14 Lift the folding tray.



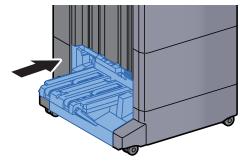
15 Remove any jammed paper.



16 Return the covers to the original position.



17 Return the folding unit to the original position.



11 Appendix

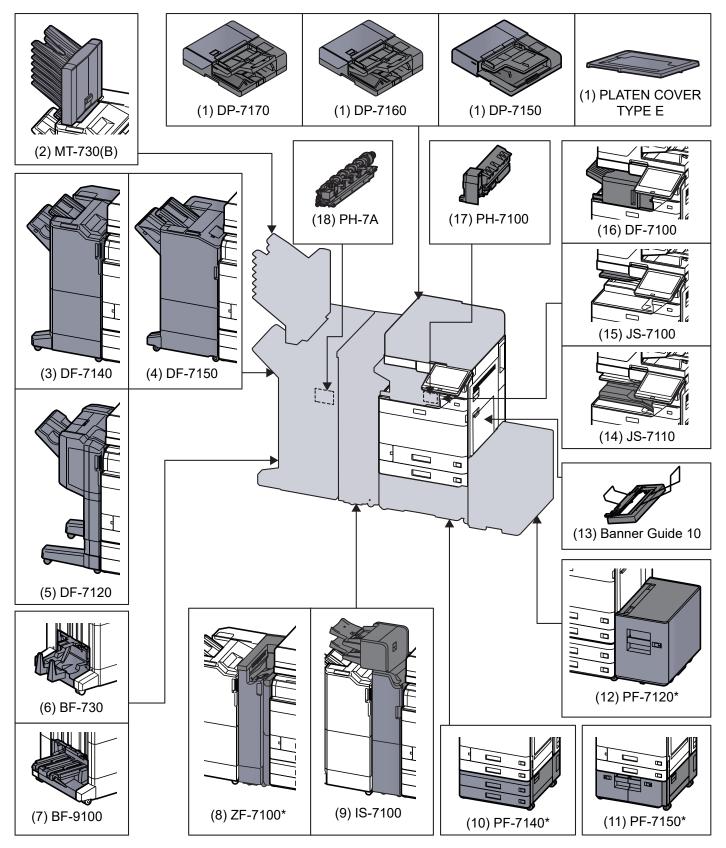
This cha	pter exp	olains th	ne followir	ng topics:

Optional Equipment	11-2
Overview of Optional Equipment	11-2
Applications	11-8
Character Entry Method	11-10
Entry Screens	11-10
Entering Characters	11-12
Paper	11-13
Basic Paper Specifications	11-13
Choosing the Appropriate Paper	11-14
Special Paper	11-17
Specifications	11-21
Machine	11-21
Copy Functions	11-23
Printer Functions	11-24
Scanner Functions	11-25
Document Processor	11-26
Paper Feeder (500-sheet×2)	11-26
Large Capacity Feeder (1,500-sheet×2)	11-27
Side Feeder (3,000-sheet)	11-27
Inner Finisher	11-28
Punch Unit (For Inner Finisher)	11-28
1,000-sheet Finisher	11-29
4,000-sheet Finisher	11-30
100-sheet Staple Finisher	11-31
Punch Unit (For 1,000-sheet/4,000-sheet/100-sheet Staple Finisher)	11-31
Mailbox (For 4,000-sheet Finisher)	11-32
Folding Unit (For 4,000-sheet Finisher)	11-32
Folding Unit (For 100-sheet Staple Finisher)	11-33
Job Separator Tray	11-34
Inner Shift Tray	11-34
Banner Tray	11-35
Inserter Tray	11-35
Z Fold Unit	11-36
Backing up your data	11-37
Backing up your data using KYOCERA Net Viewer	11-37
Backing up your data using Command Center RX	
Backing up your date using USB Drive	11-37
Functions List of Security Quick Setup	11-38
Glossary	

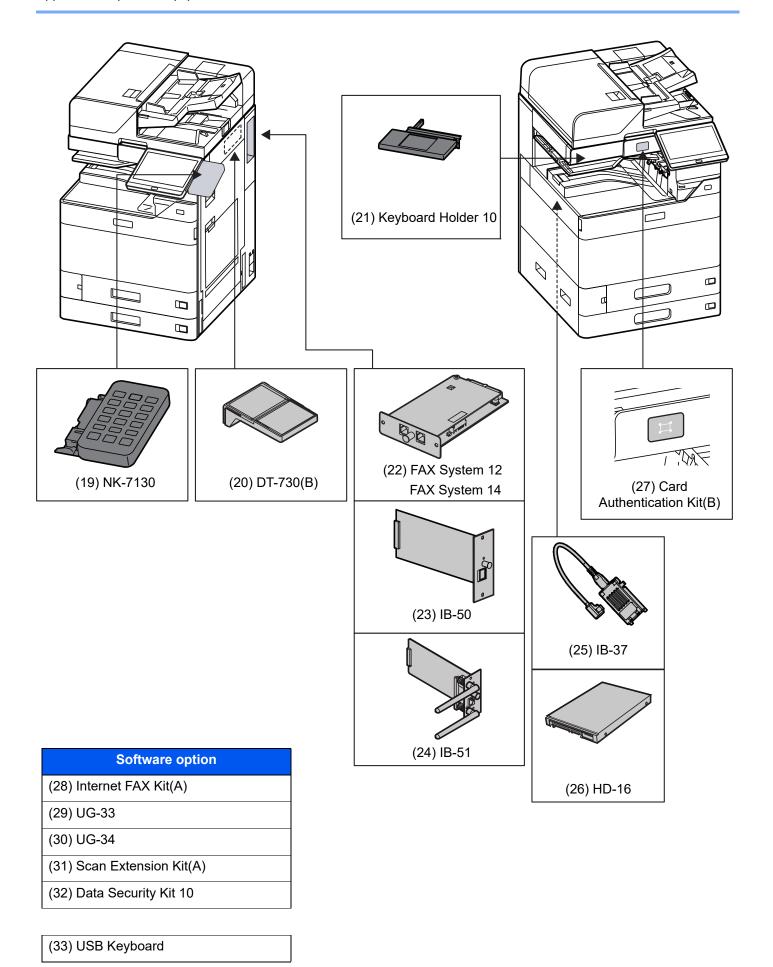
Optional Equipment

Overview of Optional Equipment

The following optional equipment is available for the machine.



^{*} If the following option is installed, toppling prevention kit must be installed: PF-7140, PF-7150, PF-7120



(1) DP-7170 "Document Processor (Dual Scan with Skewed, Multifeed and Staple Detection)" DP-7160 "Document Processor (Dual Scan)" DP-7150 "Document Processor (Reverse Automatic)" PLATEN COVER TYPE E "Original Cover"

Automatically scans originals. Also you can perform duplex copying and split copying.

For document processor operation, refer to the following:

▶ Loading Originals in the Document Processor (page 5-3)

When the document processor is not used, please use the PLATEN COVER TYPE E.

(2) MT-730 (B) "Mailbox"

Makes it easy to sort output into separate trays. Installing this option adds 7 output trays. When multiple computer users share the printer, each user can print to a specified tray. Installs on the 4,000-sheet Finisher.

NOTE

To deliver output to the mail box, change the Paper Output selection on the operation panel or in the printer driver, or change in the default settings.

→ Paper Output (page 6-33)

(3) DF-7140 "4,000-sheet Finisher"

This is a large-capacity 4,000-sheet Finisher capable of holding large print runs and of separating and offsetting multiple copies of a printout into individual copies. It can also staple or hole-punch (optional) the offset printouts.

(4) DF-7150 "100-sheet Staple Finisher"

This is a large-capacity 4,000-sheet Finisher capable of holding large print runs and of separating and offsetting multiple copies of a printout into individual copies. It can also staple or hole-punch (optional) the offset printouts.

(5) DF-7120 "1,000-sheet Finisher"

This is a document finisher capable of holding large print runs and of separating and offsetting multiple copies of a printout into individual copies. It can also staple or hole-punch (optional) the offset printouts.

(6) BF-730 "Folding Unit"

Folds printed output at the center or in tri-fold to enable the creation of simple booklets. Installs on the 4,000-sheet Finisher.

(7) BF-9100 "Folding Unit"

Folds printed output at the center or in tri-fold to enable the creation of simple booklets. Installs on the 100-sheet Staple Finisher.

(8) ZF-7100 "Z-Fold Unit" (Option for 6004i/7004i)

This device can fold the output paper into a Z shape. The device can be installed when a 4,000-sheet Finisher or a 100-sheet Staple Finisher is installed. It cannot be used when an Inserter is installed.

(9) IS-7100 "Inserter" (Option for 6004i/7004i)

This device can automatically insert index tab paper or previously printed-on paper. It can be installed when a 4,000-sheet Finisher or 100-sheet Staple Finisher is installed. It cannot be used when a Z-Fold Unit or a Mailbox is installed.

(10) PF-7140 "Paper Feeder (500-sheet×2)"

Two additional cassettes identical to the machine's cassette can be installed in the machine. Paper capacity and loading method are the same as the standard cassettes.

Loading in Cassette 1 (page 3-4)

(11) PF-7150 "Large Capacity Feeder (1,500-sheet×2)"

In addition to the machine's cassettes, you can also install an optional large capacity feeder (1,500-sheet×2) capable of holding up to 3,000 sheets of A4, B5 or Letter paper.

<u>▶ Loading in the Large Capacity Feeder (page 3-14)</u>

(12) PF-7120 "Side Feeder (3,000-sheet)"

In addition to the machine's cassettes, you can also install an optional side feeder (3,000-sheet) capable of holding up to 3,000 sheets of A4, B5 or Letter paper.

Loading in the Side Feeder (page 3-16)

(13) Banner Guide 10 "Banner Tray"

This tray enables continuous feeding of banner paper. Up to 10 sheets of banner paper can be loaded. To attach the tray and load paper, refer to the following:

Using the Banner Tray (Option) (page 4-12)

(14) JS-7110 "Inner Shift Tray"

This device can shift and sort each set of output.

(15) JS-7100 "Job Separator"

Separate paper according to output tray for easier sorting. Specify as the output tray for copy or print jobs. Or, specify as the default output tray for printing from the copy or Document Box screen, printing from the PC, and printing of the received fax data.



NOTE

To ensure that paper is delivered to the Job Separator, select the output destination or change the default setting.

Paper Output (page 6-33)

(16) DF-7100 "Inner Finisher" (Option for 4004i/5004i/6004i)

This is a document finisher capable of holding large print runs and of separating and offsetting multiple copies of a printout into individual copies. It can also staple the offset printouts.

(17) PH-7100 "Punch Unit"

Attaches to the Inner Finisher and is used to punch holes.

(18) PH-7A "Punch Unit"

Attaches to the Document Finisher and is used to punch holes.

(19) NK-7130 "Optional Numeric Keypad"

The numeric keypad is added to the operation panel. If the optional numeric keypad is installed, numeric keys do not appear on the touch panel.

(20) DT-730 (B) "Document Table"

Place original or other documents when using the machine.

(21) Keyboard Holder 10 "Keyboard Holder"

A USB keyboard connected to the machine can be placed here.

(22) FAX System 12 / FAX System 14"FAX Kit"

By installing the FAX kit, fax send/receive is enabled. Also, it is possible to use it as a network fax, by using it with a computer. When two FAX kits are installed, the units can be connected to two different telephone lines which will enable quicker message transmission to a number of recipients. If one of the lines is dedicated to receiving, the busy line time can be reduced.

FAX Operation Guide

(23) IB-50 "Network Interface Kit"

The Network Interface Kit provides a high-speed connection for the Gigabit-per-second interface. This kit supports traditional protocols such as AppleTalk, Netware and so on.

It also supports only the least functions in the standard utilities.

→ IB-50 User's Manual

(24) IB-51 "Wireless Network Interface Kit"

This is a wireless LAN interface card which supports the wireless LAN specifications IEEE802.11n (Max 300 Mbps) and 11 g/b. This supports traditional protocols such as AppleTalk, Netware and so on.

It also supports only the least functions in the standard utilities.

The IB-51 Steup utility supports Windows OS and Mac OS X.

→ IB-51 User's Manual

(25) IB-37"Wireless Network Interface Kit"

This is a wireless LAN interface card which supports the wireless LAN specifications IEEE802.11n (max. 150 Mbps) and IEEE802.11 g/b/ac. In addition, network printing is possible without using the wireless LAN router because Wi-Fi Direct is supported.

(26) HD-16 "Hard Disk"

With Hard Disk installed in the machine, received data can be rasterized and stored on this Hard Disk. This enables high-speed printing of multiple copies using an electric sort function. Also, you can use the Document Box functions.

→ Printing Documents in Custom Box (page 5-63)

(27) Card Authentication Kit(B) "Card Authentication Kit"

User login administration can be performed using ID cards. To do so, it is necessary to register ID card information on the previously registered local user list. For more information about how to register this information, refer to the following:

Card Authentication Kit(B) Operation Guide

(28) Internet FAX Kit(A) "Internet FAX Kit"

Activating the Internet FAX Kit sends and receives faxes via the Internet without using a phone line. It can only be added when the FAX Kit is installed.

(29) UG-33 "ThinPrint Option"

This application allows print data to be printed directly without a print driver.

(30) UG-34 "Emulation Upgrade Kit"

Enables emulation whereby the machine operates using commands for other printers. Installing this option enables IBM Proprinter, Line Printer, and EPSON LQ-850 emulation.

(31) Scan Extension Kit(A) "OCR Scan Activation Kit"

This option enables the use of the OCR Text Recognition function in the applications of the machine.

(32) Data Security Kit 10 "Data Security Kit"

If you use IPsec protocol (required by the U.S. Department of Defense), you will be able to perform encryption using the FIPS140-2 compliant encryption module.

(33) USB Keyboard "USB Keyboard"

A USB keyboard can be used to enter information into the text fields on the operation panel. A special mount is also available to install the keyboard on the machine. Please contact your dealer or service representative for information on keyboards that are compatible with your machine before you purchase one.

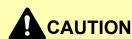
Applications

Overview of the Applications

The applications listed below are installed on this machine.

Item	Application Name
Data Encryption/Overwrite	Data Encryption/Overwrite
INTERNET FAXKIT(A)	Internet FAX Kit
UG-33	ThinPrint Option*1
UG-34	Emulation Upgrade Kit
Scan extension kit(A)	OCR Scan Activation Kit*1
CARD AUTHENTICATIONKIT(B)	Card Authentication Kit
Data Security Kit 10	Data Security Kit

This can be used on a trial basis for a limited time.



When starting [Data Encryption/Overwrite] and after that replacing the main board by service personnel, the box files and fax received data stored in the SSD, hard disk, and machine's memory are deleted and can not be restored.

NOTE

- Restrictions such as the number of times the application can be used during the trial period differ depending on the application.
- If you change the date/time while using the trial version of an application, you will no longer be able to use the application.

Starting Application Use

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Add/Delete Application] > "Optional Function" [Optional Function List]

NOTE

If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Select the desired application > [Activate]

You can view detailed information on the selected application by selecting [on] (information icon).

Enter the license key > [Official]

Some applications do not require you to enter a license key. If the license key entry screen does not appear, go to Step 4.

To use the application as a trial, select [Trial] without entering the license key.

Select [Yes] in the confirmation screen.

NOTE

- If you started the Data Encryption/Overwrite or Thin Print option and entered the license key, turn the power OFF/ON.
- Icons of activated application are displayed in the Home screen.

Checking Details of Application

Display the screen.

[Home] key > [...] > [System Menu] > [Add/Delete Application] > "Optional Function" [Optional Function List]

NOTE

If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [Login]. For this, you need to login as an administrator or as a user with privileges to carry out this setting. The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

Login User Name: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000 Login Password: 4004i: 4000, 5004i: 5000, 6004i: 6000, 7004i: 7000

Select [___] (information icon) for the application whose detailed information you want to check.

You can view detailed information on the selected application.

The table below lists the item you can view.

Item
Function Name
License
Remaining Counts
Expiration Date
Status

Extend the trial period.

Select [Extend].

Character Entry Method

To enter characters for a name, use the on-display keyboard in the touch panel following the steps as explained below.

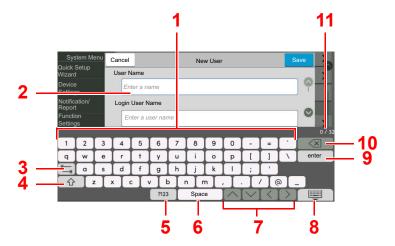


Keyboard Layout

"QWERTY", "QWERTZ" and "AZERTY" are available as keyboard layouts the same as a PC keyboard. Select the [System Menu/Counter] key, [Device Settings], [Keyboard] and then [Keyboard Layout] to choose the desired layout. "QWERTY" layout is used here as an example. You may use another layout following the same steps.

Entry Screens

Lower-case Letter Entry Screen



No.	Display/Key	Description	
1	Keyboard	Select the character to enter.	
2	Input box	Enter characters in the selected box.	
3	Tab key	Select to move to the next input box.	
4	Shift key	Select to switch between upper case and lower case.	
5	[?123] / [Character]	Select the characters that are entered.	
6	Space key	Select to insert a space.	
7	Cursor key	Select to move the cursor on the display.	
8	Close key	Select to close the entry screen.	
9	Enter key	Select to finalize entry and return to the screen before the entry.	
10	Backspace key	Select to delete a character to the left of the cursor.	
8	Input / Limit display	Displays maximum number of characters and the number of characters entered.	

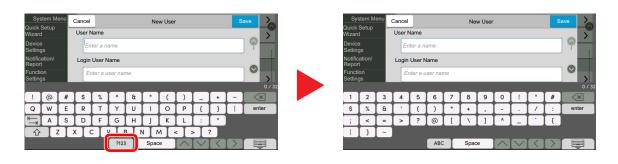
Upper-case Letter Entry Screen

Select the Shift key.



Number/Symbol Entry Screen

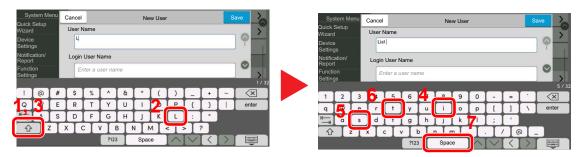
Select [?123].



Entering Characters

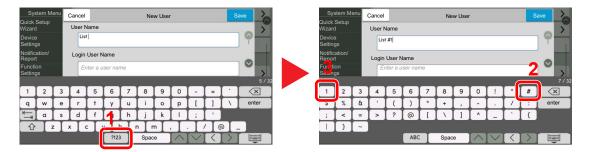
Follow the steps below to enter 'List #1' for an example.

1 Enter 'List', (space).



To switch between upper case and lower case, select the Shift key.

Enter '#' and '1'.



To enter numbers or symbols, select [#123].

Check that the entry is correct.



Check that the entry is correct. Select [enter].

Paper

This section explains the paper sizes and types that can be used in the paper source.

For details on the sizes, types, and number of sheets of paper that can be loaded in each paper tray, refer to the following:

Specifications (page 11-21)

Basic Paper Specifications

This machine is designed to print on standard copy paper as used in regular ('dry') copiers and page printers such as laser printers. It also supports a variety of other types of paper that conform to the specifications given in this appendix.

Be careful when choosing paper. Paper unsuitable for the machine may cause jams or may be wrinkled.

Supported Paper

Use standard copy paper for regular copiers or laser printers. The printing quality will be affected by the quality of paper. Poor quality paper may result in unsatisfactory output.

Basic Paper Specifications that can be Used with This Machine

The following table lists the specifications of paper that is supported with this machine. Refer to the subsequent sections for further details.

Criteria	Specifications
Weight	Cassettes: 52 to 300 g/m ²
	Multipurpose tray: 52 to 300 g/m ² , 136 to 163g/m ² (Banner sheet)
Dimensional accuracy	±0.7 mm
Squareness of corners	90° ±0.2°
Moisture content	4 to 6%
Pulp content	80% or more



NOTE

Some recycled paper does not meet requirements for use with this machine as listed in the Basic Paper Specifications shown below, such as moisture or pulp content. For this reason, we recommend purchasing a small amount of recycled paper as a sample for testing prior to use. Choose recycled paper that gives the best printing results and contains low levels of paper dust.

We are not responsible for the problems occurred from the use of paper that does not conform to our specifications.

Choosing the Appropriate Paper

This section describes guidelines for choosing paper.

Condition

Avoid using paper with bent corners or that is curled, dirty, or torn. Do not use paper that has a rough surface or paper fiber lint, or that is especially delicate. Use of paper in any of these conditions will not only deliver poor copies but may also cause jams and shorten the useful life of the machine. Choose paper with a smooth and even surface; however, avoid coated paper or paper with a treated surface as it may damage the drum or fusing unit.

Ingredients

Do not use paper such as paper that has been coated or surface-treated or paper that contains plastic or carbon. Those types of paper may produce harmful fumes from the heat of printing and may damage the drum.

Be sure to use the standard paper that contains at least 80% pulp, i.e., not more than 20% of the total paper content consists of cotton or other fibers.

Smoothness

The paper surface should be smooth, but it must be uncoated. With paper that is too smooth and slippery, several sheets may accidentally be supplied at once, causing jams.

Basis Weight

In countries that use the metric system, basis weight is the weight in grams of one sheet of paper one square meter in area. In the United States, basis weight is the weight in pounds of one ream (500 sheets) of paper cut to the standard size (or trade size) for a specific grade of paper. Paper that is too heavy or too light may be supplied incorrectly or cause paper jams, which may cause excessive wear of the machine. Mixed paper weight (i.e., thickness) may cause several sheets to be supplied at once accidentally and may also cause blurring or other printing problems if the toner fails to adhere correctly.

Moisture Content

Paper moisture content is the ratio of moisture to dryness expressed as a percentage. Moisture affects how the paper is supplied, the electrostatic chargeability of the paper, and how the toner adheres.

Paper moisture content varies depending on the relative humidity in the room. High relative humidity causes paper to become damp, making the edges expand so it appears wavy. Low relative humidity causes paper to lose moisture, making the edges tighten and weakening print contrast.

Wavy or tight edges may cause the paper to slip when it is supplied. Try to keep the moisture content between 4 to 6%.

To maintain the right level of moisture content, bear in mind the following considerations.

- · Store paper in a cool, well-ventilated place.
- Store paper flat and unopened in the package. Once the package is opened, reseal it if the paper is not to be used for a while
- Store paper sealed in the original package and box. Put a pallet under the carton to keep it raised above the floor.
 Especially during rainy seasons keep the paper a sufficient distance away from wooden or concrete floors.
- Before using paper that has been stored, keep it at the proper moisture level for at least 48 hours.
- Do not store paper where it is exposed to heat, sunlight, or dampness.

Other Paper Specifications

Porosity: The density of the paper fibers.

Stiffness: Paper must be stiff enough or it may buckle in the machine, causing jams.

Curl: Most paper naturally tends to curl after the package is opened. When paper passes through the fixing unit, it curls upward slightly. To deliver flat printouts, load the paper so that the curl faces towards the bottom of the paper tray.

Static electricity: During printing, paper is electrostatically charged so that the toner adheres. Choose paper that can be discharged quickly so that copies do not cling together.

Whiteness: Paper whiteness affects print contrast. Use whiter paper for sharper, brighter copies.

Quality: Machine problems may occur if sheet sizes are not uniform or if corners are not square, edges are rough, sheets are uncut, or edges or corners are crushed. In order to prevent these problems, be especially careful when you cut the paper yourself.

Packaging: Choose paper that is properly packaged and stacked in boxes. Ideally, the packaging itself should have been treated with a coating to inhibit moisture.

Specially treated paper: We do not recommend printing onto the following types of paper, even if it conforms to the basic specifications. When you use these kinds of paper, purchase a small amount first as a sample to test.

- · Glossy paper
- · Watermarked paper
- · Paper with an uneven surface
- · Perforated paper

Paper Sizes that can be Used with This Machine

Paper of the following sizes is supported by the machine.

Measurements in the table take into account a ± 0.7 mm dimensional accuracy for length and width. Corner angles must be $90^{\circ} \pm 0.2^{\circ}$.

- A3 (297 × 420 mm) *1
- A4 (297 × 210 mm)
- A5 (210 × 148 mm)
- A6 (148 × 105 mm)
- B4 (257 × 364 mm) *1
- B5 (257 × 182 mm)
- B6 (182 × 128 mm)
- 216×340 mm
- SRA3 (320 × 450 mm) *1
- Ledger*1
- Letter
- Legal
- Statement
- Executive (7-1/4 × 10-1/2")
- 12×18" (304.8 × 457 mm) *1
- · Oficio II
- Folio (210 × 330 mm)
- 8K (273 × 394 mm) *1
- 16K (273 × 197 mm)

- ISO B5 (176 × 250 mm)
- Envelope #10 (4-1/8 × 9-1/2")
- Envelope #9 (3-7/8 × 8-7/8")
- Envelope #6 3/4 (3-5/8 × 6-1/2")
- Envelope Monarch (3-7/8 × 7-1/2")
- Envelope DL (110 × 220 mm)
- Envelope C5 (162 × 229 mm)
- Envelope C4 (229 × 324 mm) *1
- Hagaki (Cardstock) (100 × 148 mm)
- Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard) (148 × 200 mm)
- Kakugata 2 (240 × 332 mm)^{*1}
- Youkei 4 (105 × 235 mm)
- Youkei 2 (114 × 162 mm)
- Younaga 3 (235 × 120 mm)
- Nagagata 3 (120 × 235 mm)
- Nagagata 4 (90 × 205 mm)
- Custom

Cassette 1: 98 × 148 to 297 × 356 mm Cassette 2 to 4: 98 × 148 to 320 × 457 mm^{*2} Multipurpose Tray: 98 × 148 to 320 × 457 mm

- *1 This paper cannot be used in cassette 1.
- *2 The Paper Feeder (500-sheets×2) can only be used for cassettes 3 and 4.

Special Paper

This section describes printing onto special paper and print media.

The following paper and media can be used.

- Transparencies
- · Preprinted paper
- · Bond paper
- · Recycled paper
- · Thin paper
- Letterhead
- · Colored paper
- · Prepunched paper
- · Envelopes
- · Hagaki (Cardstock)
- · Thick paper
- Labels
- Coated
- · High-quality paper
- Index tab dividers (136 to 256 g/m²)

When using these paper and media, choose those that are designed specifically for copiers or page printers (such as laser printers). Use the multipurpose tray for transparencies, cardstocks, labels, coated paper and index tab dividers.

Choosing Special Paper

Although special paper that meets the following requirements can be used with the machine, print quality will vary considerably due to differences in the construction and quality of special paper. Thus, special paper is more likely than regular paper to cause printing problems. Before purchasing special paper in volume, try testing a sample to ensure the print quality is satisfactory. General precautions when printing onto special paper are given below. Note that we are not responsible for any harm to the user or damage to the machine caused by moisture or specifications of special paper.

Select a cassette or multipurpose tray for special paper.

Transparencies

Transparencies must be able to withstand the heat of printing. Transparencies must meet the following conditions.

Heat resistance	Must withstand at least 190°C
Thickness	0.100 to 0.110 mm
Material	Polyester
Dimensional accuracy	±0.7 mm
Squareness of corners	90° ±0.2°

To avoid problems, use the multipurpose tray for transparencies and load transparencies with the long side facing the machine.

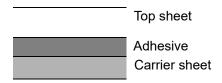
If transparencies jam frequently at output, try pulling the leading edge of sheets gently as they are ejected.

Label

Be sure to feed labels from the multipurpose tray.

For selecting labels, use extreme care so that the adhesive may not come in direct contact with any part of the machine and that the labels are not easily peeled from the carrier sheet. Adhesives that stick to the drum or rollers and peeled labels remaining in the machine may cause a failure.

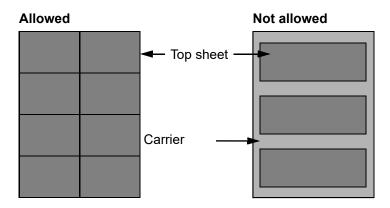
When printing onto labels, you must be liable for the print quality and possible trouble.



Labels consist of three layers as shown in the illustration. The adhesive layer contains materials that are easily affected by the force applied in the machine. The carrier sheet bears the top sheet until the label is used. This composition of labels may cause more problems.

The label surface must be covered completely with the top sheet. Gaps between labels may cause peeling of labels, resulting in a serious failure.

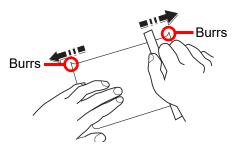
Some label paper has large margins on the top sheet. When using such paper, do not peel these margins from the carrier sheet before completing output.



Use label paper that conforms to the following specifications.

Top sheet weight	44 to 74 g/m²
Basis weight (overall paper weight)	104 to 151 g/m²
Top sheet thickness	0.086 to 0.107 mm
Overall paper thickness	0.115 to 0.145 mm
Moisture content	4 to 6 % (composite)

Hagaki (Cardstock)



Before loading Hagaki (Cardstock) into the multipurpose tray, fan them and align the edges. If the Hagaki (Cardstock) paper is curled, straighten it before loading. Printing onto curled Hagaki (Cardstock) may cause jams.

Use unfolded Oufuku haqaki (Return postcard) (available at post offices). Some Hagaki (Cardstock) may still have rough edges developed by a paper cutter on the back side. Remove any such rough edges by placing the Hagaki (Cardstock) on a flat surface and rubbing the edges gently a few times with a ruler.

Envelopes

Envelopes should be fed from the MP tray with the print-side down or the cassette and the optional paper feeder with the print-side up.



◯ NOTE

Do not load paper above the load limits located on the paper width guide of the cassette and the optional paper feeder.

Due to the structure of envelopes, printing evenly over the entire surface may not be possible in some cases. Thin envelopes in particular may be wrinkled by the machine in some cases as they pass through. Before purchasing envelopes in volume, try testing a sample to ensure the print quality.

Storing envelopes for a long period may cause them to become wrinkled. Thus, keep the package sealed until you are ready to use them.

Keep the following points in mind.

- Do not use envelopes with exposed adhesive. In addition, do not use the type of envelope in which the adhesive is exposed after the top layer is peeled off. Serious damage may be caused if the paper covering the adhesive comes off in the machine.
- Do not use envelopes with certain special features. For example, do not use envelopes with a grommet for winding a string to close the flap or envelopes with an open or film-covered window.
- If paper jams occur, load fewer envelopes at once.

Thick Paper

Before loading thick paper, fan it and align the edges. Some thick paper may still have rough edges developed by a paper cutter on the back side. Remove any such rough edges just as with Hagaki (Cardstock) by placing the paper on a flat surface and rubbing the edges gently a few times with a ruler. Printing onto paper with rough edges may cause jams.



NOTE

If the paper is not supplied correctly even after it is smoothed, load the paper with the leading edge raised a few millimeters.

Colored Paper

Colored paper must conform to the specifications.

▶ Basic Paper Specifications (page 11-13)

In addition, the pigments in the paper must be able to withstand the heat of printing (up to 200°C or 392°F).

Preprinted Paper

Preprinted paper must conform to the specifications.

▶ Basic Paper Specifications (page 11-13)

The colored ink must be able to withstand the heat of printing. It must be resistant to silicone oil as well. Do not use paper with a treated surface such as glossy paper used for calendars.

Recycled Paper

Recycled paper must conform to the specifications; however, its whiteness may be considered separately.

→ Basic Paper Specifications (page 11-13)



NOTE

Before purchasing recycled paper in volume, try testing a sample to ensure satisfactory print quality.

Coated Paper

Coated paper is created by treating the surface of the base paper with a coating that provides higher printing quality than plain paper. Coated paper is used for particularly high quality printing.

The surface of high-quality or medium-quality paper is coated with special agents that improve ink adhesion by making the paper surface smoother. These agents are used either to coat both sides of the paper or just one side. The coated side appears slightly glossy.



⊘ IMPORTANT

When printing on coated paper in very humid environments, ensure that the paper is kept dry as moisture may cause sheets to stick together when they are fed into the machine. If printing in very humid environments, set coated paper for one sheet each.

Specifications



⊘ IMPORTANT

Specifications are subject to change without notice.



For more information on using the FAX, refer to the following:

FAX Operation Guide

Machine

Item		Description
Туре		Desktop
Printing Method		Electrophotography by semiconductor laser
Paper Weight Cassette		52 to 300 g/m ²
	Multipurpose Tray	52 to 300 g/m ²
Paper Type	Cassette	Plain, Rough, Vellum, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Envelope, Thick, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8 (Duplex: Same as Simplex)
	Multipurpose Tray	Plain, Transparency (OHP film), Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Envelope, Thick, High Quality, Coated, Index Tab Dividers, Custom 1 to 8
Paper Size	Cassette 1	A4, A5, A6, B5, B6, 216×340 mm, Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, Oficio II, Folio, 16K, ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku Hagaki (Return postcard), Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Nagagata 3, Custom (98 × 148 mm to 297 × 356 mm)
	Cassette 2	A3, A4, A5, A6, B4, B5, B6, 216×340 mm, SRA3, Ledger, Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, 12×18", Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K, ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku Hagaki (Return postcard), Kakugata 2, Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Nagagata 3, Custom (98 × 148 mm to 320 × 457 mm)
Tray Statement, Executive, 12×18", Oficion Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Envelope C4, Hagaki (Cardstock), Comparison Kakugata 2, Youkei 4, Youkei 2, You (98 × 148 mm to 320 × 457 mm)		,
		Banner sheet (210 × 488.1 to 304.8 × 1,220 mm/8.26" × 19.22" to 12" × 48.03")
Printable Area		Print margin for top, bottom and both sides is 4 mm or less

ltem		Description	
Warm-up Time	Power on	17 seconds or less	
(23°C/73.4°F, 60%)	Low Power	14.4 seconds or less	
·	Sleep	14.4 seconds or less	
Paper Capacity	Cassette	500 sheets (80 g/m ²) ^{*1}	
	Multipurpose Tray	150 sheets (A4/Letter or smaller) (80 g/m ²), 50 sheets (larger than A4/Letter) (80 g/m ²)	
		1 sheet (Banner sheet (210 × 488.1 to 304.8 × 1,220 mm/8.26" × 19.22" to 12" × 48.03")) (136 to 163 g/m ²)	
Output Tray Capacity	Inner tray	500 sheets (80 g/m ²)	
Image Write Syst	tem	Semiconductor laser and electrophotography	
Memory		4.0 GB	
Large Capacity Sto	orage	SSD 32 GB/Hard Disk 320 GB	
Interface	Standard	USB Interface Connector: 1 (Super-Speed USB) Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/1000 BASE-T (IPv6, IPv4, IPSec), 802.3a supported) USB Port: 4 (Hi-Speed USB) Wireless LAN: 1	
	Option	eKUIO: 2 ^{*2} Fax: 2 ^{*3}	
Operating Temperature 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F		10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F	
Environment	Humidity	10 to 80%	
	Altitude	3,500 m/11,482 ft maximum	
	Brightness	1,500 lux maximum	
Dimension (W × (without Docume	•	23.71 " × 26.19" × 31.11" 602 × 665 × 790 mm	
Weight		Approx. 183.0 lb/Approx. 83 kg (without toner container)	
Space Required	(W × D)	36.23" × 26.19"	
(Using multipurp	ose tray)	920 × 665 mm	
Power Source		4004i/5004i/6004i/7004i: 120 V Specification Model: 120 V \sim 60 Hz 12 A 230 V Specification Model: 220 to 240 V \sim 50/60 Hz 7.2 A	
Options		→ Optional Equipment (page 11-2)	

^{*1} Up to upper limit height line in the cassette.*2 When two optional interface are installed, a fax line can not be installed.

^{*3} When IB-50 or IB-51 is installed, only one fax line can be installed.

Copy Functions

	Item	Description	
Copy Speed	4004i	A4/Letter	40 sheets/min
		A4-R/Letter-R	28 sheets/min
		A3/Ledger	20 sheets/min
		B4	24 sheets/min
		Legal	24 sheets/min
		B5	40 sheets/min
		B5-R	28 sheets/min
		A5-R	32 sheets/min
		A6-R	20 sheets/min
	5004i	A4/Letter	50 sheets/min
		A4-R/Letter-R	35 sheets/min
		A3/Ledger	25 sheets/min
		B4	30 sheets/min
		Legal	30 sheets/min
		B5	50 sheets/min
		B5-R	35 sheets/min
		A5-R	40 sheets/min
		A6-R	25 sheets/min
	6004i	A4/Letter	60 sheets/min
		A4-R/Letter-R	42 sheets/min
		A3/Ledger	30 sheets/min
		B4	36 sheets/min
		Legal	36 sheets/min
		B5	60 sheets/min
		B5-R	42 sheets/min
		A5-R	48 sheets/min
		A6-R	30 sheets/min
	7004i	A4/Letter	70 sheets/min
		A4-R/Letter-R	49 sheets/min
		A3/Ledger	35 sheets/min
		B4	42 sheets/min
		Legal	42 sheets/min
		B5	70 sheets/min
		B5-R	49 sheets/min
		A5-R	48 sheets/min
		A6-R	30 sheets/min
	e (A4, place on the	4004i 4.5 seconds or less	
platen, feed fro	om Cassette)	5004i 3.7 seconds or I	ess
		6004i 3.4 seconds or less	
		7004i 3.3 seconds or less	
Zoom Level		Manual mode: 25 to 400%, 1% increments	
		Auto mode: Preset Zo	OITI

Item	Description	
Continuous Copying	1 to 9,999 sheets	
Resolution	1200 × 1200 dpi (multi-bit)	
Supported Original Types	Sheet, Book, 3-dimensional objects (maximum original size: A3/Ledger)	
Original Feed System	Fixed	

Printer Functions

	Item	Description	
Printing	4004i	12×18"/SRA3	20 sheets/min
Speed	5004i	12×18"/SRA3	25 sheets/min
	6004i	12×18"/SRA3	30 sheets/min
	7004i	12×18"/SRA3	35 sheets/min
		Other than the above size, specifications are the same as those of Copy Speed.	
First Print Tin	ne (A4, feed from	4004i 5.1 seconds or le	ess
Cassette)		5004i 4.3 seconds or le	ess
		6004i 3.8 seconds or less	
		7004i 3.8 seconds or less	
Resolution		4800 dpi equivalent × 1200 dpi	
Operating Sys	stem	Windows 8.1, Windows 10, Windows Server 2012/R2, Windows Server 2016, Windows Server 2019, Mac OS 10.9 or later	
Interface		USB Interface Connect	or: 1 (Super-Speed USB)
		Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/1000 BASE-T (IPv6, IPv4, IPSec), 802.3a supported)	
		Optional Interface (Option): 2 (For IB-50/IB-51 mounting)	
		Wireless LAN: 1	
Page Descrip	tion Language	PRESCRIBE	
		PCL6 (PCL-XL, PCL-5e), KPDL3 (PostScript3 compatible), PDF, XPS, OpenXPS	

Scanner Functions

	Item	Description	
Resolution	esolution 600 dpi, 400 dpi, 300 dpi, 200×400 dpi, 200 dpi, 200×100 dpi		, 200 dpi, 200×100 dpi
File Format		TIFF, JPEG, XPS, Open XPS, PDF (MMR/JPEG compression), High compressive PDF, OCR Text Recognition (Option), MS Office file (Option), OOXML (Option), OOXML (OCR) (Option)	
Scanning Spec	ed ^{*1}	(A4 landscape, 300 dpi, Image quality:	Text/Photo original)
	4004i	1-sided B/W 137 Images/min	Color 137 Images/min
		2-sided B/W 274 Images/min	Color 274 Images/min
	5004i	1-sided B/W 137 Images/min	Color 137 Images/min
		2-sided B/W 274 Images/min	Color 274 Images/min
	6004i	1-sided B/W 137 Images/min	Color 137 Images/min
		2-sided B/W 274 Images/min	Color 274 Images/min
	7004i	1-sided B/W 137 Images/min	Color 137 Images/min
		2-sided B/W 274 Images/min	Color 274 Images/min
Interface		Ethernet (1000 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/10 BASE-T)	
Transmission	System	SMB, SMTP, FTP, FTP over SSL, USB, TWAIN*2, WIA*2, DFS, DSM	

^{*1} When using the document processor (Dual Scan with Skewed and Multifeed Detection) (except TWAIN and WIA scanning)

^{*2} Available Operating System: Windows 8.1/Windows 10/Windows Server 2012/Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows Server 2016/Windows Server 2019

Document Processor

	Description		
Item	Document Processor (Automatic 2-Sided)	Document Processor (Dual scan DP)	
Туре	DP-7150	DP-7160 DP-7170 (Skewed, Multifeed and Staple Detection)	
Original Feed Method	Automatic feed		
Supported Original Types	Sheet originals		
Paper Size	Maximum: A3/Ledger 11.69" × 17"/297 × 432 mm (Long-sized 11.69" × 74.8"/297 × 1,900 mm) Minimum: A6-R/Statement-R 4.13" × 5.82"/105 × 148 mm Minimum: A6-R/Statement-R 4.13" × 5.82"/105 × 148 mm		
Paper Weight	1-sided: 35 to 160 g/m ² 2-sided: 50 to 120 g/m ²	1-sided: 35 to 220 g/m ² 2-sided: 50 to 220 g/m ²	
Loading Capacity	140 sheets (50 to 80 g/m²)*1 maximum 320 sheets (50 to 80 g/m²)*1 maximum		
Dimensions (W × D × H)	23.35" × 20.95" × 5.75" 593 × 532 × 146 mm	23.63" × 21.23" × 7.29" 600 × 539 × 185 mm	
Weight	Approx. 18.52 lbs./Approx. 8.4 kg	Approx. 29.33 lbs./Approx. 13.3 kg	

^{*1} Up to upper limit height line in the document processor.

Paper Feeder (500-sheet×2)

Item	Description	
Paper Supply Method	Friction roller feeder No. Sheets: 500, 80 g/m ² , 2 cassettes	
Paper Size	A3, A4, A5, A6, B4, B5, B6, 216×340 mm, SRA3, Ledger, Letter, Legal, Statement, Executive, 12×18", Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K, ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku Hagaki (Return postcard), Kakugata 2, Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Nagagata 3, Custom (98 × 148 mm to 320 × 457 mm)	
Supported Paper	Paper weight: 52 to 300 g/m ² Media types: Plain, Recycled, Special paper	
Dimensions (W × D × H)	23.63" × 26.19" × 12.73" 600 × 665 × 323.2 mm	
Weight	Approx. 50.8 lbs. / Approx. 23 kg	

Large Capacity Feeder (1,500-sheet×2)

Item	Description
Paper Supply Method	Friction roller feeder No. Sheets: 1,500, 80 g/m ² , 2 cassettes
Paper Size	A4,B5, Letter
Supported Paper	Paper weight: 52 to 300 g/m ² Media types: Plain, Recycled, Special paper
Dimensions (W × D × H)	23.63" × 26.19" × 12.73" 600 × 665 × 323.2 mm
Weight	Approx. 66.2 lbs. / Approx. 30 kg

Side Feeder (3,000-sheet)

Item	Description
Paper Supply Method	Feed & reverse roller method No. Sheets: 3,000, 80 g/m ²
Paper Size	A4,B5, Letter
Supported Paper	Paper weight: 52 to 300 g/m ² Media types: Plain, Recycled, Special paper
Dimensions (W × D × H)	13.82" × 23.04" × 18.47" 351 × 585 × 469 mm
Weight	Approx. 58.5 lbs. / Approx. 26.5 kg

Inner Finisher

Ite	em	Description	
Number of Trays		1 tray	
Paper Size (80 g/m ²) Finisher tray (no stapling)		A3, B4, 216×340 mm, SRA3, Ledger, Legal, 12×18", Oficio II, Folio, 8K, Envelope C4: 250 sheets	
3,		A4-R, A4, A5-R, A5, A6, B5-R, B5, B6, Letter-R, Letter, Statement, Executive, 16K-R, 16K, ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6 3/4, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard), Youkei 4, Youkei 2: 500 sheets	
Stapling Number of Sheets		A3, B4, 216×340 mm, Ledger, Legal, Oficio II, 8K	30 sheets (52 to 105 g/m ²) 2 cover sheet only (106 to 300 g/m ²)
		A4-R, A4, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K	50 sheets (52 to 90 g/m ²) 40 sheets (91 to 105 g/m ²) 2 cover sheet only (106 to 300 g/m ²)
		Plain, Recycled, Prepun Thick, High Quality, Cus	ched, Preprinted, Bond, Letterhead, Color, Coated, tom
Dimensions (W ×	D × H)	26.47" × 20.99" × 10.9"	
(When pulling the tray) 672.3 × 533.1 × 276.8 mm		nm	
Weight		25.4 lbs. or less / 11.5 kg or less	

Punch Unit (For Inner Finisher)

	Item		Description	
Paper Size	-		A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B5, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, 12×18", Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K	
		3 Hole	A3, A4, Letter, Ledger, 12×18", 8K, 16K	
	cm 2 Hole		A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B5, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, 12×18", Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K	
4 Hole		4 Hole	A3, A4, Letter, Ledger, 12×18", 8K, 16K	
Paper Wei	ght		52 - 300 g/m ²	
Media typo	es		Plain, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Letterhead, Color, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8	

1,000-sheet Finisher

Ite	em	Description	
Number of Trays		1 tray	
Paper Size (80 g/m ²)	Finisher tray (Non-stapling)	A3, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B6-R, 216×340 mm, SRA3, Ledger, Legal, Statement-R, Executive, 12×18", Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R: 500 sheets A4-R, A4, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K: 1,000 sheets	
Supported Paper	· Weight	Stapling: 90 g/m ² or less	
Stapling Numbe Sheets	Number of Sheets	A3, B4, B5-R, 216×340 mm, Ledger, Legal, 12×18", Oficio II, 16K-R, 8K	30 sheets (52 to 105 g/m ²) 2 cover sheet only (106 to 300 g/m ²)
		A4-R, A4, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K	50 sheets (52 to 90 g/m ²) 40 sheets (91 to 105 g/m ²) 2 cover sheet only (106 to 300 g/m ²)
	Media types	Plain, Recycled, Prepunched, Preprinted, Bond, Letterhead, Color, Coated, Thick, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8	
Dimensions (W ×	D × H)	21.58" × 24.36" × 41.34" 548 × 618.5 × 1,050 mm	
Weight		Approx. 66.2 lbs. or less / Approx. 30 kg or less	
Space Required (When pulling th	•	26.23" × 24.36" 666 × 618.5 mm	

4,000-sheet Finisher

	Item	Description		
Number of	Trays	2 trays		
Paper Size (80 g/m ²)	Tray A (Non-Stapling)	A3, B4, B5-R, 216×340 mm, SRA3, Ledger, Legal, Executive, 12×18", Oficio II, Folio, 8K: 1,500 sheets A4-R, A4, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K-R, 16K: 4,000 sheets A5-R, B6-R, Statement-R: 500 sheets		
	Tray B	A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, A6-R, B4, B5-R, B5, B6-R, 216×340 mm, SRA3, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Executive, 12×18", Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K, ISO B5, Envelope C4, Cardstock, Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard), Youkei 4, Youkei 2: 200 sheets		
Supported	Paper Weight	Stapling: 90 g/m ² or less		
Stapling	Maximum Number	A3, B4, 216×340 mm, Ledger, Legal, 12×18", Oficio II, 8K	30 sheets (52 to 105 g/m²) 2 cover sheet only (106 to 300 g/m²)	
		A4-R, A4, B5-R, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K-R, 16K	65 sheets (52 to 90 g/m²) 55 sheets (91 to 105 g/m²) 2 cover sheet only (106 to 300 g/m²)	
	Media types	Plain, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Letterhead, Color, Prepunched, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8		
Dimension	s (W × D × H)	23.91" × 26.32" × 41.79" 607.2 × 668.5 × 1,061.3 mm		
Weight		Approx. 88.2 lbs. or less / Approx. 40 kg or less		
Space Req	uired (W × D)	28.55" × 26.32"		
(When pull	ing the tray)	725 × 668.5 mm		

100-sheet Staple Finisher

	Item	Description		
Number of Trays		2 trays		
Paper Size (80 g/m ²)	Size Oficio II, Folio, 8K: Height 227 mm (Equivalent to 1,500 s		nt 227 mm (Equivalent to 1,500 sheets) Letter, 16K-R, 16K: Height 512 mm (Equivalent to	
	Tray B	A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, A6-R, B4, B5-R, B5, B6-R, 216×340 mm, SRA3, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Executive, 12×18", Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K, ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku Hagaki (Return postcard), Kakugata 2, Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Younaga 3, Nagagata 3, Nagagata 4: Height 45 mm (Equivalent to 200 sheets)		
Supported	Paper Weight	Stapling: 90 g/m ² or less		
Stapling	Maximum Number	A3, B4, 216×340 mm, Ledger, Legal, 12×18", Oficio II, 8K	50 sheets (52 to 90 g/m²) 35 sheets (91 to 105 g/m²) 2 cover sheet only (106 to 300 g/m²)	
		A4-R, A4, B5-R, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K-R, 16K	100 sheets (52 to 90 g/m²) 70 sheets (91 to 105 g/m²) 2 cover sheet only (106 to 300 g/m²)	
	Media types	Plain, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Letterhead, Color, Prepunched, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8		
Dimension	eimensions (W × D × H) 29.55" × 27.03" ×		,	
(When stor	ring the tray)	750.5 × 686.4 × 1109.5 mm		
Weight		Approx. 125.7 lbs. or les	s / Approx. 57 kg	
Space Required (W × D) 34.16" × 27		34.16" × 27.03"		
(When pulling the tray)		867.6 × 686.4 mm		

Punch Unit (For 1,000-sheet/4,000-sheet/100-sheet Staple Finisher)

Item			Description	
Paper Size	r Inch 2 Hole		A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B5, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, 12×18", Folio, 8K, 16K, 16K-R	
		3 Hole	A3, A4, Letter, Ledger, 12×18", 8K, 16K	
	cm 2 Hole		A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B5, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, 12×18", Folio, 8K, 16K, 16K-R	
4 Hole		4 Hole	A3, A4, Letter, Ledger, 12×18", 8K, 16K	
Paper We	ight		45 - 300 g/m ²	
Media types			Plain, Rough, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Letterhead, Color, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8	

Mailbox (For 4,000-sheet Finisher)

Item	Description
Number of Trays	7 trays
Paper Size (80 g/m ²)	A3, B4, Ledger, Legal, 8K: 50 sheets A4-R, A4, A5-R, B5-R, B5, 216×340 mm, Letter-R, Letter, Statement-R, Executive, Oficio II, Folio, 16K-R, 16K: 100 sheets
Dimensions (W × D × H)	20.08" × 15.75" × 18.51" 510 × 400 × 470 mm
Weight	Approx. 22.1 lbs. / Approx. 10 kg

Folding Unit (For 4,000-sheet Finisher)

Item		Description	
Sizes	Bi-Fold	A3, B4, A4-R, Ledger, Legal, Letter-R, Oficio II, 8K	
	Saddle Stitch	A3, B4, A4-R, Ledger, Letter-R, Legal, Oficio II, 8K	
	Tri-Fold	A4-R, Letter-R	
Number of Sheets	Bi-Fold	5 sheets (60 to 90 g/m ²) 3 sheets (91 to 120 g/m ²) 1 sheet (121 to 256 g/m ²)	
	Saddle Stitch	20 sheets (60 to 90 g/m ²) 13 sheets (91 to 105 g/m ²) 1 cover sheet only (106 g/m ² or heavier)	
	Tri-Fold	5 sheets (60 to 90 g/m ²) 3 sheets (91 to 120 g/m ²)	
Maximum Number for Storage	Bi-Fold	5 sheets or less per set: 30 sets	
(80 g/m ²)	Saddle Stitch	5 sheets or less per set: 30 sets 6 to 10 sheets per set: 20 sets 11 to 20 sheets per set: 10 sets	
	Tri-Fold	1 sheet per set: 30 sets 2 to 5 sheets per set: 5 sets	
Media types	Bi-Fold	Plain, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8	
	Saddle Stitch	Plain, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8	
	Tri-Fold	Plain, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8	

Folding Unit (For 100-sheet Staple Finisher)

Item		Description
Sizes	Bi-Fold	A3, B4, A4-R, SRA3, Ledger, Legal, Letter-R, Oficio II, 8K, 12×18"
	Saddle Stitch	A3, B4, A4-R, SRA3, Ledger, Letter-R, Legal, Oficio II, 8K, 12×18"
	Tri-Fold	A4-R, Letter-R
Number of Sheets	Bi-Fold	5 sheets (52 to 90 g/m ²) 3 sheets (91 to 105 g/m ²) 1 sheet (106 to 256 g/m ²)
	Saddle Stitch	20 sheets (52 to 90 g/m ²) 13 sheets (91 to 105 g/m ²) 1 cover sheet only (106 g/m ² or heavier)
	Tri-Fold	5 sheets (52 to 90 g/m ²) 3 sheets (91 to 105 g/m ²)
Maximum Number for Storage	Bi-Fold	5 sheets or less per set: 20 sets
(80 g/m ²)	Saddle Stitch	5 sheets or less per set: 20 sets 6 to 10 sheets per set: 10 sets 11 to 20 sheets per set: 10 sets
	Tri-Fold	1 sheet per set: 50 sets 2 to 5 sheets per set: 25 sets
Media types	Bi-Fold	Plain, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8
	Saddle Stitch	Plain, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8
	Tri-Fold	Plain, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8

Job Separator Tray

Item	Description			
Number of Trays	1 tray			
Maximum Sheets	100 Sheets (80 g/m²)			
Paper Size	A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, A5, A6-R, B4, B5-R, B5, B6-R, 216×340 mm, SRA3, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Executive, 12×18", Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K, ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard), Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Custom (98 × 148 to 304.8 × 1,220 mm)			
Paper Type	Paper weight: 52 to 300 g/m ² Media types: Plain, Recycled, Special paper			
Dimensions (W × D × H)	18.78" × 16.52" × 2.52" 477 × 419.6 × 64 mm			
Weight	Approx. 1.6 lbs. / Approx. 0.7 kg			

Inner Shift Tray

Item	Description		
Number of Trays	1 tray		
Maximum Sheets	250 Sheets (80 g/m ²)		
Paper Size	A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, A5, A6-R, B4, B5-R, B5, B6-R, 216×340 mm, SRA3, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Executive, 12×18", Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K, ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku hagaki (Return postcard), Kakugata 2, Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Nagagata 3, Nagagata 4, Younaga 3, Custom (98 × 148 to 320 × 1,220 mm)		
Paper Type	Paper weight: 52 to 300 g/m ² Media types: Plain, Recycled, Special paper		
Dimensions (W × D × H)	17.33" × 15.75" × 5.24" 440 × 400 × 133 mm		
Weight	Approx. 3.97 lbs. / Approx. 1.8 kg		

Banner Tray

Item	Description	
Max. number of sheets	10 sheets (Multipurpose tray)	
Paper length	210 to 304.8 mm (8.26" to 12")	
Paper width	Max. 1,220.0 mm (48.03")	
Paper Type	Paper weight: 136 to 163 g/m ² Paper type: Heavy 2	
Dimensions (W × D × H) 15.78" × 15.67" × 7.63" 400.6 × 397.8 × 193.6 mm		
Weight	Approx. 1.2 lbs. / Approx. 0.5 kg	

Inserter Tray

Item	Description			
Number of Trays	2 tray			
Paper Size	A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, A6-R, B4, B5-R, B5, SRA3, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement, 12×18", Executive, Oficio II, 8K, 16K, 16K-R, ISO B5, Custom 1~4 (148 × 210 ~ 320 × 457 mm)			
Paper Type	Plain, Thin, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color, Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, High Quality, Custom 1-8			
Dimensions (W × D × H)	27.69" × 24.22" × 52.43" 703.2 × 615 × 1331.7 mm			
Weight	Approx. 68.4 lbs. / Approx. 31 kg			

Z Fold Unit

Item	Description		
Sizes	Engineering Fold (Half Z-Fold)	A3, B4, A4R, 11×17, 8.5×14, 8.5×11R, 8K	
	Bi-Fold	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5R, 11×17, 8.5×14, 8.5×11, 8.5×11R, 8K, 12×18, 13×19, SRA3	
	Tri-Fold	A3, A4R, 11×17, 8.5×14, 8.5×11R	
	Z-Fold	A3, A4R, B4, 11×17, 8.5×14, 8.5×11R	
Number of Sheets	Engineering Fold (Half Z-Fold)	1 sheet (106 to 256 g/m ²)	
	Bi-Fold	1 sheet (106 to 256 g/m ²)	
	Tri-Fold	64~74 g/m ² , A4R/8.5×11R: 3 sheets, Others: 1 sheet	
	Z-Fold	75~90 g/m ² , A4R/8.5×11R: 2 sheets, Others: 1 sheet 91~105 g/m ² : 1 sheets	
Paper Weight	Engineering Fold (Half Z-Fold)	64~105 g/m ²	
	Bi-Fold		
	Tri-Fold		
	Z-Fold		
Dimensions (W × D × H)	8.23" × 28.75" × 38.59"		
	209 × 730 × 980 mm		
Weight	Approx. 92.6 lbs. / Approx. 42 kg		



Consult your dealer or service representative for recommended paper types.

Backing up your data

If the SSD, HDD, or memory of this machine installed in the machine failed for any reason, the files in the Custom box, fax received data and various settings saved there will be deleted and cannot be restored. To prevent erasing data, make regular backups as follows.

Backing up your data using KYOCERA Net Viewer

Use KYOCERA Net Viewer to save the following data registered in this machine to your PC regularly.

- · System Settings
- Network Settings
- User List
- Address Book
- Custom Box Settings (Except for the file in the Custom Box)
- → Migrating the Address Book (page 2-78)

Backing up your data using Command Center RX

Use Command Center RX to save the data saved in the Custom Box and Fax Box to your PC regularly. This subsection describes the procedure for backing up the data in the Custom Box. You can back up the fax box using the same procedure.

Display the screen.

- Launch your Web browser.
- In the address or location bar, enter the machine's IP address or the host name.
 Click in the following order to check the machine's IP address and the host name.
 [Device Information] in the home screen > [Identification/Wired Network]
- 3 Click the number or name of Custom Box which stores the documents.

2 Download the documents.

- Select the document data you want to download to your computer.
 Only one document data can be downloaded at a time.
- 2 Click [Download] icon. The selected file is shown in "Selected Files".
- 3 Specify [Color Selection] and [File Format] as necessary.
- 4 Click [Download].

Backing up your date using USB Drive

You can copy the data saved in the Custom Box and FAX Box to a USB drive. You can save multiple document data at once.

Copying Documents in Custom Box to USB Drive (page 5-67)

Functions List of Security Quick Setup

The functions configured in each level of Security Quick Setup are as follows. After selecting the security level, configure the security function according to your operating environment.

Item		Security Quick Setup		
		Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
SSL		On	On	On
Serverside Settings ^{*1}	TLS Version	TLS1.1, TLS1.2, TLS1.3	TLS1.2, TLS1.3	TLS1.2, TLS1.3
	Effective Encryption	3DES, AES, AES- GCM, CHACHA20/ POLY1305	AES-GCM, AES, CHACHA20/ POLY1305	AES-GCM, AES, CHACHA20/ POLY1305
	Hash	SHA1, SHA2(256/ 384)	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)
	IPP Security	Secure Only (IPPS)	Secure Only (IPPS)	Secure Only (IPPS)
	HTTP Security	Secure Only (HTTPS)	Secure Only (HTTPS)	Secure Only (HTTPS)
	Enhanced WSD Security	Secure Only (Enhanced WSD over SSL)	Secure Only (Enhanced WSD over SSL)	Secure Only (Enhanced WSD over SSL)
	eSCL Security	Not Secure (eSCL over SSL & eSCL)	Secure Only (eSCL over SSL)	Secure Only (eSCL over SSL)
Clientside Settings ^{*1}	TLS Version	TLS1.1, TLS1.2, TLS1.3	TLS1.2, TLS1.3	TLS1.2, TLS1.3
	Effective Encryption	3DES, AES, AES- GCM, CHACHA20/ POLY1305	AES-GCM, AES, CHACHA20/ POLY1305	AES-GCM, AES, CHACHA20/ POLY1305
	Hash	SHA1, SHA2(256/ 384)	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)
IPv4 settings	DNS over TLS	Off	Auto	On
(Wired Network) ^{*1}	Certificate Auto Verification	Validity Period	Validity Period	Validity Period
	Hash	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)
IPv4 settings	DNS over TLS	Off	Auto	On
(Wireless Network) ^{*1}	Certificate Auto Verification	Validity Period	Validity Period	Validity Period
	Hash	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)
IPv6 Settings	DNS over TLS	Off	Auto	On
(Wired Network)*1	Certificate Auto Verification	Validity Period	Validity Period	Validity Period
	Hash	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)

Item		Security Quick Setup		
		Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
IPv6 Settings (Wireless Network)*1	DNS over TLS	Off	Auto	On
	Certificate Auto Verification	Validity Period	Validity Period	Validity Period
	Hash	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)
Send Protocols: FTP Client	Certificate Auto Verification	Validity Period	Validity Period	Validity Period
(Transmission)*1	Hash	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)
Other Protocols: HTTP (Client)*1	Certificate Auto Verification	Validity Period	Validity Period	Validity Period
	Hash	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)
Other Protocols: SOAP*1	Certificate Auto Verification	Validity Period	Validity Period	Validity Period
	Hash	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)
Other Protocols: LDAP*1	Certificate Auto Verification	Validity Period	Validity Period	Validity Period
	Hash	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)
Send Protocols: SMTP (E-mail	Certificate Auto Verification	Validity Period	Validity Period	Validity Period
TX)*1	Hash	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)
E-mail: POP3 User Settings*1	Certificate Auto Verification	Validity Period	Validity Period	Validity Period
	Hash	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)	SHA2(256/384)
Print Protocols	NetBEUI	On	Off	Off
	LPD	On	On	Off
	FTP Server (Reception)	On	Off	Off
	IPP	On	Off	Off
	IPP over SSL	On	On	On
	Raw	On	On	Off
	ThinPrint	On	Off	Off
	ThinPrint over SSL	On	Off	Off
	WSD Print	On	Off	Off
	POP3 (E-mail RX)	Off	Off	Off

Item		Security Quick Setup		
		Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Send Protocols	FTP Client (Transmission)	On	Off	Off
	SMB	On	On	Off
	WSD Scan	On	Off	Off
	DSM Scan	Off	Off	Off
	eSCL	On	Off	Off
	eSCL over SSL	On	On	Off
Other Protocols	SNMPv1/v2c	On	On	Off
	SNMPv3	Off	Off	Off
	НТТР	On	Off	Off
	HTTPS	On	On	On
	Enhanced WSD	On	Off	Off
	Enhanced WSD (SSL)	On	On	On
	LDAP	Off	Off	Off
	LLTD*1	Off	Off	Off
	REST	On	Off	Off
	REST over SSL	On	On	On
	VNC (RFB)	Off	Off	Off
	VNC (RFB) over SSL	Off	Off	Off
	Enhanced VNC (RFB) over SSL	On	Off	Off
TCP/IP: Bonjour Settings	Bonjour	On	On	Off
Network Settings	Wi-Fi Direct Settings	Off	Off	Off
Connectivity	Bluetooth Settings	Off	Off	Off
	NFC	Off	Off	Off
Interface Block	USB Host	Unblock	Unblock	Block
	USB Device	Unblock	Unblock	Block
	Optional Interface 1	Unblock	Unblock	Block
	Optional Interface 2	Unblock	Unblock	Block
Energy Saver/ Timer	Auto Panel Reset	On	On	On
User Account Lockout Setting	Lockout	Off	Off	On

Item		Security Quick Setup		
		Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Job Status/Job Logs Settings	Display Jobs Detail Status	Show All	Show All	Hide All (Display only when Administrator)
	Display Jobs Log	Show All	Show All	Hide All (Display only when Administrator)
	Display Fax Log	Show All	Show All	Hide All (Display only when Administrator)
Edit Restriction	Address Book	Off	Off	Administrator Only
	One-Touch Key	Off	Off	Administrator Only
Prevent Mis- sending Settings	Destination Check before Send	Off	Off	On
	Entry Check for New Dest.	Off	Off	On
	Destination Check on Selecting	On	On	On
	New Destination Entry	Permit	Permit	Prohibit
	New Destination Entry (FAX)	Permit	Permit	Prohibit
	Recall Destination	Permit	Permit	Prohibit
	Broadcast	Permit	Permit	Prohibit
	Destination History	Permit	Permit	Prohibit
History Settings	Login History	Off	On	On
	Device Log History	Off	On	On
	Secure Comm. Error Log	Off	On	On
Protocol Settings: RESTful API Settings	API for Enhanced Services	Off	Off	Off

^{*1} The setting item which can be set or configured from Command Center RX.

Glossary

Accessibility

The machine is designed featuring good accessibility even for the elderly and those who are physically challenged or visually impaired. The angle of the touch panel is adjustable.

Apple Talk

AppleTalk offers file sharing and printer sharing and it also enables you to utilize application software that is on another computer on the same AppleTalk network.

Auto Form Feed Timeout

During data transmission, the machine may sometimes have to wait until receiving the next data. This is the auto form feed timeout. When the preset timeout passes, the machine automatically prints output. However, no output is performed if the last page has no data to be printed.

Auto-IP

Auto-IP is a module that enables dynamic IPv4 addresses to be assigned to a device on startup. However, DHCP requires a DHCP server. Auto-IP is a server-less method of choosing an IP address. IP addresses between 169.254.0.0 to 169.254.255.255 are reserved for Auto-IP and assigned automatically.

Auto Paper Selection

A function to automatically select paper in the same size as originals when printing.

Auto Sleep

A mode designed for electrical power saving, activated when the machine is left unused or there is no data transfer for a specific period. In Sleep mode, power consumption is kept to a minimum.

Bonjour

Bonjour, also known as zero-configuration networking, is a service that automatically detects computers, devices and services on an IP network. Bonjour, because an industry-standard IP protocol is used, allows devices to automatically recognize each other without an IP address being specified or DNS server being set. Bonjour also sends and receives network packets by UDP port 5353. If a firewall is enabled, the user must check that UDP port 5353 is left open so that Bonjour will run correctly. Some firewalls are set up so as to reject only certain Bonjour packets. If Bonjour does not run stably, check the firewall settings and ensure that Bonjour is registered on the exceptions list and that Bonjour packets are accepted. If you install Bonjour on Windows XP Service Pack 2 or later, the Windows firewall will be set up correctly for Bonjour.

Custom Box

The Custom Box function stores print data for each individual user on the printer and allows the user to print single or multiple copies of the stored data later using the printer's operation panel.

Default Gateway

This indicates the device, such as a computer or router, that serves as the entrance/exit (gateway) for accessing computers outside the network that you are on. When no specific gateway is designated for a destination IP address, data is sent to the host designated as the Default Gateway.

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) that automatically resolves IP addresses, subnet masks, and gateway addresses on a TCP/IP network. DHCP minimizes the load of network management employing a large number of client computers because it relieves individual clients including printers from the IP address being assigned.

DHCP (IPv6)

DHCP (IPv6) is the next-generation of the Internet's Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol and supports IPv6. It extends the BOOTP startup protocol that defines the protocols used for transferring configuration information to hosts on the network. DHCP (IPv6) permits the DHCP server to use its expanded functionality to send configuration parameters to an IPv6 node. Because the network addresses that can be used are allocated automatically, the IPv6 node management workload is reduced in systems where the administrator has to exercise close control over IP address allocation.

dpi (dots per inch)

A unit for resolution, representing the number of dots printed per inch (25.4 mm).

EcoPrint Mode

A printing mode that helps save toner. Copies made in this mode are thus lighter than normal.

Emulation

The function to interpret and execute other printers' page description languages. The machine emulates operation of PCL6, KPDL3 (PostScript 3 compatible).

Enhanced WSD

Kyocera's proprietary web services.

FTP (File Transfer Protocol)

A protocol to transfer files on the TCP/IP network, whether the Internet or an intranet. Along with HTTP and SMTP/POP, FTP is now frequently used on the Internet.

Grayscale

A computer color expression. Displayed images of this sort are typically composed of shades of gray, varying from black at the weakest intensity to white at the strongest, without any other colors. Gray levels are displayed in numerical levels: that is, white and black only for 1 bit; 256 gray levels (including white and black) for 8 bits; and 65,536 gray levels for 16 bits.

Help

If you are unsure of how to operate the machine, would like more information on its functions or are having problems getting the machine to work properly, select [?] (Help) to view a detailed explanation on the touch panel.

IP Address

An Internet protocol address is a unique number that represents a specific computer or related device on the network. The format of an IP address is four sets of numbers separated by dots, e.g. 192.168.110.171. Each number should be between 0 and 255.

IPP

IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) is a standard that uses TCP/IP networks such as the Internet to enable print jobs to be sent between remote computers and printers. IPP is an extension of the HTTP protocol used to view websites and enables printing to be carried out via routers on printers in remote locations. It also supports the HTTP authentication mechanisms along with SSL server and client authentication as well as encryption.

Job Box

The Job Box function stores print data on the printer and allows users to print single or multiple copies of the stored data later using the printer's operation panel.

KPDL (Kyocera Page Description Language)

Kyocera's PostScript page description language compatible with Adobe PostScript Level 3.

Multipurpose (MP) Tray

The paper supply tray on the front side of the machine. Use this tray instead of the cassettes when printing onto envelopes, Hagaki (Cardstock), transparencies, or labels.

NetBEUI (NetBIOS Extended User Interface)

An interface, developed by IBM in 1985, as an update from NetBIOS. It enables more advanced functions on smaller networks than other protocols such as TCP/IP, etc. It is not suitable for larger networks due to lack of routing capabilities to choose the most appropriate routes. NetBEUI has been adopted by IBM for its OS/2 and Microsoft for its Windows as a standard protocol for file sharing and printing services.

Outline font

With outline fonts, character outlines are represented with numerical expressions and fonts can be enlarged or reduced in different ways by changing the numeric values of those expressions. Printing remains clear even if you enlarge fonts, since the characters are defined with outlines represented with numerical expressions. You can specify the font size in steps of 0.25 points up to 999.75 points.

PDF/A

This is "ISO 19005-1. Document management - Electronic document file format for long-term preservation - Part 1: Use of PDF (PDF/A)", and is a file format based on PDF 1.4. It has been standardized as ISO 19005-1, and is a specialization of PDF, which has been mainly used for printing, for long-term storage. A new part, ISO 19005-2 (PDF/A-2), is currently being prepared.

POP3 (Post Office Protocol 3)

A standard protocol to receive E-mail from the server in which the mail is stored on the Internet or an intranet.

PostScript

A page description language developed by Adobe Systems. It enables flexible font functions and highly-functional graphics, allowing higher quality printing. The first version called Level 1 was launched in 1985, followed by Level 2 that enabled color printing and two-byte languages (e.g. Japanese) in 1990. In 1996, Level 3 was released as an update for the Internet access and PDF format as well as gradual improvements in implementation technologies.

PPM (prints per minute)

This indicates the number of A4 size printouts made in one minute.

Printer Driver

The software to enable you to print data created on any application software. The printer driver for the machine is downloaded from our website. Install the printer driver on the computer connected to the machine.

RA (Stateless)

The IPv6 router communicates (transmits) information such as the global address prefix using ICMPv6. This information is the Router Advertisement (RA).

ICMPv6 stands for Internet Control Message Protocol, and is a IPv6 standard defined in the RFC 2463 "Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMPv6) for the Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) Specification".

RAM Disk

Using part of the printer's memory as a virtual disk, you can set any amount of memory from overall printer memory as a RAM disk in order to use features such as electronic sorting (shortening print time).

Send as E-mail

A function to send the image data stored in the machine as an E-mail attachment. E-mail addresses can be selected from the list or entered at each time.

SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol)

A protocol for E-mail transmission over the Internet or an intranet. It is used for transferring mail between mail servers as well as for sending mail from clients to their servers.

Status Page

The page lists machine conditions, such as the memory capacity, total number of prints and scans, and paper source settings.

Subnet Mask

The subnet mask is a way of augmenting the network address section of an IP address.

A subnet mask represents all network address sections as 1 and all host address sections as 0. The number of bits in the prefix indicates the length of the network address. The term "prefix" refers to something added to the beginning and, in this context, indicates the first section of the IP address. When an IP address is written, the length of the network address is indicated by the prefix length after a forward slash (/). For example, "24" in the address "133.210.2.0/24". In this way, "133.210.2.0/24" denotes the IP address "133.210.2.0" with a 24-bit prefix (network section). This new network address section (originally part of the host address) made possible by the subnet mask is referred to as the subnet address. When you enter the subnet mask, be sure to set the "DHCP" setting to "Off".

TCP/IP (Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol)

TCP/IP is a suite of protocols designed to define the way computers and other devices communicate with each other over a network.

TCP/IP (IPv6)

TCP/IP (IPv6) is based on the current Internet protocol, TCP/IP (IPv4). IPv6 is the next-generation Internet protocol and expands the available address space, which resolves the problem of the lack of addresses under IPv4, while also introducing other improvements such as additional security functionality and the capacity to prioritize data transmission.

TWAIN (Technology Without An Interesting Name)

A technical specification for connecting scanners, digital cameras, and other image equipment to computers. The TWAIN compatible devices enable you to process image data on any relevant application software. TWAIN is adopted on a large amount of graphic software (e.g. Adobe Photoshop) and OCR software.

USB (Universal Serial Bus) 2.0

A USB interface standard for Hi-Speed USB 2.0. The maximum transfer rate is 480 Mbps. This machine is equipped with USB 2.0 for high-speed data transfer.

WIA (Windows Imaging Acquisition)

A function to import images supported after Windows Me/XP from digital cameras and other peripheral devices. This function replaces what TWAIN used to do. The feature is provided as a part of Windows functions and improves ease of operation, so that you import images directly to My Computer without using any application.

WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup)

WPS is a network security standard created by Wi-Fi Alliance, to make it easy to connect with the wireless devices and set up the Wi-Fi Protected Access. The WPS-supported services can connect to the wireless access points by pushing a button or entering passphrases.

Index	Calibration 8-85, 10-58 Canceled before Sending 8-26
	Card Authentication Kit 11-6
Numerica	Cassette
Numerics	Loading Envelopes or Cardstock 3-10
1,000-Sheet Finisher 10-152	Loading Paper 3-4, 3-7
1,000-sheet Finisher 11-4	Cassette 1 2-2
100-sheet Staple Finisher 11-4	Cassette 1 (to 4) Settings 8-13
2-sided/Book Original 6-73	Cassette 2 2-2
3,000-Sheet Finisher	Cassette 3 2-5
Manual Staple 5-78	Cassette 4 2-5
4,000-sheet Finisher 11-4	Cassette 5 2-5
	Centering 6-44
A	Character Entry Method 11-10
Accessibility 11-42	Checking the Counter 2-64
Accessibility Functions 2-29	Checking the Remaining Amount of Toner 7-15
Address Book 3-38	Cleaning 10-2
Adding 3-38	Document Processor 10-2
Contact 3-38	Glass Platen 10-2
Deleting 3-44	Slit Glass 10-3
Editing 3-43	Clear Set, after Job Started 8-33
Group 3-42	Clear Settings after Job Started 8-21
Adjustment/Maintenance 8-84	Coated Paper 11-20
Image Adjustment 8-84	Collate/Offset 6-28
Others 8-86	Default 8-35
AirPrint 4-16	Color
AppleTalk 11-42	Calibration 8-85, 10-58
Application 5-14	Color Balance 6-37
Applications 11-8	Color Balance 6-37
Auto Detect Original Size 8-11	Color Selection 6-36
Auto Drum Refresh 8-85	
Auto Error Clear 8-23	Default 8-36
Auto Form Feed Timeout 11-42	Combine 6.42
Auto Image Rotation 6-69	Combine 6-42
Default 8-35	Command Center RX 2-67
Auto Panel Reset 8-7	Connecting
Auto Paper Selection 11-42	LAN Cable 2-8
Auto Sleep 2-46, 11-42	Power Cable 2-9
Auto-IP 11-42	USB cable 2-9
Settings 8-56, 8-58	Connection Method 2-7
Automatic 2-Sided Print Function 1-13	Connectivity 8-69
Automatic 2-olded Fill Full and for 1-10	Continuous Scan 6-68
D.	Default 8-34, 8-36
B	Contrast 6-38, 8-84
Background Density Adjustment 6-37, 8-84	Control Section of the Finisher 2-5
Default 8-34, 8-36	Conventions Used in This Guide XXIV
Backing up your data 11-37	Copy 5-19
Banner Tray 11-5	Copy Settings
Using 4-12	Auto Image Rotation Action 8-35
Bates Stamp 6-65	Original Size of Undetected Original 8-36
Bluetooth Settings 8-69	Paper Size for Small Original 8-35
Bonjour 11-42	Copy Speed 11-23
Settings 8-64	Counting the Number of Pages Printed
Booklet 6-47	Count by Paper Size 9-44
Border Erase 6-45	Counter 2-64
Border Erase (Copy) 8-35	Each Job Account 9-46
Border Erase/Full Scan (Fax) 8-36	Print Accounting Report 9-47
Border Erase/Full Scan (Send/Store) 8-36	Total Accounting 9-46
	Cover 6-55
C	Custom Box 11-42
Cables 2-7	Deleting Documents 5-69

Editing and Deleting Custom Box 5-61	Skip Blank Page (Copy) 8-34
Printing Documents 5-63	Skip Blank Page (Send/Store) 8-36
Send 5-65	System Stamp 8-33
Storing Documents 5-62, 5-64	Toner Save Level (EcoPrint) 8-34
Custom Original Size 8-12	XPS Fit to Page 8-35
Custom Paper Settings 8-16	Zoom 8-33
	Default Gateway 11-42
D	Settings 8-56, 8-58
	Default Screen 8-10
Data Overwrite Method 8-75	Delete after Printed 6-85
Data Sanitization 8-74	Delete after Transmitted 6-86
Data Security 8-73	Density 6-34, 8-84
Date Format 8-7	Destination
Date/Time 8-6	Adding a Destination 3-38
Date Format 8-7	Address Book 5-48
Date/Time 8-6	Address Book Type 8-42
Time Zone 8-7	Check before Send 8-39
Default	
Auto % Priority 8-35	Checking and Editing 5-52
Auto Image Rotation (Copy) 8-35	Confirmation Screen of Destinations 5-52
Background Density Adj. (Copy) 8-34	Entry Check for New Dest. 8-39
Background Density Adj. (Send/Store) 8-36	Multi Sending 5-42
Border Erase Default 8-33	Narrow Down 8-42
Border Erase to Back Page 8-33	One Touch Key 3-45
Clear Settings after Job Started 8-33	Search 5-49
Collate/Offset 8-35	Sort 8-42
Color Selection (Send/Store) 8-36	Developer Refresh 8-85, 10-58
Color TIFF Compression 8-37	Device Information 7-13
Color Type 8-36	Device Security Settings 8-72
Continuous Scan (Copy) 8-34	Administrator Authentication on Firm Update 8-72
Continuous Scan (Fax) 8-36	Job Status/Job Logs Settings 8-72
Continuous Scan (Send/Store) 8-36	Remote Printing 8-72
DP Read Action 8-33	Software Verification 8-72
EcoPrint 8-34	Unusable Time 8-72
Email Subject/Body 8-37	Device Settings 8-6
Erase Shadowed Areas (Copy) 8-36	Error Handling 8-22
Erase Shadowed Areas (Send) 8-38	Function Key Assignment 8-21
· ,	Keyboard 8-6
Erase Shadowed Areas (Store) 8-38	Language/System of Units 8-6
Fax TX Resolution 8-36	Numeric Keypad 8-6
File Format 8-36	Operation Assist 8-21
File Name Entry 8-33	Original/Scan Settings 8-11
File Separation 8-37	Paper Feeding 8-13
High Comp. PDF Image 8-37	Paper Output 8-20
iFax Subject/Body 8-38	Sound 8-11
Image Quality (File Format) 8-37	Toner Settings 8-24
JPEG/TIFF Print 8-35	Device Status Notification 8-27
Margin 8-35	Low Toner Alert Level 8-27
OCR Output Format 8-37	DHCP 11-43
OCR Text Recognition 8-37	
OCR Text Recognition Action 8-37	Settings 8-56, 8-58
Org. Image (Send/Store) 8-36	DHCP (IPv6) 11-43
Original Image (Copy) 8-34	Settings 8-57, 8-59
Original Orientation (Copy) 8-34	Different Width Originals 8-12
Original Orientation(Send/Store) 8-36	Digital Signature Email 6-84
PDF/A 8-37	Direct Printing from Web 8-49
Prevent Bleed-through (Copy) 8-34	Display Brightness 8-10
Prevent Bleed-through (Send/Store) 8-36	Display Settings 8-10
Primary OCR Language 8-37	Default Screen 8-10
Repeat Copy 8-35	Display Brightness 8-10
Reserve Next Priority 8-35	Quick Setup Registration (Box Print) 8-10
Scan Resolution 8-36	Quick Setup Registration (Copy) 8-10

Quick Setup Registration (Send) 8-10	Emulation 11-43	
Quick Setup Registration (Sending from Box) 8-10	Selection 8-47	
Quick Setup Registration (Storing in Box) 8-10	Emulation Upgrade Kit 11-7	
Show Power Off Message 8-10	Encrypted PDF Password 6-87	
Wallpaper 8-10	Energy Saver Recovery Level 2-47, 8-9	
Disposing of the Punch Waste 10-19	Energy Saver/Timer 8-7	
1,000-sheet Finisher 10-21	Auto Panel Reset 8-7	
100-sheet Staple Finisher 10-22	EnergySaver RecoveryLevel 8-9	
4,000-sheet Finisher 10-22	Interrupt Clear Timer 8-9	
Inner Finisher 10-19	Low Power Timer 8-7	
Disposing of the Staple Waste 10-17	Panel Reset Timer 8-7	
DNS over TLS 8-56, 8-57, 8-58, 8-59	Ping Timeout 8-9	
DNS Server Address	Power Off Rule 8-9	
Settings 8-56, 8-57, 8-58, 8-59	Power Off Timer 8-8	
Document Box	Sleep Level 8-8	
Basic Operation 5-56	Sleep Rules 8-7	
Custom Box 5-55	Sleep Timer 8-7	
Job Box 4-18, 5-55	Weekly Timer Settings 8-8	
Removable Memory Box 5-55	Energy Saving Control Function 1-13	
Document Processor 2-2	Energy Star (ENERGY STAR®) Program 1-13	
Loading Originals 5-3	Enhanced VNC over SSL	
Originals Not Supported by the Document	Protocol Settings 8-63	
Processor 5-3	Enhanced WSD 11-43	
Originals Supported by the Document	Protocol Settings 8-62	
Processor 5-3	Enhanced WSD over SSL	
Part Names 2-2	Protocol Settings 8-62	
Document Processor (Dual Scan with Skewed and	Enlarged Display 2-29	
Multifeed Detection) 11-4	Entering Numbers 2-26	
Document Processor (Dual Scan) 11-4	Entry	
Document Processor (Reverse Automatic) 11-4	File Name 6-70	
Document Table 11-6	Subject 6-83	
Domain Name	Envelope Feed Guide 3-10	
Settings 8-58, 8-59	Envelope Stack Guide 3-19	
DP Read Action 8-33	Envelopes 11-19	
dpi 11-43	Environment 1-3	
Drum Heater 8-86	Erase Colors 6-39	
Drum Refresh 8-86, 10-57	Erase Shadowed Areas 6-47	
DSM Scan	Error Handling 8-22	
Protocol Settings 8-41, 8-60	Auto Error Clear 8-23	
Duplex 6-52	Continue or Cancel Error Job 8-23	
Buplox 6 62	Duplexing Error 8-22	
-	Error Job Skip 8-23	
E	Finished Pages Exceeded 8-22	
EcoPrint 6-36, 11-43	Finishing Error 8-22	
Default 8-34	Inserted Paper Mismatch 8-22	
Printer 8-47	No Staple Error 8-22	
Edit Destination	Paper Jam before Staple 8-23	
Address Book 3-38	Paper Mismatch Error 8-22	
Contact 3-38	Punch Waste Full Error 8-22	
Group 3-42	eSCL	
One Touch Key 3-45	Protocol Settings 8-62	
E-mail	eSCL over SSL	
POP3 8-40	Protocol Settings 8-63	
SMTP (E-mail TX) 8-40	1 Totocol Octaings 0-00	
Email 8-26	E	
Email Encrypted TX 6-84	<u>F</u>	
E-mail Settings 2-71	Favorites 5-11	
E-mail Subject/Body 6-83	Deleting 5-13	
Email Subject/Body	Editing 5-13	
Default 8-37	Recalling 5-12	
Email/Folder 8-26	Registering 5-12	

Fax 8-26	Group Authorization Settings 9-18
Fax Communication Report 8-28	Group Authorization 9-18
FAX Kit 11-6	Group List 9-18
FAX RX Result Report 8-26	Guest Authorization Settings 9-20
Fax Server 8-69	Guest Authorization 9-20
FAX Server Send 5-45	Guest Property 9-21
File	Guides Provided with the Machine XXI
Format 6-75	
PDF 6-77	H
Separation 6-82	Hagaki (Cardstock) 11-19
File Format 6-75	Handles 2-2
Default 8-36	Hard Disk 11-6
File Management Utility Connection 5-39	Hard Disk/SSD Initialization 8-73
File Name Entry 6-70	Help 11-43
Default 8-33	Help Screen 2-28
File Separation 6-82	History Settings 8-28
Default 8-37	Device Log History Settings 8-30
File Size Confirmation 6-85	Login History Settings 8-29
Finisher Tray 2-5	Secure Comm. Error Log 8-31
First Copy Time 11-23	Sending Log History 8-28
First Print Time 11-24	Home
Fold 6-26	Customize Desktop 2-17
Folding Tray 2-5	Customize Taskbar 2-17
Folding Unit 11-4	Wallpaper 2-17
Form Overlay	Home Screen 2-15
Storing a Form 5-71	Host Name 8-53, 8-66
Front Cover 2-2	HTTP
FTP 11-43	Protocol Settings 8-62
FTP Client (Transmission)	HTTPS
Protocol Settings 8-40, 8-60	Protocol Settings 8-62
FTP Encrypted TX 6-84	ŭ
FTP Server (Reception)	1
Protocol Settings 8-60	ID Card Copy 6 34
Function Key Assignment 2-20, 8-21	ID Card Copy 6-34 ID Card Settings
Function Settings 8-33	Additional Authentication 9-29
Address Book 8-41	Keyboard Login 9-28
Copy/Print 8-38	iFax
Document Box 8-49	Protocol Settings 8-60
DSM Scan 8-41	Image Adjustment
Email 8-40	Auto Color Correction 8-84
Fax Memory RX Box 8-50	Auto Drum Refresh 8-85
Fax/iFax 8-41	Background Density Adjustment 8-84
Function Defaults 8-33	Calibration 8-85, 10-58
Home 8-50	Calibration Cycle 8-85
Internet Browser 8-51	Contrast 8-84
Job Box 8-50	Correcting Black Lines 8-85
Manual Staple 8-52	Density 8-84
One-Touch Key 8-42	Developer Refresh 8-85, 10-58
Printer 8-47	Drum Refresh 8-86, 10-57
RX/Forward Rules/Fax Box 8-46	Laser Scanner Cleaning 8-86, 10-58
Send and Forward 8-42	Sharpness Adjustment 8-84
Send/Store 8-38	Tone Curve Adjustment 8-85, 10-56
Sending Job - Folder 8-40	Image Preview at DP Jam 8-23
Status 8-51	Image Repeat 6-61
WSD 8-41	Inner Finisher 10-150, 11-5
Functions List of Security Quick Setup 11-38	Inner Tray 2-2
	Insert Sheets/Chapters 6-60
G	Inserter tray 8-15
Glossary 11-42	Install
Grayscale 11-43	Macintosh 2-58

Software 2-51	Proof and Hold Box 4-22
Windows 2-52	Quick Copy Box 4-21
Interface Block Setting 8-71	Quick Copy Job Retention 8-50
Internet Browser 8-51	Repeat Copy Job Retention 8-50
Instructions for use 5-76	Specifying the Job Box from a Computer and Storing
Internet FAX Kit 11-6	the Job 4-18
IP Address 11-43	Stored Job Box 4-20
Settings 8-56, 8-58	Job Finish Notice 6-70
IP Filter (IPv4)	Job Finish Notice Setting 8-26
Settings 8-65	Job Separator 11-5
<u> </u>	
IP Filter (IPv6)	Job Separator Tray 2-2, 2-5
Settings 8-65	JPEG/TIFF Print 6-87
IPP 11-44	Default 8-35
Protocol Settings 8-61	
IPP over SSL	K
Protocol Settings 8-61	Keyboard 8-6
IPSec 8-65	Keyboard Holder 11-6
	Keyboard Layout 8-6
J	KPDL 11-44
Job	THE THE
Available Status 7-2	
Canceling 7-11	L
-	Label 11-18
Checking History 7-9	LAN Cable 2-7
Checking Status 7-2	Connecting 2-8
Detailed Information 7-8	LAN Interface 8-60
Detailed Information of Histories 7-10	Language/System of Units 8-6
Details of the Status Screens 7-3	Large Capacity Feeder (1,500-sheet×2) 11-5
Displaying History Screen 7-10	Loading Paper 3-14
Displaying Status Screens 7-2	Laser Scanner Cleaning 8-86, 10-58
Pause and Resumption 7-11	LDAP
Sending the Log History 7-10, 8-28	Protocol Settings 8-41, 8-62
Job Accounting 9-32	Legal Information 1-11
Adding an Account 9-34	Limited Use of This Product 1-10
Apply Limit 9-49	
Copy/Printer Count 9-50	Loading Originals 5-2
Count by Paper Size 9-44	Loading Originals in the Document Processor 5-3
Counting the Number of Pages Printed 9-45	Placing Originals on the Platen 5-2
Default Counter Limit 9-42	Loading Paper 10-8
	Local Authorization 9-16
Deleting an Account 9-37	Login 2-30
Editing an Account 9-36	Logout 2-31
Enabling Job Accounting 9-33	Low Power Timer 8-7
FAX Driver 9-41	Low Toner Alert 8-24
Login 9-48	LPD
Logout 9-48	Protocol Settings 8-61
Overview of Job Accounting 9-32	•
Print Accounting Report 9-47	M
Printing 9-38	
Restricting the Use of the Machine 9-35	Mailbox 11-4
TWAIN 9-39	Management 9-1
WIA 9-40	Manual Setting (IPv6) 8-57, 8-59
Job Accounting/Authentication	Manual Staple 5-78, 8-52
Authentication Security 9-4	Margin 6-44
Job Accounting 9-32	Default 8-35
Unknown User Settings 9-51	Margin/Centering 6-44
User Login 9-2	Media Type Setting 8-17
Job Box 11-44	Memo Page 6-59
Deletion of Job Retention 8-50	Memory Diagnostics 8-86
	Message Banner Print 8-48
Form for Form Overlay 5-71	Message Board Settings 8-27
Form Overlay 5-71	Mirror Image 6-69
Private Print Box 4-19	

Mixed Size Originals 6-22	100-sheet Staple Finisher 11-4
Combinations 6-23	4,000-sheet Finisher 11-4
Copy Size 6-24	Banner Tray 11-5
Mixed Size Stapling 6-31	Card Authentication Kit 11-6
Monotype Imaging License Agreement 1-12	Document Processor (Dual Scan with Skewed and
Mopria 4-16	Multifeed Detection) 11-4
Motion Sensor 2-2, 2-44, 8-9	Document Processor (Dual Scan) 11-4
MP Tray Settings 8-14	Document Processor (Reverse Automatic) 11-4
Multi Sending 5-42	Document Table 11-6
Multipurpose Tray 2-2, 2-3, 11-44	Emulation Upgrade Kit 11-7
Loading Index Paper 5-9	FAX Kit 11-6
	Folding Unit 11-4
N	Hard Disk 11-6
	Inner Finisher 11-5
Negative Image 6-69	Internet FAX Kit 11-6
NetBEUI 11-44	Job Separator 11-5
Protocol Settings 8-60	Keyboard Holder 11-6
NetWare	Large Capacity Feeder (1,500-sheet×2) 11-5
Settings 8-68	Mailbox 11-4
Network Interface 2-7	Network Interface Kit 11-6
Network Interface Connector 2-4	OCR Scan Activation Kit 11-7
Network Interface Kit 11-6	Optional Numeric Keypad 11-5
Network Settings 8-53	Overview 11-2
Bonjour 8-64	Paper Feeder (500-sheet×2) 11-5
IP Filter (IPv4) 8-65	Punch Unit 11-5
IP Filter (IPv6) 8-65	Side Feeder (3,000-sheet) 11-5
IPSec 8-65	ThinPrint Option 11-7
Ping 8-64	Wireless Network Interface Kit 11-6
Protocol Settings 8-60	Option Interface Slot 2-4
Proxy 8-53	Optional Keyboard Type 8-6
Restart Network 8-65	Optional Network 8-66
Wi-Fi Direct 8-53	Host Name 8-66
Wi-Fi Settings 8-54	Restart Network 8-68
Wired Network Settings 8-58	Wired Network Settings 8-68
NFC	Wireless Network 8-66
Printing 4-17	Optional Numeric Keypad 11-5
Settings 2-43, 8-69	Org. Image
Notice 1-2	Default 8-36
Notification/Report 8-25	Orientation Confirmation 8-21
Device Status Notification 8-27	Original
Fax Communication Report 8-28	Auto Detect 8-11
History Settings 8-28	Custom Original Size 8-12
Message Board Settings 8-27	Size XXVİ
Printing Report/List 8-25	Original Eject Table 2-2
Result Report Settings 8-26	Original Image 6-35
Numeric Keypad 8-6	Default 8-34
	Original Orientation 6-25
0	Default 8-34, 8-36
OCR Scan Activation Kit 11-7	Original Size 6-19
Offset Documents by Job 8-20	Original Size Indicator Plates 2-2
Offset One Page Documents 8-20	Original Stopper 2-2
One Touch Key	Original Table 2-2
Adding 3-45	Original Width Guides 2-2
Editing and Deleting 3-46	Original/Scan Settings 8-11
Operation Assist 8-21	Auto Detect Original Size 8-11
Clear Settings after Job Started 8-21	Custom Original Size 8-12
Orientation Confirmation 8-21	Prevent Light Reflection 8-12
Preset Limit 8-21	Outline font 11-44
Operation Panel 2-2	
Ontion	

1,000-sheet Finisher 11-4

P	Right Cover 1 10-78
Page # 6-57	Right Cover 2 (1,500-sheet×2) 10-84
Panel Reset Timer 8-7	Right Cover 2 (500-sheet×2) 10-83
Paper	Paper Length Guide 2-3, 3-4, 3-7
Appropriate Paper 11-14	Paper Output 8-20
Auto Paper Selection 8-18	Offset Documents by Job 8-20
·	Offset One Page Documents 8-20
Checking the Remaining Amount of Paper 7-15	Paper Selection 6-20
Custom Paper Size 8-16	·
Default Paper Source 8-18	Paper Stopper 2-2, 3-19
Loading Cardstock 3-10, 5-8	Paper Width Adjusting Tab 2-3
Loading Envelopes 3-10, 5-8	Paper Width Guide 2-3, 3-5, 3-8
Loading in the Large Capacity Feeder 3-14	Part Names 2-2
Loading in the Side Feeder 3-16	Password 8-54
Loading Index Paper 5-9	PDF/A 11-44
Loading Paper 3-2	PIN Login 9-30
Loading Paper in the Cassette 1 3-4	Ping 8-64
Loading Paper in the Cassette 2 3-7	Platen 2-2
Paper Selection 8-18	POP3 11-44
Paper Source for Cover 8-19	PostScript 11-44
Separator Paper Source 8-19	Power Cable
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Connecting 2-9
Show Paper Setup Message 8-18	Power Management 1-13
Size and Media Type 11-13	Power Off 2-10
Special Paper 11-17	
Special Paper Action 8-19	Power Off Rule 8-9
Specifications 11-13	Power Off Timer 2-47, 8-8
Paper Feed Mode 8-48	Power On 2-10
Paper Feed Settings 8-18	Power Switch 2-2
Paper Feeder (500-sheet×2) 11-5	PPM 11-44
Paper Feeding 8-13	Precautions for Use 1-4
Cassette 1 (to 4) Settings 8-13	Preprinted Paper 11-20
Custom Paper Settings 8-16	Preset Limit 8-21
Inserter tray 8-15	Prevent Bleed-thru 6-38
Media Type Setting 8-17	Default 8-34, 8-36
MP Tray Settings 8-14	Prevent Light Reflection 8-12
Paper Feed Settings 8-18	Prevent Original Skewing 8-12
Show Paper Setup Message 8-18	Primary Network (Client) 8-70
Paper Jams 10-59	Print Report
1,000-Sheet Finisher 10-120	Data Sanitization Report 8-26
100-sheet Staple Finisher (Inner) 10-123	Print Settings 4-2, 4-15
100-sheet Staple Finisher (Tray A) 10-124	Printer
	Copies 8-47
100-sheet Staple Finisher (Tray B) 10-128	CR Action 8-48
4,000-sheet Finisher (Inner) 10-123	
4,000-sheet Finisher (Tray A) 10-124	Duplex 8-47 EcoPrint 8-47
4,000-sheet Finisher (Tray B) 10-128	
Bridge Unit 10-86	Emulation 8-47
Cassette 1 10-62	Form Feed TimeOut 8-47
Cassette 2 10-65	Job Name 8-48
Cassette 3 (1,500-sheet×2) 10-70	KIR 8-49
Cassette 3 and 4 (500-sheet×2) 10-68	LF Action 8-47
Cassette 4 (1,500-sheet×2) 10-72	Message Banner Print 8-48
Cassette 5 (Side Feeder) 10-75	MP Tray Priority 8-48
Document Processor 10-89, 10-91	Orientation 8-47
Folding Tray (100-sheet Staple Finisher) 10-146	Override A4/Letter 8-47
Folding Tray (4,000-sheet Finisher) 10-136	Paper Feed Mode 8-48
Folding Unit (100-sheet Staple Finisher) 10-140	Print setting 4-2
Folding Unit (4,000-sheet Finisher) 10-131	Printing Job Terminator 8-49
Inner Finisher 10-88	Resolution 8-49
	Toner Save Level (EcoPrint) 8-47
Jam Location Indicators 10-59	User Name 8-48
Mailbox 10-87	
Multipurpose Tray 10-77	Wide A4 8-48

Printer Driver 11-45	Resolution 6-82, 8-49, 11-24
Changing the Default Printer Driver Settings 4-3	Resource Saving - Paper 1-13
Help 4-3	Responding to Messages 10-35
Printing Documents Stored in Removable USB	REST
Memory 5-72	Protocol Settings 8-63
Printing from PC 4-4	REST over SSL
Non-standard Sized Paper 4-6	Protocol Settings 8-64
Standard Sized Paper 4-4	Restart Entire Device 8-70, 8-71
Printing Report/List 8-25	Restart Network 8-65, 8-68
Font List 8-26	RESTful API Settings
Network Status 8-25	API for Service/Maintenance 8-64
Optional Network Status 8-25	Result Report Settings 8-26
Print Accounting Report 8-25	Right Cover 1 2-3
Service Status 8-25	Right Cover 1 Lever 2-3
Status Page 8-25	
Printing Speed 11-24	S
Priority Override 6-71	Safety Conventions in This Guide 1-2
Proof Copy 5-21	Same Width Originals 8-12
Protocol Settings 8-60	Saving Documents to USB Memory 5-74
Punch 6-31	Scan Resolution 6-82
Punch Unit 11-5	Default 8-36
	Scan to Folder Setup Tool for SMB 3-33
Q	Security Level 8-70
Quick Setup Registration (Box Print) 8-10	Security Precautions when Using Wireless LAN 1-10
Quick Setup Registration (Copy) 8-10	Security Quick Setup 8-70
Quick Setup Registration (Send) 8-10	Security Settings 8-70
Quick Setup Registration (Sending from Box) 8-10	Authentication Security 8-82
Quick Setup Registration (Storing in Box) 8-10	Data Security 8-73
Quick Setup Wizard 2-48	Device Security Settings 8-72
Quick Getap Wizard 2-40	Interface Block Setting 8-71
	Network 8-83
R	System Stamp 8-77
RA (Stateless) 11-45	Unknown User Settings 8-83
Settings 8-57, 8-59	Send and Forward
RAM Disk 11-45	File format 8-44
Raw	PDF Encryption Functions 8-45
Protocol Settings 8-61	Send and Print 6-83
Recipient Format 8-26	Printing 6-83
Recycled Paper 11-20	Storing 6-83
Regarding Trade Names 1-11	Send and Store 6-83
Regular Maintenance 10-2	Send as E-mail 5-23, 11-45
Cleaning 10-2	Send Result Report 8-26
Disposing of the Punch Waste 10-19	Send to Folder (FTP) 5-23
Loading Paper 10-8	Send to Folder (SMB) 5-23
Replace the Waste Toner Box 10-7	Send/Store
Replacing Staples 10-9	Broadcast 8-39
Toner Container Replacement 10-4	Default Screen 8-38
Remote Operation 10-33	Destination Check before Send 8-39
Remote Printing 8-49	Destination Check on Selecting 8-39
Repeat Copy	Entry Check for New Dest. 8-39
Default 8-35	New Destination Entry 8-39
Printing 6-71	Recall Destination 8-39
Repeat Copy Job Retention 8-50	
Replace the Waste Toner Box 10-7	Sending 5-23 Preparation for Sending a Document to a PC 3 2/
Replacing Staples	Preparation for Sending a Document to a PC 3-24
1,000-Sheet Finisher 10-11	Sending Size 6-74
100-sheet Staple Finisher 10-14	Setting Date and Time 2-32
4,000-Sheet Finisher 10-12	Sharpness Adjustment 8 84
Folding Unit 10-15	Sharpness Adjustment 8-84
Inner Finisher 10-9	Shortcuts
Reserve Next Priority 8-35	Adding 5-17

Editing and Deleting Shortcuts 5-18	4,000-sheet Finisher 10-155
Show Paper Setup Message 8-18	Folding Unit (100-sheet Staple Finisher) 10-165
Show Power Off Message 8-10	Folding Unit (4,000-sheet Finisher) 10-160
Side Feeder (3,000-sheet) 11-5	Staple/Punch 6-29
Loading Paper 3-16	Status Monitor 4-23
Silent Mode 8-86	Accessing 4-23
Simple Login 2-31	Exiting 4-23
Simple Login Settings	Notification Settings 4-26
Simple Login 9-25	Status Page 11-45
Simple Login Setup 9-26	Status/Job Cancel 7-1
Skip Blank Page 6-73	Storing Size 6-86
Default 8-34, 8-36	Subnet Mask 11-45
Sleep 2-46	Settings 8-56, 8-58
Sleep Level 8-8	Supplies
Energy Saver 8-8	Checking the Remaining Amount 7-15
Quick Recovery 8-8	Support Tray Section of the Multipurpose Tray 2-3
Sleep Rules 8-7	Symbols 1-2
Sleep Rules (models for Europe) 2-46	System Initialization 8-87
Sleep Timer 8-7	System Menu 8-2
Slit Glass 2-2	Add/Delete Application 8-83
SMB Client (Transmission)	Adjustment/Maintenance 8-84
Protocol Settings 8-40, 8-60	Date/Time 8-6
SMTP 11-45	Device Settings 8-6
SMTP Auth and Sender Address 8-40	Display Settings 8-10
SNMPv1/v2c	Energy Saver/Timer 8-7
	
Protocol Settings 8-62 SNMPv3	Function Settings 8-33
	Job Accounting/Authentication 8-83
Protocol Settings 8-62	Network Settings 8-53
Solving Malfunctions 10-25	Notification/Report 8-25
Sound 8-11	Operation Method 8-2
Specifications 11-21	Quick Setup Wizard 2-48
1,000-sheet Finisher 11-29	Security Settings 8-70
100-sheet Staple Finisher 11-31	System Stamp 8-77
4,000-sheet Finisher 11-30	Default 8-33
Banner Tray 11-35	System/Network
Copy Functions 11-23	Security Level 8-70
Document Processor 11-26	
Folding Unit (For 100-sheet Staple Finisher) 11-33	T
Folding Unit (For 4,000-sheet Finisher) 11-32	TCP/IP 11-45
Inner Finisher 11-28	Settings 8-56, 8-58
Inner Shift Tray 11-34	TCP/IP (IPv4)
Inserter tray 11-35	Settings 2-33, 8-56, 8-58
Job Separator Tray 11-34	TCP/IP (IPv6) 11-43
Large Capacity Feeder (1,500-sheet×2) 11-27	Settings 8-57, 8-59
Machine 11-21	Thick Paper 11-19
Mailbox (For 4,000-sheet Finisher) 11-32	Thin Print over SSL
Paper Feeder (500-sheet×2) 11-26	Protocol Settings 8-61
Printer Functions 11-24	ThinPrint
Punch Unit (For 1,000-sheet/4,000-sheet/100-sheet	Protocol Settings 8-61
Staple Finisher) 11-31	ThinPrint Option 11-7
Punch Unit (For Inner Finisher) 11-28	Time Zone 8-7
Scanner Functions 11-25	Tone 8-11
Side Feeder (3,000-sheet) 11-27	Tone Curve Adjustment 8-85, 10-56
Z Fold Unit 11-36	Toner Container (Black) 2-4
SSL	Toner Container Replacement 10-4
Security Settings 8-83	Toner Settings 8-24
Stack Level Adjuster 3-20	Low Toner Alert 8-24
Staple 6-29	Toner Waste Full Alert 8-24
Staple Jam 10-150, 10-152	Toner Waste Full Alert 8-24, 8-27
100-sheet Staple Finisher 10-157	Touch Panel 2-13

Transparencies 11-17	WIA 11-46
Tray 1 to 7 2-5	Setting WIA Driver 2-63
Tray A 2-5	Wide A4 8-48
Tray B 2-5	Wi-Fi
Troubleshooting 10-25	Settings 2-35, 8-54
TWAIN 11-46	Wi-Fi Direct
Setting TWAIN Driver 2-61	Printing 4-17
	Settings 2-41, 8-53
U	Wireless Connection 1-9
Universal Print 4-16	Wireless Network
	Settings 2-35, 8-66
Unknown User Settings	Wireless Network Interface Kit 11-6
Unknown ID Job 9-51	
User Property 9-52	WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) 11-46
USB 11-46	WSD Print
USB Cable 2-7	Protocol Settings 8-41, 8-60
Connecting 2-9	WSD Scan 5-35
<u> </u>	Protocol Settings 8-41, 8-60
USB Drive	g ,
Printing 5-72	V
Remove 5-75	X
USB Interface 2-7	XPS Fit to Page 6-87
USB Interface Connector 2-4	Default 8-35
USB Memory	
Save 5-74	_
	Z
USB Memory Slot 2-2	Zoom 6-39
USB Port 2-4	Default 8-33
User Login Administration 9-2	
Adding a User 9-6	
Changing User Properties 9-10	
Enabling User Login Administration 9-3	
FAX Driver 9-15	
Group Authorization Settings 9-18	
Guest Authorization Settings 9-20	
ID Card Settings 9-28	
Local Authentication 9-16	
Login 2-30	
Logout 2-31	
Obtain NW User Property 9-23	
Overview of User Login Administration 9-2	
Password Policy Settings 9-5	
PIN Code Authentication 9-30	
Printing 9-12	
Server Settings 9-17	
Simple Login Settings 9-25	
TWAIN 9-13	
User Account Lockout Setting 9-4	
WIA 9-14	
Using MultiCrop Scan 5-40	
•	
V	
•	
VNC (RFB)	
Protocol Settings 8-63	
VNC (RFB) over SSL	
Protocol Settings 8-63	
•	
W	
Waste Toner Box 2-4	
Waste Toner Box Cover 2-2, 2-4	
Weekly Timer Settings 2-47, 8-8	
White space 6-59	
1	

QUALITY CERTIFICATE

This machine has passed all quality controls and final inspection

For the Kyocera contact in your region, see Sales Sites sections here. https://www.kyoceradocumentsolutions.com/company/directory.html